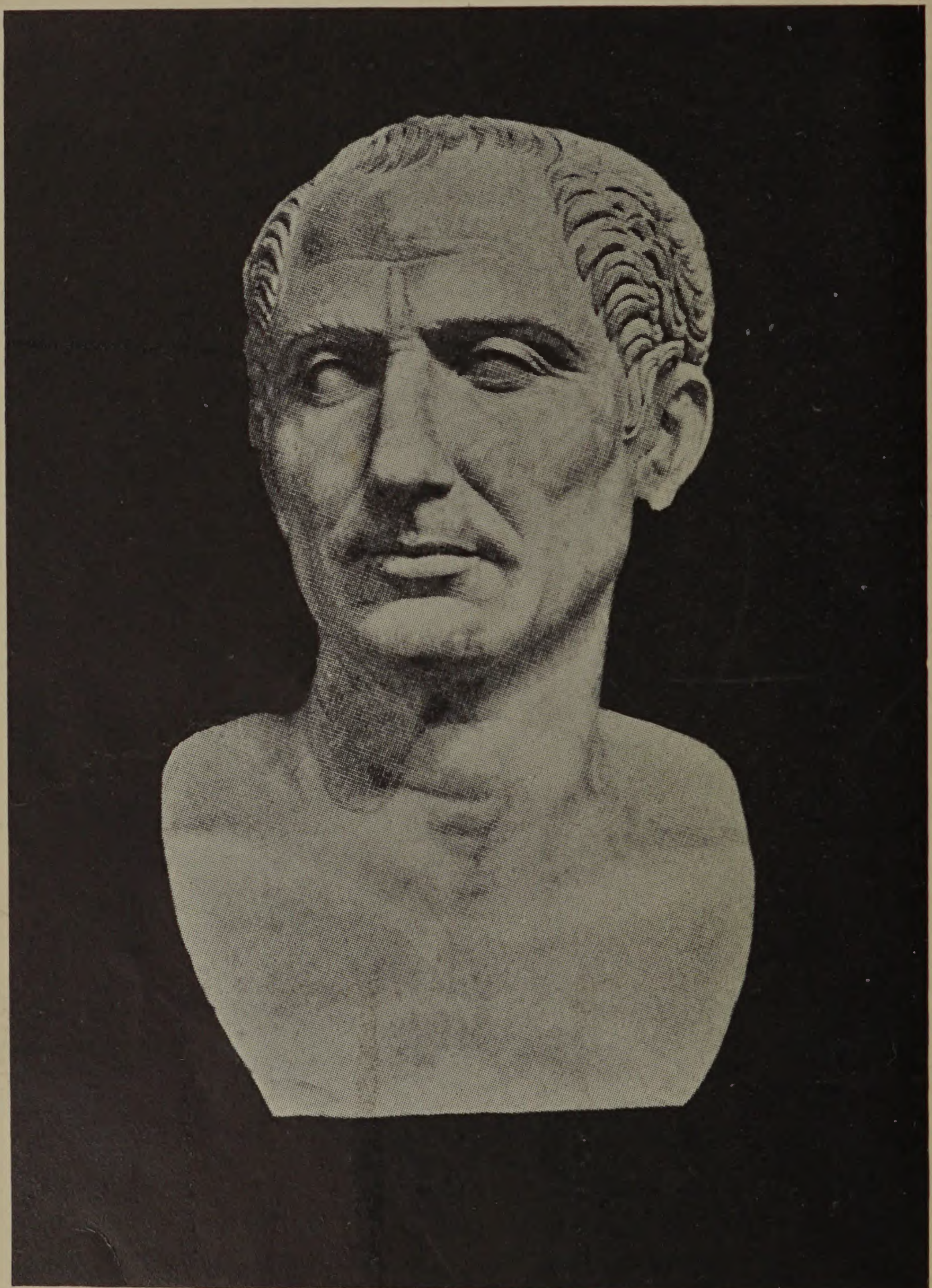


THE BUST OF CAESAR

CHASE & STUART'S NEW CLASSICAL SERIES

CÆSAR'S GALLIC WAR

BOOKS I–VII

With Explanatory Notes and a Vocabulary

BY

GEORGE STUART, A.M. W

LATE PROFESSOR OF THE LATIN LANGUAGE IN THE
CENTRAL HIGH SCHOOL, PHILADELPHIA

REVISED BY

FRANCIS H. LEE

ASSISTANT PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN THE CENTRAL HIGH SCHOOL,
PHILADELPHIA

HINDS, NOBLE & ELDREDGE

31–33–35 WEST 15TH STREET, NEW YORK CITY

PREFACE.

THE text of the Commentaries here presented is chiefly that of Kraner, in the Tauchnitz edition. In a few instances, however, the reading of Oehler or Nipperdey seemed preferable, and was accordingly adopted. This portion of the work received, as it merited, not the least amount of care and attention, and it is hoped that whatever improvements have been introduced into the text by the learning and research of the ablest scholars of Germany, will be found in the present edition.

The Notes have been prepared with a very simple view: to give the willing and industrious student that kind of assistance which is really necessary to render his study profitable, and that amount which the nature of the study fully entitles him to expect; to remove difficulties greater than his strength; and to give him directly, or refer him to, the sources of such information as is requisite to a thorough understanding of the author. In particular the subjunctive mood, and the infinitive with a subject accusative — constructions which practical teachers find most fertile in difficulties to the young student — have received a due share of attention. With the explanations of those subjects and the grammatical references given in the Notes, it is believed that as much has been done in the way of elucidation as can be ventured with safety to the student's habits of self-reliance or substantial progress in study. The references are to the grammars of Chase, Harkness, Allen and Greenough, and Gildersleeve; with occasional references to Madvig and Zumpt.

CONTENTS.

LIFE OF CÆSAR.

Caius Julius Cæsar was born on the 12th of July, B.C. 100. Though descended from one of the most ancient patrician families of Rome, he became closely connected with the popular party by the marriage of his aunt Julia with the great Marius and by his own marriage with Cornelia, the daughter of L. Cinna, one of the chief opponents of Sulla. On the latter's return from Asia he ordered Cæsar to put away his wife; on his refusal he was proscribed, deprived of his wife's dowry and his own fortune. For some time his life was in danger, and it was only through the intercession of influential friends that he obtained a pardon from the dictator, who remarked that "That boy would some day be the ruin of the aristocracy, for there were many Mariuses in him." Cæsar at once withdrew from Rome (B.C. 81), and served his first campaign at the siege and capture of Mytilene, where he was awarded a civic crown (of oak leaves) for saving the life of a fellow soldier.

On the death of Sulla (B.C. 78) Cæsar returned to Rome, and acting upon a common practice of the times on the part of young men who sought to bring themselves to public notice, he accused Cn. Dolabella and C. Antonius of extortion in their provinces. Though both escaped conviction, Cæsar greatly increased his reputation by these prosecutions, and showed that he possessed great power as a speaker. To improve himself in oratory he went to Rhodes (B.C. 76) to study under Apollonius Molo; but in his voyage thither he was captured by pirates near Miletus, and was detained by them in the island Pharmacusa until he could obtain fifty talents from the neighboring cities. As soon as he was released he manned some Milesian vessels, overpowered the pirates, and crucified them, a punishment with

which he had frequently threatened them while he was their prisoner. He returned to Rome in B.C. 74.

During the fourteen years from B.C. 74 to B.C. 60 Cæsar rose in succession to the various grades of public office which were always sought by the ambitious Roman. He was elected pontiff in B.C. 74; about the same time he was elected military tribune; in B.C. 68 he was quæstor in Spain under Antistius Vetus; in B.C. 67 he was one of the superintendents of the Appian Way; in B.C. 65 he was elected curule ædile; in B.C. 63, pontifex maximus or chief priest of the state religion; in B.C. 62 he was prætor, and in the following year he was sent as governor to Spain. During these years he used every means to increase his popularity. His affable manners and unstinted liberality won the hearts of the people. He soon spent his private fortune, and then borrowed large sums from the usurers, who looked for reimbursement from the spoils of his future career. It was customary for the ædiles to seek the favor of the people by spending large sums of money upon the public games and buildings; but the ædileship of Cæsar surpassed in magnificence everything that had preceded it. He also caused the statues of Marius and the representations of his victories in the Jugurthine and Cimbrian wars, which Sulla had destroyed, to be privately restored and placed at night in the Capitol. At the sight of these mementos of their great leader the people were wild with excitement and greeted Cæsar with shouts of applause. When he was proprætor or governor of Spain he was for the first time at the head of a regular army, and at once gave proof of his rare ability as a commander by subduing the mountainous tribes of Lusitania, for which the senate decreed him a public thanksgiving. He returned to Rome in B.C. 60.

While Cæsar was thus striding onward to place and power, Pompey was at the summit of his renown. His rare success against the pirates of the Mediterranean and in the war against Mithridates had made him the most distinguished man in Rome. But his great power had made him enemies among the aristocracy, his own party, and they strongly opposed some of his measures. Cæsar saw his opportunity. He knew the strength and the weakness of Pompey. He therefore gave ready sup-

port to all Pompey's measures, and suggested that they should support one another; and M. Crassus, who by reason of his immense wealth and connections had great influence at Rome, was easily persuaded to join them. This union has been called the first triumvirate; it was, however, only a private agreement among the three most powerful men at Rome to divide all power among them. About the same time Pompey married Cæsar's daughter Julia.

Cæsar easily became consul in B.C. 59. His first act was to cause the proceedings of the senate to be published daily. His next was the passage of an agrarian law, by which 20,000 citizens received allotments of land in Campania; among them were many of the veterans of Pompey, who was now enabled to fulfil his promise made to them in Asia.

After his year of office a Roman consul was usually assigned to the government (as proconsul) of one of the provinces. In accordance with this custom, Cæsar easily obtained the government of Cisalpine Gaul, Transalpine Gaul, and Illyricum for five years, with a military force of four legions. The time of his government was afterwards extended to ten years. In Gaul Cæsar doubtless saw an opportunity for a brilliant career and the display of those military talents which he felt that he possessed; and the complete subjugation of that nation, which had once taken and sacked Rome, was an object as worthy of his ambition as it would be pleasing to his countrymen.

Cæsar was occupied nine years in the subjugation of Gaul. In that time he so completely subdued the various nations of Transalpine Gaul that they were never again able to offer any effectual resistance to the Romans. He twice crossed the Rhine and twice landed in Britain. The rapidity of his movements, the consummate skill of his arrangements, the inspiring influence of his words and presence, and his invariable success against even overwhelming numbers, secured him an undisputed rank among the world's greatest commanders.

Having thus completed the conquest of Gaul, Cæsar returned to Cisalpine Gaul in B.C. 51. Pompey and the senate now feared that he would be elected consul while still at the head of his army, which consisted of ten legions, and they determined

body. It was furnished by the allies and subject states of Rome, but was commanded by Roman officers (**praefectī ĕquĭtum, dĕcŭriōnēs**). Cæsar's cavalry in Gaul numbered about 4000, and was mainly auxiliary to the movements of the infantry. The cavalry was divided into regiments or **ālae**; the alae, into squadrons or **turmae**; and the turmae, into **dĕcŭriae**. An ala contained 300 or 400 men.

THE AUXILIARY INFANTRY.

The auxiliary infantry was either furnished by the allied and subject states, or consisted of foreign mercenaries possessing skill in the use of some national weapon, such as the Balearic slingers and the Cretan archers. The auxiliaries were for the most part light-armed troops; they were used as skirmishers and wherever rapid movements were necessary. They were generally posted on the wings of the army, and were hence often called **ālāriī**.

THE ARTILLERY.

Military engines corresponding to modern artillery were used in siege operations. These were the battering-ram (**ăriēs**)



FIGURE 2.

(Fig. 2), the **scorpio**, the **cătăpulta**, and the **ballista**. Cæsar seems to include the latter three in the general term **tormentum**,

or hurling-engine. The scorpio and catapult were used to throw large arrows, and the ballista to hurl stones. The range of the most powerful of these engines was nearly a quarter of a mile. But "neither from the descriptions of authors nor from the figures on the column of Trajan are we able to form any exact idea of the construction of these engines." (*Dict. Antiqq.*)

THE STANDARDS.

The standard of the legion was an eagle of bronze or silver on a wooden staff. (Fig. 3.) The centurion of the first century of the first maniple of the first cohort of the legion (**primipilus**) was the guardian of the eagle. He who carried it was called **ăquilifer**. The standard of the cohort was called **signum**, and the bearer of it **signifer**. The **signum** was generally the figure of an animal (*e.g.* a sheep) on a staff. The **vexillum** was the standard of the cavalry and light-armed troops. **Vexillum** was also the name of the flag or banner of the commanding general, and when displayed on or near his tent it was the signal for march or battle.

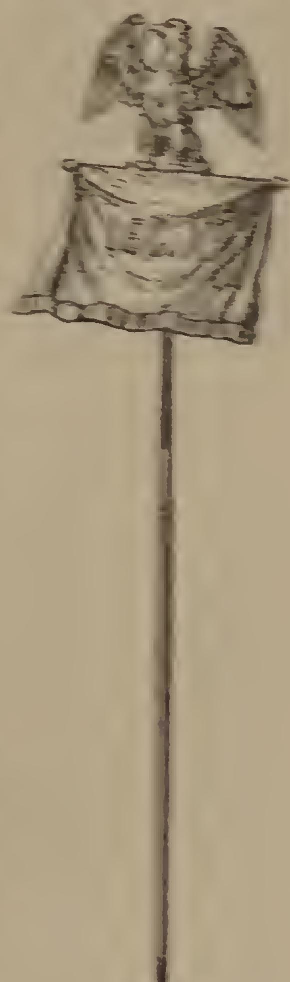


FIGURE 3.

THE LEGIONARY.

The military age was from 17 to 46. All the legionaries were armed and equipped in the same manner. Next to the body was worn a thick woollen shirt (**tūnica**) with short sleeves. The defensive armor consisted of helmet (**cassis**, **gălea**) (Fig. 4), cuirass or coat of mail (**lōrica**), shield (**scūtum**), and greaves (**ocreae**). The helmet was either of metal (**cassis**) or leather bound with metal (**gălea**). The coat of mail was of leather strength-

ened by flexible bands of metal. The shield (Fig. 5) was rectangular in shape, but slightly curved, and about four feet long and two feet wide. The wooden frame was covered with leather or with iron plates. In the centre was a metallic boss (**umbo**). Greaves of bronze protected the leg below the knee, though usually but one was worn, and that on the right leg, as the shield afforded protection to the left.



FIGURE 4.



FIGURE 5.

The offensive weapons were the javelin and sword. The javelin (**pīlum**) (Fig. 6) was about six and a half feet long. It consisted of a wooden shaft about four feet long, into which was inserted the shank of a pointed javelin-head from two to three feet long. The shank was comparatively thin and soft, and apt to bend on meeting any considerable resistance. The sword (**glădius, glădius Hispānĭcus**) (Fig. 7) was two-edged and pointed, and had a rather wide blade about two feet long. In a charge the legionary first hurled his **pīlum** at the enemy, and, if the effect of the javelins was not sufficiently decisive, he followed it up with the sword.

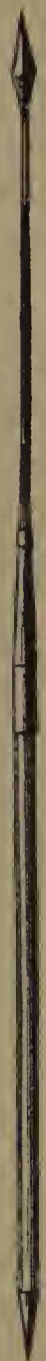


FIGURE 6.

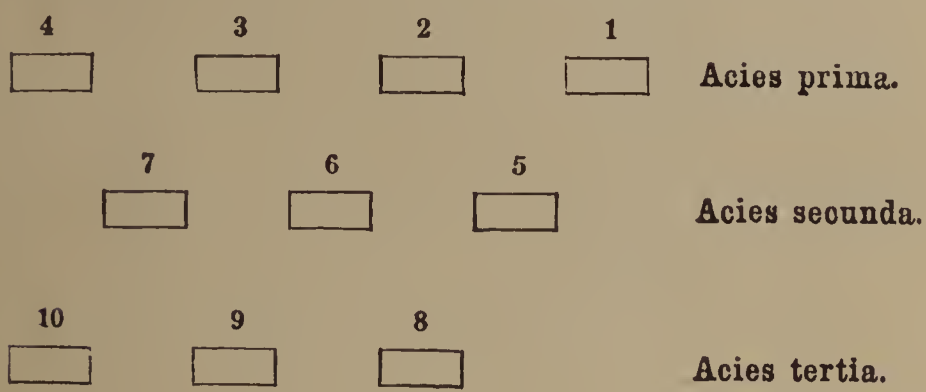


FIGURE 7.

In addition to his armor and weapons, the legionary, when in marching order, usually carried provisions for one, two, or even three weeks, and three or four stakes used in forming the palisade of the camp, besides various tools.

LINE OF BATTLE.

When in order of battle the legion was usually arranged in three lines (**ăciēs triplex**). Each line may have been several ranks deep. Of the ten cohorts, four were placed in the front line, three in the second and opposite the vacant spaces in the first, and three in the third, opposite the vacant spaces in the second and at a somewhat greater distance than that which separated the first and second lines, as in the following diagram.



In case the first line was hard pressed, it could either fall back and align with the second, or the second could be advanced to the vacant spaces in the first, or both movements could be executed simultaneously. The third line was kept as a reserve and to check any sudden or concealed movement of the enemy, as an attack upon the flank or rear. As previously remarked, the light-armed troops (**auxilia**) were stationed on the wings. At the proper moment the cavalry charged, and endeavored to complete the defeat of the enemy.

Sometimes, and for special reasons, the line was twofold (**acies duplex**). Five cohorts were then placed in each line.

CASTRA ROMANA.

A Roman army never halted, even for a single night, without forming a regular intrenchment or **castra**, capable of receiving within it the whole body of fighting men with their beasts of burden and baggage. The camp was laid out, arranged, and fortified according to a fixed plan, so that each

battalion, each company, and each individual had a place assigned, to which each could at once repair without question or delay. There were two kinds of camp: the summer camp (**castra aestīva**), made at the end of each day's march, and

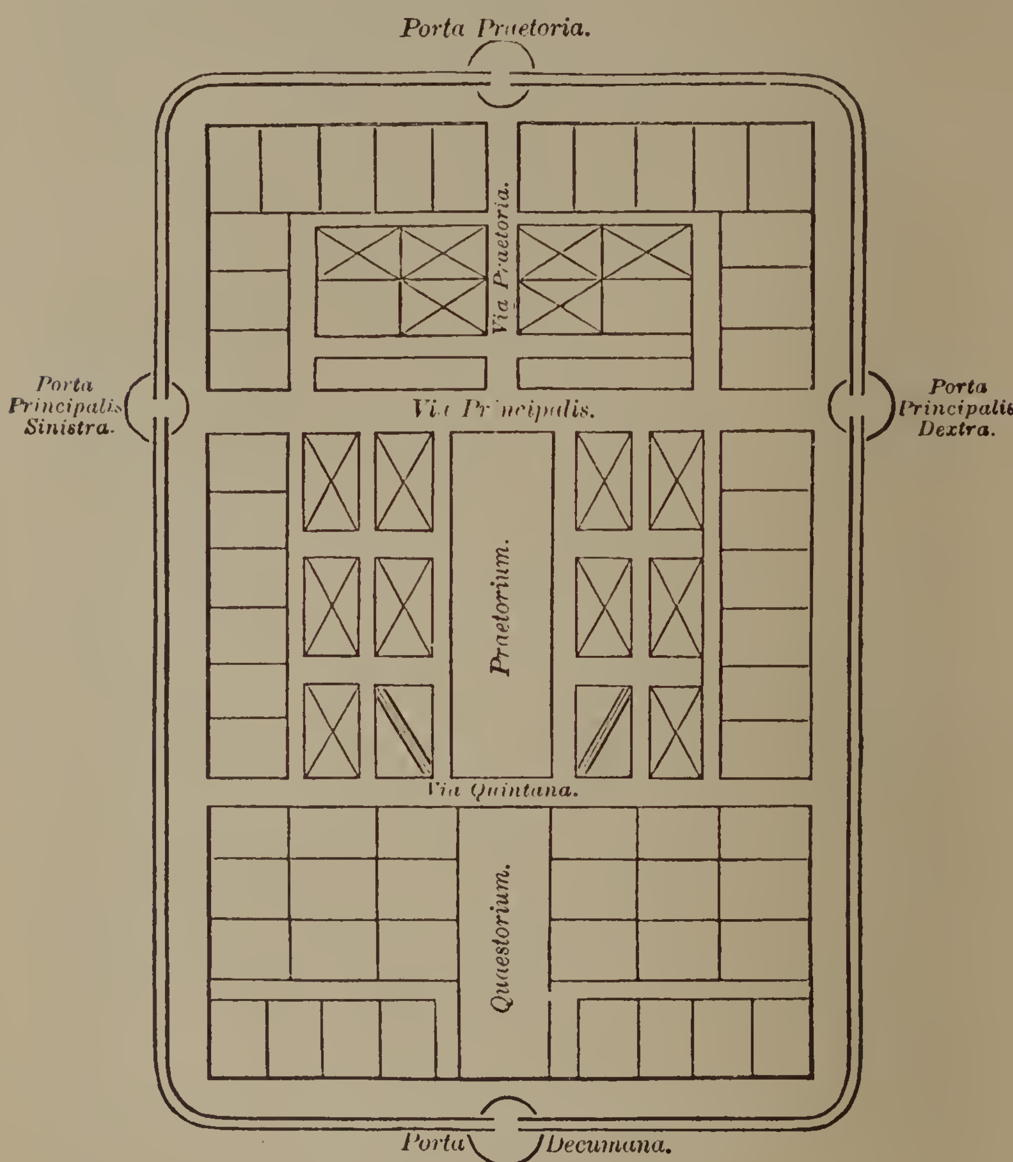


FIGURE 8.—CASTRA ROMANA.

the winter camp (**castra hīberna**, or simply **hīberna**), or winter quarters. A site was selected convenient for wood, water, and forage. The form was either that of a square or rectangle with the corners rounded. Its size varied with that of the army. Around the quadrangle of the camp a ditch (**fossa**)

was dug, the earth from which was thrown inward and was formed, by means of stones, fascines, and turf, into a mound (**agger**), on the summit of which a strong palisade of wooden stakes (**vallī, sŭdēs**) was fixed, forming the rampart. The form and arrangement of the summer camp is shown in the diagram. (Fig. 8.)

The usual width of the ditch was about nine feet, and the depth seven feet. The top of the agger or rampart behind the palisade was wide enough to allow the free movement of a soldier in hurling the javelin, and the palisade or breastwork (**lōrīca**), four or five feet in height, easily enabled him to see over it.

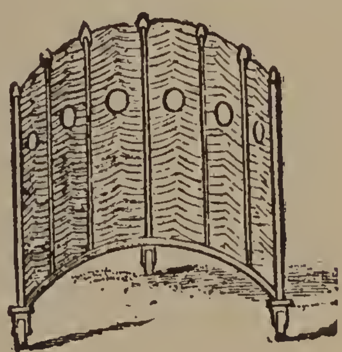


FIGURE 9.

The front of the camp was the side toward the enemy or the next day's march. Two wide streets, the **via princĭpālis** and the **via quintāna**, divided the camp into three nearly equal spaces. The former was one hundred feet wide, the latter fifty. There were two principal gates: one in the middle of the front wall, the **porta praetōria**, the other in the middle of the rear wall, the **porta dĕcŭmāna**. From the **porta praetoria** to the **via princĭpālis** ran a wide street, called **via praetōria**. The **praetōrium**, a large space in the middle of the camp, was the headquarters of the army. In the **quaestōrium** the quaestor and his staff had their quarters, and here he kept the supplies. Between the rampart and the tents, and extending entirely around the camp, was a clear space (**intervallum**) about two hundred feet wide, which facilitated ingress and egress.

The labor of fortifying the camp was really enormous. Yet the orderly and systematic plan of the Romans, the precision of their discipline, and their skilful division of labor in the work made the task a comparatively easy one. It has been computed that the entire work could be completed in less than five hours after the site was selected.


Map of
GAUL
in the time of Julius Caesar.
Scale of Miles.
10 20 40 60 80 100
4 Lon. West 2
0 Longitude East from Greenwich.
6
8
10
54
52
50
Mona I.
Ancalites
Cenimagni
BRITANNIA
Trinobantes
Bibroci
Tamesis Fl.
Cantium
OCEANUS
Batavi
Usipetes
Tencteri
Sigambri
Vacalus Fl.
Menapii
Eburones
Ubii
Rhenus Fl.
Suevi
Morini
Portus Itius
Atrebates
Scaldis Fl.
Sabis Fl.
Mosa Fl.
Aduatuca
Aduatuci
Pons Caesaris
Moenus Fl.
Ambiani
Veromandui
Arduenna Silva
Treviri
Mosella Fl.
Vangiones
Nemetes
Caleti
Samarobriva
BELGAE
Bratuspantium
Bibrax
Axona Fl.
Bellovaci
Suessiones
Noviodunum
Durocortorum
Remi
Mediomatrici
Matrona Fl.
Veliocasses
Lexovii
Unelli
Osismi
CIVITATES
Sequana
Lutetia
Meldi
Parisii


OCEANUS
NOSTRUM MARE
CELTAE
AQUITANI
PROVINCIA
PYRENAEI MONTES
HISPANIA
Redones
Andes
Nannetes
Liger Fl.
Turones
Pictones
Limonum
Bituriges
Avaricum
Genabum
Vellaunodunum
Lingones
Alesia
Mandubii
Haedui
Noviodunum
Bibracte
Boii
Decetia
Elaver Fl.
Cabillonum
Matisco
Sequani
Vesontio
Dubis Fl.
Rauraci
Tulingi
Helvetii
Lemannus
Veragri
Seduni
Octodurus
Nantuates
Geneva
Ambarri
Segusiavi
Allobroges
Vienna
Isara Fl.
Ceutrones
Alpes
Graioceli
Ocelum
Caturiges
Vocontii
Cavari
Rhodanus Fl.
Helvii
Vellavii
Gabali
Gergovia
Arverni
Lemovices
Santones
Petrocorii
Nitiobriges
Cadurci
Ruteni
Sontiates
Elusates
Tarbelli
Ausci
Tolosa
Tectosages
Cevenna Mons
Arecomici
Volcae
Massilia
Cantabri
46
44
2
4
6

tentriōnēs. Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae fīnibus oriuntur, pertinent ad īnferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēnī, spectant in septentriōnem et orientem sōlem. Aquītānia ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pȳrēnaeōs montīs et eam partem Ōceanī quae est ad Hispāniam pertinet; spectat inter occāsum sōlis et septentriōnēs.

The Conspiracy of Orgetorix.

2. Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit et dītissimus Orgetorīx. Is, M. Messālā et M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus, rēgnī cupiditāte inductus coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit, et cīvitātī persuāsit ut dē fīnibus suīs cum omnibus cōpiīs exīrent: perfacile esse, cum virtūte omnibus praestārent, tōtīus Galliae imperiō potīrī.

Id hōc facilius eīs persuāsit, quod undique locī nātūrā Helvētiī continentur: ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs dīvidit; alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiīs dīvidit.

Hīs rēbus fīēbat ut et minus lātē vagārentur et minus facile fīnitimīs bellum īnferre possent; quā ex parte hominēs bellandī cupidī māgnō dolōre adficiēbantur. Prō multitūdine autem hominum et prō glōriā bellī atque fortitūdinis, angustōs sē fīnīs habēre arbitrābantur, quī in longitūdinem mīlia passuum CCXL, in lātitūdinem CLXXX patēbant.

The Preparations of the Helvetii.

3. Hīs rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorīgis permōtī cōnstituērunt ea quae ad proficīscendum per-

tinērent comparāre, iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam māximum numerum coëmere, sēmentīs quam māximās facere, ut in itinere cōpia frūmentī suppeteret, cum proximīs cīvitātibus pācem et amīcitiam cōnfīrmāre. Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās biennium sibi satis esse dūxērunt; in tertium annum profectiōnem lēge cōnfīrmant.

Orgetorix's Movements and Arguments.

Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās Orgetorīx dēligitur. Is sibi lēgātiōnem ad cīvitātīs suscēpit. In eō itinere persuādet Casticō, Catamantāloedis fīliō, Sēquanō, cūius pater rēgnum in Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat et ā senātū populī Rōmānī amīcus appellātus erat, ut rēgnum in cīvitāte suā occupāret, quod pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumnorīgī Haeduō, frātrī Dīviciācī, quī eō tempore prīncipātum in cīvitāte obtinēbat āc māximē plēbī acceptus erat, ut idem cōnārētur persuādet, eīque fīliam suam in mātrimōnium dat.

Perfacile factū esse illīs probat cōnāta perficere, proptereā quod ipse suae cīvitātis imperium obtentūrus esset: nōn esse dubium quīn tōtīus Galliae plūrimum Helvētiī possent; sē suīs cōpiīs suōque exercitū illīs rēgna conciliātūrum cōnfīrmat. Hāc ōrātiōne adductī inter sē fidem et iūsiūrandum dant, et rēgnō occupātō per trīs potentissimōs āc fīrmissimōs populōs tōtīus Galliae sēsē potīrī posse spērant.

His Trial, Escape, and Death.

4. Ea rēs est Helvētiīs per indicium ēnūntiāta. Mōribus suīs Orgetorīgem ex vinculīs causam dīcere coēgērunt. Damnātum poenam sequī oportēbat ut īgnī cremārētur.

Diē cōnstitūtā causae dictiōnis Orgetorīx ad iūdicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum mīlia decem, undique coēgit, et omnīs clientīs obaerātōsque suōs, quōrum māgnum numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit; per eōs nē causam dīceret sē ēripuit.

Cum cīvitās ob eam rem incitāta armīs iūs suum exsequī cōnārētur, multitūdinemque hominum ex agrīs magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorīx mortuus est; neque abest suspīciō, ut Helvētiī arbitrantur, quīn ipse sibi mortem cōnscīverit.

The Helvetii continue their Preparations.

5. Post ēius mortem nihilō minus Helvētiī id quod cōnstituerant facere cōnantur, ut ē fīnibus suīs exeant. Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vīcōs ad quadringentōs, reliqua prīvāta aedificia incendunt; frūmentum omne, praeter quod sēcum portātūrī erant, combūrunt, ut — domum reditiōnis spē sublātā — parātiōrēs ad omnia perīcula subeunda essent; trium mēnsium molita cibāria sibi quemque domō efferre iubent.

Persuādent Rauracīs et Tulingīs et Latobrīgīs fīnitimīs utī eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō, oppidīs suīs vīcīsque exūstīs, ūnā cum eīs proficīscantur; Bōiōsque, quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsierant Nōrēiamque oppūgnārant, receptōs ad sē sociōs sibi adscīscunt.

Two Routes out of the Helvetian Territory.

6. Erant omnīnō itinera duo quibus itineribus domō exīre possent: ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et diffi-

cile, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vix quā singulī carrī dūcerentur; mōns autem altissimus impendēbat, ut facile perpaucī prohibēre possent: alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius atque expedītius, propterea quod inter fīnīs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, quī nūper pācātī erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque nōn nūllīs locīs vadō trānsītur. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvētiōrum fīnibus Genāva.

They decide to go through the Roman Province.

Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Allobrogibus sēsē vel persuāsūrōs (quod nōndum bonō animō in populum Rōmānum vidērentur) exīstimābant, vel vī coāctūrōs ut per suōs fīnīs eōs īre paterentur. Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātīs diem dīcunt quā diē ad rīpam Rhodanī omnēs conveniant. Is diēs erat a. d. v. Kal. Apr., L. Pīsōne A. Gabīniō cōnsulibus.

Cæsar hastens to Geneva, and destroys the Bridge.

7. Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī, mātūrat ab urbe proficīscī, et quam māximīs potest itineribus in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit et ad Genāvam pervenit. Prōvinciae tōtī quam māximum potest mīlitum numerum imperat (erat omnīnō in Galliā ulteriōre legiō ūna), pontem quī erat ad Genāvam iubet rescindī.

Ubi dē ēius adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt nōbilissimōs cīvitātis, cūius lēgātiōnis Namměius et Verudoctius prīncipem locum obtinēbant, quī dīcerent 'sibi esse in animō sine ūllō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, propterea quod

aliud iter habērent nūllum; rogāre ut ēius voluntāte id sibi facere liceat.'

He parleys with them to gain Time.

Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat L. Cassium cōnsulem occīsum exercitumque ēius ab Helvētiīs pulsum et sub iugum missum, concēdendum nōn putābat; neque hominēs inimīcō animō, datā facultāte per prōvinciam itineris faciundī, temperātūrōs ab iniūriā et maleficiō exīstimābat. Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere posset dum mīlitēs quōs imperāverat convenīrent, lēgātīs respondit diem sē ad dēlīberandum sūmptūrum; sī quid vellent, ad Id. Apr. reverterentur.

He constructs Fortifications to bar their Passage.

8. Intereā eā legiōne quam sēcum habēbat mīlitibusque quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū Lemannō, quī in flūmen Rhodanum īnfluit, ad montem Iūram, quī fīnīs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiīs dīvidit, mīlia passuum decem novem mūrum in altitūdinem pedum sēdecim fossamque perdūcit. Eō opere perfectō praesidia dispōnit, castella commūnit, quō facilius, sī sē invītō trānsīre cōnārentur, prohibēre posset.

Ubi ea diēs quam cōnstituerat cum lēgātīs vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat sē mōre et exemplō populī Rōmānī posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare; et, sī vim facere cōnentur, prohibitūrum ostendit. Helvētiī, eā spē dēiectī, nāvibus iūnctīs ratibusque complūribus factīs, aliī vadīs Rhodanī, quā minima altitūdō flūminis erat, nōn numquam interdiū, saepius noctū, sī perrumpere possent cōnātī, operis mūnītiōne et mīlitum concursū et tēlīs repulsī, hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt.

The Helvetii, through the Influence of Dumnorix, obtain Permission to pass through the Sequanian Territory.

9. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā Sēquanīs invītīs propter angustiās īre nōn poterant. Hīs cum suā sponte persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem Haeduum mittunt, ut eō dēprecātōre ā Sēquanīs impetrārent. Dumnorīx grātiā et largitiōne apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat et Helvētiīs erat amīcus, quod ex eā cīvitāte Orgetorīgis fīliam in mātrimōnium dūxerat; et cupiditāte rēgnī adductus novīs rēbus studēbat et quam plūrimās cīvitātīs suō beneficiō habēre obstrictās volēbat. Itaque rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs impetrat ut per fīnīs suōs Helvētiōs īre patiantur, obsidēsque utī inter sēsē dent perficit: Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant; Helvētiī, ut sine maleficiō et iniūriā trānseant.

Cæsar opposes this Movement also,

10. Caesarī renūntiātur Helvētiīs esse in animō per agrum Sēquanōrum et Haeduōrum iter in Santonum fīnīs facere, quī nōn longē ā Tolōsātium fīnibus absunt, quae cīvitās est in Prōvinciā. Id sī fieret, intellegēbat māgnō cum perīculō prōvinciae futūrum ut hominēs bellicōsōs, populī Rōmānī inimīcōs, locīs patentibus māximēque frūmentāriīs fīnitimōs habēret.

and secures More Troops.

Ob eās causās eī mūnītiōnī quam fēcerat T. Labiēnum lēgātum praeficit; ipse in Ītaliam māgnīs itineribus contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōnscrībit, et trīs quae circum Aquilēiam hiemābant ex hībernīs ēdūcit, et, quā proximum iter in ulteriōrem Galliam per Alpīs erat, cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus īre contendit.

Ibi Ceutrones et Grāiocelī et Caturīges locīs superiōribus occupātīs itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. Complūribus hīs proeliīs pulsīs, ab Ocelō, quod est citeriōris prōvinciae extrēmum, in fīnīs Vocontiōrum ulteriōris prōvinciae diē septimō pervenit; inde in Allobrogum fīnīs, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum prīmī.

The Helvetii commit Depredations on their March. The Haedui and Other Tribes ask for Cæsar's Help against them.

11. Helvētiī iam per angustiās et fīnīs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant, et in Haeduōrum fīnīs pervēnerant eōrumque agrōs populābantur. Haeduī, cum sē suaque ab eīs dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum auxilium: 'Ita sē omnī tempore dē populō Rōmānō meritōs esse ut paene in cōnspectū exercitūs nostrī agrī vastārī, līberī [eōrum] in servitūtem abdūcī, oppida expūgnārī nōn dēbuerint.' Eōdem tempore Haeduī Ambarrī, necessāriī et cōnsanguineī Haeduōrum, Caesarem certiōrem faciunt sēsē dēpopulātīs agrīs nōn facile ab oppidīs vim hostium prohibēre. Item Allobroges, quī trāns Rhodanum vīcōs possessiōnēsque habēbant, fugā sē ad Caesarem recipiunt et dēmōnstrant sibi praeter agrī sōlum nihil esse reliquī. Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar nōn exspectandum sibi statuit dum, omnibus fortūnīs sociōrum cōnsūmptīs, in Santonōs Helvētiī pervenīrent.

Cæsar falls upon the Rear of the Helvetii.

12. Flūmen est Arar, quod per fīnīs Haeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum īnfluit, incrēdibilī lēnitāte ita ut oculīs in utram partem fluat iūdicārī nōn possit.

Id Helvētiī ratibus āc lintribus iūnctīs trānsībant. Ubi per explōrātōrēs Caesar certior factus est trīs iam partīs cōpiārum Helvētiōs id flūmen trādūxisse, quartam ferē partem citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam esse, dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castrīs profectus, ad eam partem pervēnit quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat.

Eōs impedītōs et inopīnantīs adgressus māgnam partem eōrum concīdit; reliquī sēsē fugae mandārunt atque in proximās silvās abdidērunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurīnus; nam omnis cīvitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs dīvīsa est. Hīc pāgus ūnus, cum domō exīsset, patrum nostrōrum memoriā L. Cassium cōnsulem interfēcerat et ēius exercitum sub iugum mīserat.

Ita sīve cāsū sīve cōnsiliō deōrum immortālium, quae pars cīvitātis Helvētiae īnsīgnem calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea prīnceps poenās persolvit. Quā in rē Caesar nōn sōlum pūblicās sed etiam prīvātās iniūriās ultus est; quod ēius socerī L. Pīsōnis avum, L. Pīsōnem lēgātum, Tigurīnī eōdem proeliō quō Cassium interfēcerant.

Cæsar crosses the Saône and confers with a Helvetian Embassy.

13. Hōc proeliō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut cōnsequī posset, pontem in Ararī faciendum cūrat atque ita exercitum trādūcit.

Helvētiī repentīnō ēius adventū commōtī, cum id quod ipsī diēbus xx aegerrimē cōnfēcerant, ut flūmen trānsīrent, illum ūnō diē fēcisse intellegerent, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt; cūius lēgātiōnis Dīvicō prīnceps fuit, quī bellō Cassiānō dux Helvētiōrum fuerat.

Is ita cum Caesare ēgit: ‘Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faceret, in eam partem itūrōs

atque ibi futūrōs Helvētiōs ubi eōs Caesar cōnstituisset atque esse voluisset; sīn bellō persequī persevērāret, reminīscerētur et veteris incommodī populī Rōmānī et prīstinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod imprōvīsō ūnum pāgum adortus esset, cum eī quī flūmen trānsīssent suīs auxilium ferre nōn possent, nē ob eam rem aut suae māgnopere virtūtī tribueret aut ipsōs dēspiceret; sē ita ā patribus māiōribusque suīs didicisse ut magis virtūte contenderent quam dolō aut īnsidiīs nīterentur. Quā rē nē committeret ut is locus ubi cōnstitissent ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen caperet aut memoriam prōderet.'

Cæsar's Reply. His Terms are disdained.

14. Hīs Caesar ita respondit: 'Eō sibi minus dubitātiōnis darī quod eās rēs quās lēgātī Helvētiī commemorāssent memoriā tenēret, atque eō gravius ferre, quō minus meritō populī Rōmānī accidissent; quī sī alicūius iniūriae sibi cōnscius fuisset, nōn fuisse difficile cavēre; sed eō dēceptum, quod neque commissum ā sē intellegeret quā rē timēret, neque sine causā timendum putāret. Quod sī veteris contumēliae oblīvīscī vellet, num etiam recentium iniūriārum, quod eō invītō iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāssent, quod Haeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogas vexāssent, memoriam dēpōnere posse? Quod suā victōriā tam īnsolenter glōriārentur, quodque tam diū sē impūne iniūriās tulisse admīrārentur, eōdem pertinēre. Cōnsuēsse enim deōs immortālīs, quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcīscī velint, hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem concēdere.

Cum ea ita sint, tamen sī obsidēs ab eīs sibi dentur, utī ea quae polliceantur factūrōs intellegat, et sī Haeduīs dē iniūriīs quās ipsīs sociīsque eōrum intulerint, item sī Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sēsē cum eīs pācem esse factūrum.' Dīvicō respondit: 'Ita Helvētiōs ā māiōribus suīs īnstitūtōs esse utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōnsuērint; ēius reī populum Rōmānum esse testem.' Hōc respōnsō datō discessit.

Cæsar follows the Helvetii.

15. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Caesar, equitātumque omnem, ad numerum quattuor mīlium, quem ex omnī prōvinciā et Haeduīs atque eōrum sociīs coāctum habēbat, praemittit quī videant quās in partīs hostēs iter faciant. Quī cupidius novissimum agmen īnsecūtī aliēnō locō cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium committunt; et paucī dē nostrīs cadunt.

Quō proeliō sublātī Helvētiī, quod quīngentīs equitibus tantam multitūdinem equitum prōpulerant, audācius subsistere nōn numquam et novissimō agmine proeliō nostrōs lacessere coepērunt. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat, āc satis habēbat in praesentia hostem rapīnīs [pābulātiōnibus] populātiōnibusque prohibēre. Ita diēs circiter quīndecim iter fēcērunt utī inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum prīmum nōn amplius quīnīs aut sēnīs mīlibus passuum interesset.

Cæsar censures the Hædui for failing to furnish Grain.

16. Interim cotīdiē Caesar Haeduōs frūmentum quod essent pūblicē pollicitī flāgitāre. Nam propter

frīgora, quod Gallia sub septentriōnibus (ut ante dictum est) posita est, nōn modo frūmenta in agrīs mātūra nōn erant, sed nē pābulī quidem satis māgna cōpia suppetēbat; eō autem frūmentō quod flūmine Ararī nāvibus subvēxerat propterea minus ūtī poterat, quod iter ab Ararī Helvētiī āverterant, ā quibus discēdere nōlēbat. Diem ex diē dūcere Haeduī; cōnferrī, comportārī, adesse dīcere.

Ubi sē diūtius dūcī intellēxit et diem īnstāre quō diē frūmentum mīlitibus metīrī oportēret, convocātīs eōrum prīncipibus, quōrum māgnam cōpiam in castrīs habēbat, — in hīs Dīviciācō et Liscō, quī summō magistrātuī praeerat quem vergobretum appellant Haeduī, quī creātur annuus et vītae necisque in suōs habet potestātem, — graviter eōs accūsat, quod, cum neque emī neque ex agrīs sūmī posset, tam necessāriō tempore, tam propinquīs hostibus, ab eīs nōn sublevētur; praesertim cum māgnā ex parte eōrum precibus adductus bellum suscēperit, multō etiam gravius quod sit dēstitūtus queritur.

Liscus explains the Delay: a Party opposed to the Romans prevents the Supply.

17. Tum dēmum Liscus ōrātiōne Caesaris adductus quod anteā tacuerat prōpōnit: ‘Esse nōn nūllōs quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plūrimum valeat, quī prīvātim plūs possint quam ipsī magistrātūs. Hōs sēditiōsā atque improbā ōrātiōne multitūdinem dēterrēre nē frūmentum cōnferant quod dēbeant: praestāre, sī iam prīncipātum Galliae obtinēre nōn possint, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia perferre; neque dubitāre quīn, sī Helvētiōs superāverint Rōmānī, ūnā

cum reliquā Galliā Haeduīs lībertātem sint ēreptūrī. Ab eīsdem nostra cōnsilia quaeque in castrīs gerantur hostibus ēnūntiāri; hōs ā sē coërcēri nōn posse. Quīn etiam, quod necessāriō rem coāctus Caesarī ēnūntiārit, intellegere sēsē quantō id cum perīculō fēcerit, et ob eam causam quam diū potuerit tacuisse.'

Liscus privately discloses the Ambition and Treachery of Dumnorix, who favors the Helvetii.

18. Caesar hāc ōrātiōne Liscī Dumnorīgem, Dīviciācī frātrem, dēsīgnārī sentiēbat; sed, quod plūribus praesentibus eās rēs iactārī nōlēbat, celeriter concilium dīmittit, Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex sōlō ea quae in conventū dīxerat. Dīcit līberius atque audācius. Eadem sēcrētō ab aliīs quaerit; reperit esse vēra: 'Ipsum esse Dumnorīgem, summā audāciā, māgnā apud plēbem propter līberālitātem grātiā, cupidum rērum novārum. Complūrīs annōs portōria reliquaque omnia Haeduōrum vectīgālia parvō pretiō redēmpta habēre, propterea quod illō licente contrā licērī audeat nēmō. Hīs rēbus et suam rem familiārem auxisse et facultātīs ad largiendum māgnās comparāsse; māgnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū semper alere et circum sē habēre, neque sōlum domī sed etiam apud fīnitimās cīvitātīs largiter posse; atque hūius potentiae causā mātrem in Biturīgibus hominī illīc nōbilissimō āc potentissimō conlocāsse, ipsum ex Helvētiīs uxōrem habēre, sorōrem ex mātre et propinquās suās nūptum in aliās cīvitātīs conlocāsse. Favēre et cupere Helvētiīs propter eam adfīnitātem, ōdisse etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia ēius dēminūta et Dīviciācus frāter in antīquum locum grātiae

atque honōris sit restitūtus. Sī quid accidat Rōmānīs, summam in spem per Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendī venīre; imperiō populī Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā quam habeat grātiā, dēspērāre.' Reperiēbat etiam in quaerendō Caesar, quod proelium equestre adversum paucīs ante diēbus esset factum, initium [ēius] fugae factum ā Dumnorīge atque ēius equitibus, — nam equitātuī, quem auxiliō Caesarī Haeduī mīserant, Dumnorīx praeerat; eōrum fugā reliquum esse equitātum perterritum.

Cæsar decides to punish Dumnorix.

19. Quibus rēbus cōgnitīs, cum ad hās suspīciōnēs certissimae rēs accēderent, — quod per fīnīs Sēquanōrum Helvētiōs trādūxisset, quod obsidēs inter eōs dandōs cūrāsset, quod ea omnia nōn modo iniūssū suō et cīvitātis sed etiam īnscientibus ipsīs fēcisset, quod ā magistrātū Haeduōrum accūsārētur, — satis esse causae arbitrābātur quā rē in ēum aut ipse animadverteret aut cīvitātem animadvertere iubēret.

He does not wish to hurt the Feelings of Diviciacus.

Hīs omnibus rēbus ūnum repūgnābat, quod Dīviciācī frātris summum in populum Rōmānum studium, summam in sē voluntātem, ēgregiam fidem, iūstitiam, temperantiam cōgnōverat: nam nē ēius suppliciō Dīviciācī animum offenderet verēbātur. Itaque prius quam quicquam cōnārētur, Dīviciācum ad sē vocārī iubet, et cotīdiānīs interpretibus remōtīs per C. Valerium Procillum, prīncipem Galliae prōvinciae, familiārem suum, cui summam omnium rērum fidem habēbat, cum eō conloquitur; simul commonefacit quae

ipsō praesente in conciliō [Gallōrum] dē Dumnorīge sint dicta; et ostendit quae sēparātim quisque dē eō apud sē dīxerit; petit atque hortātur ut sine ēius offēnsiōne animī vel ipse de eō, causā cōgnitā, statuat vel cīvitātem statuere iubeat.

At the Request of Diviciacus Cæsar spares Dumnorix.

20. Dīviciācus, multīs cum lacrimīs Caesarem complexus, obsecrāre coepit nē quid gravius in frātrem statueret: 'Scīre sē illa esse vēra, nec quemquam ex eō plūs quam sē dolōris capere, propterea quod, cum ipse grātiā plūrimum domī atque in reliquā Galliā, ille minimum propter adulēscentiam posset, per sē crēvisset; quibus opibus āc nervīs nōn sōlum ad minuendam grātiam sed paene ad perniciem suam ūterētur; sēsē tamen et amōre frāternō et exīstimātiōne volgī commovērī. Quod sī quid eī ā Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amīcitiae apud eum tenēret, nēminem exīstimātūrum nōn suā voluntāte factum; quā ex rē futūrum utī tōtīus Galliae animī ā sē āverterentur.'

Haec cum plūribus verbīs flēns ā Caesare peteret, Caesar ēius dextram prendit; cōnsōlātus rogat fīnem ōrandī faciat; tantī ēius apud sē grātiam esse ostendit utī et reī pūblicae iniūriam et suum dolōrem ēius voluntātī āc precibus condōnet. Dumnorīgem ad sē vocat, frātrem adhibet; quae in eō reprehendat ostendit; quae ipse intellegat, quae cīvitās querātur, prōpōnit; monet ut in reliquum tempus omnīs suspīciōnēs vītet; praeterita sē Dīviciācō frātrī condōnāre dicit. Dumnorīgī custōdēs pōnit, ut quae agat, quibuscum loquātur, scīre possit.

Cæsar prepares to attack the Helvetii.

21. Eōdem diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus hostīs sub monte cōnsēdisse mīlia passuum ab ipsīus castrīs octō, quālis esset nātūra montis et quālis in circuitū ascēnsus, quī cōgnōscerent mīsit. Renūntiātum est facilem esse. Dē tertiā vigiliā T. Labiēnum, lēgātum prō praetōre, cum duābus legiōnibus et eīs ducibus quī iter cōgnōverant, summum iugum montis ascendere iubet; quid suī cōnsilī sit ostendit. Ipse dē quartā vigiliā eōdem itinere quō hostēs ierant ad eōs contendit, equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit. P. Cōnsidius, quī reī mīlitāris perītissimus habēbātur et in exercitū L. Sullae et posteā in M. Crassī fuerat, cum explōrātōribus praemittitur.

Considius, by a False Report, spoils the Plan.

22. Prīmā lūce, cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenērētur, ipse ab hostium castrīs nōn longius mīlle et quīngentīs passibus abesset, neque, ut posteā ex captīvīs comperit, aut ipsīus adventus aut Labiēnī cōgnitus esset, Cōnsidius equō admissō ad eum accurrit; dīcit montem quem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluerit ab hostibus tenērī; id sē ā Gallicīs armīs atque īnsignibus cōgnōvisse. Caesar suās cōpiās in proximum collem subdūcit, aciem īnstruit. Labiēnus, ut erat eī praeceptum ā Caesare nē proelium committeret, nisi ipsīus cōpiae prope hostium castra vīsae essent, ut undique ūnō tempore in hostīs impetus fieret, monte occupātō nostrōs exspectābat proeliōque abstinēbat. Multō denique diē per explōrātōrēs Caesar cōgnōvit et montem ā suīs tenērī et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et Cōnsidium timōre perterritum quod nōn vīdisset prō vīsō sibi re-

nūntiāsse. Eō diē, quō cōnsuērat intervāllō, hostīs sequitur et mīlia passuum tria ab eōrum castrīs castra pōnit.

Cæsar turns towards Bibracte to get Supplies. The Helvetii follow.

23. Postrīdiē ēius diēī, quod omnīnō bīduum supererat cum exercituī frūmentum metīrī oportēret, et quod ā Bibracte, oppidō Haeduōrum longē māximō et cōpiōsissimō, nōn amplius mīlibus passuum XVIII aberat, reī frūmentāriae prōspiciendum exīstimāvit; *itaque* iter ab Helvētiīs āvertit āc Bibracte īre contendit. Ea rēs per fugitīvōs L. Aemilī, decuriōnis equitum Gallōrum, hostibus nūntiātur. Helvētiī, seu quod timōre perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē exīstimārent, eō magis quod prīdiē superiōribus locīs occupātīs, proelium nōn commīsissent, sīve eō quod rē frūmentāriā interclūdī posse cōnfīderent, commūtātō cōnsiliō atque itinere conversō nostrōs ā novissimō agmine insequī āc lacessere coepērunt.

Both Sides prepare for Battle.

24. Postquam id animum advertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem subdūcit equitātumque quī sustinēret hostium impetum mīsit. Ipse interim in colle mediō triplicem aciem īnstrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārum; sed in summō iugō duās legiōnēs quās in Galliā citeriōre proximē cōnscrīpserat et omnia auxilia conlocārī, [āc tōtum montem hominibus complērī, et intereā] sarcinās in ūnum locum cōnferri, et eum ab hīs quī in superiōre aciē cōnstiterant mūnīrī iussit. Helvētiī cum omnibus suīs carrīs secūtī, im-

pedīmenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsī cōnfertissimā aciē, rēiectō nostrō equitātū, phalange factā, sub prīmam nostram aciem successērunt.

The Battle.

25. Caesar prīmum suō deinde omnium ex cōnspectū remōtīs equīs, ut aequātō omnium perīculō spem fugae tolleret, cohortātus suōs proelium commīsit. Mīlitēs ē locō superiōre pīlīs missīs facile hostium phalangem perfrēgērunt. Eā disiectā, gladiīs dēstrictīs in eōs impetum fēcērunt. Gallīs māgnō ad pūgnam erat impedīmentō quod, plūribus eōrum scūtīs ūnō ictū pīlōrum trānsfīxīs et conligātīs, cum ferrum sē īnflēxisset, neque ēvellere neque sinistrā impedītā satis commodē pūgnāre poterant, multī ut diū iactātō bracchiō praeoptārent scūtum manū ēmittere et nūdō corpore pūgnāre. Tandem volneribus dēfessī et pedem referre et, quod mōns aberat circiter mīlle passuum, eō sē recipere coepērunt. Captō monte et succēdentibus nostrīs, Bōiī et Tulingī, quī hominum mīlibus circiter xv agmen hostium claudēbant et novissimīs praesidiō erant, ex itinere nostrōs *ab* latere apertō adgressī circumvenīre; et id cōnspicātī Helvētiī, quī in montem sēsē recēperant, rūrsus īnstāre et proelium redintegrāre coepērunt. Rōmānī conversa sīgna bipartītō intulērunt: prīma et secunda aciēs, ut victīs āc submōtīs resisteret; tertia, ut venientīs sustinēret.

Crushing Defeat of the Helvetii after Desperate Fighting.

26. Ita ancipitī proeliō diū atque ācriter pūgnātum est. Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, alterī sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēpērunt,

alterī ad impedīmenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō proeliō, cum ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pūgnātum sit, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedīmenta pūgnātum est, propter eā quod prō vāllō carrōs obiēcerant et ē locō superiōre in nostrōs venientīs tēla coniciēbant, et nōn nūllī inter carrōs rēdāsque matarās āc trāgulās subiciēbant nostrōsque volnerābant. Diū cum esset pūgnātum, impedīmentīs castrīsque nostrī potītī sunt. Ibi Orgetorīgis fīlia atque ūnus ē fīliīs captus est. Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum mīlia CXXX superfuērunt, eāque tōtā nocte continenter iērunt: [nūllam partem noctis itinere intermissō] in fīnīs Lingonum diē quartō pervēnērunt, cum et propter volnera mīlitum et propter sepultūram occīsōrum nostrī [trīduum morātī] eōs sequī nōn potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonas litterās nūntiōsque mīsit nē eōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē iuvārent; quī si iūvissent, sē eōdem locō quō Helvētiōs habitūrum. Ipse trīduō intermissō cum omnibus cōpiīs eōs sequī coepit.

They offer to surrender. Six Thousand Escape.

27. Helvētiī omnium rērum inopiā adductī lēgātōs dē dēditiōne ad eum mīsērunt. Quī cum eum in itinere convēnissent sēque ad pedēs prōiēcissent suppliciterque locūtī flentēs pācem petīssent, atque eōs in eō locō quō tum essent suum adventum exspectāre iussisset, pāruērunt. Eō postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs, arma, servōs quī ad eōs perfūgissent poposcit.

Dum ea conquīruntur et cōnferuntur, [nocte intermissā] circiter hominum mīlia VI ēius pāgī quī Verbigenus appellātur, sīve timōre perterritī, nē armīs

trāditīs suppliciō adficerentur, sīve spē salūtis inductī, quod in tantā multitūdine dēditiciōrum suam fugam aut occultārī aut omnīnō īgnōrārī posse exīstimārent, prīmā nocte ē castrīs Helvētiōrum ēgressī ad Rhēnum fīnīsque Germānōrum contendērunt.

Cæsar's Terms.

28. Quod ubi Caesar resciit, quōrum per fīnīs ierant, hīs utī conquīrerent et redūcerent, sī sibi pūrgātī esse vellent, imperāvit; reductōs in hostium numerō habuit; reliquōs omnīs, obsidibus, armīs, perfugīs trāditīs, in dēditiōnem accēpit.

Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrīgōs in fīnīs suōs, unde erant profectī, revertī iussit; et quod omnibus frūgibus āmissīs domī nihil erat quō famem tolerārent, Allobrogibus imperāvit ut eīs frūmentī cōpiam facerent; ipsōs oppida vīcōsque, quōs incenderant, restituere iussit. Id eā māximē ratiōne fēcit, quod nōluit eum locum unde Helvētiī discesserant vacāre, nē propter bonitātem agrōrum Germānī, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ē suīs fīnibus in Helvētiōrum fīnīs trānsīrent, et fīnitimī Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Bōiōs petentibus Haeduīs, quod ēgregiā virtūte erant cōgnitī, ut in fīnibus suīs conlocārent, concessit; quibus illī agrōs dedērunt, quōsque posteā in parem iūris libertātisque condiciōnem atque ipsī erant recēpērunt.

Census of the Tribes before and after their March.

29. In castrīs Helvētiōrum tabulae repertae sunt litterīs Graecīs cōnfectae et ad Caesarem relātae, quibus in tabulīs nōminātim ratiō cōnfecta erat, quī numerus domō exīsset eōrum quī arma ferre possent,

et item sēparātim *quot* puerī, senēs mulierēsque. Quārum omnium rērum summa erat capitum Helvētiōrum mīlium CCLXIII, Tulingōrum mīlium XXXVI, Latobrīgōrum XIIII, Rauracōrum XXIII, Bōiōrum XXXII; ex hīs quī arma ferre possent, ad mīlia XCII. Summa omnium fuērunt ad mīlia CCCLXVIII. Eōrum quī domum rediērunt cēnsū habitō, ut Caesar imperāverat, repertus est numerus mīlium C et X.

Gallic Chiefs congratulate Cæsar and ask for a General Council.

30. Bellō Helvētiōrum cōnfectō tōtīus ferē Galliae lēgātī, prīncipēs cīvitātum, ad Caesarem grātulātum convēnērunt: 'Intellegere sēsē, tametsī prō veteribus Helvētiōrum iniūriīs populī Rōmānī ab hīs poenās bellō repetīsset, tamen eam rem nōn minus ex ūsū terrae Galliae quam populī Rōmānī accidisse; proptereā quod eō cōnsiliō flōrentissimīs rēbus domōs suās Helvētiī relīquissent, utī tōtī Galliae bellum īnferrent imperiōque potīrentur locumque domiciliō ex māgnā cōpiā dēligerent, quem ex omnī Galliā opportūnissimum āc frūctuōsissimum iūdicāssent, reliquāsque cīvitātīs stīpendiāriās habērent.'

Petiērunt utī sibi concilium tōtīus Galliae in diem certam indīcere idque Caesaris voluntāte facere licēret: sēsē habēre quāsdam rēs quās ex commūnī cōnsēnsū ab eō petere vellent. Eā rē permissā diem conciliō cōnstituērunt et iūre iūrandō nē quis ēnūntiāret, nisi quibus commūnī cōnsiliō mandātum esset, inter sē sānxērunt.

They describe the Encroachments of the Germans, and through Diviciacus ask Cæsar's Aid against Ariovistus.

31. Eō conciliō dīmissō īdem prīncipēs cīvitātum quī ante fuerant ad Caesarem revertērunt petiērunt-

que utī sibi sēcrētō [in occultō] dē suā omniumque salūte cum eō agere licēret. Eā rē impetrātā sēsē omnēs flentēs Caesarī ad pedēs prōiēcērunt: 'Nōn minus sē id contendere et labōrāre, nē ea quae dīxissent ēnūntiārentur, quam utī eạ quae vellent impetrārent; proptereā quod, sī ēnūntiātum esset, summum in cruciātum sē ventūrōs vidērent.'

Locūtus est prō hīs Dīviciācus Haeduus: 'Galliae tōtius factiōnēs esse duās; hārum alterius prīncipātum tenēre Haeduōs, alterius Arvernōs. Hī cum tantōpere dē potentātū inter sē multōs annōs contenderent, factum esse utī ab Arvernīs Sēquanīsque Germānī mercēde arcesserentur. Hōrum prīmō circiter mīlia xv Rhēnum trānsīsse; posteāquam agrōs et cultum et cōpiās Gallōrum hominēs ferī āc barbarī adamāssent, trāductōs plūrīs; nunc esse in Galliā ad centum et xx mīlium numerum. Cum hīs Haeduōs eōrumque clientīs semel atque iterum armīs contendisse; māgnam calamitātem pulsōs accēpisse, omnem nōbilitātem, omnem senātum, omnem equitātum āmīsisse. Quibus proeliīs calamitātibusque frāctōs quī et suā virtūte et populī Rōmānī hospitiō atque amīcitiā plūrimum ante in Galliā potuissent, coāctōs esse Sēquanīs obsidēs dare nōbilissimōs cīvitātis, et iūre iūrandō cīvitātem obstringere sēsē neque obsidēs repetītūrōs neque auxilium ā populō Rōmānō implōrātūrōs neque recūsātūrōs quō minus perpetuō sub illōrum diciōne atque imperiō essent. Ūnum sē esse ex omnī cīvitāte Haeduōrum quī addūcī nōn potuerit ut iūrāret aut līberōs suōs obsidēs daret. Ob eam rem sē ex cīvitāte prōfūgisse et Rōmam ad senātum vēnisse auxilium postulātum, quod sōlus neque iūre iūrandō neque obsidibus tenērētur.

Sed pēius victōribus Sēquanīs quam Haeduīs victīs accidisse, propterea quod Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum, in eōrum fīnibus cōnsēdisset tertiamque partem agrī Sēquanī, quī esset optimus tōtīus Galliae, occupāvisset, et nunc dē alterā parte tertiā Sēquanōs dēcēdere iubēret, propterea quod paucīs mēnsibus ante Harūdum mīlia hominum xxiiii ad eum vēnissent, quibus locus āc sēdēs parārentur. Futūrum esse paucīs annīs utī omnēs ex Galliae fīnibus pellerentur atque omnēs Germānī Rhēnum trānsīrent; neque enim cōnferendum esse Gallicum cum Germānōrum agrō, neque hanc cōnsuētūdinem vīctūs cum illā comparandam.

Ariovistum autem, ut semel Gallōrum cōpiās proeliō vīcerit, quod proelium factum sit ad Magetobrigam, superbē et crūdēliter imperāre, obsidēs nōbilissimī cūiusque līberōs poscere, et in eōs omnia exempla cruciātūsque ēdere, sī qua rēs nōn ad nūtum aut ad voluntātem ēius facta sit. Hominem esse barbarum, īrācundum, temerārium; nōn posse ēius imperia diūtius sustinērī.

Nisi quid in Caesare populōque Rōmānō sit auxilī, omnibus Gallīs idem esse faciendum quod Helvētiī fēcerint, ut domō ēmigrent, aliud domicilium aliās sēdīs remōtās ā Germānīs petant fortūnamque, quaecumque accidat, experiantur. Haec sī ēnūntiāta Ariovistō sint, nōn dubitāre quīn dē omnibus obsidibus quī apud eum sint gravissimum supplicium sūmat. Caesarem vel auctōritāte suā atque exercitūs vel recentī victōriā vel nōmine populī Rōmānī dēterrēre posse nē māior multitūdō Germānōrum Rhēnum trādūcātur, Galliamque omnem ab Ariovistī iniūriā posse dēfendere.'

Diviciacus shows the Desperate Condition of the Sequani.

32. Hāc ōrātiōne ab Dīviciācō habitā omnēs quī aderant māgnō flētū auxilium ā Caesare petere coepērunt. Animadvertit Caesar ūnōs ex omnibus Sēquanōs nihil eārum rērum facere quās cēterī facerent, sed trīstīs capite dēmissō terram intuērī. Ēius reī quae causa esset mīrātus ex ipsīs quaesiit. Nihil Sēquanī respondēre, sed in eādem trīstitiā tacitī permanēre. Cum ab hīs saepius quaereret neque ūllam omnīnō vōcem exprimere posset, īdem Dīviciācus Haeduus respondit: 'Hōc esse miseriōrem et graviōrem fortūnam Sēquanōrum quam reliquōrum, quod sōlī nē in occultō quidem querī neque auxilium implōrāre audērent; absentisque Ariovistī crūdēlitātem, velut sī cōram adesset, horrērent, propterea quod reliquīs tamen fugae facultās darētur, Sēquanīs vērō, quī intrā fīnīs suōs Ariovistum recēpissent, quōrum oppida omnia in potestāte ēius essent, omnēs cruciātūs essent perferendī.'

Cæsar decides that Ariovistus is Dangerous and must be checked.

33. Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs Caesar Gallōrum animōs verbīs cōnfīrmāvit, pollicitusque est sibi eam rem cūrae futūram; māgnam sē habēre spem et beneficiō suō et auctōritāte adductum Ariovistum fīnem iniūriīs factūrum. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā concilium dīmīsit. Et secundum ea multae rēs eum hortābantur quā rē sibi eam rem cōgitandam et suscipiendam putāret: imprīmīs, quod Haeduōs, frātrēs cōnsanguineōsque saepenumerō ā senātū appellātōs, in servitūte atque in diciōne vidēbat Germānōrum tenērī, eōrumque obsidēs esse apud Ariovistum āc Sēquanōs intellegēbat; quod

in tantō imperiō populī Rōmānī turpissimum sibi et reī pūblicae esse arbitrābātur. Paulātim autem Germānōs cōnsuēscere Rhēnum trānsīre et in Galliam māgnam eōrum multitūdinem venīre, populō Rōmānō perīculōsum vidēbat; neque sibi hominēs ferōs āc barbarōs temperātūrōs exīstimābat quīn, cum omnem Galliam occupāvissent, ut ante Cimbrī Teutonīque fēcissent, in prōvinciam exīrent atque inde in Ītaliam contenderent; [praesertim cum Sēquanōs ā prōvinciā nostrā Rhodanus dīvideret]; quibus rēbus quam mātūrrimē occurrendum putābat. Ipse autem Ariovistus tantōs sibi spīritūs, tantam adrogantiam sūmpserat, ut ferendus nōn vidērētur.

Ariovistus with Much Spirit declines to meet Cæsar.

34. Quam ob rem placuit eī ut ad Ariovistum lēgātōs mitteret, quī ab eō postulārent utī aliquem locum medium utrīusque conloquiō dēligeret: velle sēsē dē rē pūblicā et summīs utrīusque rēbus cum eō agere. Eī lēgātiōnī Ariovistus respondit: 'Sī quid ipsī ā Caesare opus esset, sēsē ad eum ventūrum fuisse; sī quid ille sē velit, illum ad sē venīre oportēre. Praetereā sē neque sine exercitū in eās partīs Galliae venīre audēre quās Caesar possidēret, neque exercitum sine māgnō commeātū atque mōlīmentō in ūnum locum contrahere posse. Sibi autem mīrum vidērī quid in suā Galliā, quam bellō vīcisset aut Caesarī aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō negōtī esset.'

Cæsar sends again and states his Demands.

35. Hīs respōnsīs ad Caesarem relātīs, iterum ad eum Caesar lēgātōs cum hīs mandātīs mittit: 'Quo-

niam tantō suō populīque Rōmānī beneficiō adfectus, cum in cōnsulātū suō rēx atque amīcus ā senātū appellātus esset, hanc sibi populōque Rōmānō grātiam referret, ut in conloquium venīre invītātus gravārētur neque dē commūnī rē dīcendum sibi et cōgnōscendum putāret, haec esse quae ab eō postulāret: prīmum, nē quam multitūdinem hominum amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliam trādūceret; deinde obsidēs quōs habēret ab Haeduīs redderet, Sēquanīsque permitteret ut quōs illī habērent voluntāte ēius reddere illīs licēret; nēve Haeduōs iniūriā lacesseret, nēve hīs sociīsque eōrum bellum īnferret. Sī id ita fēcisset, sibi populōque Rōmānō perpetuam grātiam atque amīcitiam cum eō futūram; sī nōn impetrāret, sēsē, — quoniam M. Messālā M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus senātus cēnsuisset utī quīcumque Galliam prōvinciam obtinēret, quod commodō reī pūblicae facere posset, Haeduōs cēterōsque amīcōs populī Rōmānī dēfenderet, — sē Haeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglēctūrum.'

Ariovistus defies Cæsar.

36. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: 'Iūs esse bellī ut quī vīcissent eīs quōs vīcissent quem ad modum vellent imperārent; item populum Rōmānum victīs nōn ad alterius praescrīptum, sed ad suum arbitrium imperāre cōnsuēsse. Sī ipse populō Rōmānō nōn praescrīberet quem ad modum suō iūre ūterētur, nōn oportēre sēsē ā populō Rōmānō in suō iūre impedīrī. Haeduōs sibi, quoniam bellī fortūnam temptāssent et armīs congressī āc superātī essent, stīpendiāriōs esse factōs. Māgnam Caesarem iniūriam facere quī suō adventū vectīgālia sibi dēteriōra faceret. Haeduīs sē

obsidēs redditūrum nōn esse, neque hīs neque eōrum sociīs iniūriā bellum inlātūrum, sī in eō manērent quod convēnisset stīpendiumque quotannīs penderent; sī id nōn fēcissent, longē eīs frāternum nōmen populī Rōmānī āfutūrum. Quod sibi Caesar dēnūntiāret sē Haeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglēctūrum, nēminem sēcum sine suā perniciē contendisse. Cum vellet, congrederētur; intellēctūrum quid invictī Germānī, exercitātissimī in armīs, quī inter annōs XIV tēctum nōn subīssent, virtūte possent.'

Fresh Complaints of German Outrages. Cæsar hastens against Ariovistus.

37. Haec eōdem tempore Caesarī mandāta referēbantur, et lēgātī ab Haeduīs et ā Trēverīs veniēbant: Haeduī questum quod Harūdēs, quī nūper in Galliam trānsportātī essent, fīnīs eōrum populārentur; sēsē nē obsidibus quidem datīs pācem Ariovistī redimere potuisse; Trēverī autem, pāgōs centum Suēvōrum ad rīpam Rhēnī cōnsēdisse, quī Rhēnum trānsīre cōnārentur; hīs praeesse Nasuam et Cimberium frātrēs. Quibus rēbus Caesar vehementer commōtus mātūrandum sibi exīstimāvit, nē, sī nova manus Suēvōrum cum veteribus cōpiīs Ariovistī sēsē coniūnxisset, minus facile resistī posset. Itaque rē frūmentāriā quam celerrimē potuit comparātā, māgnīs itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.

Cæsar reaches Vesontio before Ariovistus.

38. Cum trīduī viam prōcessisset, nūntiātum est eī Ariovistum cum suīs omnibus cōpiīs ad occupandum Vesontiōnem, quod est oppidum māximum Sēquanōrum, contendere, [trīduīque viam ā suīs fīnibus

prōcessisse]. Id nē accideret māgnopere sibi praecavendum Caesar exīstimābat. Namque omnium rērum quae ad bellum ūsuī erant summa erat in eō oppidō facultās; idemque nātūrā locī sīc mūniēbātur ut māgnam ad dūcendum bellum daret facultātem, propterea quod flūmen Dubis, ut circinō circumductum, paene tōtum oppidum cingit; reliquum spatium, quod est nōn amplius pedum sexcentōrum, quā flūmen intermittit, mōns continet māgnā altitūdine, ita ut rādīcēs montis ex utrāque parte rīpae flūminis contingant. Hunc mūrus circumdatus arcem efficit et cum oppidō coniungit. Hūc Caesar māgnīs nocturnīs diurnīsque itineribus contendit, occupātōque oppidō ibi praesidium conlocat.

Panic in the Roman Army.

39. Dum paucōs diēs ad Vesontiōnem reī frūmentāriae commeātūsque causā morātur, ex percontātiōne nostrōrum vōcibusque Gallōrum āc mercātōrum, quī ingentī māgnitūdine corporum Germānōs, incrēdibilī virtūte atque exercitātiōne in armīs esse praedicābant, — saepenumerō sēsē cum hīs congressōs nē voltum quidem atque aciem oculōrum dīcēbant ferre potuisse, — tantus subitō timor omnem exercitum occupāvit ut nōn mediocriter omnium mentīs animōsque perturbāret. Hīc prīmum ortus est ā tribūnīs mīlitum, praefectīs reliquīsque, quī ex urbe amīcitiae causā Caesarem secūtī nōn māgnum in rē mīlitārī ūsum habēbant; quōrum alius aliā causā inlātā quam sibi ad proficīscendum necessāriam esse dīceret, petēbat ut ēius voluntāte discēdere licēret; nōnnūllī pudōre adductī, ut timōris suspīciōnem vītārent, remanēbant. Hī neque voltum fingere neque interdum lacrimās tenēre



The Appian Way

poterant; abditī in tabernāculīs aut suum fātum querēbantur aut cum familiāribus suīs commūne perīculum miserābantur. Volgō tōtīs castrīs testāmenta obsīgnābantur. Hōrum vōcibus āc timōre paulātim etiam eī quī māgnum in castrīs ūsum habēbant, mīlitēs centuriōnēsque quīque equitātuī praeerant, perturbābantur. Quī sē ex hīs minus timidōs exīstimārī volēbant, nōn sē hostem verērī, sed angustiās itineris et māgnitūdinem silvārum quae intercēderent inter ipsōs atque Ariovistum, aut rem frūmentāriam, ut satis commodē supportārī posset, timēre dīcēbant. Nōn nūllī etiam Caesarī nūntiābant, cum castra movērī āc sīgna ferrī iussisset, nōn fore dictō audientīs mīlitēs neque propter timōrem sīgna lātūrōs.

Cæsar rebukes his Officers, dispels their Fears, and declares his Intention to advance at once.

40. Haec cum animadvertisset, convocātō cōnciliō omniumque ōrdinum ad id cōncilium adhibitīs centuriōnibus, vehementer eōs incūsāvit: prīmum quod aut quam in partem aut quō cōnsiliō dūcerentur sibi quaerendum aut cōgitandum putārent. 'Ariovistum sē cōnsule cupidissimē populī Rōmānī amīcitiam adpetīsse; cūr hunc tam temerē quisquam ab officiō discessūrum iūdicāret? Sibi quidem persuādērī, cōgnitīs suīs postulātīs atque aequitāte condiciōnum perspectā, eum neque suam neque populī Rōmānī grātiam repudiātūrum. Quod sī furōre atque āmentiā impulsus bellum intulisset, quid tandem verērentur?[†] aut cūr dē suā virtūte aut dē ipsīus dīligentiā dēspērārent? Factum ēius hostis perīculum patrum nostrōrum memoriā, cum Cimbrīs et Teutonīs ā C. Mariō pulsīs nōn

minōrem laudem exercitus quam ipse imperātor meritus vidēbātur; factum etiam nūper in Ītaliā servīlī tumultu, quōs tamen aliquid ūsus āc disciplīna quam ā nōbīs accēpissent sublevārent. Ex quō iūdicārī posse quantum habēret in sē bonī cōnstantia, propterea quod, quōs aliquamdiū inermīs sine causā timuissent, hōs posteā armātōs āc victōrēs superāssent.

Dēnique hōs esse eōsdem Germānōs quibuscum saepenumerō Helvētiī congressī, nōn sōlum in suīs sed etiam in illōrum fīnibus, plērumque superārint; quī tamen parēs esse nostrō exercituī nōn potuerint. Sī quōs adversum proelium et fuga Gallōrum commovēret, hōs, sī quaererent, reperīre posse diūturnitāte bellī dēfatīgātīs Gallīs Ariovistum, cum multōs mēnsīs castrīs sē āc palūdibus tenuisset neque suī potestātem fēcisset, dēspērantīs iam dē pūgnā et dispersōs subitō adortum, magis ratiōne et cōnsiliō quam virtūte vīcisse. Cui ratiōnī contrā hominēs barbarōs atque imperītōs locus fuisset, hāc nē ipsum quidem spērāre nostrōs exercitūs capī posse.

Quī suum timōrem in reī frūmentāriae simulātiōnem angustiāsque itineris cōnferrent, facere adroganter, cum aut dē officiō imperātōris dēspērāre aut praescrībere vidērentur. Haec sibi esse cūrae; frūmentum Sēquanōs, Leucōs, Lingonēs subministrāre, iamque esse in agrīs frūmenta mātūra; dē itinere ipsōs brevī tempore iūdicātūrōs.

Quod nōn fore dictō audientēs neque sīgna lātūrī dīcantur, nihil sē eā rē commovērī; scīre enim, quibuscumque exercitus dictō audiēns nōn fuerit, aut male rē gestā fortūnam dēfuisse, aut aliquō facinore compertō avāritiam esse convictam; suam innocentiam

perpetuā vītā, fēlīcitātem Helvētiōrum bellō esse perspectam.

Itaque sē quod in longiōrem diem conlātūrus fuisset repraesentātūrum, et proximā nocte dē quartā vigiliā castra mōtūrum, ut quam prīmum intellegere posset utrum apud eōs pudor atque officium an timor plūs valēret. Quod sī praetereā nēmō sequātur, tamen sē cum sōlā decimā legiōne itūrum, dē quā nōn dubitāret, sibique eam praetōriam cohortem futūram.' Huic legiōnī Caesar et indulserat praecipuē et propter virtūtem cōnfīdēbat māximē.

Cæsar's Speech arouses Enthusiasm. He advances.

41. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā mīrum in modum conversae sunt omnium mentēs, summaque alacritās et cupiditās bellī gerendī innāta est; prīncepsque decima legiō per tribūnōs mīlitum eī grātiās ēgit, quod dē sē optimum iūdicium fēcisset, sēque esse ad bellum gerendum parātissimam cōnfīrmāvit. Deinde reliquae legiōnēs cum tribūnīs mīlitum et prīmōrum ordinum centuriōnibus ēgērunt utī Caesarī satisfacerent: 'Sē neque umquam dubitāsse neque timuisse neque dē summā bellī suum iūdicium, sed imperātōris esse exīstimāvisse.' Eōrum satisfactiōne acceptā et itinere exquīsītō per Dīviciācum, quod ex aliīs eī māximam fidem habēbat, ut mīlium amplius quīnquāgintā circuitū locīs apertīs exercitum dūceret, dē quartā vigiliā, ut dīxerat, profectus est. Septimō diē, cum iter nōn intermitteret, ab explōrātōribus certior factus est Ariovistī cōpiās ā nostrīs mīlia passuum quattuor et vīgintī abesse.

Rhēnum sēsē nōn suā sponte, sed rogātum et arcessītum ā Gallīs; nōn sine māgnā spē māgnīsque praemiīs domum propinquōsque relīquisse; sēdīs habēre in Galliā ab ipsīs concessās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntāte datōs; stīpendium capere iūre bellī quod victōrēs victīs impōnere cōnsuērint. Nōn sēsē Gallīs, sed Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse; omnīs Galliae cīvitātīs ad sē oppūgnandum vēnisse āc contrā sē castra habuisse; eās omnīs cōpiās ā sē ūnō proeliō pulsās āc superātās esse. Sī iterum experīrī velint, sē iterum parātum esse dēcertāre; sī pāce ūtī velint, inīquum esse dē stīpendiō recūsāre quod suā voluntāte ad id tempus pependerint.

Amīcitiam populī Rōmānī sibi ōrnāmentō et praesidiō, nōn dētrīmentō esse oportēre, idque sē hāc spē petīsse. Sī per populum Rōmānum stīpendium remittātur et dēditiciī subtrahantur, nōn minus libenter sēsē recūsātūrum populī Rōmanī amīcitiam quam adpetierit.

Quod multitūdinem Germānōrum in Galliam trādūcat, id sē suī mūniendī, nōn Galliae impūgnandae causā facere: ēius reī testimōnium esse quod nisi rogātus nōn vēnerit, et quod bellum nōn intulerit, sed dēfenderit. Sē prius in Galliam vēnisse quam populum Rōmānum. Numquam ante hōc tempus exercitum populī Rōmānī Galliae prōvinciae fīnibus ēgressum. Quid sibi vellet? Cūr in suās possessiōnēs venīret? Prōvinciam suam hanc esse Galliam, sīcut illam nostram. Ut ipsī concēdī nōn oportēret, sī in nostrōs fīnīs impetum faceret, sīc item nōs esse inīquōs quod in suō iūre sē interpellārēmus.

Quod frātrēs ā senātū Haeduōs appellātōs dīceret,

nōn sē tam barbarum neque tam imperītum esse rērum ut nōn scīret neque bellō Allobrogum proximō Haeduōs Rōmānīs auxilium tulisse, neque ipsōs, in hīs contentiōnibus quās Haeduī sēcum et cum Sēquanīs habuissent, auxiliō populī Rōmānī ūsōs esse.

Dēbēre sē suspicārī simulātā Caesarem amīcitiā quem exercitum in Galliā habeat suī opprimendī causā habēre. Quī nisi dēcēdat atque exercitum dēdūcat ex hīs regiōnibus, sēsē illum nōn prō amīcō, sed prō hoste habitūrum. Quod sī eum interfēcerit, multīs sēsē nōbilibus prīncipibusque populī Rōmānī grātum esse factūrum ; id sē ab ipsīs per eōrum nūntiōs compertum habēre quōrum omnium grātiam atque amīcitiam ēius morte redimere posset. Quod sī discessisset et līberam possessiōnem Galliae sibi trādidisset, māgnō sē illum praemiō remūnerātūrum, et quaecumque bella gerī vellet sine ūllō ēius labōre et perīculō cōnfectūrum.'

Cæsar refuses to yield, and gives his Reasons.

45. Multa ab Caesare in eam sententiam dicta sunt quā rē negōtiō dēsistere nōn posset : 'Neque suam neque populī Rōmānī cōnsuētūdinem patī utī optimē meritōs sociōs dēsereret, neque sē iūdicāre Galliam potius esse Ariovistī quam populī Rōmānī. Bellō superātōs esse Arvernōs et Rutēnōs ab Q. Fabiō Māximō, quibus populus Rōmānus īgnōvisset neque in prōvinciam redēgisset neque stīpendium imposuisset. Quod sī antīquissimum quodque tempus spectārī oportēret, populī Rōmānī iūstissimum esse in Galliā imperium ; sī iūdicium senātūs observārī oportēret, līberam dēbēre esse Galliam, quam bellō victam suīs lēgibus ūtī voluisset.'

The Germans make a Treacherous Attack which breaks up the Conference.

46. Dum haec in conloquiō geruntur, Caesarī nūntiātum est equitēs Ariovistī propius tumulum accēdere, et ad nostrōs adequitāre, lapidēs tēlaque in nostrōs conicere. Caesar loquendī fīnem fēcit, sēque ad suōs recēpit suīsque imperāvit nē quod omnīnō tēlum in hostīs rēicerent. Nam etsī sine ūllō perīculō legiōnis dēlēctae cum equitātū proelium fore vidēbat, tamen committendum nōn putābat, ut pulsīs hostibus dīcī posset eōs ab sē per fidem in conloquiō circumventōs. Posteāquam in volgus mīlitum ēlātum est quā adrogantiā in coloquiō Ariovistus ūsus omnī Galliā Rōmānīs interdīxisset, impetumque in nostrōs ēius equitēs fēcissent, eaque rēs conloquium ut dīrēmisset, multō māior alacritās studiumque pūgnandī māius exercituī iniectum est.

Cæsar declines a Second Interview, but sends Envoys, who are treacherously seized by Ariovistus.

47. Bīduō post Ariovistus ad Caesarem lēgātōs mittit: 'Velle sē dē hīs rēbus quae inter eōs agī coeptae neque perfectae essent agere cum eō; utī aut iterum conloquiō diem cōnstitueret, aut, sī id minus vellet, ē suīs lēgātīs aliquem ad sē mitteret.' Conloquendī Caesarī causa vīsa nōn est; et eō magis quod prīdiē ēius diēī Germānī retinērī nōn poterant quīn tēla in nostrōs conicerent. Lēgātum [ē suīs] sēsē māgnō cum perīculō ad eum missūrum et hominibus ferīs obiectūrum exīstimābat. Commodissimum vīsum est C. Valerium Proçillum, C. Valerī Caburī fīlium, summā virtūte et hūmānitāte adulēscentem, —

cūius pater ā C. Valeriō Flaccō cīvitāte dōnātus erat, et propter fidem et propter linguae Gallicae scientiam, quā multā iam Ariovistus longinquā cōnsuētūdine ūtēbātur, et quod in eō peccandī Germānīs causa nōn esset, — ad eum mittere, et M. Mētium, quī hospitiō Ariovistī ūtēbātur. Hīs mandāvit ut quae dīceret Ariovistus cōgnōscerent et ad sē referrent. Quōs cum apud sē in castrīs Ariovistus cōnspēxisset, exercitū suō praesente conclāmāvit: 'Quid ad sē venīrent? an speculandī causā?' Cōnantīs dīcere prohibuit et in catēnās coniēcit.

Manœuvering and Skirmishing. A Specimen of German Tactics.

48. Eōdem diē castra prōmōvit et mīlibus passuum sex ā Caesaris castrīs sub monte cōnsēdit. Postrīdiē ēius diēī praeter castra Caesaris suās cōpiās trādūxit et mīlibus passuum duōbus ultrā eum castra fēcit, eō cōnsiliō utī frūmentō commeātūque quī ex Sēquanīs et Haeduīs supportārētur Caesarem interclūderet. Ex eō diē diēs continuōs quīnque Caesar prō castrīs suās cōpiās prōdūxit et aciem īnstrūctam habuit, ut, sī vellet Ariovistus proeliō contendere, eī potestās nōn deësset. Ariovistus hīs omnibus diēbus exercitum castrīs continuit, equestrī proeliō cotīdiē contendit.

Genus hōc erat pūgnae quō sē Germānī exercuerant. Equitum mīlia erant sex, totidem numerō peditēs vēlōcissimī āc fortissimī, quōs ex omnī cōpiā singulī singulōs suae salūtis causā dēlēgerant; cum hīs in proeliīs versābantur. Ad eōs sē equitēs recipiēbant; hī, sī quid erat dūrius, concurrēbant; sī quī graviōre volnere acceptō equō dēciderat, circumsistēbant; sī quō erat longius prōdeundum aut celerius recipien-

dum, tanta erat hōrum exercitātiōne celeritās ut iubīs sublevātī equōrum cursum adaequārent.

Cæsar fortifies Another Camp beyond Ariovistus.

49. Ubi eum castrīs sē tenēre Caesar intellēxit, ne diūtius commeātū prohibērētur, ultrā eum locum quō in locō Germānī cōnsēderant, circiter passūs sexcentōs ab hīs, castrīs idōneum locum dēlēgit, aciēque triplicī īnstrūctā ad eum locum vēnit. Prīmam et secundam aciem in armīs esse, tertiam castra munīre iussit. Hīc locus ab hoste circiter passūs sexcentōs, utī dictum est, aberat. Eō circiter hominum numerō sēdecim mīlia expedīta cum omnī equitātū Ariovistus mīsit, quae cōpiae nostrōs terrērent et mūnītiōne prohibērent. Nihilō sēcius Caesar, ut ante cōnstituerat, duās aciēs hostem prōpulsāre, tertiam opus perficere iussit. Mūnītīs castris duās ibi legiōnēs relīquit et partem auxiliōrum, quattuor reliquās in castra māiōra redūxit.

More Skirmishing, but no General Engagement, owing to the Superstitions of the Germans.

50. Proximō diē īnstitūtō suō Caesar ē castrīs utrīsque cōpiās suās ēdūxit, paulumque ā māiōribus castrīs prōgressus aciem īnstrūxit, hostibus pūgnandī potestātem fēcit. Ubi nē tum quidem eōs prōdīre intellēxit, circiter merīdiē exercitum in castra redūxit. Tum dēmum Ariovistus partem suārum cōpiārum quae castra minōra oppūgnāret mīsit. Ācriter utrimque ūsque ad vesperum pūgnātum est. Sōlis occāsū suās cōpiās Ariovistus multīs et inlātīs et acceptīs volneribus in castra redūxit.

Cum ex captīvīs quaereret Caesar quam ob rem

Ariovistus proeliō nōn dēcertāret, hanc reperiēbat causam, quod apud Germānōs ea cōnsuētūdō esset ut mātrēs familiae eōrum sortibus et vāticinātionibus dēclārārent utrum proelium committī ex ūsū esset necne; eās ita dīcere: ‘Nōn esse fās Germānōs superāre, sī ante novam lūnam proeliō contendissent.’

Preparations for the Battle.

51. Postrīdiē ēius diēī Caesar praesidiō utrīsque castrīs quod satis esse vīsum est relīquit, ālāriōs omnīs in cōnspectū hostium prō castrīs minōribus cōnstituit, quod minus multitūdine mīlitum legiōnāriōrum prō hostium numerō valēbat, ut ad speciem ālāriīs ūterētur; ipse triplicī īnstrūctā aciē ūsque ad castra hostium accessit. Tum dēmum necessāriō Germānī suās cōpiās castrīs ēdūxērunt generātimque cōnstituērunt paribus intervāllīs, Harūdēs, Marcomannōs, Tribocēs, Vangionēs, Nemetēs, Sedusiōs, Suēvōs, omnemque aciem suam rēdīs et carrīs circumdedērunt, nē qua spēs in fugā relinquerētur. Eō mulierēs imposuērunt, quae ad proelium proficīscentīs, passīs manibus flentēs, implōrābant nē sē in servitūtem Rōmānīs trāderent.

Description of the Battle.

52. Caesar singulīs legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs et quaestōrem praefēcit, ut eōs testīs suae quisque virtutis habēret; ipse ā dextrō cornū, quod eam partem minimē fīrmam hostium esse animadverterat, proelium commīsit. Ita nostrī ācriter in hostīs sīgnō datō impetum fēcērunt, ita-que hostēs repente celeriterque prōcurrērunt ut spatium pīla in hostīs coniciendī nōn darētur. Rēiectīs pīlīs cōminus gladiīs pūgnātum est.

At Germānī celeriter ex cōnsuētūdine suā phalange factā impetūs gladiōrum excēpērunt. Repertī sunt complūrēs nostrī quī in phalanga īnsilīrent et scūta manibus revellerent et dēsuper volnerārent. Cum hostium aciēs ā sinistrō cornū pulsa atque in fugam coniecta esset, ā dextrō cornū vehementer multitūdine suōrum nostram aciem premēbant. Id cum animadvertisset P. Crassus adulēscēns, quī equitātuī praeerat, quod expedītior erat quam eī quī inter aciem versābantur, tertiam aciem labōrantibus nostrīs subsidiō mīsit.

Rout of the Germans and Recovery of the Two Envoys.

53. Ita proelium restitūtum est atque omnēs hostēs terga vertērunt, neque prius fugere dēstitērunt quam ad flūmen Rhēnum, mīlia passuum ex eō locō circiter quīnque, pervēnērunt. Ibi perpaucī aut vīribus cōnfīsī trānāre contendērunt aut lintribus inventīs sibi salūtem repperērunt. In hīs fuit Ariovistus, quī nāviculam dēligātam ad rīpam nactus eā profūgit; reliquōs omnīs cōnsecūtī equitēs nostrī interfēcērunt. Duae fuērunt Ariovistī uxōrēs, ūna Suēva nātiōne, quam domō sēcum dūxerat, altera Nōrica, rēgis Vocciōnis soror, quam in Galliā dūxerat ā frātre missam; utraque in eā fugā periit. Duae fīliae hārum altera occīsa, altera capta est. C. Valerius Procillus, cum ā custōdibus in fugā trīnīs catēnīs vinctus traherētur, in ipsum Caesarem hostīs equitātū īnsequentem incidit. Quae quidem rēs Caesarī nōn minōrem quam ipsa victōria voluptātem adtulit, quod hominem honestissimum prōvinciae Galliae, suum familiārem et hospitem, ēreptum ē manibus hostium, sibi restitūtum vidēbat; neque ēius calamitāte dē tantā voluptāte et grātulātiōne quicquam

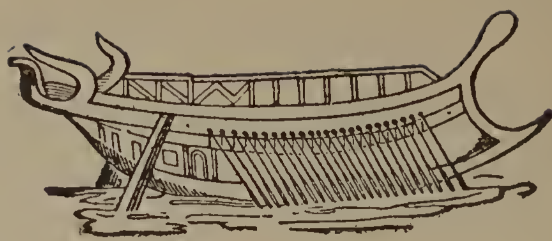
fortūna dēminuerat. Is sē praesente dē sē ter sortibus cōnsultum dīcēbat utrum īgnī statim necārētur an in aliud tempus reservārētur; sortium beneficiō sē esse incolumem. Item M. Mētius repertus et ad eum reductus est.

Cæsar settles the Army in Winter Quarters and retires to Cisalpine Gaul.

54. Hōc proeliō trāns Rhēnum nūntiātō Suēvī, quī ad rīpās Rhēnī vēnerant, domum revertī coepērunt; quōs Ubiī, quī proximī Rhēnum incolunt, perterritōs īnsecūtī māgnum ex eīs numerum occīdērunt. Caesar ūnā aestāte duōbus māximīs bellīs cōnfectīs, mātūrius paulō quam tempus annī postulābat, in hīberna in Sēquanōs exercitum dēdūxit; hībernīs Labiēnum praeposuit; ipse in citeriōrem Galliam ad conventūs agendōs profectus est.



Signa.



Nāvis Longa.

BOOK II.

The Belgian Confederacy. B.C. 57.

League of the Belgian Tribes against the Romans. Reasons for this.

CUM esset Caesar in citeriōre Galliā ita utī suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, crēbrī ad eum rūmōrēs adferēbantur, litterīsque item Labiēnī certior fīēbat omnīs Belgās, quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dīxerāmus, contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāre obsidēsque inter sē dare. Coniūrandī hās esse causās: prīmum quod verērentur nē omnī pācātā Galliā ad eōs exercitus noster addūcerētur; deinde quod ab nōn nūllīs Gallīs sollicitārentur, — partim quī, ut Germānōs diūtius in Galliā versārī nōluerant, ita populī Rōmānī exercitum hiemāre atque inveterāscere in Galliā molestē ferēbant; partim quī mōbilitāte et levitāte animī novīs imperiīs studēbant, — ab nōn nūllīs etiam, quod in Galliā ā potentiōribus atque eīs quī ad condūcendōs hominēs facultātīs habēbant volgō rēgna occupābantur, quī minus facile eam rem imperiō nostrō cōnsequī poterant.

Cæsar takes the Field against them.

2. Hīs nūntiīs litterīsque commōtus Caesar duās legiōnēs in citeriōre Galliā novās cōnscrīpsit, et initā aestāte in interiōrem Galliam quī dēdūceret Q. Pedium lēgātum mīsit. Ipse, cum prīmum pābulī cōpia

esse inciperet, ad exercitum vēnit. Dat negōtium Senonibus reliquīsque Gallīs quī fīnitimī Belgīs erant, utī ea quae apud eōs gerantur cōgnōscant sēque dē hīs rēbus certiōrem faciant. Hī cōnstanter omnēs nūntiāvērunt manūs cōgī, exercitum in ūnum locum condūcī. Tum vērō dubitandum nōn exīstimāvit quin ad eōs proficīscerētur. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā castra movet diēbusque circiter quīndecim ad fīnīs Belgārum pervenit.

The Remi promise Aid.

3. Eō cum dē imprōvīsō celeriusque omnium opīniōne vēnisset, Rēmī, quī proximī Galliae ex Belgīs sunt, ad eum lēgātōs Iccium et Andocombogium, prīmōs cīvitātis, mīsērunt, quī dīcerent: 'Sē suaque omnia in fidem atque in potestātem populī Rōmānī permittere; neque sē cum reliquīs Belgīs cōnsēnsisse neque contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāsse, parātōsque esse et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et oppidīs recipere et frūmentō cēterīsque rēbus iuvāre; reliquōs omnīs Belgās in armīs esse, Germānōsque, quī cis Rhēnum incolant, sēsē cum hīs coniūnxisse, tantumque esse eōrum omnium furōrem ut nē Suessiōnēs quidem, frātrēs cōnsanguineōsque suōs, quī eōdem iūre et īsdem lēgibus ūtantur, ūnum imperium ūnumque magistrātum cum ipsīs habeant, dēterrēre potuerint quīn cum hīs cōnsentīrent.'

Organization and Strength of the Belgæ as told by the Remi.

4. Cum ab hīs quaereret quae cīvitātēs quantaeque in armīs essent et quid in bellō possent, sīc reperiēbat: plērōsque Belgās esse ortōs ab Germānīs, Rhēnumque antīquitus trāductōs propter locī fertilitātem ibi cōnsēdisse Gallōsque quī ea loca incolerent expulisse, sō-

lōsque esse quī patrum nostrōrum memoriā, omnī Galliā vexātā, Teutonōs Cimbrōsque intrā suōs fīnīs ingredī prohibuerint; quā ex rē fierī utī eārum rērum memoriā māgnam sibi auctōritātem māgnōsque spīritūs in rē mīlitārī sūmerent. Dē numerō eōrum omnia sē habēre explōrāta Rēmī dīcēbant, proptereā quod propinquitātibus adfīnitātibusque coniūnctī, quantam quisque multitūdinem in commūnī Belgārum conciliō ad id bellum pollicitus sit cōgnōverint. Plūrimum inter eōs Bellovacōs et virtūte et auctōritāte et hominum numerō valēre; hōs posse cōnficere armāta mīlia centum, pollicitōs ex eō numerō ēlēcta mīlia sexāgintā, tōtīusque bellī imperium sibi postulāre. Suessiōnēs suōs esse fīnitimōs; fīnīs lātissimōs ferācissimōsque agrōs possidēre. Apud eōs fuisse rēgem nostrā etiam memoriā Dīviciācum, tōtius Galliae potentissimum, quī cum māgnae partis hārum regiōnum tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinuerit; nunc esse rēgem Galbam; ad hunc propter iūstitiam prūdentiamque summam tōtīus bellī omnium voluntāte dēferrī; oppida habēre numerō XII, pollicērī mīlia armāta quīnquāgintā; totidem Nerviōs, quī māximē ferī inter ipsōs habeantur longissimēque absint; quīndecim mīlia Atrebātēs, Ambiānōs decem mīlia, Morinōs XXV mīlia, Menapiōs VII mīlia, Caletōs X mīlia, Veliocassēs et Viromanduōs totidem, Aduatucōs decem et novem mīlia; Condrūsōs, Eburōnēs, Caerōsōs, Paemānōs, quī ūnō nōmine Germānī appellantur, arbitrārī ad XL mīlia.

Cæsar takes up a Fortified Position beyond the Aisne.

5. Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus līberāliterque ōrātiōne prōsecūtus, omnem senātum ad sē convenīre prīnci-

pumque līberōs obsidēs ad sē addūcī iussit. Quae omnia ab hīs dīligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Dīviciācum Haeduum māgnopere cohortātus docet quantō opere reī pūblicae commūnisque salūtis intersit manūs hostium distinērī, nē cum tantā multitūdine ūnō tempore cōnflīgendum sit. Id fierī posse, sī suās cōpiās Haeduī in fīnīs Bellovacōrum intrōdūxerint et eōrum agrōs populārī coeperint. Hīs *datīs* mandātīs eum ā sē dīmittit. Postquam omnīs Belgārum cōpiās in ūnum locum coāctās ad sē venīre [vīdit] neque iam longē abesse ab eīs quōs mīserat explōrātōribus et ab Rēmīs cōgnōvit, flūmen Axonam, quod est in extrēmīs Rēmōrum fīnibus, exercitum trādūcere mātūrāvit atque ibi castra posuit. Quae rēs et latus ūnum castrōrum rīpīs flūminis mūniēbat et post eum quae erant tūta ab hostibus reddēbat, et commeātūs ab Rēmīs reliquīsque cīvitātibus ut sine periculō ad eum portārī possent efficiēbat. In eō flūmine pōns erat. Ibi praesidium pōnit et in alterā parte flūminis Q. Titūrium Sabīnum lēgātum cum sex cohortibus relinquit; castra in altitūdinem pedum XII vāllō fossāque duodēvīgintī pedum mūnīrī iubet.

Attack on Bibrax by the Belgæ.

6. Ab hīs castrīs oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine Bibrax aberat mīlia passuum octō. Id ex itinere māgnō impetū Belgae oppūgnāre coepērunt. Aegrē eō diē sustentātum est. Gallōrum eadem atque Belgārum oppūgnātiō est haec. Ubi circumiectā multitūdine hominum tōtīs moenibus undique in mūrum lapidēs iacī coeptī sunt mūrusque dēfēnsōribus nūdātus est, testūdine factā [portās] succēdunt mūrumque subruunt.

Quod tum facile fīēbat. Nam cum tanta multitūdō lapidēs āc tēla conicerent, in mūrō cōnsistendī potestās erat nūllī. Cum fīnem oppūgnandī nox fēcisset, Iccius Rēmus summā nōbilitāte et grātiā inter suōs, quī tum oppidō praeerat, ūnus ex eīs quī lēgātī dē pāce ad Caesarem vēnerant, nūntium ad eum mittit: nisi subsidium sibi submittātur, sēsē diūtius sustinēre nōn posse.

Cæsar relieves Bibrax, whereupon the Belgæ advance on his Camp.

7. Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar īsdem ducibus ūsus quī nūntiī ab Icciō vēnerant, Numidās et Crētās sagittāriōs et funditōrēs Baleārēs subsidiō oppidānīs mittit; quōrum adventū et Rēmīs cum spē dēfēnsiōnis studium prōpūgnandī accessit, et hostibus eādem dē causā spēs potiundī oppidī discessit. Itaque paulisper apud oppidum morātī agrōsque Rēmōrum dēpopulātī, omnibus vīcīs aedificiīsque quō adīre potuerant incēnsīs, ad castra Caesaris omnibus cōpiīs contendērunt et ā mīlibus passuum minus duōbus castra posuērunt; quae castra, ut fūmō atque ignibus sīgnificābātur, amplius mīlibus passuum octō in lātitūdinem patēbant.

Cæsar strengthens his Position.

8. Caesar prīmō et propter multitūdinem hostium et propter eximiam opīniōnem virtūtis proeliō supersedēre statuit; cotīdiē tamen equestribus proeliīs quid hostis virtūte posset et quid nostrī audērent perīclitābātur. Ubi nostrōs nōn esse īnferiōrēs intellēxit, locō prō castrīs ad aciem īnstruendam nātūrā opportūnō atque idōneō, — quod is collis ubi castra posita erant paululum

ex plānitiē ēditus, tantum adversus in lātitūdinem patēbat quantum locī aciēs īnstrūcta occupāre poterat, atque ex utrāque parte lateris dēiectūs habēbat et in fronte lēniter fastīgātus paulātim ad plānitiem redībat, — ab utrōque latere ēius collis trānsversam fossam obdūxit circiter passuum quadringentōrum et ad extrēmās fossās castella cōnstituit ibique tormenta conlocāvit, nē, cum aciem īnstrūxisset, hostēs, quod tantum multitūdine poterant, ab lateribus pūgnantīs suōs circumvenīre possent. Hōc factō duābus legiōnibus quās proximē cōnscrīpserat in castrīs relictīs, ut, sī quō opus esset, subsidiō dūcī possent, reliquās sex legiōnēs prō castrīs in aciē cōnstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpiās ex castrīs ēductās īnstrūxērunt.

The Belgæ try to cross the Aisne to attack Cæsar's Rear.

9. Palūs erat nōn māgna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Hanc sī nostrī trānsīrent hostēs exspectābant; nostrī autem, sī ab illīs initium trānseundī fieret, ut impedītōs adgrederentur parātī in armīs erant. Interim proeliō equestrī inter duās aciēs contendēbātur. Ubi neutrī trānseundī initium faciunt, secundiōre equitum proeliō nostrīs Caesar suōs in castra redūxit. Hostēs prōtinus ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt, quod esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum est. Ibi vadīs repertīs partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere cōnātī sunt, eō cōnsiliō ut, sī possent, castellum cui praeerat Q. Titūrius lēgātus expūgnārent pontemque interscinderent; sī minus potuissent, agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur, quī māgnō nōbīs ūsuī ad bellum gerendum erant, commeātūque nostrōs prohibērent.

The Belgæ are defeated and decide to disband.

10. *Caesar* certior factus ab Titūriō omnem equitātum et levis armātūrae Numidās, funditōrēs sagittāriōsque pontem trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit. Ācriter in eō locō pūgnātum est. Hostīs impedītōs nostrī in flūmine adgressī māgnum eōrum numerum occīdērunt; per eōrum corpora reliquōs audācissimē trānsīre cōnantīs multitūdine tēlōrum reppulērunt, prīmōsque, quī trānsierant, equitātū circumventōs interfēcērunt. Hostēs ubi et dē expūgnandō oppidō et dē flūmine trānseundō spem sē fefellisse intellēxērunt, neque nostrōs in locum inīquiōrem prōgredī pūgnandī causā vīdērunt, atque ipsōs rēs frūmentāria dēficere coepit, conciliō convocātō cōnstituērunt optimum esse domum suam quemque revertī, et, quōrum in fīnīs prīmum Rōmānī exercitum intrōdūxissent, ad eōs dēfendendōs undique convenīrent, ut potius in suīs quam in aliēnīs fīnibus dēcertārent et domesticīs cōpiīs reī frūmentāriae ūterentur. Ad eam sententiam cum reliquīs causīs haec quoque ratiō eōs dēdūxit, quod Dīviciācum atque Haeduōs fīnibus Bellovacōrum adpropinquāre cōgnōverant. Hīs persuādērī ut diūtius morārentur neque suīs auxilium ferrent nōn poterat.

Cæsar pursues them with Great Slaughter.

11. Eā rē cōnstitūtā secundā vigiliā māgnō cum strepitū āc tumultū castrīs ēgressī nūllō certō ōrdine neque imperiō, cum sibi quisque prīmum itineris locum peteret et domum pervenīre properāret, fēcērunt ut cōnsimilis fugae profectiō vidērētur. Hāc rē statim Caesar per speculātōrēs cōgnitā, īnsidiās veritus, quod quā dē causā discēderent nōndum perspēxerat,

exercitum equitātumque castrīs continuit. Prīmā lūce cōnfīrmātā rē ab explōrātōribus, omnem equitātum quī novissimum agmen morārētur praemīsit. Hīs Q. Pedium et L. Aurunculēium Cottam lēgātōs praefēcit; T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus subsequī iussit. Hī novissimōs adortī et multa mīlia passuum prōsecūtī māgnam multitūdinem eōrum fugientium concīdērunt; cum ab extrēmō agmine, ad quōs ventum erat, cōnsisterent fortiterque impetum nostrōrum mīlitum sustinērent, priōrēs, quod abesse ā perīculō vidērentur neque ūllā necessitāte neque imperiō continērentur, exaudītō clamōre perturbātīs ōrdinibus omnēs in fugā sibi praesidium pōnerent. Ita sine ūllō perīculō tantam eōrum multitūdinem nostrī interfēcērunt quantum fuit diēī spatium; sub occāsum sōlis sequī dēstitērunt sēque in castra, ut erat imperātum, recēpērunt.

Surrender of Noviodunum.

12. Postrīdiē ēius diēī Caesar, priusquam sē hostēs ex terrōre āc fugā reciperent, in fīnīs Suessiōnum, quī proximī Rēmīs erant, exercitum dūxit et māgnō itinere ad oppidum Noviodūnum contendit. Id ex itinere oppūgnāre cōnātus, quod vacuum ab dēfēnsōribus esse audiēbat, propter lātitūdinem fossae mūrīque altitūdinem paucīs dēfendentibus expūgnāre nōn potuit. Castrīs mūnītīs vīneās agere quaeque ad oppūgnandum ūsuī erant comparāre coepit. Interim omnis ex fugā Suessiōnum multitūdō in oppidum proximā nocte convēnit. Celeriter vīneīs ad oppidum āctīs, aggere iactō turribusque cōnstitūtīs, māgnitūdine operum, quae neque vīderant ante Gallī neque audierant, et celeritāte Rōmānōrum permōtī, lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē

dēditiōne mittunt et petentibus Rēmīs ut cōnservārentur impetrant.

Submission of the Bellovaci.

13. Caesar obsidibus acceptīs prīmīs cīvitātis atque ipsīus Galbae rēgis duōbus fīliīs, armīsque omnibus ex oppidō trāditīs in dēditiōnem Suessiōnēs accipit exercitumque in Bellovacōs dūcit. Quī cum sē suaque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent, atque ab eō oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter mīlia passuum quīnque abesset, omnēs māiōrēs nātū ex oppidō ēgressī manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce sīgnificāre coepērunt sēsē in ēius fidem āc potestātem venīre neque contrā populum Rōmānum armīs contendere. Item, cum ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, puerī mulierēsque ex mūrō passīs manibus suō mōre pācem ab Rōmānīs petiērunt.

Diviciacus intercedes for the Bellovaci.

14. Prō hīs Dīviciācus — nam post discessum Belgārum dīmissīs Haeduōrum cōpiīs ad eum reverterat — facit verba: ‘Bellovacōs omnī tempore in fidē atque amīcitiā cīvitātis Haeduae fuisse; impulsōs ab suīs prīncipibus, quī dīcerent Haeduōs ā Caesare in servitūtem redāctōs omnīs indīgnitātīs contumēliāsque perferre, et ab Haeduīs dēfēcisse et populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse. Quī ēius cōnsilī prīncipēs fuissent, quod intellegerent quantam calamitātem cīvitātī intulissent, in Britanniam profūgisse. Petere nōn sōlum Bellovacōs sed etiam prō hīs Haeduōs ut suā clēmentiā āc mānsuētūdine in eōs ūtātur. Quod sī fēcerit, Haeduōrum auctōritātem apud omnīs Belgās amplifi-

cātūrum, quōrum auxiliīs atque opibus, sī qua bella inciderint, sustentāre cōnsuērint.'

Surrender of the Ambiani. Their Description of the Nervii.

15. Caesar honōris Dīviciācī atque Haeduōrum causā sēsē eōs in fidem receptūrum et cōnservātūrum dīxit, et quod erat cīvitās māgnā inter Belgās auctōritāte atque hominum multitūdine praestābat, sexcentōs obsidēs poposcit. Hīs trāditīs omnibusque armīs ex oppidō conlātīs, ab eō locō in fīnīs Ambiānōrum pervēnit, quī sē suaque omnia sine morā dēdidērunt. Eōrum fīnīs Nerviī attingēbant; quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sīc reperiēbat: Nūllum aditum esse ad eōs mercātōribus; nihil patī vīnī reliquārumque rērum ad lūxuriam pertinentium īnferrī, quod hīs rēbus relanguēscere animōs et remittī virtūtem exīstimārent; esse hominēs ferōs māgnaeque virtūtis; increpitāre atque incūsāre reliquōs Belgās, quī sē populō Rōmānō dēdidissent patriamque virtūtem prōiēcissent; cōnfīrmāre sēsē neque lēgātōs missūrōs neque ūllam condiciōnem pācis acceptūrōs.

Preparations of the Nervii to receive the Romans.

16. Cum per eōrum fīnīs trīduum iter fēcisset, inveniebat ex captīvīs Sabim flūmen ā castrīs suīs nōn amplius mīlia passuum x abesse; trāns id flūmen omnīs Nerviōs cōnsēdisse adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum exspectāre ūnā cum Atrebātibus et Viromanduīs, fīnitimīs suīs (nam hīs utrīsque persuāserant utī eandem bellī fortūnam experīrentur); exspectārī etiam ab eīs Aduatucōrum cōpiās atque esse in itinere; mulierēs quīque per aetātem ad pūgnam inūtilēs vidērentur in

eum locum coniēcisse, quō propter palūdēs exercituī aditus nōn esset.

Their Plan of Attack.

17. Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs explōrātōrēs centuriōnēsque praemittit quī locum castrīs idōneum dēligant. Cum ex dēditiciīs Belgīs reliquīsque Gallīs complūrēs Caesarem secūtī ūnā iter facerent, quīdam ex hīs, ut posteā ex captīvīs cōgnitum est, eōrum diērum cōnsuētūdine itineris nostrī exercitūs perspectā, nocte ad Nerviōs pervēnērunt; atque hīs dēmōnstrārunt inter singulās legiōnēs impedīmentōrum māgnum numerum intercēdere, neque esse quicquam negōtī, cum prīma legiō in castra vēnisset reliquaeque legiōnēs māgnum spatium abessent, hanc sub sarcinīs adorīrī; quā pulsā impedīmentīsque dīreptīs futūrum ut reliquae contrā cōnsistere nōn audērent. Adiuvābat etiam eōrum cōnsilium quī rem dēferēbant, quod Nerviī antīquitus, cum equitātū nihil possent (neque enim ad hōc tempus eī reī student, sed quicquid possunt pedestribus valent cōpiīs), quō facilius fīnitimōrum equitātum, sī praedandī causā ad eōs vēnissent, impedīrent, tenerīs arboribus incīsīs atque īnflexīs, crēbrīsque in lātitūdinem rāmīs ēnātīs, et rubīs sentibusque interiectīs, effēcerant ut īnstar mūrī hae saepēs mūnīmenta praebērent, quō nōn modo nōn intrārī sed nē perspicī quidem posset. Hīs rēbus cum iter agminis nostrī impedīrētur, nōn omittendum sibi cōnsilium Nerviī exīstimāvērunt.

Site of the Roman Camp.

18. Locī nātūra erat haec quem locum nostrī castrīs dēlēgerant. Collis ab summō aequāliter dēclīvis ad

flūmen Sabim, quod suprā nōmināvimus, vergēbat. Ab eō flūmine parī acclīvitāte collis nāscēbātur adversus huic et contrārius, passūs circiter ducentōs īnfimus apertus, ab superiōre parte silvestris, ut nōn facile intrōrsus perspicī posset. Intrā eās silvās hostēs in occultō sēsē continēbant; in apertō locō secundum flūmen paucae statiōnēs equitum vidēbantur. Flūminis erat altitūdō pedum circiter trium.

The Nervii make a Fierce Attack and throw the Legions into Confusion.

19. Caesar equitātū praemissō subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiīs; sed ratiō ōrdōque agminis aliter sē habēbat āc Belgae ad Nerviōs dētulerant. Nam quod hostibus adpropinquābat, cōnsuētūdine suā Caesar sex legiōnēs expedītās dūcēbat; post eās totīus exercitūs impedīmenta conlocārat; inde duae legiōnēs quae proximē cōnscrīptae erant tōtum agmen claudēbant praesidiōque impedīmentīs erant. Equitēs nostrī cum funditōribus sagittāriīsque flūmen trānsgressī cum hostium equitātū proelium commīsērunt. Cum sē illī identidem in silvās ad suōs reciperent āc rūrsus ex silvā in nostrōs impetum facerent, neque nostrī longius quam quem ad fīnem porrēcta loca aperta pertinēbant cēdentīs īnsequī audērent, interim legiōnēs sex quae prīmae vēnerant opere dīmēnsō castra mūnīre coepērunt. Ubi prīma impedīmenta nostrī exercitūs ab eīs quī in silvīs abditī latēbant vīsa sunt, quod tempus inter eōs committendī proelī convēnerat, ut intrā silvās aciem ōrdinēsque cōnstituerant atque ipsī sēsē cōnfīrmāverant, subitō omnibus cōpiīs prōvolāvērunt impetumque in nostrōs equitēs fēcērunt. Hīs facile

pulsīs āc prōturbātīs, incrēdibilī celeritāte ad flūmen dēcucurrērunt, ut paene ūnō tempore et ad silvās et in flūmine [et iam in manibus nostrīs] hostēs vidērentur. Eādem autem celeritāte adversō colle ad nostra castra atque eōs quī in opere occupātī erant contendērunt.

The Romans are in a Tight Place, but Discipline restores Order.

20. Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda; vēxillum prōpōnendum (quod erat īnsigne cum ad arma concurrī oportēret), sīgnum tubā dandum, ab opere revocandī mīlitēs, quī paulō longius aggeris petendī causā prōcesserant arcessendī, aciēs īnstruenda, mīlitēs cohortandī, sīgnum dandum. Quārum rērum māgnam partem temporis brevitās et successus hostium impediēbat. Hīs difficultātibus duae rēs erant subsidiō, — scientia atque ūsus mīlitum, quod superiōribus proeliīs exercitātī quid fierī oportēret nōn minus commodē ipsī sibi praescrībere quam ab aliīs docērī poterant; et quod ab opere singulīsque legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs Caesar discēdere nisi mūnītīs castrīs vetuerat. Hī propter propinquitātem et celeritātem hostium nihil iam Caesaris imperium exspectābant, sed per sē quae vidēbantur administrābant.

Cæsar hurries about and encourages his Men.

21. Caesar necessāriīs rēbus imperātīs ad cohortandōs mīlitēs quam in partem fors obtulit dēcucurrit, et ad legiōnem decimam dēvēnit. Mīlitēs nōn longiōre ōrātiōne cohortātus quam utī suae prīstinae virtūtis memoriam retinērent neu perturbārentur animō hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinērent, quod nōn longius

hostēs aberant quam quō tēlum adicī posset, proelī committendī sīgnum dedit. Atque in alteram partem item cohortandi causā profectus, pūgnantibus occurrit. Temporis tanta fuit exiguitās hostiumque tam parātus ad dīmicandum animus ut nōn modo ad īnsīgnia accommodanda sed etiam ad galeās induendās scūtīsque tegimenta dētrahenda tempus dēfuerit. Quam quisque ab opere in partem cāsū dēvēnit, quaeque prima sīgna cōnspēxit ad haec cōnstitit, nē in quaerendīs suīs pūgnandī tempus dīmitteret.

Fighting under Difficulties.

22. Īnstrūctō exercitū magis ut locī nātūra dēiectusque collis et necessitās temporis quam ut reī mīltāris ratiō atque ōrdō postulābat, cum dīversae legiōnēs aliae aliā in parte hostibus resisterent, saepibusque dēnsissimīs (ut ante dēmōnstrāvimus) interiectīs prōspectus impedīrētur, neque certa subsidia conlocārī neque quid in quāque parte opus esset prōvidērī neque ab ūnō omnia imperia administrārī poterant. Itaque in tantā rērum inīquitāte fortūnae quoque ēventūs variī sequēbantur.

The Romans rout the Atrebates, but the Nervii gain the Camp.

23. Legiōnis nōnae et decimae mīlitēs, ut in sinistrā parte aciē cōnstiterant, pīlīs ēmissīs cursū āc lassitūdine exanimātōs volneribusque cōnfectōs Atrebātēs — nam hīs ea pars obvēnerat — celeriter ex locō superiōre in flūmen compulērunt, et trānsīre cōnantīs īnsecūtī gladiīs māgnam partem eōrum impedītam interfēcērunt. Ipsī trānsīre flūmen nōn dubitāvērunt, et in locum inīquum prōgressī rūrsus resistentīs hostīs red-

integrātō proeliō in fugam coniēcērunt. Item aliā in parte dīversae duae legiōnēs, ūndecima et octāva, prōflīgātīs Viromanduīs, quibuscum erant congressī, ex locō superiōre in ipsīs flūminis rīpīs proeliābantur. At tōtīs ferē castrīs ā fronte et ab sinistrā parte nūdātīs, cum in dextrō cornū legiō duodecima et nōn māgnō ab eā intervāllō septima cōnstitisset, omnēs Nerviī cōnfertissimō agmine duce Boduōgnātō, quī summam imperī tenēbat, ad eum locum contendērunt; quōrum pars apertō latere legiōnēs circumvenīre, pars summum castrōrum locum petere coepit.

Desperate Situation of the Romans. The Treveri, Panic-stricken, withdraw to their Homes.

24. Eōdem tempore equitēs nostrī levisque armātūrae peditēs, quī cum eīs ūnā fuerant, quōs prīmō hostium impetū pulsōs dīxeram, cum sē in castra reciperent, adversīs hostibus occurrēbant āc rūrsus aliam in partem fugam petēbant; et cālōnēs, quī ab decumānā portā āc summō iugō collis nostrōs victōrēs flūmen trānsīsse cōnspēxerant, praedandī causā ēgressī, cum respēxissent et hostīs in nostrīs castrīs versārī vīdissent, praecipitēs fugae sēsē mandābant. Simul eōrum quī cum impedīmentīs veniēbant clāmor fremitusque oriēbātur, aliīque aliam in partem perterritī ferēbantur. Quibus omnibus rēbus permōtī equitēs Treverī, quōrum inter Gallōs virtūtis opīniō est singulāris, quī auxilī causā ā cīvitāte missī ad Caesarem vēnerant, cum multitūdine hostium castra complērī, legiōnēs premī et paene circumventās tenērī, cālōnēs, equitēs, funditōrēs, Numidās dispersōs dissipātōsque in omnīs partīs fugere vīdissent, dēspērātīs nostrīs



THE RUINS OF THE TEMPLE OF CASTOR AND POLLUX

rēbus domum contendērunt; Rōmānōs pulsōs superātōsque, castrīs impedīmentīsque eōrum hostīs potītōs, cīvitātī renūntiāvērunt.

Cæsar turns the Tide by appearing in Person to animate his Men.

25. Caesar ab decimae legiōnis cohortātiōne ad dextrum cornū profectus, ubi suōs urgērī sīgnīsque in ūnum locum conlātīs duodecimae legiōnis cōnfertōs mīlitēs sibi ipsōs ad pūgnam esse impedīmentō vīdit, — quartae cohortis omnibus centuriōnibus occīsīs, sīgniferō interfectō, sīgnō āmissō, reliquārum cohortium omnibus ferē centuriōnibus aut volnerātīs aut occīsīs, in hīs prīmipīlō P. Sextiō Baculō, fortissimō virō, multīs gravibusque volneribus cōnfectō, ut iam sē sustinēre nōn posset; reliquōs esse tardiōrēs et nōn nūllōs ab novissimīs dēsertō proeliō excēdere āc tēla vītāre, hostīs neque ā fronte ex īnferiōre locō subeuntīs intermittere et ab utrōque latere īnstāre, et rem esse in angustō vīdit neque ūllum esse subsidium quod submittī posset, — scūtō ab novissimīs [ūnī] mīlitī dētrāctō, quod ipse eō sine scūtō vēnerat, in prīmam aciem prōcessit; centuriōnibusque nōminātim appellātīs reliquōs cohortātus mīlitēs sīgna īnferre et manipulōs laxāre iussit, quō facilius gladiīs ūtī possent. Cūius adventū spē inlātā mīlitibus āc redintegrātō animō, cum prō sē quisque in cōnspectū imperātōris etiam in extrēmīs suīs rēbus operam nāvāre cuperet, paulum hostium impetus tardātus est.

Labienus sends Reinforcements.

26. Caesar cum septimam legiōnem, quae iūxtā cōnstiterat, item urgērī ab hoste vīdisset, tribūnōs

mīlitum monuit ut paulātim sēsē legiōnēs coniungerent et conversa sīgna in hostīs īnferrent. Quō factō, cum alius aliī subsidium ferret neque timērent nē āversī ab hoste circumvenīrentur, audācius resistere āc fortius pūgnāre coepērunt. Interim mīlitēs legiōnum duārum quae in novissimō agmine praesidiō impedīmentīs fuerant, proeliō nūntiātō, cursū incitātō in summō colle ab hostibus cōnspiciēbantur; et T. Labiēnus castrīs hostium potītus et ex locō superiōre quae rēs in nostrīs castrīs gererentur cōnspicātus, decimam legiōnem subsidiō nostrīs mīsit. Qui, cum ex equitum et cālōnum fugā quō in locō rēs esset quantōque in perīculō et castra et legiōnēs et imperātor versārētur cōgnōvissent, nihil ad celeritātem sibi reliquī fēcērunt.

The Romans at last gain the Day. Cæsar's Tribute to Foemen worthy of his Steel.

27. Hōrum adventū tanta rērum commūtātiō est facta ut nostrī, etiam quī volneribus cōnfectī prōcubuissent, scūtīs innīxī proelium redintegrārent, cālōnēs perterritōs hostīs cōnspicātī etiam inermēs armātīs occurrerent; equitēs vērō, ut turpitūdinem fugae virtūte dēlērent, omnibus in locīs pūgnant, quō sē legiōnāriīs mīlitibus praeferrent. At hostēs etiam in extrēmā spē salūtis tantam virtūtem praestitērunt ut, cum prīmī eōrum cecidissent, proximī iacentibus īnsisterent atque ex eōrum corporibus pūgnārent; hīs dēiectīs et coacervātīs cadāveribus, quī superessent ut ex tumulō tēla in nostrōs conicerent et pīla intercepta remitterent; ut nōn nēquīquam tantae virtūtis hominēs iūdicārī dēbēret ausōs esse trānsīre lātissimum flūmen, ascendere altissimās rīpās, subīre inīquissimum

locum; quae facilia ex difficillimīs animī māgnitūdō redēgerat.

Practical Annihilation of the Nervii.

28. Hōc proeliō factō et prope ad interneciōnem gente āc nōmine Nerviōrum redāctō, māiōrēs nātū, quōs ūnā cum puerīs mulieribusque in aestuāria āc palūdēs coniectōs dīxerāmus, hāc pūgnā nūntiātā, cum victōribus nihil impedītum, victīs nihil tūtum arbitrārentur, omnium quī supererant cōnsēnsū lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt sēque eī dēdidērunt; et, in commemorandā cīvitātis calamitāte, ex sexcentīs ad trīs senātōrēs, ex hominum mīlibus LX vix ad quīngentōs quī arma ferre possent sēsē redāctōs esse dīxērunt. Quōs Caesar, ut in miserōs āc supplicēs ūsus misericordiā vidērētur, dīligentissimē cōnservāvit suīsque fīnibus atque oppidīs ūtī iussit, et fīnitimīs imperāvit ut ab iniūriā et maleficiō sē suōsque prohibērent.

The Aduatuci in a Stronghold await Cæsar's Approach.

29. Aduatucī, dē quibus suprā dīximus, cum omnibus cōpiīs auxiliō Nerviīs venīrent, hāc pūgnā nūntiātā ex itinere domum revertērunt; cūnctīs oppidīs castellīsque dēsertīs sua omnia in ūnum oppidum ēgregiē nātūrā mūnītum contulērunt. Quod cum ex omnibus in circuitū partibus altissimās rupīs dēspectūsque habēret, ūnā ex parte lēniter acclivis aditus in lātitūdinem nōn amplius pedum CC relinquēbātur; quem locum duplicī altissimō mūrō mūnierant; tum māgnī ponderis saxa et praeacūtās trabīs in mūrō conlocābant. Ipsī erant ex Cimbrīs Teutonīsque prōgnātī, quī, cum iter in prōvinciam nostram atque Ītaliam

facerent, eīs impedīmentīs quae sēcum agere āc portāre nōn poterant citrā flūmen Rhēnum dēpositīs, custōdiam ex suīs āc praesidium sex mīlia hominum ūnā relīquerant. Hī post eōrum obitum multōs annōs ā fīnitimīs exagitātī, cum aliās bellum īnferrent aliās inlātum dēfenderent, cōnsēnsū eōrum omnium pāce factā hunc sibi domiciliō locum dēlēgerant.

They jeer at the Romans from the Walls.

30. Āc prīmō adventū exercitūs nostrī crēbrās ex oppidō excursiōnēs faciēbant parvulīsque proeliīs cum nostrīs contendēbant; posteā vāllō pedum XII, in circuitū XV mīlium, crēbrīsque castellīs circummūnītī oppidō sēsē continēbant. Ubi vīneīs āctīs aggere exstrūctō turrim procul cōnstituī vīdērunt, prīmum īnrīdēre ex mūrō atque increpitāre vōcibus quod tanta māchinātiō ab tantō spatiō īnstituerētur: 'Quibusnam manibus aut quibus vīribus praesertim hominēs tantulae statūrae'—nam plērumque hominibus Gallīs prae māgnitūdine corporum suōrum brevitās nostra contemptuī est—'tantī oneris turrim in mūrō sēsē conlocāre cōnfīderent?'

But becoming alarmed they offer to surrender conditionally.

31. Ubi vērō movērī et adpropinquāre moenibus vīdērunt, novā atque inūsitātā speciē commōtī lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce mīsērunt, quī ad hunc modum locūtī: 'Nōn exīstimāre Rōmānōs sine ope dīvīnā bellum gerere, quī tantae altitūdinis māchinātiōnēs tantā celeritāte prōmovēre possent; sē suaque omnia eōrum potestātī permittere' dīxērunt. 'Ūnum petere āc dēprecārī: sī forte prō suā clēmentiā āc mānsuētū-

dine, quam ipsī ab aliīs audīrent, statuisset Aduatucōs esse cōnservandōs, nē sē armīs dēspoliāret. Sibi omnīs ferē fīnitimōs esse inimīcōs āc suae virtūtī invidēre; ā quibus sē dēfendere trāditīs armīs nōn possent. Sibi praestāre, sī in eum cāsum dēdūcerentur, quamvīs fortūnam ā populō Rōmānō patī quam ab hīs per cruciātum interficī inter quōs dominārī cōnsuēssent.'

They accept Cæsar's Terms, but secretly retain many of their Arms.

32. Ad haec Caesar respondit: 'Sē magis cōnsuētūdine suā quam meritō eōrum cīvitātem cōnservātūrum, sī, prius quam mūrum aries attigisset, sē dēdidissent; sed dēditiōnis nūllam esse condiciōnem nisi armīs trāditīs. Sē id quod in Nerviīs fēcisset factūrum, fīnitimīsque imperātūrum nē quam dēditiciīs populī Rōmānī iniūriam īnferrent.' Rē nūntiātā ad suōs, quae imperārentur facere dīxērunt. Armōrum māgnā multitūdine dē mūrō in fossam quae erat ante oppidum iactā, sīc ut prope summam mūrī aggerisque altitūdinem acervī armōrum adaequārent, et tamen circiter parte tertiā, ut posteā perspectum est, cēlātā atque in oppidō retentā, portīs patēfactīs eō diē pāce sunt ūsī.

Cæsar repulses their Sortie and sells more than Fifty Thousand into Slavery.

33. Sub vesperum Cæsar portās claudī mīlitēsque ex oppidō exīre iussit, nē quam noctū oppidānī ā mīlitibus iniūriam acciperent. Illī ante initō (ut intellēctum est) cōnsiliō, quod dēditiōne factā nostrōs praesidia dēductūrōs aut dēnique indīligentius servātūrōs crēdiderant, — partim cum eīs quae retinuerant

et cēlāverant armīs, partim scutīs ex cortice factīs aut vīminibus intextīs, quae subitō, ut temporis exiguitās postulābat, pellibus indūxerant, — tertiā vigiliā, quā minimē arduus ad nostrās mūnītiōnēs ascēnsus vidēbātur, omnibus cōpiīs repente ex oppidō ēruptiōnem fēcērunt. Celeriter, ut ante Caesar imperārat, īgnibus sīgnificātiōne factā, ex proximīs castellīs eō concursum est, pūgnātumque ab hostibus ita ācriter est ut ā virīs fortibus in extrēmā spē salūtis, inīquō locō, contrā eōs quī ex vāllō turribusque tēla iacerent, pūgnārī dēbuit, cum in ūnā virtūte omnis spēs cōnsisteret. Occīsīs ad hominum mīlibus quattuor reliquī in oppidum reiectī sunt. Postrīdiē ēius diēī refrāctīs portīs, cum iam dēfenderet nēmō, atque intrōmissīs mīlitibus nostrīs, sectiōnem ēius oppidī ūniversam Caesar vēndidit. Ab eīs quī ēmerant capitum numerus ad eum relātus est mīlium quīnquāgintā trium.

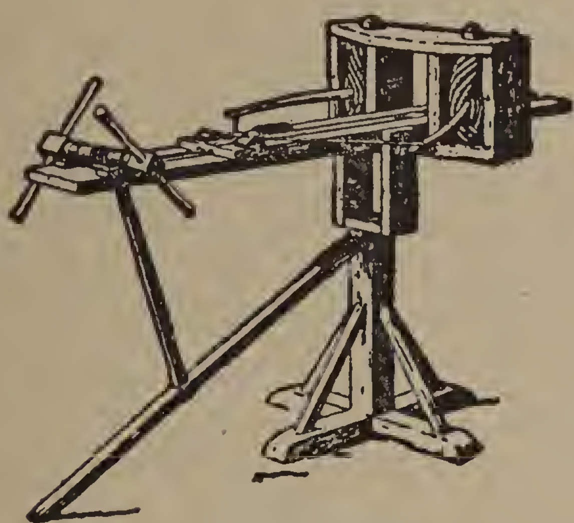
Crassus reduces several Maritime States.

34. Eōdem tempore ā P. Crassō, quem cum legiōne ūnā mīserat ad Venetōs, Venellōs, Osismōs, Coriosolitas, Esuviōs, Aulercōs, Redonēs, quae sunt maritimae cīvitātēs Oceanumque attingunt, certior factus est omnīs eās cīvitātīs in diciōnem potestātemque populī Rōmānī esse redāctās.

The Army goes into Winter Quarters. A Thanksgiving for Cæsar's Victories is officially celebrated at Rome.

35. Hīs rēbus gestīs, omnī Galliā pācātā, tanta hūius bellī ad barbarōs opīniō perlāta est utī ab eīs nātiōnibus quae trāns Rhēnum incolerent lēgātī ad Caesarem mitterentur quī sē obsidēs datūrās, imperāta

factūrās pollicērentur. Quās lēgātiōnēs Caesar, quod in Ītaliam Īllyricumque properābat, initā proximā aestāte ad sē revertī iussit. Ipse, in Carnutēs, Andēs, Turonōs, quaeque cīvitātēs propinquae eīs locīs erant ubi bellum gesserat, legiōnibus in hīberna dēductīs, in Ītaliam profectus est. Ob eāsque rēs ex litterīs Caesaris diēs quīndecim supplicātiō dēcrēta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nūllī.



Tormentum.



Tubicinēs.

BOOK III.

Cæsar's Third Campaign. B.C. 56.

Galba is stationed at Octodurus to guard the Passes of the Alps.

CUM in Ītaliam proficīscerētur Caesar, Ser. Galbam cum legiōne XII et parte equitātūs in Nantuātīs, Veragrōs Sedūnōsque mīsit, quī ā fīnibus Allobrogum et lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō ad summās Alpīs pertinent. Causa mittendī fuit quod iter per Alpīs, quō māgnō cum perīculō māgnīsque cum portōriīs mercātōrēs īre cōnsuērant, patēfierī volēbat. Huic permīsit, sī opus esse arbitrārētur, utī in hīs locīs legiōnem hiemandī causā conlocāret. Galba, secundīs aliquot proeliīs factīs castellīsque complūribus eōrum expūgnātīs, missīs ad eum undique lēgātīs obsidibusque datīs et pāce factā, cōnstituit cohortīs duās in Nantuātibus conlocāre et ipse cum reliquīs ēius legiōnis cohortibus in vīcō Veragrōrum, quī appellātur Octodūrus, hiemāre; quī vīcus positus in valle, nōn māgnā adiectā plānitiē, altissimīs montibus undique continētur. Cum hīc in duās partīs flūmine dīviderētur, alteram partem ēius vīcī Gallīs [ad hiemandum] concessit, alteram vacuam ab hīs relictam cohortibus attribuit. Eum locum vallō fossāque mūnīvit.

The Mountain Tribes seize the Neighboring Heights.

2. Cum diēs hībernōrum complūrēs trānsīssent frūmentumque eō comportārī iussisset, subitō per explōrātōrēs certior factus est ex eā parte vīcī quam Gallīs concesserat omnīs noctū discessisse, montīsque quī impendērent ā māximā multitūdine Sedūnōrum et Veragrōrum tenērī. Id aliquot dē causīs acciderat ut subitō Gallī bellī renovandī legiōnisque opprimendae cōnsilium caperent: prīmum, quod legiōnem — neque eam plēnissimam, dētrāctīs cohortibus duābus et complūribus singillātim, quī commeātūs petendī causā missī erant — propter paucitātem dēspiciēbant; tum etiam quod propter inīquitātem locī, cum ipsī ex montibus in vallem dēcurrerent et tēla conicerent, nē prīmum quidem posse impetum suum sustinērī exīstimābant. Accēdēbat quod suōs ab sē līberōs abstrāctōs obsidum nōmine dolēbant, et Rōmānōs nōn sōlum itinerum causā sed etiam perpetuae possessiōnis culmina Alpium occupāre cōnārī et ea loca fīnitimae prōvinciae adiungere sibi persuāsum habēbant.

A Council of War votes to defend the Camp, if Possible.

3. Hīs nūntiīs acceptīs Galba, cum neque opus hībernōrum mūnītiōnēsque plēnē essent perfectae neque dē frūmentō reliquōque commeātū satis esset prōvīsum, quod dēditiōne factā obsidibusque acceptīs nihil dē bellō timendum exīstimāverat, cōnciliō celeriter convocātō sententiās exquīrere coepit. Quō in cōnciliō, cum tantum repentīnī perīculī praeter opīniōnem accidisset, āc iam omnia ferē superiōra loca multitūdine armātōrum complēta cōnspicerentur, neque subsidiō venīrī neque commeātūs supportārī interclūsīs

itineribus possent, prope iam dēspērātā salūte nōn nūllae ēius modī sententiae dīcēbantur ut, impedīmentīs relictīs ēruptiōne factā, īsdem itineribus quibus eō pervēnissent ad salūtem contenderent. Māiōrī tamen partī placuit hōc reservātō ad extrēmum cōnsiliō interim reī ēventum experīrī et castra dēfendere.

The Romans fight against Heavy Odds.

4. Brevī spatiō interiectō, vix ut eīs rēbus quās cōnstituissent conlocandīs atque administrandīs tempus darētur, hostēs ex omnibus partibus sīgnō datō dēcurrere, lapidēs gaesaque in vāllum conicere. Nostrī prīmō integrīs vīribus fortiter prōpūgnāre neque ūllum frūstrā tēlum ex locō superiōre mittere, et quaecumque pars castrōrum nūdāta dēfēnsōribus premī vidēbātur, eō occurrere et auxilium ferre; sed hōc superārī quod diūturnitāte pūgnae hostēs dēfessī proeliō excēdēbant, aliī integrīs vīribus succēdēbant: quārum rērum ā nostrīs propter paucitātem fierī nihil poterat, āc nōn modo dēfessō ex pūgnā excēdendī, sed nē sauciō quidem ēius locī ubi cōnstiterat relinquendī āc suī recipiendī facultās dabātur.

After Six Hours of Desperate Fighting the Romans resolve on a Sortie.

5. Cum iam amplius hōrīs sex continenter pūgnārētur āc nōn sōlum vīrēs sed etiam tēla nostrōs dēficerent, atque hostēs ācrius īnstārent languidiōribusque nostrīs vāllum scindere et fossās complēre coepissent, rēsque esset iam ad extrēmum perducta cāsum, P. Sextius Baculus, prīmī pīlī centuriō, quem Nervicō proeliō complūribus cōnfectum volneribus dīximus, et item C. Volusēnus, tribūnus mīlitum, vir et cōnsilī māgnī et

virtūtis, ad Galbam accurrunt atque ūnam esse spem salūtis docent, sī ēruptiōne factā extrēmum auxilium experīrentur. Itaque convocātīs centuriōnibus celeriter mīlitēs certiōrēs facit paulisper intermitterent proelium, āc tantummodō tēla missa exciperent sēque ex labōre reficerent; post datō sīgnō ex castrīs ērumperent atque omnem spem salūtis in virtūte pōnerent.

Defeat of the Gauls. Galba withdraws to the Province.

6. Quod iūssī sunt faciunt āc subitō omnibus portīs ēruptiōne factā neque cōgnōscendī quid fieret neque suī conligendī hostibus facultātem relinquunt. Ita commūtātā fortūnā eōs quī in spem potiundōrum castrōrum vēnerant undique circumventōs interficiunt; et ex hominum mīlibus amplius xxx, quem numerum barbarōrum ad castra vēnisse cōnstābat, plūs tertiā parte interfectā reliquōs perterritōs in fugam coniciunt āc nē in locīs quidem superiōribus cōnsistere patiuntur. Sīc omnibus hostium cōpiīs fūsīs armīsque exūtīs sē intrā mūnītiōnēs suās recipiunt. Quō proeliō factō, quod saepius fortūnam temptāre Galba nōlēbat, atque aliō sē in hīberna cōnsiliō vēnisse meminerat, aliīs occurrisse rēbus vīderat, māximē frūmentī commeātūsque inopiā permōtus, posterō diē omnibus ēius vīcī aedificiīs incēnsīs in prōvinciam revertī contendit, āc nūllō hoste prohibente aut iter dēmorante incolumem legiōnem in Nantuātīs, inde in Allobrogēs perdūxit ibique hiemāvit.

Crassus sends Messengers to collect Supplies among the Maritime Tribes.

7. Hīs rēbus gestīs cum omnibus dē causīs Caesar pācātam Galliam exīstimāret [superātīs Belgīs, ex-

pulsīs Germānīs, victīs in Alpibus Sedūnīs], atque ita initā hieme in Īllyricum profectus esset, quod eās quoque nātiōnēs adīre et regiōnēs cōgnōscere volēbat, subitum bellum in Galliā coörtum est. Ēius bellī haec fuit causa. P. Crassus adulēscēns cum legiōne VII proximus mare Ōceanum in Andibus hiemābat. Is, quod in hīs locīs inopia frūmentī erat, praefectōs tribūnōsque mīlitum complūrīs in fīnitimās cīvitātīs frūmentī causā dīmīsit; quō in numerō erat T. Terrasidius missus in Esuviōs, M. Trebius Gallus in Coriosolitas, Q. Velānius cum T. Sīliō in Venetōs.

The Veneti seize the Roman Envoys and instigate other Tribes to oppose the Romans.

8. Hūius est cīvitātis longē amplissima auctōritās omnis ōrae maritimae regiōnum eārum, quod et nāvīs habent Venetī plūrimās, quibus in Britanniam nāvigāre cōnsuērunt, et scientiā atque ūsū rērum nauticārum cēterōs antecēdunt, et in māgnō impetū maris *vāstī* atque apertī paucīs portibus interiectīs, quōs tenent ipsī, omnīs ferē quī eō marī ūtī cōnsuērunt habent vectīgālīs. Ab hīs fit initium retinendī Sīlī atque Velānī, quod per eōs suōs sē obsidēs quōs Crassō dedissent recuperātūrōs exīstimābant. Hōrum auctōritāte fīnitimī adductī (ut sunt Gallōrum subita et repentīna cōnsilia), eādem dē causā Trebium Terrasidiumque retinent; et celeriter missīs lēgātīs per suōs prīncipēs inter sē coniūrant nihil nisi commūnī cōnsiliō āctūrōs eundemque omnis fortūnae exitum esse lātūrōs; reliquāsque cīvitātēs sollicitant ut in eā lībertāte quam ā māiōribus accēperint permanēre quam Rōmānōrum servitūtem perferre mālint. Omnī ōrā maritimā cele-

riter ad suam sententiam perductā commūnem lēgātiōnem ad P. Crassum mittunt: 'Sī velit suōs recipere, obsidēs sibi remittat.'

Both Sides prepare for War.

9. Quibus dē rēbus Caesar ab Crassō certior factus, quod ipse aberat longius, nāvīs interim longās aedificārī in flūmine Ligerī, quod īnfluit in Ōceanum, rēmigēs ex prōvinciā īnstituī, nautās gubernātōrēsque comparārī iubet. Hīs rēbus celeriter administrātīs ipse, cum prīmum per annī tempus potuit, ad exercitum contendit. Venetī reliquaeque item cīvitātēs cōgnitō Caesaris adventū [certiōrēs factī], simul quod quantum in sē facinus admīsissent intellegēbant, lēgātōs — quod nōmen ad omnīs nātiōnēs sānctum inviolātumque semper fuisset — retentōs ab sē et in vincula coniectōs, prō māgnitūdine perīculī bellum parāre et māximē ea quae ad ūsum nāvium pertinent prōvidēre īnstituunt, hōc māiōre spē quod multum nātūrā locī cōnfīdēbant. Pedestria esse itinera concīsa aestuāriīs, nāvigātiōnem impedītam propter īnscientiam locōrum paucitātemque portuum sciēbant, neque nostrōs exercitūs propter frūmentī inopiam diūtius apud sē morārī posse cōnfīdēbant; āc iam ut omnia contrā opīniōnem acciderent, tamen sē plūrimum nāvibus posse, Rōmānōs neque ūllam facultātem habēre nāvium, neque eōrum locōrum ubi bellum gestūrī essent vada, portūs, īnsulās nōvisse; āc longē aliam esse nāvigātiōnem in conclūsō marī atque in vāstissimō atque apertissimō Ōceanō perspiciēbant. Hīs initīs cōnsiliīs oppida mūniunt, frūmenta ex agrīs in oppida comportant, nāvīs in Venetiam, ubi Caesarem prīmum bellum gestūrum

cōnstābat, quam plūrimās possunt cōgunt. Sociōs sibi ad id bellum Osismōs, Lexoviōs, Namnetēs, Ambiliātōs, Morinōs, Diablintēs, Menapiōs adscīscunt; auxilia ex Britanniā, quae contrā eās regiōnēs posita est, arcessunt.

Cæsar's Reasons for carrying on the War.

10. Erant hae difficultātēs bellī gerendī quās suprā ostendimus, sed tamen multa Caesarem ad id bellum incitābant: iniūria retentōrum equitum Rōmānōrum, rebelliō facta post dēditiōnem, dēfectiō datīs obsidibus tot cīvitātum coniūrātiō, imprīmīs nē hāc parte neglēctā reliquae nātiōnēs sibi idem licēre arbitrārentur. Itaque cum intellegeret omnīs ferē Gallōs novīs rēbus studēre et ad bellum mōbiliter celeriterque excitārī, omnīs autem hominēs nātūrā lībertātī studēre et condiciōnem servitūtis ōdisse, priusquam plūrēs cīvitātēs cōnspīrārent, partiendum sibi āc lātius distribuendum exercitum putāvit.

Cæsar sends Officers to Various Strategic Points. Brutus has Charge of the Fleet.

11. Itaque T. Labiēnum lēgātum in Trēverōs, quī proximī flūminī Rhēnō sunt, cum equitātū mittit. Huic mandat Rēmōs reliquōsque Belgās adeat atque in officiō contineat; Germānōsque, quī auxiliō ā Gallīs arcessītī dīcēbantur, sī per vim nāvibus flūmen trānsīre cōnentur, prohibeat. P. Crassum cum cohortibus legiōnāriīs XII et māgnō numerō equitātūs in Aquitāniam proficīscī iubet, nē ex hīs nātiōnibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur āc tantae nātiōnēs coniungantur. Q. Titūrium Sabīnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus in Venellōs, Coriosolitas Lexoviōsque mittit, quī eam

manum distinendam cūret. D. Brūtum adulēscentem classī Gallicīsque nāvibus, quās ex Pictonibus et Santonīs reliquīsque pācātīs regiōnibus convenīre iusserat, praeficit, et cum prīmum possit in Venetōs proficīscī iubet. Ipse eō pedestribus cōpiīs contendit.

Natural Advantages of Position of the Veneti.

12. Erant ēius modī ferē sitūs oppidōrum ut posita in extrēmīs lingulīs prōmuntūriīsque neque pedibus aditum habērent, cum ex altō sē aestus incitāvisset (quod [bis] accidit semper hōrārum XII spatiō), neque nāvibus, quod rūrsus minuente aestū nāvēs in vadīs adflīctārentur. Ita utrāque rē oppidōrum oppūgnātiō impediēbātur; āc sī quandō — māgnitūdine operis forte superātī, extrūsō marī aggere āc mōlibus atque hīs oppidī moenibus adaequātīs — dēspērāre fortūnīs suīs coeperant, māgnō numerō nāvium adpulsō, cūius reī summam facultātem habēbant, sua dēportābant omnia sēque in proxima oppida recipiēbant; ibi sē rūrsus īsdem opportūnitātibus locī dēfendēbant. Haec eō facilius māgnam partem aestātis faciēbant, quod nostrae nāvēs tempestātibus dētinēbantur summaque erat vāstō atque apertō marī, māgnīs aestibus, rārīs āc prope nūllīs portibus, difficultās nāvigandī.

Description of their Ships and Naval Tactics.

13. Namque ipsōrum nāvēs ad hunc modum factae armātaeque erant: carīnae aliquantō plāniōrēs quam nostrārum nāvium, quō facilius vada āc dēcessum aestūs excipere possent; prōrae admodum ērectae atque item puppēs ad māgnitūdinem fluctuum tempestātumque accommodātae; nāvēs tōtae factae ex rōbore

ad quamvīs vim et contumēliam perferendam; trānstra ex pedālibus in altitūdinem trabibus cōnfīxa clāvīs ferreīs digitī pollicis crassitūdine; ancorae prō fūnibus ferreīs catēnīs revinctae; pellēs prō vēlīs alūtaeque tenuiter cōnfectae, sīve propter inopiam līnī atque ēius ūsūs īnscientiam sīve eō (quod est magis vērīsimile) quod tantās tempestātīs Ōceanī tantōsque impetūs ventōrum sustinērī āc tanta onera nāvium regī vēlīs nōn satis commodē posse arbitrābantur. Cum hīs nāvibus nostrae clāssī ēius modī congressus erat ut ūnā celeritāte et pulsū rēmōrum praestāret; reliqua prō locī nātūrā, prō vī tempestātum, illīs essent aptiōra et accommodātiōra. Neque enim eīs nostrae rōstrō nocēre poterant — tanta in eīs erat fīrmitūdō — neque propter altitūdinem facile tēlum adigēbātur et eādem dē causā minus commodē cōpulīs continēbantur. Accēdēbat ut, cum saevīre ventus coepisset et sē ventō dedissent, et tempestātem ferrent facilius et in vadīs cōnsisterent tūtius et ab aestū relictae nihil saxa et cōtīs timērent; quārum rērum omnium nostrīs nāvibus cāsus erat extimēscendus.

The Battle. The Romans find a Method to overcome their Disadvantages.

14. Complūribus expūgnātīs oppidīs Caesar, ubi intellēxit frūstrā tantum labōrem sūmī, neque hostium fugam captīs oppidīs reprimī neque eīs nocērī posse, statuit exspectandam classem. Quae ubi convēnit āc prīmum ab hostibus vīsa est, circiter CCXX nāvēs eōrum parātissimae atque omnī genere armōrum ōrnātissimae profectae ex portū nostrīs adversae cōnstitērunt; neque satis Brūtō, quī classī praeerat, vel tribūnīs mīli-

tum centuriōnibusque, quibus singulae nāvēs erant attribūtae, cōnstābat quid agerent aut quam ratiōnem pūgnae īnsisterent. Rōstrō enim nocērī nōn posse cōgnōverant; turribus autem excitātīs tamen hās altitūdō puppium ex barbarīs nāvibus superābat ut neque ex īnferiōre locō satis commodē tēla adigī possent et missa ā Gallīs gravius acciderent. Ūna erat māgnō ūsuī rēs praeparāta ā nostrīs, — falcēs praeacūtae īnsertae adfīxaeque longuriīs nōn absimilī formā mūrālium falcium. Hīs cum fūnēs quī antemnās ad mālōs dēstinābant comprehēnsī adductīque erant, nāvigiō rēmīs incitātō praerumpēbantur. Quibus abscīsīs antemnae necessāriō concidēbant; ut, cum omnis Gallicīs nāvibus spēs in vēlīs armāmentīsque cōnsisteret, hīs ēreptīs omnis ūsus nāvium ūnō tempore ēriperētur. Reliquum erat certāmen positum in virtūte, quā nostrī mīlitēs facile superābant atque eō magis, quod in cōnspectū Caesaris atque omnis exercitūs rēs gerēbātur, ut nūllum paulō fortius factum latēre posset; omnēs enim collēs āc loca superiōra, unde erat propinquus dēspectus in mare, ab exercitū tenēbantur.

Defeat of the Veneti and Capture of their Ships.

15. Disiectīs (ut dīximus) antemnīs, cum singulās bīnae āc ternae nāvēs circumsteterant, mīlitēs summā vī trānscendere in hostium nāvīs contendēbant. Quod postquam barbarī fierī animadvertērunt, expūgnātīs complūribus nāvibus, cum eī reī nūllum reperīrētur auxilium, fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Āc iam conversīs in eam partem nāvibus quō ventus ferēbat, tanta subitō malacia āc tranquillitās exstitit ut sē ex locō movēre nōn possent. Quae quidem rēs ad negō-

tium cōnficiendum māximē fuit opportūna; nam singulās nostrī cōnsectātī expūgnāvērunt, ut perpaucae ex omnī numerō noctis interventū ad terram pervēnerint, cum ab hōrā ferē IIII ūsque ad sōlis occāsum pūgnārētur.

The Veneti surrender. Cæsar makes an Example of them.

16. Quō proeliō bellum Venetōrum tōtīusque ōrae maritimae cōnfectum est. Nam cum omnis iuventūs, omnēs etiam graviōris aetātis, in quibus aliquid cōnsilī aut dīgnitātis fuit, eō cōnvēnerant, tum nāvium quod ubīque fuerat in ūnum locum coēgerant; quibus āmissīs reliquī neque quō sē reciperent neque quem ad modum oppida dēfenderent habēbant. Itaque sē suaque omnia Caesarī dēdidērunt. In quōs eō gravius Caesar vindicandum statuit, quō dīligentius in reliquum tempus ā barbarīs iūs lēgātōrum cōnservārētur. Itaque omnī senātū necātō reliquōs sub corōnā vēndidit.

Lieutenant Sabinus is stationed among the Venelli, who try to provoke him to Battle.

17. Dum haec in Venetīs geruntur, Q. Titūrius Sabīnus cum eīs cōpiīs quās ā Caesare accēperat in fīnīs Venellōrum pervēnit. Hīs praeerat Viridovīx āc summam imperī tenēbat eārum omnium cīvitātum quae dēfēcerant, ex quibus exercitum māgnāsque cōpiās coēgerat; atque hīs paucīs diēbus Aulercī, Eburovīcēs, Lexoviīque senātū suō interfectō, quod auctōrēs bellī esse nōlēbant, portās clausērunt sēque cum Viridovīce coniunxērunt; māgnaque praetereā multitūdō undique ex Galliā perditōrum hominum latrōnumque convēnerat *et* quōs spēs praedandī studiumque bellandī ab

agricultūrā et cotīdiānō labōre revocābat. Sabīnus idōneō omnibus rēbus locō castrīs sēsē tenēbat, cum Viridovīx contrā eum duōrum mīlium spatiō cōnsēdisset cotīdiēque prōductīs cōpiīs pūgnandī potestātem faceret, ut iam nōn sōlum hostibus in contemptiōnem Sabīnus venīret sed etiam nostrōrum mīlitum vōcibus nōn nihil carperētur; tantamque opīniōnem timōris praebuit ut iam ad vāllum castrōrum hostēs accēdere audērent. Id eā dē causā faciēbat quod cum tantā multitūdine hostium, praesertim eō absente quī summam imperī tenēret, nisi aequō locō aut opportūnitāte aliquā datā, lēgātō dīmicandum nōn exīstimābat.

By a Pretense of Fear he induces Viridovix to attack him.

18. Hāc cōnfīrmātā opīniōne timōris idōneum quendam hominem et callidum dēlēgit, Gallum, ex eīs quōs auxilī causā sēcum habēbat. Huic māgnīs praemiīs pollicitātiōnibusque persuādet utī ad hostīs trānseat et quid fierī velit ēdocet. Quī ubi prō perfugā ad eōs vēnit, timōrem Rōmānōrum prōpōnit; quibus angustiīs ipse Caesar ā Venetīs premātur docet; neque longius abesse quīn proximā nocte Sabīnus clam ex castrīs exercitum ēdūcat et ad Caesarem auxilī ferendī causā proficīscātur. Quod ubi audītum est, conclāmant omnēs occāsiōnem negōtī bene gerendī āmittendam nōn esse, ad castra īrī oportēre. Multae rēs ad hōc cōnsilium Gallōs hortābantur: superiōrum diērum Sabīnī cunctātiō, perfugae cōnfīrmātiō, inopia cibāriōrum, cui reī parum dīligenter ab eīs erat prōvīsum, spēs Veneticī bellī, et quod ferē libenter hominēs id quod volunt crēdunt. Hīs rēbus adductī nōn prius Viridovīcem reliquōsque ducēs ex conciliō dīmittunt

quam ab eīs sit concessum arma utī capiant et ad castra contendant. Quā rē concessā laetī ut explōrātā victōriā, sarmentīs virgultīsque conlēctīs quibus fossās Rōmānōrum compleant, ad castra pergunt.

Sabinus gains a Decisive Victory.

19. Locus erat castrōrum ēditus et paulātim ab īmō acclīvis circiter passūs mīlle. Hūc māgnō cursū contendērunt, ut quam minimum spatī ad sē conligendōs armandōsque Rōmānīs darētur, exanimātīque pervēnērunt. Sabīnus suōs hortātus cupientibus signum dat. Impedītīs hostibus propter ea quae ferēbant onera, subītō duābus portīs ēruptiōnem fierī iubet. Factum est opportūnitāte locī, hostium īnscientiā āc dēfatīgātiōne, virtūte mīlitum et superiōrum pūgnārum exercitātiōne, ut nē prīmum quidem nostrōrum impetum ferrent āc statim terga verterent. Quōs integrīs vīribus mīlitēs nostrī cōnsecūtī māgnum numerum eōrum occīdērunt; reliquōs equitēs cōnsectātī paucōs quī ex fugā ēvāserant relīquērunt. Sīc ūnō tempore et dē nāvālī pūgnā Sabīnus et dē Sabīnī victōriā Caesar est certior factus; cīvitātēsque omnēs sē statim Titūriō dēdidērunt. Nam ut ad bella suscipienda Gallōrum alacer āc prōmptus est animus, sīc mollis āc minimē resistēns ad calamitātīs perferendās mēns eōrum est.

Crassus goes into Aquitania and is attacked by the Sotiates.

20. Eōdem ferē tempore P. Crassus cum in Aquītāniam pervēnisset, — quae, ut ante dictum est, [et regiōnum lātitūdine et multitūdine hominum] est tertia pars Galliae [est aestimanda], — cum intellegeret

in eīs locīs sibi bellum gerendum ubi paucīs ante annīs L. Valerius Praecōnīnus lēgātus exercitū pulsō interfectus esset, atque unde L. Manlius prōcōnsul impedīmentīs āmissīs prōfūgisset, nōn mediocrem sibi dīligentiam adhibendam intellegēbat. Itaque rē frūmentāriā prōvīsā, auxiliīs equitātūque comparātō, multīs praetereā virīs fortibus Tolōsā et Narbōne (quae sunt cīvitātēs Galliae prōvinciae fīnitimae [ex] hīs regiōnibus) nōminātim ēvocātīs, in Sōtiātium fīnīs exercitum intrōdūxit. Cūius adventū cōgnitō Sōtiātēs māgnīs cōpiīs coāctīs equitātūque, quō plūrimum valēbant, in itinere agmen nostrum adortī prīmum equestre proelium commīsērunt; deinde equitātū suō pulsō atque īnsequentibus nostrīs, subitō pedestrīs cōpiās, quās in convalle in īnsidiīs conlocāverant, ostendērunt. Hī nostrōs disiectōs adortī proelium renovārunt.

Their Defeat and Surrender.

21. Pūgnātum est diū atque ācriter, cum Sōtiātēs superiōribus victōriīs frētī in suā virtūte tōtīus Aquītāniae salūtem positam putārent; nostrī autem quid sine imperātōre et sine reliquīs legiōnibus adulēscentulō duce efficere possent perspicī cuperent; tandem cōnfectī volneribus hostēs terga vertērunt. Quōrum māgnō numerō interfectō Crassus ex itinere oppidum Sōtiātium oppūgnāre coepit. Quibus fortiter resistentibus vīneās turrīsque ēgit. Illī, aliās ēruptiōne temptātā, aliās cunīculīs ad aggerem vīneāsque āctīs (cūius reī sunt longē perītissimī Aquītānī, propthereā quod multīs locīs apud eōs aerāriae sectūraeque sunt), ubi dīligentiā nostrōrum nihil hīs rēbus prōficī posse intellēxērunt, lēgātōs ad Crassum mittunt, sēque in dēdi-

tiōnem ut recipiat petunt. Quā rē impetrātā, arma trādere iūssi, faciunt.

Adiatunnus and his Brothers in Arms attempt a Sally.

22. Atque in eam rem omnium nostrōrum intentīs animīs, aliā ex parte oppidī Adiatunnus, quī summam imperī tenēbat, cum DC dēvōtīs, quōs illī solduriōs appellant, — quōrum haec est condiciō utī omnibus in vītā commodīs ūnā cum eīs fruantur quōrum sē amīcitiae dēdiderint; sī quid hīs per vim accidat, aut eundem cāsum ūnā ferant aut sibi mortem cōnscīscant; neque adhūc hominum memoriā repertus est quisquam quī, eō interfectō cūius sē amīcitiae dēvōvisset, mortem recūsāret, — cum hīs Adiatunnus ēruptiōnem facere cōnātus, clāmōre ab eā parte mūnītiōnis sublātō, cum ad arma mīlitēs concurrissent vehementerque ibi pūgnātum esset, repulsus in oppidum tamen utī eādem dēditiōnis condiciōne ūterētur ā Crassō impetrāvit.

Crassus takes the Field against other Aquitanian Tribes who are Conspiring.

23. Armīs obsidibusque acceptīs Crassus in fīnīs Vocātium et Tarusātium profectus est. Tum vērō barbarī commōtī, quod oppidum et nātūrā locī et manū mūnītum paucīs diēbus quibus eō ventum erat expūgnātum cōgnōverant, lēgātōs quōqueversus dīmittere, coniūrāre, obsidēs inter sē dare, cōpiās parāre coepērunt. Mittuntur etiam ad eās cīvitātīs lēgātī quae sunt citeriōris Hispāniae fīnitimae Aquītāniae; inde auxilia ducēsque arcessuntur; quōrum adventū māgnā cum auctōritāte et māgnā hominum multitūdine bellum gerere cōnantur. Ducēs vērō eī dēligun-

tur quī ūnā cum Q. Sertōriō omnīs annōs fuerant summamque scientiam reī mīlitāris habēre exīstimābantur. Hī cōnsuētūdine populī Rōmānī loca capere, castra mūnīre, commeātibus nostrōs interclūdere īnstituunt. Quod ubi Crassus animadvertit, — suās cōpiās propter exiguitātem nōn facile dīdūcī, hostem et vagārī et viās obsidēre et castrīs satis praesidī relinquere, ob eam causam minus commodē frūmentum commeātumque sibi supportārī, in diēs hostium numerum augērī, — nōn cunctandum exīstimāvit quīn pūgnā dēcertāret. Hāc rē ad cōncilium dēlātā, ubi omnīs idem sentīre intellēxit, posterum diem pūgnae cōnstituit.

Crassus attacks the Enemy's Camp.

24. Prīmā lūce prōductīs omnibus cōpiīs, duplicī aciē īnstitūtā, auxiliīs in mediam aciem coniectīs, quid hostēs cōnsilī caperent exspectābat. Illī, etsī propter multitūdinem et veterem bellī glōriam paucitātemque nostrōrum sē tūtō dīmicātūrōs exīstimābant, tamen tūtius esse arbitrābantur obsessīs viīs, commeātū interclūsō, sine volnere victōriā potīrī; et, sī propter inopiam reī frūmentāriae Rōmānī sēsē recipere coepissent, impedītōs in agmine et sub sarcinīs īnfīrmiōrēs animō adorīrī cōgitābant. Hōc cōnsiliō probātō, ab ducibus prōductīs Rōmānōrum cōpiīs, sēsē castrīs tenēbant. Hāc rē perspectā Crassus, cum suā cunctātiōne atque opīniōne timōris hostēs nostrōs mīlitēs alacriōrēs ad pūgnandum effēcissent, atque omnium vōcēs audīrentur exspectārī diūtius nōn oportēre quīn ad castra īrētur, cohortātus suōs omnibus cupientibus ad hostium castra contendit.

At First they hold their Own.

25. Ibi cum aliī fossās complērent, aliī multīs tēlīs coniectīs dēfēnsōrēs vāllō mūnītiōnibusque dēpellerent, auxiliārēsque (quibus ad pūgnam nōn multum Crassus cōnfīdēbat) lapidibus tēlīsque subministrandīs et ad aggerem caespitibus comportandīs speciem atque opīniōnem pūgnantium praebērent; cum item ab hostibus cōnstanter āc nōn timidē pūgnārētur tēlaque ex locō superiōre missa nōn frūstrā acciderent, equitēs circumitīs hostium castrīs Crassō renūntiāvērunt nōn eādem esse dīligentiā ab decumānā portā castra mūnīta facilemque aditum habēre.

But finally lose their Camp and flee.

26. Crassus equitum praefectōs cohortātus ut māgnīs praemiīs pollicitātiōnibusque suōs excitārent, quid fierī velit ostendit. Illī, ut erat imperātum, dēvectīs eīs cohortibus quae praesidiō castrīs relictae intrītae ab labōre erant et longiōre itinere circumductīs, nē ex hostium castrīs cōnspicī possent, omnium oculīs mentibusque ad pūgnam intentīs, celeriter ad eās quās dīximus mūnītiōnēs pervēnērunt, atque hīs prōrutīs prius in hostium castrīs cōnstitērunt quam plānē ab hīs vidērī, aut quid reī gererētur cōgnōscī posset. Tum vērō clāmōre ab eā parte audītō nostrī redintegrātīs vīribus, quod plērumque in spē victōriae accidere cōnsuēvit, ācrius impūgnāre coepērunt. Hostēs undique circumventī, dēspērātīs omnibus rēbus, sē per mūnītiōnēs dēicere et fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Quōs equitātus apertissimīs campīs cōnsectātus, ex mīlium L numerō, quae ex Aquītāniā Cantabrīsque

convēnisse cōnstābat, vix quartā parte relictā, multā nocte sē in castra recēpit.

Most of the Aquitanian Tribes tender their Submission.

27. Hāc audītā pūgnā māxima pars Aquītāniae sēsē Crassō dēdidit obsidēsque ultrō mīsit; quō in numerō fuērunt Tarbellī, Bigerriōnes, Ptiāniī, Vocātēs, Tarusātēs, Elusātēs, Gatēs, Auscī, Garumnī, Sibusātes, Cocosātes; paucae ultimae nātiōnēs annī tempore cōnfīsae, quod hiems suberat, id facere neglēxērunt.

Cæsar invades the Territories of the Morini and Menapii, who take Refuge in Forests and Marshes.

28. Eōdem ferē tempore Caesar, etsī prope exācta iam aestās erat, tamen quod omnī Galliā pācātā Morinī Menapiīque supererant quī in armīs essent neque ad eum umquam lēgātōs dē pāce mīsissent, arbitrātus id bellum celeriter cōnficī posse, eō exercitum dūxit; quī longē aliā ratiōne āc reliquī Gallī bellum gerere coepērunt. Nam quod intellegēbant māximās nātiōnēs quae proeliō contendissent pulsās superātāsque esse, continentīsque silvās āc palūdēs habēbant, eō sē suaque omnia contulērunt. Ad quārum initium silvārum cum Caesar pervēnisset castraque mūnīre īnstituisset neque hostis interim vīsus esset, dispersīs in opere nostrīs subitō ex omnibus partibus silvae ēvolāvērunt et in nostrōs impetum fēcērunt. Nostrī celeriter arma cēpērunt eōsque in silvās repulērunt, et complūribus interfectīs longius impedītiōribus locīs secūtī paucōs ex suīs dēperdidērunt.

Storms prevent a Continuance of the Campaign.

29. Reliquīs deinceps diēbus Caesar silvās caedere īnstituit et, nē quis inermibus imprūdentibusque mīliti-

bus ab latere impetus fierī posset, omnem eam māteriam quae erat caesa conversam ad hostem conlocābat et prō vāllō ad utrumque latus exstruēbat. Incrēdibilī celeritāte māgnō spatiō paucīs diēbus cōnfectō, cum iam pecus atque extrēma impedīmenta ā nostrīs tenērentur, ipsī dēnsiōrēs silvās peterent, ēius modī sunt tempestātēs cōnsecūtae utī opus necēssāriō intermitterētur et continuātiōne imbrium diūtius sub pellibus mīlitēs continērī nōn possent. Itaque vāstātīs omnibus eōrum agrīs, vīcīs aedificiīsque incēnsīs, Caesar exercitum redūxit et in Aulercīs Lexoviīsque, reliquīs item cīvitātibus quae proximē bellum fēcerant, in hībernīs conlocāvit.



Gallī.



Rōstra.

BOOK IV.

Campaign against the Germans. — First Invasion of Britain. b.c. 55.

German Tribes, pressed by the Suevi, cross the Rhine into Gaul. Character and Customs of the Suevi.

EĀ quae secūta est hieme, quī fuit annus Cn. Pompēiō, M. Crassō cōnsulibus, Usipetēs Germānī et item Tencterī māgnā [cum] multitūdine hominum flūmen Rhēnum trānsiērunt, nōn longē ā marī quō Rhēnus īnfluit. Causa trānseundī fuit quod ab Suēvīs complūrīs annōs exagitātī bellō premēbantur et agrī cultūrā prohibēbantur.

Suēvōrum gēns est longē māxima et bellicōsissima Germānōrum omnium. Hī centum pāgōs habēre dīcuntur, ex quibus quotannīs singula mīlia armātōrum bellandī causā ex fīnibus ēdūcunt. Reliquī, quī domī mānsērunt, sē atque illōs alunt. Hī rūrsus in vicem annō post in armīs sunt, illī domī remanent. Sīc neque agrī cultūra nec ratiō atque ūsus bellī intermittitur. Sed prīvātī āc sēparātī agrī apud eōs nihil est, neque longius annō remanēre ūnō in locō colendī causā licet. Neque multum frūmentō, sed māximam partem lacte atque pecore vīvunt, multumque sunt in vēnātiōnibus; quae rēs et cibī genere et cotīdiānā

exercitātiōne et lībertāte vītae, quod ā puerīs nūllō officiō aut disciplīnā adsuēfactī nihil omnīnō contrā voluntātem faciunt, et vīrīs alit et immānī corporum māgnitūdine hominēs efficit. Atque in eam sē cōnsuētūdinem addūxērunt ut locīs frīgidissimīs neque vestītūs praeter pellīs habērent quicquam, quārum propter exiguitātem māgna est corporis pars aperta, et lavārentur in flūminibus.

Little Intercourse with other Tribes. Cavalry Tactics.

2. Mercātōribus est aditus magis eō ut quae bellō cēperint quibus vēndant habeant, quam quō ūllam rem ad sē importārī dēsīderent. Quīn etiam iūmentīs, quibus māximē Gallī dēlectantur quaeque impēnsō parant pretiō, [Germānī] importātīs nōn ūtuntur; sed quae sunt apud eōs nāta, parva atque dēformia, haec cotīdiānā exercitātiōne summī ut sint labōris efficiunt.

Equestribus proeliīs saepe ex equīs dēsiliunt āc pedibus proeliantur, equōsque eōdem remanēre vestīgiō adsuēfēcērunt, ad quōs sē celeriter, cum ūsus est, recipiunt; neque eōrum mōribus turpius quicquam aut inertius habētur quam ephippiīs ūtī. Itaque ad quemvīs numerum ephippiātōrum equitum quamvīs paucī adīre audent. Vīnum omnīnō ad sē importārī nōn sinunt, quod eā rē ad labōrem ferendum remollēscere hominēs atque effēminārī arbitrantur.

Description of the Ubii.

3. Pūblicē māximam putant esse laudem quam lātissimē ā suīs fīnibus vacāre agrōs: hāc rē sīgnificārī māgnum numerum cīvitātum suam vim sustinēre nōn posse. Itaque ūnā ex parte ā Suēvīs circiter mīlia



The Roman Forum
(As it appeared in Caesar's time)

passuum sexcenta agrī vacāre dīcuntur. Ad alteram partem succēdunt Ubiī, quōrum fuit cīvitās ampla atque flōrēns, ut est captus Germānōrum; eī paulō, quamquam sunt ēiusdem generis, sunt cēterīs hūmāniōrēs, propterea quod Rhēnum attingunt, multumque ad eōs mercātōrēs ventitant, et ipsī propter propinquitātem [quod] Gallicīs sunt mōribus adsuēfactī. Hōs cum Suēvī multīs saepe bellīs expertī propter amplitūdinem gravitātemque cīvitātis fīnibus expellere nōn potuissent, tamen vectīgālīs sibi fēcērunt āc multō humiliōrēs īnfīrmiōrēsque redēgērunt.

The Usipetes and Tencteri, expelled from Germany, seize the Territories of the Menapii.

4. In eādem causā fuērunt Usipetēs et Tencterī, quōs suprā dīximus, quī complūrīs annōs Suēvōrum vim sustinuērunt; ad extrēmum tamen agrīs expulsī et multīs locīs Germāniae triennium vagātī ad Rhēnum pervēnērunt; quās regiōnēs Menapiī incolēbant. Hī ad utramque rīpam flūminis agrōs aedificia vīcōsque habēbant; sed tantae multitūdinis aditū perterritī ex eīs aedificiīs quae trāns flūmen habuerant dēmigrāverant, et cis Rhēnum dispositīs praesidiīs Germānōs trānsīre prohibēbant. Illī omnia expertī, cum neque vī contendere propter inopiam nāvium neque clam trānsīre propter custōdiās Menapiōrum possent, revertī sē in suās sēdīs regiōnēsque simulāvērunt et trīduī viam prōgressī rūrsus revertērunt, atque omnī hōc itinere ūnā nocte equitātū cōnfectō īnsciōs inopīnantīsque Menapiōs oppressērunt; quī dē Germānōrum discessū per explōrātōrēs certiōrēs factī sine metū trāns Rhēnum in suōs vīcōs remigrāverant. Hīs in-

terfectīs nāvibusque eōrum occupātīs, priusquam ea pars Menapiōrum quae citrā Rhēnum erat certior fieret, flūmen trānsiērunt atque omnibus eōrum aedificiīs occupātīs reliquam partem hiemis sē eōrum cōpiīs aluērunt.

The Gallic Character was the Same then as it is To-day.

5. Hīs dē rēbus Caesar certior factus et īnfīrmitātem Gallōrum veritus, quod sunt in cōnsiliīs capiendīs mōbilēs et novīs plērumque rēbus student, nihil hīs committendum exīstimāvit. Est enim hōc Gallicae cōnsuētūdinis utī et viātōrēs etiam invītōs cōnsistere cōgant, et quid quisque eōrum dē quāque rē audierit aut cōgnōverit quaerant; et mercātōrēs in oppidīs volgus circumsistat, quibusque ex regiōnibus veniant quāsque ibi rēs cōgnōverint prōnūntiāre cōgat. Hīs rēbus atque audītiōnibus permōtī dē summīs saepe rēbus cōnsilia ineunt, quōrum eōs in vestīgiō paenitēre necesse est, cum incertīs rūmōribus serviant et plērīque ad voluntātem eōrum ficta respondeant.

Cæsar prepares to make War on the German Invaders.

6. Quā cōnsuētūdine cōgnitā Caesar, nē graviōrī bellō occurreret, mātūrius quam cōnsuērat ad exercitum proficīscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, ea quae fore suspicātus erat facta cōgnōvit: missās lēgātiōnēs ab nōn nūllīs cīvitātibus ad Germānōs invītātōsque eōs utī ab Rhēnō discēderent, omnia quae [que] postulāssent ab sē fore parāta. Quā spē adductī Germānī lātius iam vagābantur et in fīnīs Eburōnum et Condrūsōrum, quī sunt Trēverōrum clientēs, pervēnerant. Prīncipibus Galliae ēvocātīs Caesar ea quae cōgnō-

verat dissimulanda sibi exīstimāvit, eōrumque animīs permulsīs et cōnfīrmātīs equitātūque imperātō bellum cum Germānīs gerere cōnstituit.

Their Defiant and Boastful Message.

7. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā equitibusque dēlēctīs, iter in ea loca facere coepit quibus in locīs esse Germānōs audiēbat. Ā quibus cum paucōrum diērum iter abesset, lēgātī ab eīs vēnērunt, quōrum haec fuit ōrātiō: 'Germānōs neque priōrēs populō Rōmānō bellum īnferre neque tamen recūsāre, sī lacessantur, quīn armīs contendant, quod Germānōrum cōnsuētūdō [haec] sit ā māiōribus trādita, quīcumque bellum īnferant, resistere neque dēprecārī. Haec tamen dīcere, vēnisse invītōs, ēiectōs domō; sī suam grātiam Rōmānī velint, posse eīs ūtilīs esse amīcōs; vel sibi agrōs attribuant vel patiantur eōs tenēre quōs armīs possēderint: sēsē ūnīs Suēvīs concēdere, quibus nē diī quidem immortālēs parēs esse possint; reliquum quidem in terrīs esse nēminem quem nōn superāre possint.'

He orders them to leave Gaul.

8. Ad haec Caesar quae vīsum est respondit; sed exitus fuit ōrātiōnis: 'Sibi nūllam cum hīs amīcitiam esse posse, sī in Galliā remanērent; neque vērum esse quī suōs fīnīs tuērī nōn potuerint aliēnōs occupāre; neque ūllōs in Galliā vacāre agrōs quī darī tantae praesertim multitūdinī sine iniūriā possint; sed licēre, sī velint, in Ubiōrum fīnibus consīdere, quōrum sint lēgātī apud sē et dē Suēvōrum iniūriīs querantur et ā sē auxilium petant; hōc sē Ubiīs imperātūrum.'

They parley to gain Time.

9. Lēgātī haec sē ad suōs relātūrōs dīxērunt et rē dēliberātā post diem tertium ad Caesarem reversūrōs; intereā nē propius sē castra movēret petiērunt. Nē id quidem Caesar ab sē impetrārī posse dīxit. Cōgnōverat enim māgnam partem equitātūs ab eīs aliquot diēbus ante praedandī frūmentandīque causā ad Ambivaritōs trāns Mosam missam; hōs exspectārī equitēs atque ēius reī causā moram interpōnī arbitrābātur.

Description of the Meuse and the Rhine.

10. Mosa prōfluit ex monte Vosegō, quī est in fīnibus Lingonum, et parte quādam ex Rhēnō receptā quae appellātur Vacalus, īnsulam efficit Batavōrum neque longius inde mīlibus passuum LXXX in Ōceanum īnfluit. Rhēnus autem oritur ex Lepontiīs, quī Alpīs incolunt, et longō spatiō per fīnīs Nantuātium, Helvētiōrum, Sēquanōrum, Mediomatricum, Tribocōrum, Trēverōrum citātus fertur; et ubi Ōceanō adpropinquāvit, in plūrīs dēfluit partīs, multīs ingentibusque īnsulīs effectīs, quārum pars māgna ā ferīs barbarīsque nātiōnibus incolitur, — ex quibus sunt quī piscibus atque ōvīs avium vīvere exīstimantur, — multīsque capitibus in Ōceanum īnfluit.

Cæsar advances. More Negotiations.

11. Caesar cum ab hoste nōn amplius passuum XII mīlibus abesset, ut erat cōnstitūtum, ad eum lēgātī revertuntur; quī in itinere congressī māgnopere nē longius prōgrederētur ōrābant. Cum id nōn impetrāssent, petēbant utī ad eōs equitēs quī agmen antecessissent praemitteret, eōsque pūgnā prohibēret, sibi-

que ut potestātem faceret in Ubiōs lēgātōs mittendi; quōrum sī prīncipēs āc senātus sibi iūre iūrandō fidem fēcisset, eā condiciōne quae ā Caesare ferrētur sē ūsūrōs ostendēbant; ad hās rēs cōnficiendās sibi trīduī spatium daret. Haec omnia Caesar eōdem illō pertinēre arbitrābātur, ut trīduī morā interpositā equitēs eōrum quī abessent reverterentur; tamen sēsē nōn longius mīlibus passuum IIII aquātiōnis causā prōcessūrum eō diē dīxit; hūc posterō diē quam frequentissimī convenīrent, ut dē eōrum postulātīs cōgnōsceret. Interim ad praefectōs quī cum omnī equitātū antecesserant mittit quī nūntiārent nē hostīs proeliō lacesserent; et, sī ipsī lacesserentur, sustinērent quoad ipse cum exercitū propius accessisset.

Treacherous Attack on the Roman Cavalry by the Germans.

12. At hostēs, ubi prīmum nostrōs equitēs cōnspexērunt, quōrum erat V mīlium numerus, cum ipsī nōn amplius DCCC equitēs habērent, quod eī quī frūmentandī causā ierant trāns Mosam nōndum redierant, nihil timentibus nostrīs, quod lēgātī eōrum paulō ante ā Caesare discesserant atque is diēs indūtiīs erat ab hīs petītus, impetū factō celeriter nostrōs perturbāvērunt; rūrsus hīs resistentibus, cōnsuētūdine suā ad pedēs dēsiluērunt, subfossīsque equīs complūribusque nostrīs dēiectīs, reliquōs in fugam coniēcērunt atque ita perterritōs ēgērunt ut nōn prius fugā dēsisterent quam in cōnspectum agminis nostrī vēnissent.

In eō proeliō ex equitibus nostrīs interficiuntur IIII et LXX; in hīs vir fortissimus, Pīsō Aquītānus, amplissimō genere nātus, cūius avus in cīvitāte suā rēgnum obtinuerat amīcus ab senātū nostrō appellātus. Hīc

Cæsar determines to bridge the Rhine preparatory to carrying the War into Germany.

16. Germānicō bellō cōnfectō multīs dē causīs Caesar statuit sibi Rhēnum esse trānseundum : quārum illa fuit iūstissima, quod, cum vidēret Germānōs tam facile impellī ut in Galliam venīrent, suīs quoque rēbus eōs timēre voluit, cum intellegerent et posse et audēre populī Rōmānī exercitum Rhēnum trānsīre. Accessit etiam quod illa pars equitātūs Usipetum et Tencterōrum, quam suprā commemorāvī praedandī frūmentandīque causā Mosam trānsīsse, neque proeliō interfuisse, post fugam suōrum sē trāns Rhēnum in fīnīs Sugambrōrum recēperat sēque cum eīs coniūnxerat. Ad quōs cum Caesar nūntiōs mīsisset quī postulārent eōs quī sibi Galliaeque bellum intulissent sibi dēderent, respondērunt : ‘ Populī Rōmānī imperium Rhēnum fīnīre ; sī sē invītō Germānōs in Galliam trānsīre nōn aequum exīstimāret, cūr suī quicquam esse imperī aut potestātis trāns Rhēnum postulāret ? ’ Ubiī autem, quī ūnī ex Trānsrhēnānīs ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīserant, amīcitiam fēcerant, obsidēs dederant, māgnopere ōrābant ut sibi auxilium ferret, quod graviter ab Suēvīs premerentur ; vel, sī id facere occupātiōnibus reī pūblicae prohibērētur, exercitum modo Rhēnum trānsportāret ; id sibī *ad* auxilium spemque reliquī temporis satis futūrum. Tantum esse nōmen atque opīniōnem ēius exercitūs Ariovistō pulsō et hōc novissimō proeliō factō etiam ad ultimās Germānōrum nātiōnēs, utī opīniōnē et amīcitiā populī Rōmānī tūtī esse possent. Nāvium māgnam cōpiam ad trānsportandum exercitum pollicēbantur.

Description of the Bridge.

17. Caesar hīs dē causīs quās commemorāvī Rhēnum trānsīre dēcrēverat; sed nāvibus trānsīre neque satis tūtum esse arbitrābātur, neque suae neque populī Rōmānī dīgnitātis esse statuēbat. Itaque, etsī summa difficultās faciendī pontis prōpōnēbātur propter lātitūdinem, rapiditātem, altitūdinemque flūminis, tamen id sibi contendendum aut aliter nōn trādūcendum exercitum existimābat. Ratiōnem pontis hanc īnstituit. Tīgna bīna sēsquipedālia paulum ab īmō praeacūta, dīmēnsa ad altitūdinem flūminis, intervāllō pedum duōrum inter sē iungēbat. Haec cum māchinātiōnibus immissa in flūmen dēfīxerat fistūcīsque adēgerat,— nōn sublicae modō dērēctē ad perpendiculum, sed prōnē āc fastīgātē, ut secundum nātūram flūminis prōcumberent,—eīs item contrāria duō ad eundem modum iūncta intervāllō pedum quadrāgēnum ab īnferiōre parte contrā vim atque impetum flūminis conversa statuēbat. Haec utraque īnsuper bipedālibus trabibus immissīs, quantum eōrum tignōrum iūnctūra distābat, bīnīs utrimque fibulīs ab extrēmā parte distinēbantur; quibus disclūsīs atque in contrāriam partem revinctīs tanta erat operīs fīrmitūdo atque ea rērum nātūra ut, quō māior vīs aquae sē incitāvisset, hōc artius inligāta tenērentur. Haec dērēctā māteriā iniectā contexēbantur āc longuriīs crātibusque cōnsternēbantur; ac nihilō sēcius sublicae et ad īnferiōrem partem flūminis oblīquē agēbantur, quae prō ariete subiectae et cum omnī opere coniūnctae vim flūminis exciperent; et aliae item suprā pontem mediocrī spatiō ut, sī arborum truncī sive nāvēs dēiciendī operis essent ā barbarīs immissae, hīs dēfēnsōribus eārum rērum vīs minuerētur, neu pontī nocērent.

Cæsar crosses into Germany.

18. Diēbus x quibus māteria coepta erat comportārī omnī opere effectō exercitus trādūcitur. Caesar ad utramque partem pontis fīrmō praesidiō relictō in fīnīs Sugambrōrum contendit. Interim ā complūribus cīvitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt; quibus pācem atque amīcitiam petentibus līberāliter respondet obsidēsque ad sē addūcī iubet. At Sugambrī ex eō tempore quō pōns īnstituī coeptus est fugā comparātā, hortantibus eīs quōs ex Tencterīs atque Usipetibus apud sē habēbant, fīnibus suīs excesserant suaque omnia exportāverant sēque in sōlitūdinem āc silvās abdiderant.

But after a Short Time returns to Gaul.

19. Caesar paucōs diēs in eōrum fīnibus morātus, omnibus vīcīs aedificiīsque incēnsīs frūmentīsque succīsīs, sē in fīnīs Ubiōrum recēpit; atque hīs auxilium suum pollicitus, sī ab Suēvīs premerentur, haec ab eīs cōgnōvit: 'Suēvōs posteāquam per explōrātōrēs pontem fieri comperissent, mōre suō conciliō habitō nūntiōs in omnīs partīs dīmīsisse, utī dē oppidīs dēmigrārent, līberōs, uxōrēs, suaque omnia in silvīs dēpōnerent, atque omnēs quī arma ferre possent ūnum in locum convenīrent; hunc esse dēlēctum medium fēre regiōnum eārum quās Suēvī obtinērent; hīc Rōmānōrum adventum exspectāre, atque ibi dēcertāre cōnstituisse.'

Quod ubi Caesar comperit, omnibus eīs rēbus cōnfectīs quārum rērum causā trādūcere exercitum cōnstituerat, ut Germānīs metum iniceret, ut Sugambrōs ulcīscerētur, ut Ubiōs obsidiōne līberāret, diēbus omnīnō XVIII trāns Rhēnum cōnsūmptīs, satis et ad laudem

et ad ūtilitātem prōfectum arbitrātus, sē in Galliam recēpit pontemque rescidit.

Cæsar resolves to invade Britain.

20. Exiguā parte aestātis reliquā Caesar, etsī in hīs locīs (quod omnis Gallia ad septentriōnēs vergit) mātūrae sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam proficīscī contendit: quod omnibus fērē Gallicīs bellīs hostibus nostrīs inde subministrāta auxilia intellegēbat; et, sī tempus [annī] ad bellum gerendum dēficeret, tamen māgnō sibi ūsuī fore arbitrābātur, sī modo īnsulam adīsset, genus hominum perspēxisset, loca, portūs, aditūs cōgnōvisset; quae omnia ferē Gallīs erant incōgnita. Neque enim temerē praeter mercātōrēs illō adit quisquam, neque eīs ipsīs quicquam praeter ōram maritimam atque eās regiōnēs quae sunt contrā Galliās nōtum est. Itaque vocātīs ad sē undique mercātōribus, neque quanta esset īnsulae māgnitūdō, neque quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolerent, neque quem ūsum bellī habērent aut quibus īnstitūtīs ūterentur, neque quī essent ad māiōrem nāvium multitūdinem idōneī portūs reperīre poterat.

First sending Officers to reconnoitre.

21. Ad haec cōgnōscenda, priusquam perīculum faceret, idōneum esse arbitrātus, C. Volusēnum cum nāvī longā praemittit. Huic mandat ut explōrātīs omnibus rēbus ad sē quam prīmum revertātur. Ipse cum omnibus cōpiīs in Morinōs proficīscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam trāiectus. Hūc nāvīs undique ex fīnitimīs regiōnibus, et quam superiōre aestāte ad Veneticum bellum fēcerat classem, iubet convenīre.

Interim cōnsiliō ēius cōgnitō et per mercātōrēs perlātō ad Britannōs, ā complūribus īnsulae cīvitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt quī polliceantur obsidēs dare atque imperiō populī Rōmānī obtemperāre. Quibus audītīs līberāliter pollicitus hortātusque ut in eā sententiā permanērent, eōs domum remittit; et cum eīs ūnā Commium, quem ipse Atrebātibus superātīs rēgem ibi cōnstituerat, cūius et virtūtem et cōnsilium probābat et quem sibi fidēlem esse arbitrābātur cūiusque auctōritās in hīs regiōnibus māgnī habēbātur, mittit. Huic imperat quās possit adeat cīvitātīs, hortēturque ut populī Rōmānī fidem sequantur sēque celeriter eō ventūrum nūntiet. Volusēnus perspectīs regiōnibus quantum eī facultātis darī potuit, quī nāvī ēgredī āc sē barbarīs committere nōn audēret, quīntō diē ad Caesarem revertitur quaeque ibi perspēxisset renūntiat.

Apology of the Morini. A Fleet is prepared.

22. Dum in hīs locīs Caesar nāvium (parandārum) causā morātur, ex māgnā parte Morinōrum ad eum lēgātī vēnērunt quī sē dē superiōris temporis cōnsiliō excūsārent, quod hominēs barbarī et nostrae cōnsuētūdinis imperītī bellum populō Rōmānō fēcissent, sēque ea quae imperāsset factūrōs pollicērentur. Hōc sibi Caesar satis opportūnē accidisse arbitrātus, quod neque post tergum hostem relinquere volēbat neque bellī gerendī propter annī tempus facultātem habēbat neque hās tantulārum rērum occupātiōnēs Britanniae antepōnendās iūdicābat, māgnum eīs numerum obsidum imperat. Quibus adductīs eōs in fidem recipit. Nāvibus circiter LXXX onerāriīs coāctīs [contrāctīsque], quot satis esse ad duās trānsportandās legiōnēs exīstimābat,

quod praetereā nāvium longārum habēbat quaestōrī, lēgātīs praefectīsque distribuit. Hūc accēdēbant XVIII onerāriae nāvēs, quae ex eō locō ā mīlibus passuum VIII ventō tenēbantur quō minus in eundem portum venīre possent; hās equitibus distribuit. Reliquum exercitum Titūriō Sabīnō et Aurunculēiō Cottae lēgātīs in Menapiōs atque in eōs pāgōs Morinōrum ā quibus ad eum lēgātī nōn vēnerant dūcendum dedit; Sulpicium Rūfum lēgātum cum eō praesidiō quod satis esse arbitrābātur portum tenēre iussit.

The Fleet crosses the Channel. Difficulties of Landing.

23. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus nactus idōneam ad nāvigandum tempestātem tertiā ferē vigiliā solvit, equitēsque in ulteriōrem portum prōgredī et nāvīs cōnscendere et sē sequī iussit. A quibus cum paulō tardius esset administrātum, ipse hōrā diēī circiter quartā cum prīmīs nāvibus Britanniam attigit atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositās hostium cōpiās armātās cōnspēxit. Cūius locī haec erat nātūra atque ita montibus angustē mare continēbātur utī ex locīs superiōribus in lītus tēlum adigī posset. Hunc ad ēgrediendum nēquāquam idōneum locum arbitrātus, dum reliquae nāvēs eō convenīrent ad hōram nōnam in ancorīs exspectāvit. Interim lēgātīs tribūnīsque mīlitum convocātīs et quae ex Volusēnō cōgnōvisset et quae fierī vellet ostendit, monuitque, ut reī mīlitāris ratiō, māximē ut maritimae rēs postulārent (ut quae celerem atque īnstābilem mōtum habērent), ad nūtum et ad tempus omnēs rēs ab eīs administrārentur. Hīs dīmissīs et ventum et aestum ūnō tempore nactus secundum, datō sīgnō et sublātīs

ancorīs, circiter mīlia passuum VII ab eō locō prōgressus, apertō āc plānō lītore nāvīs cōnstituit.

The Britons oppose a Landing.

24. At barbarī cōnsiliō Rōmānōrum cōgnitō, praemissō equitātū et essedāriīs, quō plērumque genere in proeliīs ūtī cōnsuērunt, reliquīs cōpiīs subsecūtī nostrōs nāvibus ēgredī prohibēbant. Erat ob hās causās summa difficultās quod nāvēs propter māgnitūdinem nisi in altō cōnstituī nōn poterant; mīlitibus autem, īgnōtīs locīs, impedītīs manibus, māgnō et gravī onere armōrum oppressīs, simul et dē nāvibus dēsiliendum et in fluctibus cōnsistendum et cum hostibus erat pūgnandum; cum illī aut ex aridō aut paulum in aquam prōgressī omnibus membrīs expedītīs, nōtissimīs locīs, audācter tēla conicerent et equōs īnsuēfactōs incitārent. Quibus rēbus nostrī perterritī atque hūius omnīnō generis pūgnae imperītī nōn eādem alacritāte āc studiō quō in pedestribus ūtī proeliīs cōnsuērant nītēbantur.

Which Cæsar, in Spite of Difficulties, effects. A Brave Deed.

25. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvīs longās, quārum et speciēs erat barbarīs inūsitātior et mōtus ad ūsum expedītior, paulum removērī ab onerāriīs nāvibus et rēmīs incitārī et ad latus apertum hostium cōnstituī, atque inde fundīs, sagittīs, tormentīs hostīs prōpellī āc submovērī iussit; quae rēs māgnō ūsuī nostrīs fuit. Nam et nāvium figūrā et rēmōrum mōtū et inūsitātō genere tormentōrum permōtī barbarī cōnstitērunt āc paulum etiam pedem rettulērunt. Atque nostrīs mīlitibus cunctantibus, māximē propter altitūdinem maris, quī X legiōnis aquilam ferēbat obtestātus deōs ut ea rēs

legiōnī fēlīciter ēvenīret, "Dēsilīte," inquit, "commīlitōnēs, nisi voltis aquilam hostibus prōdere; ego certē meum reī pūblicae atque imperātōrī officium praestiterō." Hōc cum vōce māgnā dīxisset, sē ex nāvī prōiēcit atque in hostīs aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostrī cohortātī inter sē nē tantum dēdecus admitterētur, ūniversī ex nāvī dēsiluērunt. Hōs item ex proximīs [prīmīs] nāvibus cum cōnspēxissent, subsecūtī hostibus adpropinquāvērunt.

When the Romans gain the Beach the Britons flee inland.

26. Pūgnātum est ab utrīsque ācriter. Nostrī tamen, quod neque ōrdinēs servāre neque fīrmiter īnsistere neque sīgna subsequī poterant, atque alius aliā ex nāvī quibuscumque sīgnīs occurrerat sē adgregābat, māgnopere perturbābantur; hostēs vērō nōtīs omnibus vadīs, ubi ex lītore aliquōs singulārīs ex nāvī ēgredientīs cōnspēxerant, incitātīs equīs impedītōs adoriēbantur, plūrēs paucōs circumsistēbant, aliī ab latere apertō in ūniversōs tēla coniciēbant. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphās longārum nāvium item speculātōria nāvigia mīlitibus complērī iussit, et quōs labōrantīs cōnspēxerat hīs subsidia submittēbat. Nostrī simul in āridō cōnstitērunt, suīs omnibus cōnsecūtīs in hostīs impetum fēcērunt atque eōs in fugam dedērunt; neque longius prōsequī potuērunt, quod equitēs cursum tenēre atque īnsulam capere nōn potuerant. Hōc ūnum ad prīstinam fortūnam Caesarī dēfuit.

Submission of the Britons.

27. Hostēs proeliō superātī, simul atque sē ex fugā recēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce mīsē-

runt; obsidēs datūrōs quaeque imperāsset factūrōs esse polliciti sunt. Ūnā cum hīs lēgātīs Commius Atrebās vēnit, quem suprā dēmōnstrāveram ā Caesare in Britanniam praemissum. Hunc illī ē nāvī ēgressum, cum ad eōs ōrātōris modō Caesaris mandāta dēferret, comprehenderant atque in vincula coniēcerant: tum proeliō factō remīsērunt; et in petendā pāce ēius reī culpam in multitūdinem contulērunt, et propter imprūdentiam ut īgnōscerētur petivērunt. Caesar questus quod, cum ultrō in continentem lēgātīs missīs pācem ab sē petīssent, bellum sine causā intulissent, īgnōscere imprūdentiae dīxit obsidēsque imperāvit; quōrum illī partem statim dedērunt, partem ex longinquiōribus locīs arcessītam paucīs diēbus sēsē datūrōs dīxērunt. Intereā suōs remigrāre in agrōs iussērunt, prīncipēsque undique convenīre et sē cīvitātīsque suās Caesarī commendāre coepērunt.

The Cavalry Transports encounter a Storm.

28. Hīs rēbus pāce cōnfirmātā, post diem quartum quam est in Britanniam ventum, nāvēs XVIII dē quibus suprā dēmōnstrātum est, quae equitēs sustulerant, ex superiōre portū lēnī ventō solvērunt. Quae cum adpropinquārent Britanniae et ex castrīs vidērentur, tanta tempestās subitō coörta est ut nūlla eārum cursum tenēre posset; sed aliae eōdem unde erant profectae referrentur, aliae ad īnferiōrem partem īnsulae, quae est propius sōlis occāsum, māgnō suō cum perīculō dēicerentur; quae tamen ancorīs iactīs cum fluctibus complērentur, necessāriō adversā nocte in altum prōvectae continentem petiērunt.

Which does Considerable Damage.

29. Eādem nocte accidit ut esset lūna plēna, quī diēs maritimōs aestūs māximōs in Ōceanō efficere cōnsuēvit, nostrīsque id erat incōgnitum. Ita ūnō tempore et longās nāvīs, [quibus Caesar exercitum trānsportandum cūrāverat] quās Caesar in āridum subdūxerat, aestus complēverat; et onerāriās, quae ad ancorās erant dēligātae, tempestās adflīctābat, neque ūlla nostrīs facultās aut administrandī aut auxiliandī dabātur. Complūribus nāvibus frāctīs reliquae cum essent — fūnibus, ancorīs reliquīsque armāmentīs āmissīs — ad nāvigandum inūtilēs, māgna (id quod necesse erat accidere) tōtius exercitūs perturbātiō facta est. Neque enim nāvēs erant aliae quibus reportārī possent; et omnia deërant quae ad reficiendās nāvīs erant ūsuī; et, quod omnibus cōnstābat hiemārī in Galliā oportēre, frūmentum in hīs locīs in hiemem prōvīsum nōn erat.

The Britons seeing Cæsar's Plight plan to renew Hostilities.

30. Quibus rēbus cōgnitīs prīncipēs Britanniae, quī post proelium ad Caesarem convēnerant, inter sē conlocūtī, cum et equitēs et nāvīs et frūmentum Rōmānīs deësse intellegerent, et paucitātem mīlitum ex castrōrum exiguitāte cōgnōscerent, — quae hōc erant etiam angustiōra quod sine impedīmentīs Caesar legiōnēs trānsportāverat, — optimum factū esse dūxērunt, rebelliōne factā, frūmentō commeātūque nostrōs prohibēre et rem in hiemem prōdūcere; quod hīs superātīs aut reditū interclūsīs nēminem posteā bellī īnferendī causā in Britanniam trānsitūrum cōnfīdēbant. Itaque rūrsus coniūrātiōne factā paulātim ex

castrīs discēdere et suōs clam ex agrīs dēdūcere coepērunt.

Cæsar suspects their Design and repairs his Ships.

31. At Caesar, etsī nōndum eōrum cōnsilia cōgnōverat, tamen et ex ēventū nāvium suārum et ex eō quod obsidēs dare intermīserant, fore id quod accidit suspicābātur. Itaque ad omnīs cāsūs subsidia comparābat. Nam et frūmentum ex agrīs cotīdiē in castra cōnferēbat et quae gravissimē adflīctae erant nāvēs, eārum māteriā atque aere ad reliquās reficiendās ūtēbātur, et quae ad eās rēs erant ūsuī ex continentī comportārī iubēbat. Itaque cum summō studiō ā mīlitibus administrārētur, XII nāvibus āmissīs, reliquīs ut nāvigārī *satis* commodē posset effēcit.

Attack on a Roman Foraging Party.

32. Dum ea geruntur, legiōne ex cōnsuētūdine ūnā frūmentātum missā, quae appellābātur VII, neque ūllā ad id tempus bellī suspīciōne interpositā, — cum pars hominum in agrīs remanēret, pars etiam in castra ventitāret, — eī quī prō portīs castrōrum in statiōne erant Caesarī nūntiāvērunt pulverem māiōrem quam cōnsuētūdō ferret in eā parte vidērī quam in partem legiō iter fēcisset. Caesar id quod erat suspicātus, aliquid novī ā barbarīs initum cōnsilī, cohortīs quae in statiōnibus erant sēcum in eam partem proficīscī, ex reliquīs duās in statiōnem succēdere, reliquās armārī et cōnfestim sēsē subsequī iussit. Cum paulō longius ā castrīs prōcessisset, suōs ab hostibus premī atque aegrē sustinēre et cōnfertā legiōne ex omnibus partibus tēla conicī animadvertit. Nam quod omnī ex reliquīs

partibus dēmessō frūmentō pars ūna erat reliqua, suspicātī hostēs hūc nostrōs esse ventūrōs noctū in silvās dēlituerant; tum dispersōs dēpositīs armīs in metendō occupātōs subitō adortī, paucīs interfectīs reliquōs incertīs ōrdinibus perturbāverant, simul equitātū atque essedīs circumdederant.

The Britons' Use of War Chariots.

33. Genus hōc est ex essedīs pūgnae. Prīmō per omnīs partīs perequitant et tēla coniciunt atque ipsō terrōre equōrum et strepitū rotārum ōrdinēs plērumque perturbant; et cum sē inter equitum turmās īnsinuāvērunt, ex essedīs dēsiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. Aurīgae interim paulātim ex proeliō excēdunt atque ita currūs conlocant utī, sī illī ā multitūdine hostium premantur, expedītum ad suōs receptum habeant. Ita mōbilitātem equitum, stabilitātem peditum in proeliīs praestant; āc tantum ūsū cotīdiānō et exercitātiōne efficiunt utī in dēclīvī āc praecipitī locō incitātōs equōs sustinēre et brevī moderārī āc flectere, et per tēmōnem percurrere et in iugō īnsistere et sē inde in currūs citissimē recipere cōnsuērint.

Cæsar relieves the Foragers. The Britons assemble in Force.

34. Quibus rēbus perturbātīs nostrīs nōvitāte pūgnae tempore opportūnissimō Caesar auxilium tulit; namque ēius adventū hostēs cōnstitērunt, nostrī sē ex timōre recēpērunt. Quō factō ad lacessendum hostem et committendum proelium aliēnum esse tempus arbitrātus, suō sē locō continuit et brevī tempore intermissō in castra legiōnēs redūxit. Dum haec geruntur, nostrīs omnibus occupātīs, quī erant in

agrīs reliquī discessērunt. Secūtae sunt continuōs complūrīs diēs tempestātēs, quae et nostrōs in castrīs continērent et hostem ā pūgnā prohibērent. Interim barbarī nūntiōs in omnīs partīs dīmīsērunt paucitātemque nostrōrum mīlitum suīs praedicāvērunt, et quanta praedae faciendae atque in perpetuum suī līberandī facultās darētur, sī Rōmānōs castrīs expulissent, dēmōnstrāvērunt. Hīs rēbus celeriter māgnā multitūdine peditātūs equitātūsque coāctā ad castra vēnērunt.

Defeat of the Britons.

35. Caesar, etsī idem quod superiōribus diēbus acciderat fore vidēbat, — ut, sī essent hostēs pulsī, celeritāte perīculum effugerent, — tamen nactus equitēs circiter xxx, quōs Commius Atrebās (dē quō ante dictum est) sēcum trānsportāverat, legiōnēs in aciē prō castrīs cōnstituit. Commissō proeliō diūtius nostrōrum mīlitum impetum hostēs ferre nōn potuērunt āc terga vertērunt. Quōs tantō spatiō secūtī quantum cursū et vīribus efficere potuērunt, complūrīs ex eīs occīdērunt; deinde omnibus longē lātēque aedificiīs incēnsīs sē in castra recēpērunt.

Cæsar returns to Gaul.

36. Eōdem diē lēgātī ab hostibus missī ad Caesarem dē pāce vēnērunt. Hīs Caesar numerum obsidum quem anteā imperāverat duplicāvit, eōsque in continentem addūcī iussit; quod, propinquā diē aequinoctī, īnfīrmīs nāvibus hiemī nāvigātiōnem subiciendam nōn exīstimābat. Ipse idōneam tempestātem nactus paulō post mediam noctem nāvīs solvit; quae omnēs incolumēs ad continentem pervēnērunt; sed ex eīs onerā-

riae duae eōsdem portūs quōs reliquae capere nōn potuērunt et paulō īnfrā dēlātae sunt.

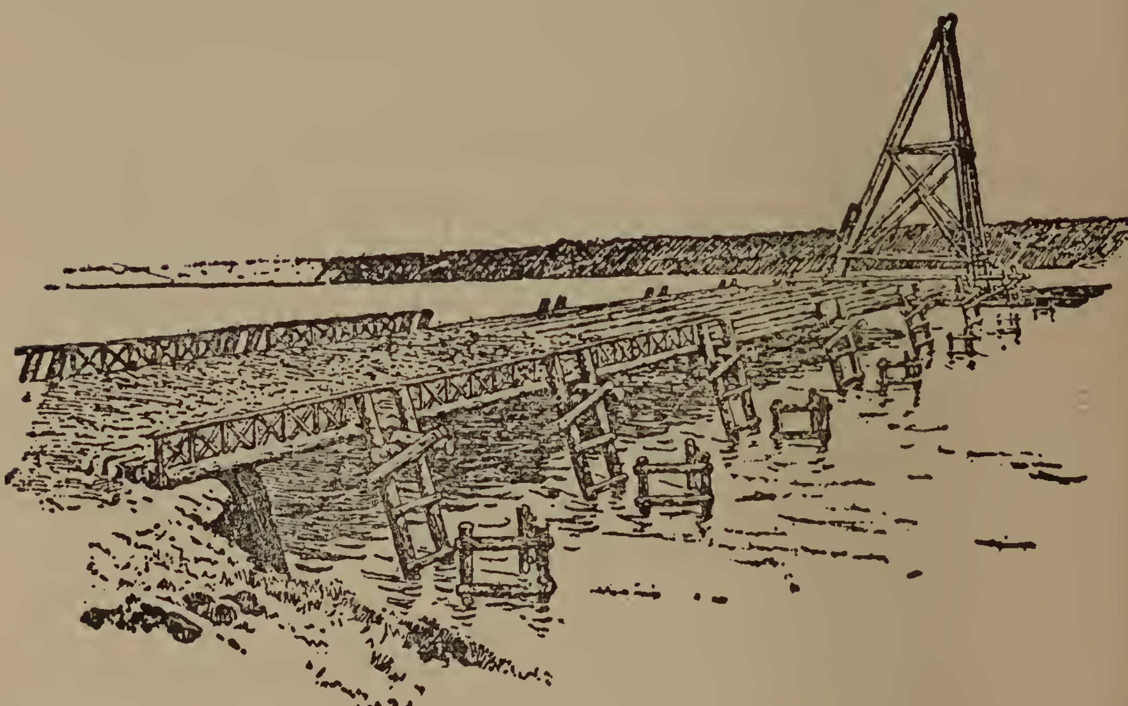
"The Morini attack a Roman Detachment."

37. Quibus ex nāvibus cum essent expositī mīlitēs circiter CCC atque in castra contenderent, Morinī, quōs Caesar in Britanniam proficīscēns pācātōs relīquerat, spē praedae adductī prīmō nōn ita māgnō suōrum numerō circumstetērunt āc, sī sēsē interficī nōllent, arma pōnere iussērunt. Cum illī orbe factō sēsē dēfenderent, celeriter ad clāmōrem hominum circiter mīlia VI convēnērunt. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar omnem ex castrīs equitātum suīs auxiliō mīsit. Interim nostrī mīlitēs impetum hostium sustinuērunt atque amplius hōrīs IIII fortissimē pūgnāvērunt, et paucīs volneribus acceptīs complūrēs ex hīs occidērunt. Posteā vērō quam equitātus noster in cōnspectum vēnit, hostēs abiectīs armīs terga vertērunt māgnusque eōrum numerus est occīsus.

But are subdued by Labienus. Thanksgiving at Rome.

38. Caesar posterō diē T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum eīs legiōnibus quās ex Britanniā redūxerat in Morinōs, quī rebelliōnem fēcerant, mīsit. Quī cum propter siccitātīs palūdum quō sē reciperent nōn habērent (quō perfugiō superiōre annō erant ūsī), omnēs ferē in potestātem Labiēnī pervēnērunt. At Q. Titūrius et L. Cotta lēgātī, quī in Menapiōrum fīnīs legiōnēs dūxerant, omnibus eōrum agrīs vāstātīs, frūmentīs succīsīs, aedificiīs incēnsīs, quod Menapiī sē omnēs in dēnsissimās silvās abdiderant, sē ad Caesarem recēpērunt.

Caesar in Belgīs omnium legiōnum hīberna cōnstituit. Eō duae omnīnō cīvitātēs ex Britanniā obsidēs mīsērunt, reliquae neglēxērunt. Hīs rēbus gestīs ex litterīs Caesaris diērum xx supplicātiō ā senātū dēcrēta est.



Pōns ā Caesare in Rhēnō factus.



Arcus.

BOOK V.

Second Invasion of Britain. — Fresh Risings of the Gauls. B.C. 54.

Cæsar orders a Suitable Fleet built for a Second Invasion of Britain. Settles Disturbances in Illyricum.

L. DOMITIŌ Ap. Claudiō cōnsulibus, discēdēns ab hībernīs Caesar in Ītaliam, ut quotannīs facere cōnsuērat, lēgātīs imperat quōs legiōnibus praefēcerat utī quam plūrimās possint hieme nāvīs aedificandās veterēsque reficiendās cūrent. Eārum modum formamque dēmōnstrat. Ad celeritātem onerandī subductiōnisque paulō facit humiliōrēs quam quibus in nostrō marī ūtī cōnsuēvimus; atque id eō magis, quod propter crēbrās commūtātiōnēs aestuum minus māgnōs ibi fluctūs fierī cōgnōverat; ad onera āc multitūdinem iūmentōrum trānsportandam, paulō lātiōrēs quam quibus in reliquīs ūtimur maribus. Hās omnīs āctuāriās imperat fierī, quam ad rem multum humilitās adiuvat. Ea quae sunt ūsuī ad armandās nāvīs ex Hispāniā adportārī iubet. Ipse conventibus Galliae citeriōris perāctīs in Īllyricum proficīscitur, quod ā Pīrūstīs finitimam partem prōvinciae incursiōnibus vāstārī audiēbat. Eō cum vēnisset, cīvitātibus mīlitēs imperat certumque in locum convenīre iubet. Quā rē nūntiātā Pīrūstae lēgātōs ad eum mit-

tunt quī doceant nihil eārum rērum pūblicō factum cōnsiliō, sēsēque parātōs esse dēmōnstrant omnibus ratiōnibus dē iniūriīs satisfacere. Perceptā ōrātiōne eōrum Caesar obsidēs imperat eōsque ad certam diem addūcī iubet: nisi ita fēcerint, sēsē bellō cīvitātem persecūtūrum dēmōnstrat. Eīs ad diem adductīs ut imperāverat, arbitrōs inter cīvitātīs dat quī lītem aestiment poenamque cōnstituant.

He orders the New Fleet to assemble at the Port Itius. Trouble among the Treveri.

2. Hīs cōnfectīs rēbus conventibusque perāctīs, in citeriōrem Galliam revertitur atque inde ad exercitum proficīscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, circumitīs omnibus hībernīs, singulārī mīlitum studiō in summā omnium rērum inopiā circiter DC ēius generis, cūius suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, nāvīs et longās XXVIII invēnit īnstrūctās, neque multum abesse ab eō quīn paucīs diēbus dēdūcī possint. Conlaudātīs mīlitibus atque eīs quī negōtiō praefuerant, quid fierī velit ostendit atque omnīs ad portum Itium convenīre iubet, quō ex portū commodissimum in Britanniam trāiectum esse cōgnōverat circiter mīlium passuum XXX [trānsmissum] ā continentī. Huic reī quod satis esse vīsum est mīlitum relīquit; ipse cum legiōnibus expedītīs IIII et equitibus DCCC in fīnīs Trēverōrum proficīscitur; quod hī neque ad concilia veniēbant neque imperiō pārēbant, Germānōsque Trānsrhēnānōs sollicitāre dīcēbantur.

Rival Chiefs of the Treveri appeal to Cæsar.

3. Haec cīvitās longē plūrimum tōtīus Galliae equitātū valet māgnāsque habet cōpiās peditum, Rhē-

numque, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, tangit. In eā cīvitāte duo dē principātū inter sē contendēbant, Indūtiomārus et Cingetorīx; ex quibus alter, simul atque dē Caesaris legiōnumque adventū cōgnitum est, ad eum vēnit; sē suōsque omnīs in officiō futūrōs neque ab amīcitiā populī Rōmānī dēfectūrōs cōnfirmāvit; quaeque in Trēverīs gererentur ostendit. At Indūtiomārus equitātum peditātumque cōgere, eīsque quī per aetātem in armīs esse nōn poterant in silvam Arduennam abditīs, quae ingentī māgnitūdine per mediōs fīnīs Trēverōrum ā flūmine Rhēnō ad initium Rēmōrum pertinet, bellum parāre īnstituit. Sed posteāquam nōn nūllī prīncipēs ex eā cīvitāte et auctōritāte Cingetorīgis adductī et adventū nostrī exercitūs perterritī ad Caesarem vēnērunt et dē suīs prīvātīs rēbus ab eō petere coepērunt, quoniam cīvitātī cōnsulere nōn possent; veritus nē ab omnibus dēsererētur Indūtiomārus lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittit: 'Sēsē idcircō ab suīs discēdere atque ad eum venīre nōluisse, quō facilius cīvitātem in officiō continēret, nē omnis nōbilitātis discessū plēbs propter imprūdentiam lāberētur; itaque cīvitātem in suā potestāte esse sēque, si Caesar permitteret, ad eum in castra ventūrum et suas cīvitātisque fortūnās ēius fideī permissūrum.'

He decides in Favor of Cingetorix.

4. Caesar etsī intellegēbat quā dē causā ea dīcerentur quaeque eum rēs ab īnstitūtō cōnsiliō dēterrēret, tamen, nē aestātem in Trēverīs cōnsūmere cōgerētur omnibus rēbus ad Britannicum bellum comparātīs, Indūtiomārum ad sē cum CC obsidibus venīre iussit. Hīs adductīs, in eīs fīliō propinquīsque ēius omnibus,

quōs nōminātim ēvocāverat, cōnsōlātus Indūtiomārum hortātusque est utī in officiō manēret; nihilō tamen sēcius prīncipibus Trēverōrum ad sē convocātīs hōs singillātim Cingetorīgī conciliāvit; quod cum meritō ēius ā sē fierī intellegēbat, tum māgnī interesse arbitrābātur ēius auctōritātem inter suōs quam plūrimum valēre, cūius tam ēgregiam in sē voluntātem perspēxisset. Id factum graviter tulit Indūtiomārus [suam grātiam inter suōs minuī]; et quī iam ante inimīcō in nōs animō fuisset multō gravius hōc dolōre exārsit.

The Muster of the Troops at the Port Itius.

5. Hīs rēbus cōnstitūtīs Caesar ad portum Itium cum legiōnibus pervenit. Ibi cōgnōscit LX nāvīs, quae in Meldīs factae erant, tempestāte rēiectās cursum tenēre nōn potuisse atque eōdem unde erant profectae revertisse; reliquās parātās ad nāvigandum atque omnibus rēbus īnstrūctās invenit. Eōdem equitātus tōtīus Galliae convenit, numerō mīlia IIII, prīncipēsque ex omnibus cīvitātibus; ex quibus perpaucōs, quōrum in sē fidem perspēxerat, relinquere in Galliā, reliquōs obsidum locō sēcum dūcere dēcrēverat, quod, cum ipse abesset, mōtum Galliae verēbātur.

Dumnorix, the Hæduan, again makes Trouble.

6. Erat ūnā cum cēterīs Dumnorīx Haeduus, dē quō ante ab nōbīs dictum est. Hunc sēcum habēre in prīmīs cōnstituerat, quod eum cupidum rērum novārum, cupidum imperī, māgnī animī, māgnae inter Gallōs auctōritātis cōgnōverat. Accēdēbat hūc quod in conciliō Haeduōrum Dumnorīx dīxerat sibi ā Cae-

sare rēgnum cīvitātis dēferri; quod dictum Haeduī graviter ferēbant neque recūsandī aut dēprecandī causā lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittere audēbant. Id factum ex suīs hospitibus Caesar cōgnōverat. Ille omnibus prīmō precibus petere contendit ut in Galliā relinquerētur; partim quod īnsuētus nāvigandī mare timēret, partim quod religiōnibus impedīrī sēsē dīceret. Posteāquam in obstinātē sibi negārī vīdit, omnī spē impetrandī adēmptā, prīncipēs Galliae sollicitāre, sēvocāre singulōs, hortārīque coepit utī in continentī remanērent; metū territāre nōn sine causā fierī ut Gallia omnī nōbilitāte spoliārētur; id esse cōnsilium Caesaris ut, quōs in cōnspectū Galliae interficere verērētur, hōs omnīs in Britanniam trāductōs necāret; fidem reliquīs interpōnere, iūs iūrandum poscere ut, quod esse ex ūsū Galliae intellēxissent, commūnī cōnsiliō administrārent. Haec ā complūribus ad Caesarem dēferēbantur.

Flight, Capture, and Death of Dumnorix.

7. Quā rē cōgnitā Caesar, quod tantum cīvitātī Haeduae dīgnitātis tribuēbat, coercendum atque dēterrendum quibuscumque rēbus posset Dumnorīgem statuēbat; quod longius ēius āmentiam prōgredī vidēbat, prōspiciendum nē quid sibi āc reī pūblicae nocēre posset. Itaque diēs circiter xxv in eō locō commorātus, quod Cōrus ventus nāvigātiōnem impediēbat, quī māgnam partem omnis temporis in hīs locīs flāre cōnsuēvit, dabat operam ut in officiō Dumnorīgem continēret; nihilō tamen sēcius omnia ēius cōnsilia cōgnōsceret. Tandem idōneam nactus tempestātem mīlitēs equitēsque cōnscendere nāvīs iubet. At om-

nium impedītīs animīs Dumnorīx cum equitibus Haeduōrum ā castrīs īnsciente Caesare domum discēdere coepit. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar, intermissā profectiōne atque omnibus rēbus postpositīs, māgnam partem equitātūs ad eum īnsequendum mittit retrahīque imperat; sī vim faciat neque pāreat, interficī iubet; nihil hunc sē absente prō sānō factūrum arbitrātus quī praesentis imperium neglēxisset. Ille autem revocātus resistere āc sē manū defendere suōrumque fidem implōrāre coepit, saepe clāmitāns līberum sē līberaeque esse cīvitātis. Illī, ut erat imperātum, circumsistunt hominem atque interficiunt; at equitēs Haeduī ad Caesarem omnēs revertuntur.

Cæsar sets Sail for Britain and finds the Coast deserted.

8. Hīs rēbus gestīs, Labiēnō in continente cum III legiōnibus et equitum mīlibus duōbus relictō, ut portūs tuērētur et reī frūmentāriae prōvidēret, quaeque in Galliā gererentur cōgnōsceret cōnsiliumque prō tempore et prō rē caperet, ipse cum V legiōnibus et parī numerō equitum, quem in continentī relīquerat, ad sōlis occāsum nāvīs solvit; et lēnī Āfricō prōvectus mediā circiter nocte ventō intermissō, cursum nōn tenuit; et longius dēlātus aestū ortā lūce sub sinistrā Britanniam relictam cōnspēxit. Tum rūrsus aestūs commūtātiōnem secūtus rēmīs contendit ut eam partem īnsulae caperet quā optimum esse ēgressum superiōre aestāte cōgnōverat. Quā in rē admodum fuit mīlitum virtūs laudanda, quī vectōriīs gravibusque nāvigiīs nōn intermissō rēmigandī labōre longārum nāvium cursum adaequārunt. Accessum est ad Britanniam omnibus nāvibus merīdiānō ferē tempore; neque



A View of the Roman Forum as it Appears To-Day

in eō locō hostis est vīsus, sed, ut posteā Caesar ex captīvīs cōgnōvit, cum māgnae manūs eō convēnissent, multitūdine nāvium perterritae, quae cum annōtinīs prīvātīsque, quās suī quisque commodī fēcerat, amplius DCCC ūnō erant vīsae tempore, ā lītore discesserant āc sē in superiōra loca abdiderant.

The Army lands, marches inland, and gains a Slight Victory.

9. Caesar expositō exercitū et locō castrīs idōneō captō, ubi ex captīvīs cōgnōvit quō in locō hostium cōpiae cōnsēdissent, cohortibus x ad mare relictīs et equitibus CCC quī praesidiō nāvibus essent, dē tertiā vigiliā ad hostīs contendit, — eō minus veritus nāvibus, quod in lītore mollī atque apertō dēligātās ad ancorās relinquēbat. Eī praesidiō nāvibusque Q. Ātrium praefēcit. Ipse noctū prōgressus mīlia passuum circiter XII hostium cōpiās cōnspicātus est. Illī equitātū atque essedīs ad flūmen prōgressī ex locō superiōre nostrōs prohibēre et proelium committere coepērunt. Repulsī ab equitātū sē in silvās abdidērunt, locum nactī ēgregiē et nātūrā et opere mūnītum, quem domesticī bellī (ut videbantur) causā iam ante praeparāverant; nam crēbrīs arboribus succīsīs omnēs introitūs erant praeclūsī. Ipsī ex silvīs rārī prōpūgnābant nostrōsque intrā mūnītiōnēs ingredī prohibēbant. At mīlitēs legiōnis VII, testūdine factā et aggere ad mūnītiōnēs adiectō, locum cēpērunt eōsque ex silvīs expulērunt paucīs volneribus acceptīs. Sed eōs fugientīs longius Caesar prōsequī vetuit, et quod locī nātūram īgnōrābat, et quod māgnā parte diēī cōnsūmptā mūnītiōnī castrōrum tempus relinquī volēbat.

A Storm wrecks the Fleet.

10. Postrīdiē ēius diēī māne tripartītō mīlitēs equitēsque in expeditiōnem mīsit, ut eōs quī fūgerant persequerentur. Hīs aliquantum itineris prōgressīs, cum iam extrēmī essent in prōspectū, equitēs ā Q. Ātriō ad Caesarem vēnērunt quī nūntiārent, superiōre nocte māximā coörtā tempestāte, prope omnēs nāvīs adflīctās atque in lītus ēiectās esse; quod neque ancorae fūnēsque sustinērent neque nautae gubernātōrēsque vim tempestātis patī possent. Itaque ex eō concursū nāvium māgnum esse incommodum acceptum.

But the Ships are repaired.

11. Hīs rēbus cognitīs Caesar legiōnēs equitātumque revocārī atque in itinere resistere iubet, ipse ad nāvīs revertitur; eadem ferē quae ex nūntiīs [līterīs] cōgnōverat cōram perspicit, sīc ut āmissīs circiter XL nāvibus reliquae tamen reficī posse māgnō negōtiō vidērentur. Itaque ex legiōnibus fabrōs dēligit et ex continentī aliōs arcessī iubet; Labiēnō scrībit ut quam plūrimās possit eīs legiōnibus quae sunt apud eum nāvīs īnstituat. Ipse, etsī rēs erat multae operae āc labōris, tamen commodissimum esse statuit omnīs nāvīs subdūcī et cum castrīs ūnā mūnītiōne coniungī. In hīs rēbus circiter diēs X cōnsūmit nē nocturnīs quidem tempōribus ad labōrem mīlitum intermissīs. Subductīs nāvibus castrīsque ēgregiē mūnītīs eāsdem cōpiās quās ante praesidiō nāvibus relinquit; ipse eōdem unde redierat proficīscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, māiōrēs iam undique in eum locum cōpiae Britannōrum convēnerant, summā imperī bellīque administrandī commūnī cōnsiliō permissā Cassivellaunō; cūius fīnēs

ā maritimīs cīvitātibus flūmen dīvidit, quod appellātur Tamesis, ā marī circiter mīlia passuum LXXX. Huic superiōre tempore cum reliquīs cīvitātibus continentia bella intercesserant; sed nostrō adventū permōtī Britannī hunc tōtī bellō imperiōque praefēcerant.

Britain and its Inhabitants.

12. Britanniae pars interior ab eīs incolitur quōs nātōs in īnsulā ipsī memoriā prōditum dīcunt; maritima pars ab eīs quī praedae āc bellī īnferendī causā ex Belgiō trānsiērunt (quī omnēs ferē eīs nōminibus cīvitātum appellantur quibus ortī ex cīvitātibus eō pervēnērunt) et bellō inlātō ibi remānsērunt atque agrōs colere coepērunt. Hominum est īnfīnīta multitūdō crēberrimaque aedificia ferē Gallicīs cōnsimilia, pecoris māgnus numerus. Ūtuntur aut aere [aut nummō aereō] aut tāleīs ferreīs ad certum pondus exāminātīs prō nummō. Nāscitur ibi plumbum album in mediterrāneīs regiōnibus, in maritimīs ferrum, sed ēius exigua est cōpia; aere ūtuntur importātō. Māteria cūiusque generis ut in Galliā est praeter fāgum atque abietem. Leporem et gallīnam et ānserem gustāre fās nōn putant; haec tamen alunt animī voluptātisque causā. Loca sunt temperātiōra quam in Galliā remissiōribus frīgoribus.

Geography of the Island.

13. Īnsula nātūrā triquetra, cūius ūnum latus est contrā Galliam. Hūius lateris alter angulus, quī est ad Cantium, quō ferē omnēs ex Galliā nāvēs adpelluntur, ad orientem sōlem, īnferior ad merīdiem spectat. Hōc latus pertinet circiter mīlia passuum D. Alterum

vergit ad Hispāniam atque occidentem sōlem; quā ex parte est Hibernia, īnsula dīmidiō minor (ut exīstimātur) quam Britannia, sed parī spatiō trānsmissūs atque ex Galliā est in Britanniam. In hōc mediō cursū est īnsula quae appellātur Mona; complūrēs praetereā minōrēs subiectae īnsulae exīstimantur; dē quibus īnsulīs nōn nūllī scrīpsērunt diēs continuōs XXX sub brūmam esse noctem. Nōs nihil dē eō percontātiōnibus reperiēbāmus, nisi certīs ex aquā mēnsūrīs breviōrēs esse quam in continentī noctīs vidēbāmus. Hūius est longitūdō lateris, ut fert illōrum opīniō, DCC mīlium. Tertium est contrā septentriōnēs, cuī partī nūlla est obiecta terra; sed ēius angulus lateris māximē ad Germāniam spectat. Hōc mīlium passuum DCCC in longitūdinem esse exīstimātur. Ita omnis īnsula est in circuitū vīciēs centum mīlium passuum.

Customs of the Inhabitants.

14. Ex hīs omnibus lōngē sunt hūmānissimī quī Cantium incolunt (quae regiō est maritima omnis), neque multum ā Gallicā differunt cōnsuētūdine. Interiōrēs plērīque frūmenta nōn serunt, sed lacte et carne vīvunt pellibusque sunt vestītī. Omnēs vērō sē Britannī vitrō īnficiunt, quod caeruleum efficit colōrem, atque hōc horridiōrēs sunt in pūgnā adspectū; capillōque sunt prōmissō atque omnī parte corporis rāsā praeter caput et labrum superius. Uxōrēs habent dēnī duodēnīque inter sē commūnīs, et māximē frātrēs cum frātribus parentēsque cum līberīs; sed quī sunt ex hīs nātī eōrum habentur līberī quō prīmum virgō quaeque dēducta est.

Defeat of the Britons.

15. Equitēs hostium essedāriīque ācriter proeliō cum equitātū nostrō in itinere cōnflīxērunt, ita tamen ut nostrī omnibus partibus superiōrēs fuerint atque eōs in silvās collīsque compulerint; sed complūribus interfectīs cupidius īnsecūtī nōn nūllōs ex suīs āmīsērunt. At illī intermissō spatiō, imprūdentibus nostrīs atque occupātīs in mūnītiōne castrōrum, subitō sē ex silvīs ēiēcērunt, impetūque in eōs factō quī erant in statiōne prō castrīs conlocātī, ācriter pūgnāvērunt; duābusque missīs subsidiō cohortibus ā Caesare, atque hīs prīmīs legiōnum duārum, cum eae perexiguō intermissō locī spatiō inter sē cōnstitissent, novō genere pūgnae perterritīs nostrīs, per mediōs audācissimē perrūpērunt sēque inde incolumīs recēpērunt. Eō diē Q. Laberius Dūrus tribūnus mīlitum interficitur. Illī plūribus submissīs cohortibus repelluntur.

Their Mode of Fighting.

16. Tōtō hōc in genere pūgnae, cum sub oculīs omnium āc prō castrīs dīmicārētur, intellēctum est nostrōs propter gravitātem armōrum, quod neque īnsequī cēdentīs possent neque ab sīgnīs discēdere audērent, minus aptōs esse ad hūius generis hostem; equitēs autem māgnō cum perīculō proeliō dīmicāre, propterea quod illī etiam cōnsultō plērumque cēderent, et cum paulum ab legiōnibus nostrōs remōvissent, ex essedīs dēsilīrent et pedibus disparī proeliō contenderent. [Equestris autem proelī ratiō et cēdentibus et īnsequentibus pār atque idem perīculum īnferēbat.] Accēdēbat hūc ut numquam cōnfertī sed rārī māgnīsque intervāllīs proeliārentur statiōnēsque dispo-

sitās habērent, atque aliōs aliī deinceps exciperent, integrīque et recentēs dēfatīgātīs succēderent.

Another Defeat.

17. Posterō diē procul ā castrīs hostēs in collibus cōnstitērunt, rārīque sē ostendere et lēnius quam prīdiē nostrōs equitēs proeliō lacessere coepērunt. Sed merīdiē, cum Caesar pābulandī causā III legiōnēs atque omnem equitātum cum C. Trebōniō lēgātō mīsisset, repente ex omnibus partibus ad pābulātōrēs advolāvērunt, sīc utī ab sīgnīs legiōnibusque nōn absisterent. Nostrī ācriter in eōs impetū factō reppulērunt, neque fīnem sequendī fēcērunt quoad subsidiō cōnfīsī equitēs, cum post sē legiōnēs vidērent, praecipitēs hostēs ēgērunt; magnōque eōrum numerō interfectō neque suī conligendī neque cōnsistendī aut ex essedīs dēsiliendī facultātem dedērunt. Ex hāc fugā prōtinus quae undique convēnerant auxilia discessērunt; neque post id tempus umquam summīs nōbīscum cōpiīs hostēs contendērunt.

Cæsar crosses the Thames.

18. Caesar cōgnitō cōnsiliō eōrum ad flūmen Tamesim in fīnīs Cassivellaunī exercitum dūxit; quod flūmen ūnō omnīnō locō pedibus, atque hōc aegrē, trānsīrī potest. Eō cum vēnisset, animadvertit ad alteram flūminis rīpam māgnās esse cōpiās hostium īnstrūctās; rīpa autem erat acūtīs sudibus praefīxīsque mūnīta, ēiusdemque generis sub aquā dēfīxae sudēs flūmine tegēbantur. Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs ā captīvīs perfugīsque Caesar praemissō equitātū cōnfestim legiōnēs subsequī iussit. Sed eā celeritāte atque eō impetū mīlitēs iērunt, cum capite sōlō ex aquā exstā-

rent, ut hostēs impetum legiōnum atque equitum sustinēre nōn possent rīpāsque dīmitterent āc sē fugae mandārent.

Guerilla Tactics of Cassivellaunus.

19. Cassivellaunus, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, omnī dēpositā spē contentiōnis, dīmissīs ampliōribus cōpiīs, mīlibus circiter IIII essedāriōrum relictīs itinera nostra servābat; paulumque ex viā excēdēbat locīsque impedītīs āc silvestribus sēsē occultābat atque eīs regiōnibus quibus nōs iter factūrōs cōgnōverat pecora atque hominēs ex agrīs in silvās compellēbat; et cum equitātus noster līberius praedandī vāstandīque causā sē in agrōs ēiēcerat, omnibus viīs sēmitīsque essedāriōs ex silvīs ēmittēbat; et māgnō cum perīculō nostrōrum equitum cum eīs cōnflīgēbat atque hōc metū lātius vagārī prohibēbat. Relinquēbātur ut neque longius ab agmine legiōnum discēdī Caesar paterētur, et tantum in agrīs vāstandīs incendiīsque faciendīs hostibus nocērētur quantum *in* labōre atque itinere legiōnāriī mīlitēs efficere poterant.

Submission of the Trinobantes.

20. Interim Trinobantēs, prope fīrmissima eārum regiōnum cīvitās, ex quā Mandubracius adulēscēns Caesaris fidem secūtus ad eum in continentem [Galliam] vēnerat, — cūius pater in eā cīvitāte rēgnum obtinuerat interfectusque erat ā Cassivellaunō, ipse fugā mortem vītāverat, — lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt pollicenturque sēsē eī dēditūrōs atque imperāta factūrōs: petunt ut Mandubracium ab iniūriā Cassivellaunī dēfendat, atque in cīvitātem mittat quī praesit imperiumque obtineat. Hīs Caesar imperat obsidēs XL

frūmentumque exercituī, Mandubraciumque ad eōs mittit. Illī imperāta celeriter fēcērunt, obsidēs ad numerum frūmentumque mīsērunt.

Other Tribes follow their Example. A British "Oppidum."

21. Trinobantibus dēfēnsīs atque ab omnī mīlitum iniūriā prohibitīs, Cēnimāgnī, Segontiācī, Ancalitēs, Bibrocī, Cassī lēgātiōnibus missīs sēsē Caesarī dedunt. Ab hīs cōgnōscit nōn longē ex eō locō oppidum Cassivellaunī abesse silvīs palūdibusque mūnītum, quō satis māgnus hominum pecorisque numerus convēnerit. Oppidum autem Britannī vocant cum silvās impedītās vāllō atque fossā mūniērunt, quō incursiōnis hostium vītandae causā convenīre cōnsuērunt. Eō proficīscitur cum legiōnibus; locum reperit ēgregiē nātūrā atque opere mūnītum; tamen hunc duābus ex partibus oppūgnāre contendit. Hostēs paulisper morātī mīlitum nostrōrum impetum nōn tulērunt sēsēque aliā ex parte oppidī ēiēcērunt. Māgnus ibi numerus pecoris repertus, multīque in fugā sunt comprehēnsī atque interfectī.

Cassivellaunus finally yields.

22. Dum haec in hīs locīs geruntur, Cassivellaunus ad Cantium, quod esse ad mare suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, quibus regiōnibus IIII rēgēs praeerant, Cingetorīx, Carvilius, Taximagulus, Segonax, nūntiōs mittit atque hīs imperat utī coāctīs omnibus cōpiīs castra nāvālia dē imprōvīsō adoriantur atque oppūgnent. Hī cum ad castra vēnissent, nostrī ēruptiōne factā multīs eōrum interfectīs, captō etiam nōbilī duce Lugotorīge, suōs

incolumīs redūxērunt. Cassivellaunus hōc proeliō nūntiātō, tot dētrīmentīs acceptis, vāstātīs fīnibus, māximē etiam permōtus dēfectiōne cīvitātum, lēgātōs per Atrebātem Commium dē dēditiōne ad Caesarem mittit. Caesar cum cōnstituisset hiemāre in continentī propter repentīnōs Galliae mōtūs, neque multum aestātis superesset, atque id facile extrahī posse intellegeret, obsidēs imperat, et quid in annōs singulōs vectīgālis populō Rōmānō Brittania penderet cōnstituit. Interdīcit atque imperat Cassivellaunō nē Mandubraciō neu Trinobantibus noceat.

Cæsar returns to Gaul.

23. Obsidibus acceptīs exercitum redūcit ad mare, nāvīs invenit refectās. Hīs dēductīs, quod et captīvōrum māgnum numerum habēbat et nōn nūllae tempestāte dēperierant nāvēs, duōbus commeātibus exercitum reportāre īnstituit. Āc sīc accidit utī ex tantō nāvium numerō, tot nāvigātiōnibus, neque hōc neque superiōre annō ūlla omnīnō nāvis quae mīlitēs portāret dēsīderārētur; at ex eīs quae inānēs ex continentī ad eum remitterentur, [et] priōris commeātūs expositīs mīlitibus, et quās posteā Labiēnus faciendās cūrāverat numerō LX, perpaucae locum caperent; reliquae ferē omnēs rēicerentur. Quās cum aliquamdiū Caesar frūstrā expectāsset, nē annī tempore ā nāvigātiōne exclūderētur, quod aequinoctium suberat, necessāriō angustius mīlitēs conlocāvit, āc summā tranquillitāte cōnsecūtā, secundā initā cum solvisset vigiliā, prīmā lūce terram attigit omnīsque incolumīs nāvīs perdūxit.

On Account of the Scarcity of Supplies, the Army is quartered in Detachments for the Winter.

24. Subductīs nāvibus conciliōque Gallōrum Samarobrīvae perāctō, quod eō annō frūmentum in Galliā propter siccitātīs angustius prōvēnerat, coāctus est aliter āc superiōribus annīs exercitum in hībernīs conlocāre legiōnēsque in plūrīs cīvitātīs distribuere; ex quibus ūnam in Morinōs dūcendam C. Fabiō lēgātō dedit, alteram in Nerviōs Q. Cicerōnī, tertiam in Esuviōs L. Rōsciō; quartam in Rēmīs cum T. Labiēnō in confīniō Trēverōrum hiemāre iussit; trīs in Bellovacīs conlocāvit; hīs M. Crassum et L. Munātium Plancum et C. Trebōnium lēgātōs praefēcit. Ūnam legiōnem, quam proximē trāns Padum cōnscrīpserat, et cohortīs v in Eburōnēs, quōrum pars māxima est inter Mosam āc Rhēnum, quī sub imperiō Ambiorīgis et Catuvolcī erant, mīsit. Hīs mīlitibus Q. Titūrium Sabīnum et L. Aurunculēium Cottam lēgātōs praeesse iussit. Ad hunc modum distribūtīs legiōnibus facillimē inopiae frūmentāriae sēsē mederī posse exīstimāvit. Atque hārum tamen omnium legiōnum hīberna, praeter eam quam L. Rōsciō in pācātissimam et quiētissimam partem dūcendam dederat, mīlibus passuum c continēbantur. Ipse intereā, quoad legiōnēs conlocātās mūnītaque hīberna cōgnōvisset, in Galliā morārī cōnstituit.

Tasgetius, a Friendly Chief, is killed by the Carnutes.

25. Erat in Carnutibus summō locō nātus Tasgetius, cūius māiōrēs in suā cīvitāte rēgnum obtinuerant. Huic Caesar prō ēius virtūte atque in sē benevolentiā, quod in omnibus bellīs singulārī ēius operā fuerat

ūsus, māiōrum locum restituerat. Tertium iam hunc annum rēgnantem inimīcī palam multīs ex cīvitāte auctōribus interfēcērunt. Dēfertur ea rēs ad Caesarem. Ille veritus, quod ad plūrīs pertinēbat, nē cīvitās eōrum impulsū dēficeret, L. Plancum cum legiōne ex Belgiō celeriter in Carnutēs proficīscī iubet ibique hiemāre; quōrumque operā cōgnōverit Tasgetium interfectum, hōs comprehēnsōs ad sē mittere. Interim ab omnibus [lēgātīs quaestōribusque] quibus legiōnēs trādiderat, certior factus est in hīberna perventum locumque hībernīs esse mūnītum.

Ambiorix and Catuvolcus attack Sabinus's Camp.

26. Diēbus circiter xv quibus in hīberna ventum est, initium repentīnī tumultūs āc dēfectiōnis ortum est ab Ambiorīge et Catuvolcō; quī, cum ad fīnīs rēgnī suī Sabīnō Cottaeque praestō fuissent frūmentumque in hīberna comportāvissent, Indūtiomārī Trēverī nūntiīs impulsī suōs concitāvērunt subitōque oppressīs līgnātōribus māgnā manū ad castra oppūgnanda vēnērunt. Cum celeriter nostrī arma cēpissent vāllumque adscendissent, atque ūnā ex parte Hispānīs equitibus ēmissīs equestrī proeliō superiōrēs fuissent, dēspērātā rē hostēs suōs ab oppūgnātiōne redūxērunt. Tum suō mōre conclāmāvērunt utī aliquī ex nostrīs ad conloquium prōdīret: habēre sēsē quae dē rē commūnī dīcere vellent, quibus rēbus contrōversiās minuī posse spērārent.

Treacherous Advice of Ambiorix.

27. Mittitur ad eōs conloquendī causā C. Arpīnēius, eques Rōmānus, familiāris Q. Titūrī, et Q. Iūnius ex

Hispāniā quīdam, quī iam ante missū Caesaris ad Ambiorīgem ventitāre cōnsuērat; apud quōs Ambiorīx ad hunc modum locūtus est: 'Sēsē prō Caesaris in sē beneficiīs plūrimum eī cōnfitērī dēbēre, quod ēius, operā stīpendiō līberātus esset quod Aduatucīs, fīnitimīs suīs, pendere cōnsuēsset, quodque eī et fīlius et frātris fīlius ab Caesare remissī essent quōs Aduatucī obsidum numerō missōs apud sē in servitūte et catēnīs tenuissent; neque id quod fēcerit dē oppūgnātiōne castrōrum aut iūdiciō aut voluntāte suā fēcisse, sed coāctū cīvitātis; suaque esse ēiusmodī imperia ut nōn minus habēret iūris in sē multitūdō quam ipse in multitūdinem.

'Cīvitātī porrō hanc fuisse bellī causam, quod repentīnae Gallōrum coniūrātiōnī resistere nōn potuerit; id sē facile ex humilitāte suā probāre posse, quod nōn adeō sit imperītus rērum ut suīs cōpiīs populum Rōmānum superārī posse cōnfīdat. Sed esse Galliae commūne cōnsilium; omnibus hībernīs Caesaris oppūgnandīs hunc esse dictum diem, nē qua legiō alterī legiōnī subsidiō venīre posset; nōn facile Gallōs Gallīs negāre potuisse, praesertim cum dē recuperandā commūnī lībertāte cōnsilium initum vidērētur.

'Quibus quoniam prō pietāte satisfēcerit, habēre nunc sē ratiōnem officī prō beneficiīs Caesaris; monēre, ōrāre Titūrium prō hospitiō ut suae āc mīlitum salūtī cōnsulat. Māgnam manum Germānōrum conductam Rhēnum trānsīsse; hanc adfore bīduō. Ipsōrum esse cōnsilium, velintne prius quam fīnitimī sentiant, ēductōs ex hībernīs mīlitēs aut ad Cicerōnem aut ad Labiēnum dēdūcere, quōrum alter mīlia passuum circiter L, alter paulō amplius ab eīs absit. Illud sē

pollicērī et iūre iūrandō cōnfīrmāre tūtum sē iter per suōs fīnīs datūrum; quod cum faciat, et cīvitātī sēsē cōnsulere, quod hībernīs levētur, et Caesarī prō ēius meritīs grātiam referre.' Hāc ōrātiōne habitā discēdit Ambiorīx.

The Question of leaving the Camp is discussed. Some Officers object.

28. Arpīnēius et Iūnius quae audierant ad lēgātōs dēferunt. Illī repentīnā rē perturbātī, etsī ab hoste ea dīcēbantur, tamen nōn neglegenda exīstimābant; māximēque hāc rē permovēbantur, quod cīvitātem ignōbilem atque humilem Eburōnum suā sponte populō Rōmānō bellum facere ausam vix erat crēdendum. Itaque ad cōncilium rem dēferunt māgnaque inter eōs exsistit contrōversia. L. Aurunculēius complūrēsque tribūnī mīlitum et prīmōrum ōrdinum centuriōnēs nihil temerē agendum, neque ex hībernīs iniūssū Caesaris discēdendum exīstimābant; quantāsvīs [māgnās] cōpiās etiam Germānōrum sustinērī posse mūnītīs hībernīs docēbant; rem esse testimōniō, quod prīmum hostium impetum multīs ultrō volneribus inlātīs fortissimē sustinuerint; rē frūmentāriā nōn premī; intereā et ex proximīs hībernīs et ā Caesare conventūra subsidia; postrēmō, quid esse levius aut turpius quam auctōre hoste dē summīs rēbus capere cōnsilium?

Sabinus, however, is Anxious to withdraw.

29. Contrā ea Titūrius 'Sērō factūrōs' clāmitābat, 'cum māiōrēs manūs hostium adiūnctīs Germānīs convēnissent, aut cum aliquid calamitātis in proximīs

hībernīs essent acceptum; brevem cōnsulendī esse occāsiōnem. Caesarem *sē* arbitrārī profectum in Ītaliam; neque aliter Carnutes interficiendī Tasgetī cōnsilium fuisse captūrōs, neque Eburōnēs, sī ille adesset, tantā contemptiōne nostrī ad castra ventūrōs esse. Sēsē nōn hostem auctōrem sed rem spectāre; subesse Rhēnum; māgnō esse Germānīs dolōrī Ariovistī mortem et superiōrēs nostrās victōriās; ārdēre Galliam tot contumēliīs acceptīs sub populī Rōmānī imperium redāctam, superiōre glōriā reī mīlitāris exstīnctā. Postrēmō, quis hōc sibi persuāděret sine certā spē Ambiorīgem ad ēiusmodī cōnsilium dēscendisse? Suam sententiam in utramque partem esse tūtam: sī nihil esset dūrius, nūllō cum perīculō ad proximam legiōnem perventūrōs; sī Gallia omnis cum Germānīs cōnsentīret, ūnam esse in celeritāte positam salūtem. Cottae quidem atque eōrum quī dissentīrent cōnsilium quem habēre exitum? in quō sī nōn praesēns perīculum, at certē longinquā obsidiōne famēs esset timenda.'

Cotta gives in to Sabinus.

30. Hāc in utramque partem disputātiōne habitā, cum ā Cottā prīmīsque ōrdinibus ācriter resisterētur, "Vincite," inquit, "sī ita voltis," Sabīnus, et id clāriōre vōce, ut māgna pars mīlitum exaudīret; "neque is sum," inquit, "quī gravissimē ex vōbīs mortis perīculō terrear: hī sapient; sī gravius quid acciderit, abs tē ratiōnem reposcent; quī, si per tē liceat, perendinō diē cum proximīs hībernīs coniūnctī commūnem cum reliquīs bellī cāsum sustineant, nōn

rēiectī et relēgātī longē ab cēterīs aut ferrō aut fame intereant."

The Army marches out of Camp.

31. Cōnsurgitur ex cōnciliō; comprehendunt utrumque et ōrant 'Nē suā dissēnsiōne et pertināciā rem in summum perīculum dēdūcant; facilem esse rem, seu maneant seu proficīscantur, sī modo ūnum omnēs sentiant āc probent; contrā in dissēnsiōne nūllam sē salūtem perspicere.' Rēs disputātiōne ad mediam noctem perdūcitur. Tandem dat Cotta permōtus manūs; superat sententia Sabīnī. Prōnūntiātur prīmā lūce itūrōs. Cōnsūmitur vigiliīs reliqua pars noctis, cum sua quisque mīles circumspiceret, quid sēcum portāre posset, quid ex īnstrūmentō hībernōrum relinquere cōgerētur. [Omnia excōgitantur quā rē nec sine perīculō maneātur et languōre mīlitum et vigiliīs perīculum augeātur.] Prīmā lūce sīc ex castrīs proficīscuntur ut quibus esset persuāsum nōn ab hoste sed ab homine amīcissimō [Ambiorīge] cōnsilium datum, longissimō agmine māximīsque impedīmentīs.

They are ambushed by the Gauls in a Narrow Defile.

32. At hostēs, posteā quam ex nocturnō fremitū vigiliīsque dē profectiōne eōrum sēnsērunt, conlocātīs īnsidiīs bipartītō in silvīs opportūnō atque occultō locō ā mīlibus passuum circiter duōbus Rōmānōrum adventum exspectābant; et cum sē māior pars agminis in māgnam convallem dēmīsisset, ex utrāque parte ēius vallis subitō sē ostendērunt novissimōsque premere et prīmōs prohibēre adscēnsū atque inīquissimō nostrīs locō proelium committere coepērunt.

Sabinus loses his Head completely. Cotta keeps Cool, but makes a Fatal Mistake.

33. Tum dēmum Titūrius, quī nihil ante prōvidisset, trepidāre et concursāre cohortīsque dispōnere, haec tamen ipsa timidē atque ut eum omnia dēficere vidērentur; quod plērumque eīs accidere cōnsuēvit quī in ipsō negōtiō cōnsilium capere cōguntur. At Cotta, quī cōgitāsset haec posse in itinere accidere atque ob eam causam profectiōnis auctor nōn fuisset, nūllā in rē commūnī salūtī deerat, et in appellandīs cohortandīsque mīlitibus imperātōris et in pūgnā mīlitis officia praestābat. Cum propter longitūdinem agminis nōn facile per sē omnia obīre et quid quōque locō faciendum esset prōvidēre possent, iussērunt prōnūntiārī ut impedīmenta relinquerent atque in orbem cōnsisterent. Quod cōnsilium, etsī in ēiusmodī cāsū reprehendendum nōn est, tamen incommodē cecidit; nam et nostrīs mīlitibus spem minuit et hostīs ad pūgnam alacriōrēs effēcit, quod nōn sine summō timōre et dēspērātiōne id factum vidēbātur. Praetereā accidit, quod fierī necesse erat, ut volgō mīlitēs ab sīgnīs discēderent, quaeque quisque eōrum cārissima habēret ab impedīmentīs petere atque abripere properāret; clāmōre et flētū omnia complērentur.

Cunning of Ambiorix.

34. At barbarīs cōnsilium nōn dēfuit. Nam ducēs eōrum tōtā aciē prōnūntiārī iussērunt nē quis ab locō discēderet; illōrum esse praedam atque illīs reservārī quaecumque Rōmānī relīquissent; proinde omnia in victōriā posita exīstimārent. [Erant et virtūte et numerō pūgnandō parēs.] Nostrī tametsī ab duce et ā

fortūnā dēserēbantur, tamen omnem spem salūtis in virtūte pōnēbant; et quotiēns quaeque cohors prōcurrerat, ab eā parte māgnus numerus hostium cadēbat. Quā rē animadversā Ambiorīx prōnūntiārī iubet ut procul tēla coniciant neu propius accēdant, et quam in partem Rōmānī impetum fēcerint cēdant [levitāte armōrum et cotīdiānā exercitātiōne nihil hīs nocērī posse], rūrsus sē ad sīgna recipientīs īnsequantur.

The Fight goes against the Romans.

35. Quō praeceptō ab eīs dīligentissimē observātō, cum quaepiam cohors ex orbe excesserat atque impetum fēcerat, hostēs vēlōcissimē refugiēbant. Interim eam partem nūdārī necesse erat et ab latere apertō tēla recipere. Rūrsus, cum in eum locum unde erant prōgressī revertī coeperant, et ab eīs quī cesserant et ab eīs quī proximī steterant circumveniēbantur; sīn autem locum tenēre vellent, nec virtūtī locus relinquēbātur neque ab tantā multitūdine coniecta tēla cōnfertī vītāre poterant. Tamen tot incommodīs cōnflīctātī, multīs volneribus acceptīs resistēbant; et māgnā parte diēī cōnsūmptā, cum ā prīmā lūce ad hōram octāvam pūgnārētur, nihil quod ipsīs esset indīgnum committēbant. Tum T. Balventiō, quī superiōre annō prīmum pīlum dūxerat, virō fortī et māgnae auctōritātis, utrumque femur trāgulā trāicitur; Q. Lūcānius, ēiusdem ōrdinis, fortissimē pūgnāns, dum circumventō fīliō subvenit, interficitur; L. Cotta lēgātus omnīs cohortīs ōrdinēsque adhortāns in adversum ōs fundā volnerātur.

Sabinus tries to get Terms from Ambiorix.

36. Hīs rēbus permōtus Q. Titūrius, cum procul Ambiorīgem suōs cohortantem cōnspēxisset, interpre-

tem suum Cn. Pompēium ad eum mittit rogātum ut sibi mīlitibusque parcat. Ille appellātus respondet: 'Sī velit sēcum conloquī, licēre; spērāre ā multitūdine impetrārī posse quod ad mīlitum salūtem pertineat; ipsī vērō nihil nocitum īrī, inque eam rem sē suam fidem interpōnere.' Ille cum Cottā sauciō commūnicat, sī videātur, pūgnā ut excēdant et cum Ambiorīge ūnā conloquantur: spērāre sē ab eō dē suā āc mīlitum salūte impetrārī posse. Cotta sē ad armātum hostem itūrum negat atque in eō persevērat.

He is treacherously slain. Utter Rout of the Roman Army. Few escape.

37. Sabīnus quōs in praesentiā tribūnōs mīlitum circum sē habēbat et prīmōrum ōrdinum centuriōnēs sē sequī iubet; et, cum propius Ambiorīgem accessisset, iūssus arma abicere, imperātum facit suīsque ut idem faciant imperat. Interim, dum dē condiciōnibus inter sē agunt longiorque cōnsultō ab Ambiorīge īnstituitur sermō, paulātim circumventus interficitur. Tum vērō suō mōre victōriam conclāmant atque ululātum tollunt, impetūque in nostrōs factō ōrdinēs perturbant. Ibi L. Cotta pūgnāns interficitur cum māximā parte mīlitum. Reliquī sē in castra recipiunt unde erant ēgressī; ex quibus L. Petrosidius aquilifer, cum māgnā multitūdine hostium premerētur, aquilam intrā vāllum prōicit, ipse prō castrīs fortissimē pūgnāns occīditur. Illī aegrē ad noctem oppūgnātiōnem sustinent; nocte ad ūnum omnēs dēspērātā salūte sē ipsī interficiunt. Paucī ex proeliō ēlāpsī incertīs itineribus per silvās ad T. Labiēnum lēgātum in hīberna perveniunt atque eum dē rēbus gestīs certiōrem faciunt.

Ambiorix incites the Aduatuci and Nervii to revolt.

38. Hāc victōriā sublātus Ambiorīx statim cum equitātū in Aduatucōs, quī erant ēius rēgnō fīnitimī, proficīscitur; neque noctem neque diem intermittit peditātumque sē subsequī iubet. Rē dēmōnstrātā Aduatucīsque concitātīs, posterō diē in Nerviōs pervenit, hortāturque nē suī in perpetuum līberandī atque ulcīscendī Rōmānōs prō eīs quās accēperint iniūriīs occāsiōnem dīmittant; interfectōs esse lēgātōs duōs māgnamque partem exercitūs interīsse dēmōnstrat; nihil esse negōtī subitō oppressam legiōnem quae cum Cicerōne hiemet interficī; sē ad eam rem profitētur adiūtōrem. Facile hāc ōrātiōne Nerviīs persuādet.

Attack on the Camp of Q. Cicero.

39. Itaque cōnfestim dīmissīs nūntiīs ad Ceutronēs, Grudiōs, Levacōs, Pleumoxiōs, Geidumnōs, quī omnēs sub eōrum imperiō sunt, quam māximās possunt manūs cōgunt, et dē imprōvīsō ad Cicerōnis hīberna advolant, nōndum ad eum fāmā dē Titūrī morte perlātā. Huic quoque accidit, quod fuit necesse, ut nōn nūllī mīlitēs, quī līgnātiōnis mūnītiōnisque causā in silvās discessissent, repentīnō equitum adventū interciperentur. Hīs circumventīs, māgnā manū Eburōnēs, Nerviī, Aduatucī atque hōrum omnium sociī et clientēs legiōnem oppūgnāre incipiunt. Nostrī celeriter ad arma concurrunt, vāllum cōnscendunt. Aegrē is diēs sustentātur, quod omnem spem hostēs in celeritāte pōnēbant atque hanc adeptī victōriam in perpetuum sē fore victōrēs cōnfīdēbant.

Cicero prepares for a Vigorous Defense.

40. Mittuntur ad Caesarem cōnfestim ab Cicerōne litterae, māgnīs prōpositīs praemiīs sī pertulissent; obsessīs omnibus viīs missī intercipiuntur. Noctū ex māteriā quam mūnītiōnis causā comportāverant turrēs admodum cxx excitantur incrēdibilī celeritāte; quae deesse operī vidēbantur perficiuntur. Hostēs posterō diē multō māiōribus coāctīs cōpiīs castra oppūgnant, fossam complent. Ā nostrīs eādem ratiōne quā prīdiē resistitur: hōc idem reliquīs deinceps fit diēbus. Nūlla pars nocturnī temporis ad labōrem intermittitur; nōn aegrīs, nōn volnerātīs facultās quiētis datur. Quaecumque ad proximī diēī oppūgnātiōnem opus sunt noctū comparantur; multae praeūstae sudēs, māgnus mūrālium pīlōrum numerus īnstituitur; turrēs contabulantur; pinnae lōrīcaeque ex crātibus attexuntur. Ipse Cicerō, cum tenuissimā valētūdine esset, nē nocturnum quidem sibi tempus ad quiētem relinquēbat, ut ultrō mīlitum concursū āc vōcibus sibi parcere cōgerētur.

The Nervii try to induce Cicero to retire. He refuses.

41. Tunc ducēs prīncipēsque Nerviōrum, quī aliquem sermōnis aditum causamque amīcitiae cum Cicerōne habēbant, conloquī sēsē velle dīcunt. Factā potestāte, eadem quae Ambiorīx cum Titūriō ēgerat commemorant: ‘Omnem esse in armīs Galliam, Germānōs Rhēnum trānsīsse, Caesaris reliquōrumque hīberna oppūgnārī.’ Addunt etiam dē Sabīnī morte; Ambiorīgem ostentant fideī faciendae causā. Errāre eōs dīcunt, sī quicquam ab eīs praesidī spērent quī suīs rēbus diffīdant; sēsē tamen hōc esse in Cice-

rōnem populumque Rōmānum animō ut nihil nisi hīberna recūsent, atque hanc inveterāscere cōnsuētūdinem nōlint; licēre illīs per sē incolumibus ex hībernīs discēdere et quāscumque in partīs velint sine metū proficīscī. Cicerō ad haec ūnum modo respondet: 'Nōn esse cōnsuētūdinem populī Rōmānī accipere ab hoste armātō condiciōnem; sī ab armīs discēdere velint, sē adiūtōre ūtantur lēgātōsque ad Caesarem mittant; spērāre sē prō ēius iūstitiā quae petierint impetrātūrōs.'

The Nervii besiege the Camp.

42. Ab hāc spē repulsī Nerviī vāllō pedum x et fossā pedum quīndecim hīberna cingunt. Haec et superiōrum annōrum cōnsuētūdine ā nōbīs cōgnōverant et quōsdam dē exercitū nactī captīvōs ab hīs docēbantur; sed nūllā ferrāmentōrum cōpiā quae essent ad hunc ūsum idōnea, gladiīs caespitēs circumcīdere, manibus sagulīsque terram exhaurīre cōgēbantur. Quā quidem ex rē hominum multitūdō cōgnōscī potuit; nam minus hōrīs tribus mīlium passuum xv in circuitū mūnītiōnem perfēcērunt. Reliquīsque diēbus turrīs ad altitūdinem vāllī, falcīs testūdinēsque, quās iīdem captīvī docuerant, parāre āc facere coepērunt.

A Furious Assault is gallantly repulsed.

43. Septimō oppūgnātiōnis diē māximō coörtō ventō ferventīs fūsilēs ex argillā glandīs fundīs et fervefacta iacula in casās, quae mōre Gallicō strāmentīs erant tēctae, iacere coepērunt. Hae celeriter ignem comprehendērunt et ventī māgnitūdine in omnem locum castrōrum distulērunt. Hostēs māxi-

mō clāmōre, sīc utī partā iam atque explōrātā victōriā, turrīs testūdinēsque agere et scālīs vāllum adscendere coepērunt. At tanta mīlitum virtūs atque ea praesentia animī fuit ut, cum undique flammā torrērentur māximāque tēlōrum multitūdine premerentur suaque omnia impedīmenta atque omnīs fortūnās cōnflagrāre intellegerent, nōn modo [dēmigrandī causā] dē vāllō dēcēderet nēmō, sed paene nē respiceret quidem quisquam; āc tum omnēs ācerrimē fortissimēque pūgnārent. Hīc diēs nostrīs longē gravissimus fuit; sed tamen hunc habuit ēventum ut eō diē māximus numerus hostium volnerārētur atque interficerētur, ut sē sub ipsō vāllō cōnstīpāverant recessumque prīmīs ultimī nōn dabant. Paulum quidem intermissā flammā et quōdam locō turrī adāctā et contingente vāllum, tertiae cohortis centuriōnēs ex eō quō stābant locō recessērunt suōsque omnīs remōvērunt; nūtū vōcibusque hostēs sī introīre vellent vocāre coepērunt, quōrum prōgredī ausus est nēmō. Tum ex omnī parte lapidibus coniectīs dēturbātī turrisque succēnsa est.

The Gallant Deeds of Two Centurions.

44. Erant in eā legiōne fortissimī virī, centuriōnēs, quī iam prīmīs ōrdinibus adpropinquārent, T. Pullō et L. Vorēnus. Hī perpetuās inter sē contrōversiās habēbant uter alterī anteferrētur, omnibusque annīs dē locō summīs simultātibus contendēbant. Ex hīs Pullō, cum ācerrimē ad mūnītiōnēs pūgnārētur, "Quid dubitās," inquit, "Vorēne? aut quem locum tuae probandae virtūtis exspectās? Hīc diēs dē nostrīs contrōversiīs iūdicābit." Haec cum dīxisset, prōcēdit extrā mūnītiōnēs, quāque pars hostium cōnfertissima

est vīsa inrumpit. Nē Vorēnus quidem sēsē tum vāllō continet, sed omnium veritus exīstimātiōnem subsequitur. Mediocrī spatiō relictō Pullō pīlum in hostīs immittit atque ūnum ex multitūdine prōcurrentem trāicit; quō percussō et exanimātō hunc scūtīs prōtegunt hostēs, in illum ūniversī tēla coniciunt neque dant prōgrediendī facultātem. Trānsfigitur scūtum Pullōnī et verūtum in balteō dēfigitur. Āvertit hīc cāsus vāgīnam et gladium ēdūcere cōnantī dextram morātur manum, impedītumque hostēs circumsistunt. Succurrit inimīcus illī Vorēnus et labōrantī subvenit. Ad hunc sē cōnfestim ā Pullōne omnis multitūdō convertit; [illum verūtō trānsfixum arbitrantur]. Gladiō comminus rem gerit Vorēnus atque ūnō interfectō reliquōs paulum prōpellit; dum cupidius īnstat, in locum dēiectus īnferiōrem concidit. Huic rūrsus circumventō subsidium fert Pullō, atque ambō incolumēs complūribus interfectīs summā cum laude sēsē intrā mūnītiōnēs recipiunt. Sīc fortūna in contentiōne et certāmine utrumque versāvit ut alter alterī inimīcus auxiliō salūtīque esset, neque dīiūdicārī posset uter utrī virtūte anteferendus vidērētur.

News of the Danger at last reaches Cæsar.

45. Quantō erat in diēs gravior atque asperior oppūgnātiō, et māximē quod māgnā parte mīlitum cōnfectā volneribus rēs ad paucitātem dēfēnsōrum pervēnerat, tantō crēbriōrēs litterae nūntiīque ad Caesarem mittēbantur; quōrum pars dēprehēnsa in cōnspectū nostrōrum mīlitum cum cruciātū necābātur. Erat ūnus intus Nervius nōmine Verticō, locō nātus honestō, quī ā prīmā obsidiōne ad Cicerōnem perfū-

gerat suamque eī fidem praestiterat. Hīc servō spē lībertātis māgnīsque persuādet praemiīs ut litterās ad Caesarem dēferat. Hās ille in iaculō inligātās effert, et Gallus inter Gallōs sine ūllā suspīciōne versātus ad Caesarem pervenit. Ab eō dē perīculīs Cicerōnis legiōnisque cōgnōscitur.

Cæsar summons what Forces he can.

46. Caesar acceptīs litterīs hōrā circiter XI diēī statim nūntium in Bellovacōs ad M. Crassum mittit, cūius hīberna aberant ab eō mīlia passuum XXV; iubet mediā nocte legiōnem proficīscī celeriterque ad sē venīre. Exit cum nūntiō Crassus. Alterum ad C. Fabium lēgātum mittit, ut in Atrebātium fīnīs legiōnem addūcat, quā sibi iter faciendum sciēbat. Scrībit Labiēnō, sī reī pūblicae commodō facere possit, cum legiōne ad fīnīs Nerviōrum veniat; reliquam partem exercitūs, quod paulō aberat longius, nōn putat exspectandam; equitēs circiter CCCC ex proximīs hībernīs conligit.

And starts out to relieve Cicero.

47. Hōrā circiter tertiā ab antecursōribus dē Crassī adventū certior factus, eō diē mīlia passuum XX prōgreditur. Crassum Samarobrīvae praeficit legiōnemque eī attribuit, quod ibi impedīmenta exercitūs, obsidēs cīvitātum, litterās pūblicās, frūmentumque omne quod eō tolerandae hiemis causā dēvexerat relinquēbat. Fabius, ut imperātum erat, nōn ita multum morātus in itinere cum legiōne occurrit. Labiēnus interitū Sabīnī et caede cohortium cōgnitā, cum omnēs ad eum Trēverōrum cōpiae vēnissent, veritus nē, sī ex hībernīs fugae similem profectiōnem fēcisset, hostium

impetum sustinēre nōn posset, praesertim quōs recentī victōriā efferrī scīret, litterās Caesarī remittit quantō cum perīculō legiōnem ex hībernīs ēductūrus esset; rem gestam in Eburōnibus perscrībit; docet omnīs equitātūs peditātūsque cōpiās Trēverōrum III mīlia passuum longē ab suīs castrīs cōnsēdisse.

A Letter is Conveyed to Cicero, tied to a Dart.

48. Caesar cōnsiliō ēius probātō, etsī opīniōne trium legiōnum deiectus ad duās reciderat, tamen ūnum commūnī salūtī auxilium in celeritāte pōnēbat. Vēnit māgnīs itineribus in Nerviōrum fīnīs. Ibi ex captīvīs cōgnōscit quae apud Cicerōnem gerantur quantōque in perīculō rēs sit. Tum cuidam ex equitibus Gallīs māgnīs praemiīs persuādet utī ad Cicerōnem epistulam dēferat. Hanc Graecīs cōnscrīptam litterīs mittit, nē interceptā epistulā nostra ab hostibus cōnsilia cōgnōscantur. Sī adīre nōn possit, monet ut trāgulam cum epistulā ad āmentum dēligātā intrā mūnītiōnēs castrōrum abiciat. In litterīs scrībit sē cum legiōnibus profectum celeriter adfore; hortātur ut prīstinam virtūtem retineat. Gallus perīculum veritus, ut erat praeceptum, trāgulam mittit. Haec cāsū ad turrim adhaesit, neque ab nostrīs bīduō animadversa, tertiō diē ā quōdam mīlite cōnspicitur; dēmpta ad Cicerōnem dēfertur. Ille perlēctam in conventū mīlitum recitat māximāque omnīs laetitiā adficit. Tum fūmī incendiōrum procul vidēbantur, quae rēs omnem dubitātiōnem adventūs legiōnum expulit.

The Gauls advance to meet Cæsar, who avoids a Conflict.

49. Gallī rē cōgnitā per explōrātōrēs obsidiōnem relinquunt; ad Caesarem omnibus cōpiīs contendunt;

haec erant armāta circiter mīlia LX. Cicerō datā facultāte Gallum ab eōdem Verticōne quem suprā dēmōnstrāvimus repetit quī litterās ad Caesarem dēferat; hunc admonet iter cautē dīligenterque faciat; perscrībit in litterīs hostīs ab sē discessisse omnemque ad eum multitūdinem convertisse. Quibus litterīs circiter mediā nocte Caesar adlātīs suōs facit certiōrēs eōsque ad dīmicandum animō cōnfirmat. Posterō diē lūce prīmā movet castra, et circiter mīlia passuum IIII prōgressus trāns vallem et rīvum multitūdinem hostium cōnspicātur. Erat māgnī perīculī rēs tantulīs cōpiīs inīquō locō dīmicāre; tum, quoniam obsidiōne līberātum Cicerōnem sciēbat, aequō animō remittendum dē celeritāte exīstimābat. Cōnsīdit et quam aequissimō potest locō castra commūnit. Atque haec, etsī erant exigua per sē, vix hominum mīlium VII, praesertim nūllīs cum impedīmentīs, tamen angustiīs viārum quam māximē potest contrahit, eō cōnsiliō ut in summam contemptiōnem hostibus veniat. Interim speculātōribus in omnīs partīs. dīmissīs explōrat quō commodissimē itinere vallem trānsīre possit.

Cæsar, feigning Fear, manœuvres for Position.

50. Eō diē parvulīs equestribus proeliīs ad aquam factīs utrīque sēsē suō locō continent: Gallī, quod ampliōrēs cōpiās quae nōndum convēnerant exspectābant; Caesar, sī forte timōris simulātiōne hostīs in suum locum ēlicere posset, ut citrā vallem prō castrīs proeliō contenderet; sī id efficere nōn posset, ut explōrātīs itineribus minōre cum perīculō vallem rivumque trānsīret. Prīmā lūce hostium equitātus ad castra accēdit proeliumque cum nostrīs equitibus committit.

Caesar cōnsultō equitēs cēdere sēque in castra recipere iubet; simul ex omnibus partibus castra altiōre vāllō mūnīrī portāsque obstruī atque in hīs administrandīs rēbus quam māximē concursārī et cum simulātiōne agī timōris iubet.

Rout of the Gauls.

51. Quibus omnibus rēbus hostēs invītātī cōpiās trādūcunt aciemque inīquō locō cōnstituunt; nostrīs vērō etiam dē vāllō dēductīs propius accēdunt et tēla intrā mūnītiōnem ex omnibus partibus coniciunt praecōnibusque circummissīs prōnūntiārī iubent, seu quis Gallus seu Rōmānus velit ante hōram tertiam ad sē trānsīre, sine perīculō licēre; post id tempus nōn fore potestātem. Āc sīc nostrōs contempsērunt ut obstrūctīs in speciem portīs singulīs ōrdinibus caespitum, quod eā nōn posse intrōrumpere vidēbantur, aliī vāllum manū scindere, aliī fossās complēre inciperent. Tum Caesar omnibus portīs ēruptiōne factā equitātūque ēmissō celeriter hostīs in fugam dat, sīc utī omnīnō pūgnandī causā resisteret nēmō; māgnumque ex eīs numerum occīdit atque omnīs armīs exuit.

Cæsar enters the Camp of Cicero and congratulates him and his Men on their Gallant Defense.

52. Longius prōsequī veritus, quod silvae palūdēsque intercēdēbant [neque etiam parvulō dētrīmentō illōrum locum relinquī vidēbat], omnibus suīs incolumibus eōdem diē ad Cicerōnem pervēnit. Īnstitūtās turrīs, testūdinēs mūnītiōnēsque hostium admīratur; prōductā legiōne cōgnōscit nōn decimum quemque esse reliquum mīlitem sine volnere. Ex hīs omnibus iūdicat rēbus quantō cum perīculō et quantā virtūte rēs

sint administrātae. Cicerōnem prō ēius meritō legiōnemque conlaudat; centuriōnēs singillātim tribūnōsque mīlitum appellat, quōrum ēgregiam fuisse virtūtem testimōniō Cicerōnis cōgnōverat. Dē cāsū Sabīnī et Cottae certius ex captīvīs cōgnōscit. Posterō diē contiōne habitā rem gestam prōpōnit, mīlitēs cōnsōlātur et cōnfirmat; quod dētrīmentum culpā et temeritāte lēgātī sit acceptum, hōc aequiōre animō ferendum docet, quod, beneficiō deōrum immortālium et virtūte eōrum expiātō incommodō, neque hostibus diūtina laetitia neque ipsīs longior dolor relinquātur.

Disturbances among Various Tribes. Cæsar decides to spend the Winter with his Army, owing to the Threatening Condition of Affairs.

53. Interim ad Labiēnum per Rēmōs incrēdibilī celeritāte dē victōriā Caesaris fāma perfertur, ut, cum ab hībernīs Cicerōnis mīlia passuum abesset circiter sexāgintā, eōque post hōram nōnam diēī Caesar pervēnisset, ante mediam noctem ad portās castrōrum clāmor orerētur quō clāmōre sīgnificātiō victōriae grātulātiōque ab Rēmīs Labiēnō fieret. Hāc fāmā ad Trēverōs perlātā Indūtiomārus, quī posterō diē castra Labiēnī oppūgnāre dēcrēverat, noctū profugit cōpiāsque omnīs in Trēverōs redūcit. Caesar Fabium cum suā legiōne remittit in hīberna, ipse cum III legiōnibus circum Samarobrīvam trīnīs hībernīs hiemāre cōnstituit; et, quod tantī mōtūs Galliae exstiterant, tōtam hiemem ipse ad exercitum manēre dēcrēvit. Nam illō incommodō dē Sabīnī morte perlātō omnēs ferē Galliae cīvitātēs dē bellō cōnsultābant: nūntiōs lēgātiōnēsque in omnīs partīs dīmittēbant; et quid reliquī cōnsilī



The Famous Colosseum at Rome

caperent atque unde initium bellī fieret explōrābant, nocturnaque in locīs dēsertīs concilia habēbant. Neque ūllum ferē tōtīus hiemis tempus sine sollicitūdine Caesaris intercessit quīn aliquem dē cōnsiliīs āc mōtū Gallōrum nūntium acciperet. In hīs ab L. Rōsciō, quem legiōnī XIII praefēcerat, certior factus est māgnās [Gallōrum] cōpiās eārum cīvitātum quae Aremoricae appellantur oppūgnandī suī causā convēnisse neque longius mīlibus passuum VIII ab hībernīs suīs āfuisse, sed nūntiō adlātō dē victōriā Caesaris, discessisse adeō ut fugae similis discessus vidērētur.

Several Tribes prepare to revolt.

54. At Caesar, prīncipibus cūiusque cīvitātis ad sē ēvocātīs, aliās territandō, cum sē scīre quae fierent dēnūntiāret, aliās cohortandō, māgnam partem Galliae in officiō tenuit. Tamen Senones, quae est cīvitās in prīmīs firma et māgnae inter Gallōs auctōritātis, Cavarinum, quem Caesar apud eōs rēgem cōnstituerat (cūius frāter Moritasgus adventū in Galliam Caesaris, cūiusque māiōrēs rēgnum obtinuerant), interficere pūblicō cōnsiliō cōnātī, cum ille praesēnsisset āc profūgisset, ūsque ad fīnīs īnsecūtī rēgnō domōque expulērunt; et missīs ad Caesarem satisfaciendī causā lēgātīs, cum is omnem ad sē senātum venīre iussisset, dictō audientēs nōn fuērunt. Āc tantum apud hominēs barbarōs valuit esse aliquōs repertōs prīncipēs bellī īnferendī, tantamque omnibus voluntātum commūtātiōnem attulit ut — praeter Haeduōs et Rēmōs, quōs praecipuō semper honōre Caesar habuit, alterōs prō vetere āc perpetuā ergā populum Rōmānum fidē, alterōs prō recentibus Gallicī bellī officiīs — nūlla ferē

cīvitās fuerit nōn suspecta nōbīs. Idque adeō haud sciō mīrandumne sit, cum complūribus aliīs dē causīs, tum māximē quod quī virtūte bellī omnibus gentibus praeferēbantur, tantum sē ēius opīniōnis dēperdidisse ut populī Rōmānī imperia perferrent, gravissimē dolēbant.

Movements of Indutiomarus.

55. Trēverī vērō atque Indūtiomārus tōtīus hiemis nūllum tempus intermīsērunt quīn trāns Rhēnum lēgātōs mitterent, cīvitātīs sollicitārent, pecūniās pollicērentur, māgnā parte exercitūs nostrī interfectā multō minōrem superesse dīcerent partem. Neque tamen ūllī cīvitātī Germānōrum persuādērī potuit ut Rhēnum trānsīret, cum sē bis expertōs dīcerent, Ariovistī bellō et Tencterōrum trānsitū; nōn esse amplius fortūnam temptātūrōs. Hāc spē lāpsus Indūtiomārus nihilō minus cōpiās cōgere, exercēre, ā fīnitimīs equōs parāre, exsulēs damnātōsque tōtā Galliā māgnīs praemiīs ad sē adlicere coepit. Āc tantam sibi iam hīs rēbus in Galliā auctōritātem comparāverat ut undique ad eum lēgātiōnēs concurrerent, grātiam atque amīcitiam pūblicē prīvātimque peterent.

With the Aid of many Tribes he decides to attack Labienus.

56. Ubi intellēxit ultrō ad sē venīrī, alterā ex parte Senonēs Carnutēsque cōnscientiā facinoris īnstīgārī, alterā Nerviōs Aduatucōsque bellum Rōmānīs parāre, neque sibi voluntāriōrum cōpiās dēfore sī ex fīnibus suīs prōgredī coepisset, armātum concilium indīcit. Hōc mōre Gallōrum est initium bellī, quō lēge commūnī omnēs pūberēs armātī convenīre cōguntur; quī ex eīs novissimus venit in cōnspectū multitūdinis

omnibus cruciātibus adfectus necātur. In eō conciliō Cingetorīgem, alterius prīncipem factiōnis, generum suum, quem suprā dēmōnstrāvimus Caesaris secūtum fidem ab eō nōn discessisse, hostem iūdicat bonaque ēius pūblicat. Hīs rēbus cōnfectīs in conciliō prōnūntiat arcessītum sē ā Senonibus et Carnutibus aliīsque complūribus Galliae cīvitātibus; hūc itūrum per fīnīs Rēmōrum eōrumque agrōs populātūrum; āc prius quam id faciat, castra Labiēnī oppūgnātūrum: quae fierī velit praecipit.

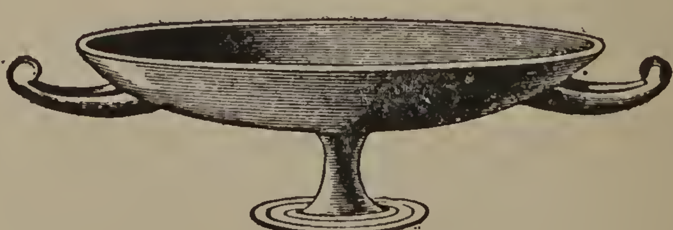
Labienus is Cautious.

57. Labiēnus, cum et locī nātūrā et manū mūnītissimīs castrīs sēsē tenēret, dē suō āc legiōnis perīculō nihil timēbat; nē quam occāsiōnem reī bene gerendae dīmitteret cōgitābat. Itaque ā Cingetorīge atque ēius propinquīs ōrātiōne Indūtiomārī cōgnitā quam in conciliō habuerat, nūntiōs mittit ad fīnitimās cīvitātīs equitēsque undique ēvocat; hīs certam diem conveniendī dīcit. Interim prope cotīdiē cum omnī equitātū Indūtiomārus sub castrīs ēius vagābātur, aliās ut situm castrōrum cōgnōsceret, aliās conloquendī aut territandī causā: equitēs plērumque omnēs tēla intrā vāllum coniciēbant. Labiēnus suōs intrā mūnītiōnem continēbat timōrisque opīniōnem quibuscumque poterat rēbus augēbat.

Defeat and Death of Indutiomarus.

58. Cum māiōre in diēs contemptiōne Indūtiomārus ad castra accēderet, nocte ūnā intrōmissīs equitibus omnium fīnitimārum cīvitātum quōs arcessendōs cūrāverat, tantā dīligentiā omnīs suōs custōdiīs intrā

castra continuit ut nūllā ratiōne ea rēs ēnūntiārī aut ad Trēverōs perferrī posset. Interim ex cōnsuētūdine cotīdiānā Indūtiomārus ad castra accēdit atque ibi māgnam partem diēī cōnsūmit; equitēs tēla coniciunt et māgnā cum contumēliā verbōrum nostrōs ad pūgnam ēvocant. Nūllō ab nostrīs datō respōnsō, ubi vīsum est sub vesperum dispersī āc dissipātī discēdunt. Subitō Labiēnus duābus portīs omnem equitātum ēmittit; praecipit atque interdīcit, prōterritīs hostibus atque in fugam coniectīs (quod fore, sīcut accidit, vidēbat), ūnum omnēs petant Indūtiomārum; neu quis quem prius volneret quam illum interfectum vīderit, quod morā reliquōrum spatium nactum illum effugere nōlēbat; māgna prōpōnit eīs quī occīderint praemia; submittit cohortīs equitibus subsidiō. Comprobat hominis cōnsilium fortūna; et cum ūnum omnēs peterent, in ipsō flūminis vadō dēprehēnsus Indūtiomārus interficitur caputque ēius refertur in castra; redeuntīs equitēs quōs possunt cōnsectantur atque occīdunt. Hāc rē cōgnitā omnēs Eburōnum et Nerviōrum quae convēnerant cōpiae discēdunt; paulōque habuit post id factum Caesar quiētiōrem Galliam.



Poculum.



Galeae.

BOOK VI.

Second Expedition into Germany. B.C. 53.

Cæsar secures Extra Forces in Order to cope with the Rebellious Gauls.

MULTĪS dē causīs Caesar māiōrem Galliae mōtum exspectāns, per M. Sīlānum, C. Antistium Rēgīnum, T. Sextium lēgātōs dēlēctum habēre īnstituit; simul ab Cn. Pompēiō prōcōnsule petit, quoniam ipse ad urbem cum imperiō reī pūblicae causā remanēret, quōs ex Cisalpīnā Galliā cōnsul sacrāmentō rogāvisset ad sīgna convenīre et ad sē proficīscī iubēret; māgnī interesse etiam in reliquum tempus ad opīniōnem Galliae exīstimāns tantās vidērī Ītaliae facultātīs ut, sī quid esset in bellō dētrīmentī acceptum, nōn modo id brevī tempore sarcīrī, sed etiam māiōribus augērī cōpiīs posset. Quod cum Pompēius et reī pūblicae et amīcitiae tribuisset, celeriter cōnfectō per suōs dēlēctū, tribus ante exāctam hiemem et cōnstitūtīs et adductīs legiōnibus, duplicātōque eārum cohortium numerō quās cum Q. Titūriō āmīserat, et celeritāte et cōpiīs docuit quid populī Rōmānī disciplīna atque opēs possent.

Various Tribes in the Northeast revolt.

2. Interfecto Indūtiomārō, ut docuimus, ad ēius propinquōs ā Trēverīs imperium dēfertur. Illī fīnitimōs Germānōs sollicitāre et pecūniam pollicērī nōn dēsistunt. Cum ā proximīs impetrāre nōn possent, ulteriōrēs temptant. Inventīs nōn nūllīs cīvitātibus iūre iūrandō inter sē cōnfīrmant obsidibusque dē pecūniā cavent; Ambiorīgem sibi societāte et foedere adiungunt. Quibus rēbus cōgnitīs Caesar, cum undique bellum parārī vidēret, Nerviōs, Aduātucōs, Menapiōs, adiūnctīs Cisrhēnānīs omnibus Germānīs, esse in armīs, Senonēs ad imperātum nōn venīre et cum Carnutibus fīnitimīsque cīvitātibus cōnsilia commūnicāre, ā Trēverīs Germānōs crēbrīs lēgātiōnibus sollicitārī, mātūrius sibi dē bellō cōgitandum putāvit.

After laying waste the Nervian Territory Cæsar proceeds against the Senones.

3. Itaque nōndum hieme cōnfectā, proximīs IIII coāctīs legiōnibus dē imprōvīsō in fīnīs Nerviōrum contendit, et prius quam illī aut convenīre aut profugere possent, māgnō pecoris atque hominum numerō captō atque eā praedā mīlitibus concessā vāstātīsque agrīs, in dēditiōnem venīre atque obsidēs sibi dare coēgit. Eō celeriter cōnfectō negōtiō rūrsus in hīberna legiōnēs redūxit. Conciliō Galliae prīmō vēre, ut īnstituerat, indictō, cum reliquī praeter Senonēs, Carnutēs, Trēverōsque vēnissent, initium bellī āc dēfectiōnis hōc esse arbitrātus, ut omnia postpōnere vidērētur, concilium Lutetiam Parīsiōrum trānsfert. Cōnfīnēs erant hī Senonibus cīvitātemque patrum memoriā coniūnxerant; sed ab hōc conciliō

āfuisse exīstimābantur. Hāc rē prō suggestū prōnūntiātā eōdem diē cum legiōnibus in Senonēs proficīscitur māgnīsque itineribus eō pervenit.

They submit, together with the Carnutes.

4. Cōgnitō ēius adventū Accō, quī prīnceps ēius cōnsilī fuerat, iubet in oppida multitūdinem convenīre; cōnantibus, prius quam id efficī posset, adesse Rōmānōs nūntiātur. Necessāriō sententiā dēsistunt lēgātōsque dēprecandī causā ad Caesarem mittunt; adeunt per Haeduōs, quōrum antīquitus erat in fidē cīvitās. Libenter Caesar petentibus Haeduīs dat veniam excūsātiōnemque accipit, quod aestīvum tempus īnstantis bellī, nōn quaestiōnis esse arbitrābātur; obsidibus imperātīs C, hōs Haeduīs custōdiendōs trādit. Eōdem Carnutēs lēgātōs obsidēsque mittunt, ūsī dēprecātōribus Rēmīs, quōrum erant in clientēlā; eadem ferunt respōnsa. Peragit concilium Caesar equitēsque imperat cīvitātibus.

Next he goes against the Menapii.

5. Hāc parte Galliae pācātā tōtus et mente et animō in bellum Trēverōrum et Ambiorīgis īnsistit. Cavarinum cum equitātū Senonum sēcum proficīscī iubet, nē quis aut ex hūius īrācundiā, aut ex eō quod meruerat odiō, cīvitātis mōtus exsistat. Hīs rēbus cōnstitūtīs, quod prō explōrātō habēbat Ambiorīgem proeliō nōn esse contentūrum, reliqua ēius cōnsilia animō circumspiciēbat. Erant Menapiī propinquī Eburōnum fīnibus, perpetuīs palūdibus silvīsque mūnītī, quī ūnī ex Galliā dē pāce ad Caesarem lēgātōs numquam mīserant. Cum hīs esse hospitium Ambi-

orīgī sciēbat; item per Trēverōs vēnisse Germānīs in amīcitiam cōgnōverat. Haec prius illī dētrahenda auxilia exīstimābat quam ipsum bellō lacesseret, nē dēspērātā salūte aut sē in Menapiōs abderet aut cum Trānsrhēnānīs congredī cōgerētur. Hōc initō cōnsiliō tōtīus exercitūs impedīmenta ad Labiēnum in Trēverōs mittit duāsque ad eum legiōnēs proficīscī iubet; ipse cum legiōnibus expedītīs quīnque in Menapiōs proficīscitur. Illī nūllā coāctā manū, locī praesidiō frētī, in silvās palūdēsque cōnfugiunt suaque eōdem cōnferunt.

And warns them against harboring Ambiorix.

6. Caesar, partītīs copiīs cum C. Fabiō lēgātō et M. Crassō quaestōre celeriterque effectīs pontibus, adit tripartītō, aedificia vīcōsque incendit, māgnō pecoris atque hominum numerō potītur. Quibus rēbus coāctī Menapiī lēgātōs ad eum pācis petendae causā mittunt. Ille obsidibus acceptīs hostium sē habitūrum numerō cōnfīrmat, sī aut Ambiorīgem aut ēius lēgātōs fīnibus suīs recēpissent. Hīs cōnfīrmātīs rēbus Commium Atrebātem cum equitātū custōdis locō in Menapiīs relinquit; ipse in Trēverōs proficīscitur.

Labienus's Activity among the Treveri.

7. Dum haec ā Caesare geruntur, Trēverī māgnīs coāctīs peditātūs equitātūsque cōpiīs Labiēnum cum ūnā legiōne quae in eōrum fīnibus hiemābat adorīrī parābant; iamque ab eō nōn longius bīduī viā aberant, cum duās vēnisse legiōnēs missū Caesaris cōgnōscunt. Positīs castrīs ā mīlibus passuum xv auxilia Germānōrum exspectāre cōnstituunt. Labiēnus, hostium cōgnitō cōnsiliō, spērāns temeritāte eōrum fore

aliquam dīmicandī facultātem, praesidiō v cohortium impedīmentīs relictō, cum xxv cohortibus māgnōque equitātū contrā hostem proficīscitur, et mīlle passuum intermissō spatiō castra commūnit. Erat inter Labiēnum atque hostem difficilī trānsitū flūmen rīpīsque praeruptīs. Hōc neque ipse trānsīre habēbat in animō neque hostīs trānsitūrōs exīstimābat. Augēbātur auxiliōrum cotīdiē spēs. Loquitur in conciliō palam: 'Quoniam Germānī adpropinquāre dīcantur, sēsē suās exercitūsque fortūnās in dubium nōn dēvocātūrum, et posterō diē prīmā lūce castra mōtūrum.' Celeriter haec ad hostīs dēferuntur, ut ex māgnō Gallōrum equitum numerō nōn nūllōs Gallicīs rēbus favēre nātūra cōgēbat. Labiēnus nocte, tribūnīs mīlitum prīmīsque ōrdinibus convocātīs, quid suī sit cōnsilī prōpōnit, et quō facilius hostibus timōris det suspiciōnem, māiōre strepitū et tumultū quam populī Rōmānī fert cōnsuētūdō castra moverī iubet. Hīs rēbus fugae similem profectiōnem efficit. Haec quoque per explōrātōrēs ante lūcem in tantā propinquitāte castrōrum ad hostīs dēferuntur.

Defeat of the Treveri.

8. Vix agmen novissimum extrā mūnītiōnēs prōcesserat, cum Gallī — cohortātī inter sē nē spērātam praedam ex manibus dēmitterent; longum esse perterritīs Rōmānīs Germānōrum auxilium exspectāre; neque suam patī dīgnitātem ut tantīs cōpiīs tam exiguam manum praesertim fugientem atque impedītam adorīrī nōn audeant — flūmen trānsīre et inīquō locō committere proelium nōn dubitant. Quae fore suspicātus Labiēnus, ut omnīs citrā flūmen ēliceret, eādem

ūsus simulātiōne itineris placidē prōgrediēbātur. Tum praemissīs paulum impedīmentīs atque in tumulō quōdam conlocātīs, "Habētis," inquit, "mīlitēs, quam petīstis facultātem; hostem impedītō atque inīquō locō tenētis; praestāte eandem nōbīs ducibus virtūtem quam saepenumerō imperātōrī praestitistis; atque illum adesse et haec cōram cernere exīstimāte." Simul sīgna ad hostem convertī aciemque dērigī iubet; et paucīs turmīs praesidiō ad impedīmenta dīmissīs reliquōs equitēs ad latera dispōnit. Celeriter nostrī clāmōre sublātō pīla in hostīs immittunt. Illī, ubi praeter spem quōs fugere crēdēbant īnfestīs sīgnīs ad sē īre vīdērunt, impetum nostrōrum ferre nōn potuērunt, āc prīmō concursū in fugam coniectī proximās silvās petiērunt. Quōs Labiēnus equitātū cōnsectātus, māgnō numerō interfectō, complūribus captīs, paucīs post diēbus cīvitātem recēpit. Nam Germānī quī auxiliō veniēbant perceptā Trēverōrum fugā sēsē domum contulērunt. Cum hīs propinquī Indūtiomārī, quī dēfectiōnis auctōrēs fuerant, comitātī eōs ex cīvitāte excessērunt. Cingetorīgī, quem ab initiō permānsisse in officiō dēmōnstrāvimus, prīncipātus atque imperium est trāditum.

Cæsar crosses the Rhine a Second Time.

9. Caesar postquam ex Menapiīs in Trēverōs vēnit, duābus dē causīs Rhēnum trānsīre cōnstituit: quārum ūna erat quod *Germānī* auxilia contrā sē Trēverīs mīserant; altera, nē ad eōs Ambiorīx receptum habēret. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus paulō suprā eum locum quō ante exercitum trādūxerat facere pontem īnstituit. Nōtā atque īnstitūtā ratiōne, māgnō mīlitum studiō,

paucīs diēbus opus efficitur. Fīrmō in Trēverīs ad pontem praesidiō relictō, nē quis ab hīs subitō mōtus orerētur, reliquās cōpiās equitātumque trādūcit. Ubiī, quī ante obsidēs dederant atque in dēditiōnem vēnerant, pūrgandī suī causā ad eum lēgātōs mittunt quī doceant neque auxilia ex suā cīvitāte in Trēverōs missa neque ab sē fidem laesam: petunt atque ōrant ut sibi parcat, nē commūnī odiō Germānōrum innocentēs prō nocentibus poenās pendant; sī amplius obsidum velit darī, pollicentur. Cōgnitā Caesar causā reperit ab Suēvīs auxilia missa esse; Ubiōrum satisfactiōnem accipit; aditūs viāsque in Suēvōs perquīrit.

And is informed that the Suevi have retreated to a Forest.

10. Interim paucīs post diēbus fit ab Ubiīs certior Suēvōs omnīs in ūnum locum cōpiās cōgere, atque eīs nātiōnibus quae sub eōrum sint imperiō dēnūntiāre ut auxilia peditātūs equitātūsque mittant. Hīs cōgnitīs rēbus rem frūmentāriam prōvidet, castrīs idōneum locum dēligit, Ubiīs imperat ut pecora dēdūcant suaque omnia ex agrīs in oppida cōnferant, — spērāns barbarōs atque imperītōs hominēs inopiā cibāriōrum adductōs ad inīquam pūgnandī condiciōnem posse dēdūcī; mandat ut crēbrōs explōrātōrēs in Suēvōs mittant quaeque apud eōs gerantur cōgnōscant. Illī imperāta faciunt et paucīs diēbus intermissīs referunt: 'Suēvōs omnīs, posteāquam certiōrēs nūntiī dē exercitū Rōmānōrum vēnerint, cum omnibus suīs sociōrumque cōpiīs quās coēgissent, penitus ad extrēmōs fīnīs sē recēpisse; silvam esse ibi īnfīnītā māgnitūdine, quae appellātur Bācenis; hanc longē intrōrsus pertinēre, et prō nātīvō mūrō obiectam Chēruscōs ab

Suēvōrum Suēvōsque ab Chēruscōrum iniūriīs incursiōnibusque prohibēre; ad ēius silvae initium Suēvōs adventum Rōmānōrum exspectāre cōnstituisse.'

Customs of the Gauls. Factions among them.

11. Quoniam ad hunc locum perventum est, nōn aliēnum esse vidētur dē Galliae Germāniaeque mōribus et quō differant hae nātiōnēs inter sēsē prōpōnere. In Galliā nōn sōlum in omnibus cīvitātibus atque in omnibus pāgīs partibusque, sed paene etiam in singulīs domibus factiōnēs sunt; eārumque factiōnum prīncipēs sunt quī summam auctōritātem eōrum iūdiciō habēre exīstimantur, quōrum ad arbitrium iūdiciumque summa omnium rērum cōnsiliōrumque redeat. Idque ēius reī causā antīquitus īnstitūtum vidētur, nē quis ex plēbe contrā potentiōrem auxilī egēret; suōs enim quisque opprimī et circumvenīrī nōn patitur, neque, aliter sī faciat, ūllam inter suōs habeat auctōritātem. Haec eadem ratiō est in summā tōtīus Galliae; namque omnēs cīvitātēs dīvīsae sunt in duās partīs.

The Romans lend their Influence in Favor of the Hædui.

12. Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, alterius factiōnis prīncipēs erant Haeduī, alterius Sēquanī. Hī, cum per sē minus valērent (quod summa auctōritās antīquitus erat in Haeduīs māgnaeque eōrum erant clientēlae), Germānōs atque Ariovistum sibi adiūnxerant eōsque ad sē māgnīs iactūrīs pollicitātiōnibusque perdūxerant. Proeliīs vērō complūribus factīs secundīs atque omnī nōbilitāte Haeduōrum interfectā, tantum potentiā antecesserant ut māgnam partem clientium ab Haeduīs ad sē trādūcerent obsidēsque ab hīs prīnci-

pum fīliōs acciperent, et pūblicē iūrāre cōgerent nihil sē contrā Sēquanōs cōnsilī initūrōs, et partem fīnitimī agrī per vim occupātam possidērent, Galliaeque tōtīus prīncipātum obtinērent. Quā necessitāte adductus Dīviciācus auxilī petendī causā Rōmam ad senātum profectus īnfectā rē redierat. Adventū Caesaris factā commūtātiōne rērum, obsidibus Haeduīs redditīs, veteribus clientēlīs restitūtīs, novīs per Caesarem comparātīs, quod eī quī sē ad eōrum amīcitiam adgregāverant meliōre condiciōne atque aequiōre imperiō sē ūtī vidēbant, reliquīs rēbus eōrum grātiā dīgnitāteque amplificātā, Sēquanī prīncipātum dīmīserant. In eōrum locum Rēmī successerant; quōs quod adaequāre apud Caesarem grātiā intellegēbātur, eī quī propter veterēs inimīcitiās nūllō modō cum Haeduīs coniungī poterant sē Rēmīs in clientēlam dicābant. Hōs illī dīligenter tuēbantur; ita et novam et repente conlēctam auctōritātem tenēbant. Eō tamen statū rēs erat ut longē prīncipēs habērentur Haeduī, secundum locum dīgnitātis Rēmī obtinērent.

Two Classes of Gallic Nobility, Druids and Knights. Power of the Druids.

13. In omnī Galliā eōrum hominum quī aliquō sunt numerō atque honōre genera sunt duō. Nam plēbēs paene servōrum habētur locō, quae nihil audet per sē, nūllī adhibētur cōnciliō. Plērīque, cum aut aere aliēnō aut māgnitūdine tribūtōrum aut iniūriā potentiōrum premuntur, sēsē in servitūtem dicant nōbilibus; *quibus* in hōs eadem omnia sunt iūra quae dominīs in servōs. Sed dē hīs duōbus generibus alterum est druidum, alterum equitum. Illī rēbus dīvīnīs intersunt, sacrificia

pūblica āc prīvāta prōcūrant, religiōnēs interpretantur. Ad eōs māgnus adulēscentium numerus disciplīnae causā concurrit, māgnōque hī sunt apud eōs honōre. Nam ferē dē omnibus contrōversiīs pūblicīs prīvātīsque cōnstituunt; et, sī quod est admissum facinus, sī caedēs facta, sī dē hērēditāte, dē fīnibus contrōversia est, īdem dēcernunt; praemia poenāsque cōnstituunt; sī quī aut prīvātus aut populus eōrum dēcrētō nōn stetit, sacrificiīs interdīcunt. Haec poena apud eōs est gravissima. Quibus ita est interdictum, hī numerō impiōrum āc scelerātōrum habentur, hīs omnēs dēcēdunt, aditum eōrum sermōnemque dēfugiunt, nē quid ex contāgiōne incommodī accipiant, neque eīs petentibus iūs redditur neque honōs ūllus commūnicātur. Hīs autem omnibus druidibus praeest ūnus, quī summam inter eōs habet auctōritātem. Hōc mortuō, aut sī quī ex reliquīs excellit dīgnitāte, succēdit, aut, sī sunt plūrēs parēs, suffrāgiō druidum, nōn numquam etiam armīs dē prīncipātū contendunt. Hī certō annī tempore in fīnibus Carnutum, quae regiō tōtīus Galliae media habētur, cōnsīdunt in locō cōnsecrātō; hūc omnēs undique quī contrōversiās habent conveniunt eōrumque dēcrētīs iūdiciīsque pārent. Disciplīna in Britanniā reperta atque inde in Galliam trānslāta exīstimātur; et nunc quī dīligentius eam rem cōgnōscere volunt plērumque illō discendī causā proficīscuntur.

Their Privileges, Doctrines, and Beliefs.

14. Druides ā bellō abesse cōnsuērunt neque tribūta ūnā cum reliquīs pendunt; [mīlitiae vacātiōnem omniumque rērum habent immūnitātem]. Tantīs excitātī praemiīs et suā sponte multī in disciplīnam conveniunt

et ā parentibus propinquīsque mittuntur. Māgnum ibi numerum versuum ēdiscere dīcuntur. Itaque annōs nōn nūllī vīcēnōs in disciplīnā permanent. Neque fās esse exīstimant ea litterīs mandāre, cum in reliquīs ferē rēbus, pūblicīs prīvātīsque ratiōnibus, Graecīs litterīs ūtantur. Id mihi duābus dē causīs īnstituisse videntur; quod neque in volgus disciplīnam efferrī velint neque eōs quī discunt litterīs cōnfīsōs minus memoriae studēre, — quod ferē plērīsque accidit ut praesidiō litterārum dīligentiam in perdiscendō āc memoriam remittant. In prīmīs hōc volunt persuādēre, nōn interīre animās, sed ab aliīs post mortem trānsīre ad aliōs; atque hōc māximē ad virtūtem excitārī putant metū mortis neglēctō. Multa praetereā dē sīderibus atque eōrum mōtū, dē mundī āc terrārum māgnitūdine, dē rērum nātūrā, dē deōrum immortālium vī āc potestāte disputant et iuventūtī trādunt.

The Knights.

15. Alterum genus est equitum. Hī, cum est ūsus atque aliquod bellum incidit (quod ferē ante Caesaris adventum quotannīs accidere solēbat, utī aut ipsī iniūriās īnferrent aut inlātās prōpulsārent), omnēs in bellō versantur; atque eōrum ut quisque est genere cōpiīsque amplissimus, ita plūrimōs circum sē ambactōs clientīsque habet. Hanc ūnam grātiam potentiamque nōvērunt.

Human Sacrifices.

16. Nātiō est omnis Gallōrum admodum dēdita religiōnibus; atque ob eam causam quī sunt adfectī graviōribus morbīs, quīque in proeliīs perīculīsque versantur, aut prō victimīs hominēs immolant aut sē

immolātūrōs vovent, administrīsque ad ea sacrificia druidibus ūtuntur, — quod, prō vītā hominis nisi hominis vīta reddātur, nōn posse deōrum immortālium nūmen plācārī arbitrantur; pūblicēque ēiusdem generis habent īnstitūta sacrificia. Aliī immānī māgnitūdine simulācra habent, quōrum contexta vīminibus membra vīvīs hominibus complent; quibus succēnsīs circumventī flammā exanimantur hominēs. Supplicia eōrum quī in fūrtō aut lātrōciniō aut aliā noxiā sint comprehēnsī grātiōra dīs immortālibus esse arbitrantur; sed, cum ēius generis cōpia dēficit, etiam ad innocentium supplicia dēscendunt.

The Gallic Deities are identified with the Roman.

17. Deōrum māximē Mercurium colunt. Hūius sunt plūrima simulācra; hunc omnium inventōrem artium ferunt, hunc viārum atque itinerum ducem, hunc ad quaestūs pecūniae mercātūrāsque habēre vim māximam arbitrantur. Post hunc Apollinem et Mārtem et Iovem et Minervam. Dē hīs eandem ferē quam reliquae gentēs habent opīniōnem: Apollinem morbōs dēpellere, Minervam operum atque artificiōrum initia trādere, Iovem imperium caelestium tenēre, Mārtem bella regere. Huic, cum proeliō dīmicāre cōnstituērunt, ea quae bellō cēperint plērumque dēvovent; cum superāvērunt, animālia capta immolant, reliquās rēs in ūnum locum cōnferunt. Multīs in cīvitātibus hārum rērum exstrūctōs cumulōs locīs cōnsecrātīs cōnspicārī licet. Neque saepe accidit ut neglēctā quispiam religiōne aut capta apud sē occultāre aut posita tollere audēret; gravissimumque eī reī supplicium cum cruciātū cōnstitūtum est.

They claim Descent from Pluto.

18. Gallī sē omnīs ab Dīte patre prōgnātōs praedicant idque ab druidibus prōditum dīcunt. Ob eam causam spatia omnis temporis nōn numerō diērum sed noctium fīniunt; diēs nātālīs et mēnsium et annōrum initia sīc observant ut noctem diēs subsequātur. In reliquīs vītae īnstitūtīs hōc ferē ab reliquīs differunt, quod suōs līberōs, nisi cum adolēvērunt ut mūnus mīlitiae sustinēre possint, palam ad sē adīre nōn patiuntur; fīliumque puerīlī aetāte in pūblicō in cōnspectū patris adsistere turpe dūcunt.

Marriage Customs and Funeral Rites.

19. Virī, quantās pecūniās ab uxōribus dōtis nōmine accēpērunt, tantās ex suīs bonīs aestimātiōne factā cum dōtibus commūnicant. Hūius omnis pecūniae coniūnctim ratiō habētur frūctūsque servantur; uter eōrum vītā superāvit, ad eum pars utrīusque cum frūctibus superiōrum temporum pervenit. Virī in uxōrēs sīcut in līberōs vītae necisque habent potestātem; et cum paterfamiliae inlustriōre locō nātus dēcessit, ēius propinquī conveniunt et dē morte, sī rēs in suspīciōnem vēnit, dē uxōribus in servīlem modum quaestiōnem habent, et sī compertum est, īgnī atque omnibus tormentīs excruciātās interficiunt. Fūnera sunt prō cultū Gallōrum māgnifica et sūmptuōsa; omniaque quae vīvīs cordī fuisse arbitrantur in īgnem īnferunt, etiam animālia; āc paulō suprā hanc memoriam servī et clientēs, quōs ab eīs dīlēctōs esse cōnstābat, iūstīs fūnebribus cōnfectīs ūnā cremābantur.

Rumors have to be officially reported.

20. Quae cīvitātēs commodius suam rem pūblicam administrāre exīstimantur habent lēgibus sānctum, sī quis quid dē rē pūblicā ā fīnitimīs rūmōre aut fāmā accēperit, utī ad magistrātum dēferat nēve cum quō aliō commūnicet; quod saepe hominēs temerāriōs atque imperītōs falsīs rūmōribus terrērī et ad facinus impellī et dē summīs rēbus cōnsilium capere cōgnitum est. Magistrātūs quae vīsa sunt occultant, quae esse ex ūsū iūdicāvērunt multitūdinī prōdunt. Dē rē pūblicā nisi per concilium loquī nōn concēditur.

Manners and Customs of the Germans.

21. Germānī multum ab hāc cōnsuētūdine differunt. Nam neque druides habent quī rēbus dīvīnīs praesint neque sacrificiīs student. Deōrum numerō eōs sōlōs dūcunt quōs cernunt et quōrum apertē opibus iuvantur, Sōlem et Volcānum et Lūnam; reliquōs nē fāmā quidem accēpērunt. Vīta omnis in vēnātiōnibus atque in studiīs reī mīlitāris cōnsistit; ā parvīs labōrī āc dūritiae student. Quī diūtissimē impuberēs permānsērunt māximam inter suōs ferunt laudem; hōc alī statūram, alī vīrīs nervōsque cōnfirmārī putant. Intrā annum vērō vīcēsimum fēminae nōtitiam habuisse in turpissimīs habent rēbus: cūius reī nūlla est occultātiō, quod et prōmiscuē in flūminibus perluuntur, et pellibus aut parvīs rēnōnum tegimentīs ūtuntur, māgnā corporis parte nūdā.

No Tillage or Private Ownership of Land.

22. Agrī cultūrae nōn student, māiorque pars eōrum vīctūs in lacte, cāseō, carne cōnsistit. Neque quis-

quam agrī mōdum certum aut fīnīs habet propriōs; sed magistrātūs āc prīncipēs in annōs singulōs gentibus cōgnātiōnibusque hominum, quīque ūnā coiērunt, quantum et quō locō vīsum est agrī attribuunt, atque annō post aliō trānsīre cōgunt. Ēius reī multās adferunt causās: nē adsiduā cōnsuētūdine captī studium bellī gerendī agrī cultūrā commūtent; nē lātōs fīnīs parāre studeant potentiōrēs atque humiliōrēs possessiōnibus expellant; nē accūrātius ad frīgora atque aestūs vītandōs aedificent; nē qua oriātur pecūniae cupiditās, quā ex rē factiōnēs dissēnsiōnēsque nāscuntur; ut animī aequitāte plēbem contineant, cum suās quisque opēs cum potentissimīs aequārī videat.

Isolation of Tribes. How Chiefs are appointed. Brigandage. Laws of Hospitality.

23. Cīvitātibus māxima laus est quam lātissimē circum sē vāstātīs fīnibus sōlitūdinēs habēre. Hōc proprium virtūtis exīstimant, expulsōs agrīs fīnitimōs cēdere, neque quemquam prope sē audēre cōnsistere: simul hōc sē fore tūtiōrēs arbitrantur, repentīnae incursiōnis timōre sublātō. Cum bellum cīvitās aut inlātum dēfendit aut īnfert, magistrātūs quī eī bellō praesint, et vītae necisque habeant potestātem, dēliguntur. In pāce nūllus est commūnis magistrātus, sed prīncipēs regiōnum atque pāgōrum inter suōs iūs dīcunt contrōversiāsque minuunt. Lātrōcinia nūllam habent īnfāmiam quae extrā fīnīs cūiusque cīvitātis fīunt, atque ea iuventūtis exercendae āc dēsidiae minuendae causā fierī praedicant. Atque ubi quis ex prīncipibus in conciliō dīxit ‘sē ducem fore, quī sequī velint profiteantur,’ — cōnsurgunt eī quī et causam et hominem

probant suumque auxilium pollicentur, atque ā multitūdine conlaudantur; quī ex hīs secūtī nōn sunt in dēsertōrum āc prōditōrum numerō dūcuntur omniumque hīs rērum posteā fidēs dērogātur. Hospitem violāre fās nōn putant; quī quācumque dē causā ad eōs vēnērunt ab iniūriā prohibent sānctōsque habent; hīsque omnium domūs patent vīctusque commūnicātur.

Former Migration of Gauls into Germany.

24. Āc fuit anteā tempus cum Germānōs Gallī virtūte superārent, ultrō bella īnferrent, propter hominum multitūdinem agrīque inopiam trāns Rhēnum colōniās mitterent. Itaque ea quae fertilissima Germāniae sunt loca, circum Hercyniam silvam (quam Eratosthenī et quibusdam Graecīs fāmā nōtam esse videō, quam illī Orcyniam appellant), Volcae Tectosagēs occupāvērunt atque ibi cōnsēdērunt. Quae gēns ad hōc tempus hīs sēdibus sēsē continet summamque habet iūstitiae et bellicae laudis opīniōnem. Nunc quidem in eādem inopiā, egestāte, patientiāque Germānī permanent, eōdem vīctū et cultū corporis ūtuntur; Gallīs autem prōvinciārum propinquitās et trānsmarīnārum rērum nōtitia multa ad cōpiam atque ūsum largītur. Paulātim adsuēfactī superārī multīsque victī proeliīs, nē sē quidem ipsī cum illīs virtūte comparant.

Description of the Hercynian Forest.

25. Hūius Hercyniae silvae, quae suprā dēmōnstrāta est, lātitūdō VIIII diērum iter expedītō patet; nōn enim aliter fīnīrī potest, neque mēnsūrās itinerum nōvērunt. Oritur ab Helvētiōrum et Nemetum et Rauracōrum finibus, rēctāque flūminis Dānuvī regiōne pertinet ad

fīnīs Dācōrum et Anartium; hinc sē flectit sinistrōrsus dīversīs ab flūmine regiōnibus multārumque gentium fīnīs propter māgnitūdinem attingit. Neque quisquam est hūius Germāniae quī sē [aut audīsse] aut adīsse ad initium ēius silvae dīcat, cum diērum iter LX prōcesserit, aut quō ex locō oriātur accēperit. Multaque in eā genera ferārum nāscī cōnstat quae reliquīs in locīs vīsa nōn sint; ex quibus quae māximē differant ab cēterīs et memoriae prōdenda videantur haec sunt.

The "Reindeer."

26. Est bōs cervī figūrā, cūius ā mediā fronte inter aurīs ūnum cornū exsistit excelsius magisque dērēctum hīs quae nōbīs nōta sunt cornibus. Ab ēius summō sīcut palmae rāmīque lātē diffunduntur. Eadem est fēminae marisque nātūra, eadem forma māgnitūdōque cornuumque.

The Elk.

27. Sunt item quae appellantur alcēs. Hārum est cōnsimilis caprīs figūra et varietās pellium; sed māgnitūdine paulō antecēdunt mutilaeque sunt cornibus et crūra sine nōdīs articulīsque habent; neque quiētis causā prōcumbunt neque, sī quō adflīctae cāsū concidērunt, ērigere sēsē āc sublevāre possunt. Hīs sunt arborēs prō cubīlibus; ad eās sē adplicant atque ita paulum modo reclīnātae quiētem capiunt. Quārum ex vestīgiīs cum est animadversum ā vēnātōribus quō sē recipere cōnsuērint, omnēs eō locō aut ab rādīcibus subruunt aut accīdunt arborēs, tantum ut summa speciēs eārum stantium relinquātur. Hūc cum sē cōnsuētūdine reclīnāvērunt, īnfirmās arborēs pondere adflīgunt atque ūnā ipsae concidunt.

The Wild Ox.

28. Tertium est genus eōrum quī ūrī appellantur. Hī sunt māgnitūdine paulō īnfrā elephantōs; speciē et colōre et figūrā taurī. Māgna vīs eōrum est et māgna vēlōcitās; neque hominī neque ferae quam cōnspēxērunt parcunt. Hōs studiōsē foveīs captōs interficiunt. Hōc sē labōre dūrant adulēscentēs atque hōc genere vēnātiōnis exercent; et quī plūrimōs ex hīs interfēcērunt, relātīs in pūblicum cornibus quae sint testimōniō, māgnam ferunt laudem. Sed adsuēscere ad hominēs et mānsuēfierī nē parvulī quidem exceptī possunt. Amplitūdō cornuum et figūra et speciēs multum ā nostrōrum boum cornibus differt. Haec studiōsē conquīsīta ab labrīs argentō circumclūdunt atque in amplissimīs epulīs prō pōculīs ūtuntur.

Cæsar returns to Gaul to conquer Ambiorix.

29. Caesar, postquam per Ubiōs explōrātōrēs comperit Suēvōs sēsē in silvās recēpisse, inopiam frūmentī veritus (quod, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, minimē omnēs Germānī agrī cultūrae student), cōnstituit nōn prōgredī longius; sed, nē omnīnō metum reditūs suī barbarīs tolleret, atque ut eōrum auxilia tardāret, reductō exercitū partem ultimam pontis, quae rīpās Ubiōrum contingēbat, in longitūdinem pedum CC rescindit, atque in extrēmō ponte turrim tabulātōrum IIII cōnstituit praesidiumque cohortium XII pontis tuendī causā pōnit māgnīsque eum locum mūnītiōnibus fīrmat. Eī locō praesidiōque C. Volcātium Tullum adulēscentem praeficit; ipse, cum mātūrēscere frūmenta inciperent, ad bellum Ambiorīgis profectus, per Arduennam silvam — quae est tōtīus Galliae māxima atque ab

rīpīs Rhēnī fīnibusque Trēverōrum ad Nerviōs pertinet, mīlibusque amplius D in longitūdinem patet — L. Minucium Basilum cum omnī equitātū praemittit, sī quid celeritāte itineris atque opportūnitāte temporis prōficere possit; monet ut īgnīs in castrīs fierī prohibeat, nē qua ēius adventūs procul sīgnificātiō fiat; sēsē cōnfestim subsequī dīcit.

Ambiorix is in Luck. He escapes.

30. Basilus ut imperātum est facit. Celeriter contrāque omnium opīniōnem cōnfectō itinere multōs in agrīs inopīnantīs dēprehendit; eōrum indiciō ad ipsum Ambiorīgem contendit, quō in locō cum paucīs equitibus esse dīcēbātur. Multum cum in omnibus rēbus tum in rē mīlitārī potest fortūna. Nam *ut* māgnō accidit cāsū ut in ipsum incautum etiam atque imparātum incideret, priusque ēius adventus ab omnibus vidērētur quam fāma āc nūntius adferrētur, sīc māgnae fuit fortūnae, omnī mīlitārī īnstrūmentō quod circum sē habēbat ēreptō, rēdīs equīsque comprehēnsīs, ipsum effugere mortem. Sed hōc factum est, quod, aedificiō circumdatō silvā, ut sunt fere domicilia Gallōrum, quī vītandī aestūs causā plērumque silvārum āc flūminum petunt propinquitātīs, comitēs familiārēsque ēius angustō in locō paulisper equitum nostrōrum vim sustinuērunt. Hīs pūgnantibus illum in equum quīdam ex suīs intulit; fugientem silvae texērunt. Sīc et ad subeundum periculum et ad vītandum multum fortūna valuit.

Disbandment of his Forces among the Forests and Marshes. Suicide of Catuvolcus.

31. Ambiorīx cōpiās suās iūdiciōne nōn condūxerit, quod proeliō dīmicandum nōn exīstimāret, an tempore

exclūsus et repentīnō equitum adventū prohibitus, cum reliquum exercitum subsequī crēderet, dubium est. Sed certē dīmissīs per agrōs nūntiīs sibi quemque cōnsulere iussit. Quōrum pars in Arduennam silvam, pars in continentīs palūdēs profūgit; quī proximī Ōceanō fuērunt hī īnsulīs sēsē occultāvērunt quās aestūs efficere cōnsuērunt; multī ex suīs fīnibus ēgressī sē suaque omnia aliēnissimīs crēdidērunt. Catuvolcus, rēx dīmidiae partis Eburōnum, quī ūnā cum Ambiorīge cōnsilium inierat, aetāte iam cōnfectus, cum labōrem bellī aut fugae ferre nōn posset, omnibus precibus dētestātus Ambiorīgem, quī ēius cōnsilī auctor fuisset, taxō (cūius māgna in Galliā Germāniāque cōpia est) sē exanimāvit.

Q. Cicero put in Command at Aduatuca.

32. Sēgnī Condrūsīque, ex gente et numerō Germānōrum, quī sunt inter Eburōnēs Trēverōsque, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt ōrātum 'nē sē in hostium numerō dūceret nēve omnium Germānōrum quī essent citrā Rhēnum ūnam esse causam iūdicāret; nihil sē dē bellō cōgitāvisse, nūlla Ambiorīgī auxilia mīsisse.' Caesar explōrātā rē quaestiōne captīvōrum, sī quī ad eōs Eburōnēs ex fugā convēnissent, ad sē ut redūcerentur imperāvit; sī ita fēcissent, fīnīs eōrum sē violātūrum negāvit. Tum cōpiīs in trīs partīs distribūtīs impedīmenta omnium legiōnum Aduatucam contulit. Id castellī nōmen est. Hōc ferē est in mediīs Eburōnum fīnibus, ubi Titūrius atque Aurunculēius hiemandī causā cōnsēderant. Hunc cum reliquīs rēbus locum probābat, tum quod superiōris annī mūnītiōnēs integrae manēbant, ut mīlitum labōrem sublevāret. Praesidiō

impedīmentīs legiōnem XIIII relīquit, ūnam ex hīs tribus quās proximē cōnscrīptās ex Ītaliā trādūxerat. Eī legiōnī castrīsque Q. Tullium Cicerōnem praefēcit ducentōsque equitēs attribuit.

Cæsar divides his Forces and proceeds to hunt for Ambiorix.

33. Partītō exercitū T. Labiēnum cum legiōnibus tribus ad Ōceanum versus in eās partīs quae Menapiōs attingunt proficīscī iubet; C. Trebōnium cum parī legiōnum numerō ad eam regiōnem quae Aduatucīs adiacet dēpopulandam mittit; ipse cum reliquīs III ad flūmen Scaldim, quod īnfluit in Mosam, extrēmāsque Arduennae partīs īre cōnstituit, quō cum paucīs equitibus profectum Ambiorīgem audiēbat. Discēdens post diem VII sēsē reversūrum cōnfīrmat; quam ad diem eī legiōnī quae in praesidiō relinquēbātur frūmentum dēbērī sciēbat. Labiēnum Trebōniumque hortātur, sī reī pūblicae commodō facere possint, ad eum diem revertantur; ut, rūrsus commūnicātō cōnsiliō explōrātīsque hostium ratiōnibus, aliud initium bellī capere possint.

The Difficulties of the Situation. Cæsar seeks Alliance with Gallic Tribes against the Eburones.

34. Erat, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, manus certa nūlla, nōn oppidum, nōn praesidium quod sē armīs dēfenderet, sed in omnīs partīs dispersa multitūdō. Ubi cuique aut vallēs abdita aut locus silvestris aut palūs impedīta spem praesidī aut salūtis aliquam offerēbat, cōnsēderat. Haec loca vīcīnitātibus erant nōta, māgnamque rēs dīligentiam requīrēbat, nōn in summā exercitūs tuendā (nūllum enim poterat ūniversīs *ā* perterritīs āc dispersīs perīculum accidere), sed in singulīs

mīlitibus cōnservandīs; quae tamen ex parte rēs ad salūtem exercitūs pertinēbat. Nam et praedae cupiditās multōs longius sēvocābat, et silvae incertīs occultīsque itineribus cōnfertōs adīre prohibēbant. Sī negōtium cōnficī stirpemque hominum scelerātōrum interficī vellet, dīmittendae plūrēs manūs dīdūcendīque erant mīlitēs; sī continēre ad sīgna manipulōs vellet, ut īnstitūta ratiō et cōnsuētūdō exercitūs Rōmānī postulābat, locus ipse erat praesidiō barbarīs, neque ex occultō īnsidiandī et dispersōs circumveniendī singulīs deerat audācia. Ut in ēius modī difficultātibus, quantum dīligentiā prōviderī poterat prōvidēbātur; ut potius in nocendō aliquid praetermitterētur, etsī omnium animī ad ulcīscendum ārdēbant, quam cum aliquō mīlitum dētrīmentō nocērētur. Dīmittit ad fīnitimās cīvitātīs nūntiōs Caesar; omnīs ēvocat spē praedae ad dīripiendōs Eburōnēs, ut potius in silvīs Gallōrum vīta quam legiōnārius mīles perīclitētur; simul ut māgnā multitūdine circumfūsā prō tālī facinore stirps āc nōmen cīvitātis tollātur. Māgnus undique numerus celeriter convenit.

Invaders from Germany cross the Rhine, plunder the Eburones, and advance towards Cæsar's Camp.

35. Haec in omnibus Eburōnum partibus gerēbantur, diēsque adpetēbat VII, quem ad diem Caesar ad impedīmenta legiōnemque revertī cōnstituerat. Hīc quantum in bellō fortūna possit et quantōs adferat cāsūs cōgnōscī potuit. Dissipātīs āc perterritīs hostibus, ut dēmōnstrāvimus, manus erat nūlla quae parvam modo causam timōris adferret. Trāns Rhēnum ad Germānōs pervenit fāma dīripī Eburōnēs atque ultrō omnīs ad

praedam ēvocārī. Cōgunt equitum duo mīlia Sugambrī, quī sunt proximī Rhēnō, ā quibus receptōs ex fugā Tencterōs atque Usipetēs suprā docuimus. Trānseunt Rhēnum nāvibus ratibusque xxx mīlibus passuum īnfrā eum locum ubi pōns erat perfectus praesidiumque ab Caesare relictum. Prīmōs Eburōnum fīnīs adeunt; multōs ex fugā dispersōs excipiunt, māgnō pecoris numerō, cūius sunt cupidissimī barbarī, potiuntur. Invītātī praedā longius prōcēdunt. Nōn hōs palūdēs bellō latrōciniīsque nātōs, nōn silvae morantur. Quibus in locīs sit Caesar ex captīvīs quaerunt; profectum longius reperiunt omnemque exercitum discessisse cōgnōscunt. Atque ūnus ex captīvīs: "Quid vōs," inquit, "hanc miseram āc tenuem sectāminī praedam, quibus licet iam esse fortūnātissimōs? Tribus hōrīs Aduatucam venīre potestis; hūc omnīs suās fortūnās exercitus Rōmānōrum contulit. Praesidī tantum est ut nē mūrus quidem cingī possit, neque quisquam ēgredī extrā mūnītiōnēs audeat." *Hāc* oblātā spē Germānī quam nactī erant praedam in occultō relinquunt; ipsī Aduatucam contendunt ūsī eōdem duce cūius haec indiciō cōgnōverant.

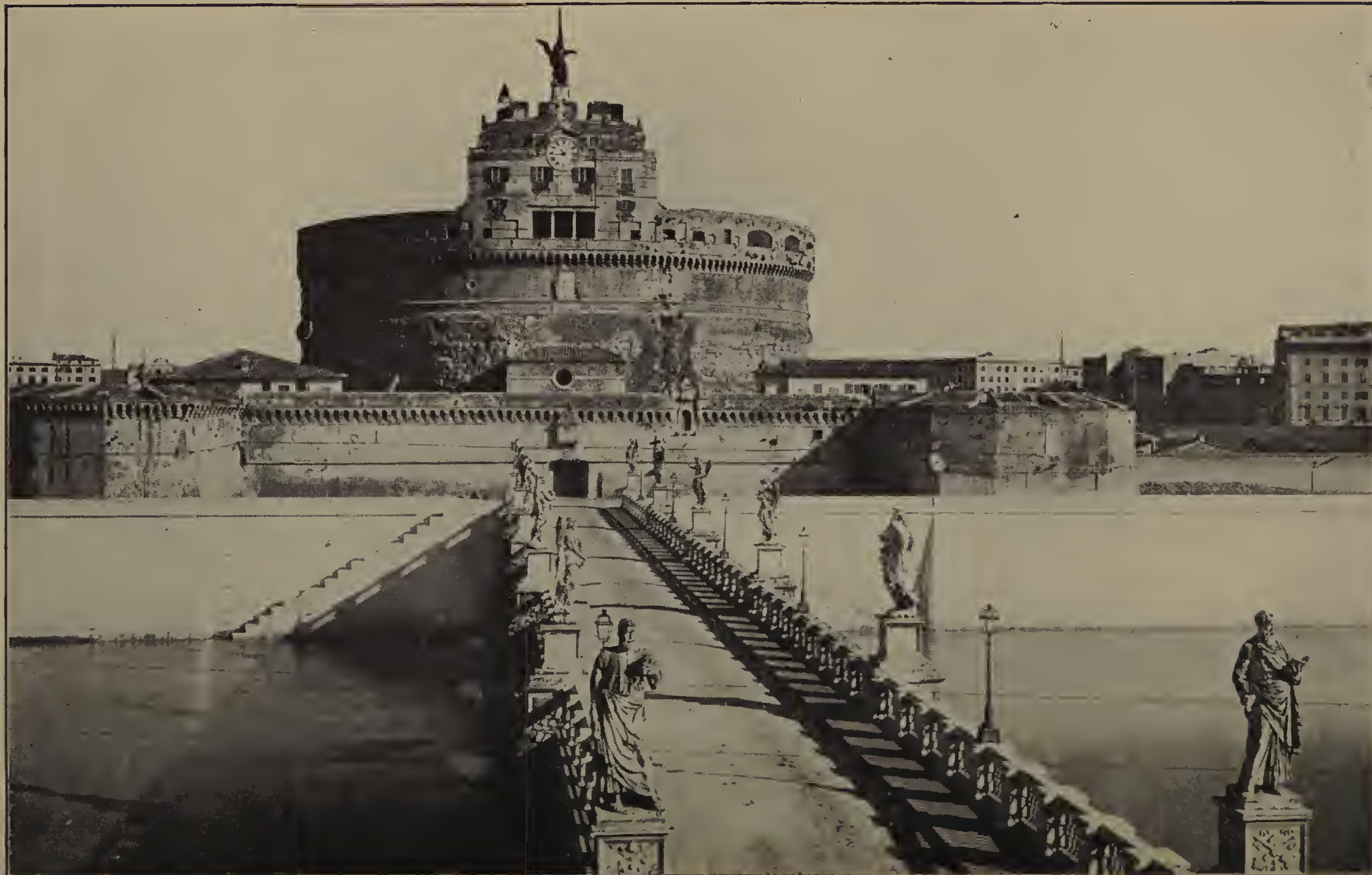
Cicero unwisely sends out too many Foragers.

36. Cicerō (quī omnīs superiōrēs diēs praeceptīs Caesaris summā dīligentiā mīlitēs in castrīs continuisset, āc nē cālōnem quidem quemquam extrā mūnītiōnem ēgredī passus esset) vii diē, diffīdēns dē numerō diērum Caesarem fidem servātūrum, quod longius prōgressum audiēbat neque ūlla dē reditū ēius fāma adferēbātur; simul eōrum permōtus vōcibus quī illīus patientiam paene obsessiōnem appellābant, sī quidem

ex castrīs ēgredī nōn licēret; nūllum ēius modī cāsum exspectāns quō, VIIII oppositīs legiōnibus māximōque equitātū, dispersīs āc paene dēlētīs hostibus, in mīlibus passuum tribus offendī posset, — V cohortīs frūmentātum in proximās segetēs mittit, quās inter et castra ūnus omnīnō collis intererat. Complūrēs erant in castrīs ex legiōnibus aegrī relictī; ex quibus quī hōc spatiō diērum convaluerant, circiter CCC, sub vēxillō ūnā mittuntur; māgna praetereā multitūdō cālōnum, māgna vīs iūmentōrum, quae in castrīs subsēderat, factā potestāte sequitur.

The Germans assault the Camp and cause a Panic.

37. Hōc ipsō tempore [et] cāsū Germānī equitēs interveniunt, prōtinusque eōdem illō quō vēnerant cursū ab decumānā portā in castra inrumpere cōnantur; nec prius sunt vīsī, obiectīs ab eā parte silvīs, quam castrīs adpropinquārent, ūsque eō ut quī sub vāllō tenderent mercātōrēs recipiendī suī facultātem nōn habērent. Inopīnantēs nostrī rē novā perturbantur, āc vix prīmum impetum cohors in statiōne sustinet. Circumfunduntur hostēs ex reliquīs partibus, sī quem aditum reperīre possint. Aegrē portās nostrī tuentur, reliquōs aditūs locus ipse per sē mūnītiōque dēfendit. Tōtīs trepidātur castrīs atque alius ex aliō causam tumultūs quaerit; neque quō sīgna ferantur neque quam in partem quisque conveniat prōvident. Alius castra iam capta prōnūntiat; alius dēlētō exercitū atque imperātōre victōrēs barbarōs vēnisse contendit; plērīque novās sibi ex locō religiōnēs fingunt, Cottaeque et Titūrī calamitātem, quī in eōdem occiderint castellō, ante oculōs pōnunt. Tālī timōre omnibus perterritīs cōn-



The Tomb of Hadrian
(The Tiber is in the Foreground)

fīrmātur opīniō barbarīs, ut ex captīvō audierant, nūllum esse intus praesidium. Perrumpere nītuntur sēque ipsī adhortantur nē tantam fortūnam ex manibus dimittant.

Gallant Conduct of P. Sextius Baculus.

38. Erat aeger in praesidiō relictus P. Sextius Baculus, quī prīmum pīlum apud Caesarem dūxerat, cūius mentiōnem superiōribus proeliīs fēcimus, āc diem iam quīntum cibō caruerat. Hīc diffīsus suae atque omnium salūtī inermis ex tabernāculō prōdit; videt imminēre hostīs atque in summō rem esse discrīmine; capit arma ā proximīs atque in portā cōnsistit: cōnsequuntur hunc centuriōnēs ēius cohortis quae in statiōne erat; paulisper ūnā proelium sustinent. Relinquit animus Sextium gravibus acceptīs volneribus; aegrē per manūs trāditus servātur. Hōc spatiō interpositō reliquī sēsē cōnfīrmant tantum ut in mūnītiōnibus cōnsistere audeant speciemque dēfēnsōrum praebeant.

Return of the Foraging Party to Camp.

39. Interim cōnfectā frūmentātiōne mīlitēs nostrī clāmōrem exaudiunt; praecurrunt equitēs; quantō rēs sit in perīculō cōgnōscunt. Hīc vērō nūlla mūnītiō est quae perterritōs recipiat; modo cōnscrīptī atque ūsūs mīlitāris imperītī ad tribūnum mīlitum centuriōnēsque ōra convertunt; quid ab hīs praecipiātur exspectant: nēmō est tam fortis quīn reī novitāte perturbētur. Barbarī sīgna procul cōnspicātī oppūgnātiōne dēsistunt: redīsse prīmō legiōnēs crēdunt quās longius discessisse ex captīvīs cōgnōverant; posteā dēspectā paucitāte ex omnibus partibus impetum faciunt.

Their Way back is Fraught with Difficulties.

40. Cālōnēs in proximum tumulum prōcurrunt. Hinc celeriter dēiectī sē in sīgna manipulōsque coniciunt; eō magis timidōs perterrent mīlitēs. Aliī cuneō factō ut celeriter perrumpant cēnsent, quoniam tam propinqua sint castra; etsī pars aliqua circumventa ceciderit, at reliquōs servārī posse [confīdunt]; aliī ut in iugō cōnsistant atque eundem omnēs ferant cāsum. Hōc veterēs nōn probant mīlitēs, quōs sub vēxillō ūnā profectōs docuimus. Itaque inter sē cohortātī, duce C. Trebōniō, equite Rōmānō, quī eīs erat praepositus, per mediōs hostīs perrumpunt incolumēsque ad ūnum omnēs in castra perveniunt. Hōs subsecūtī cālōnēs equitēsque eōdem impetū mīlitum virtūte servantur. At eī quī in iugō cōnstiterant, nūllō etiam nunc ūsū reī mīlitāris perceptō, neque in eō quod probāverant cōnsiliō permanēre, ut sē locō superiōre dēfenderent, neque eam quam prōfuisse aliīs vim celeritātemque vīderant, imitārī potuērunt; sed sē in castra recipere cōnātī inīquum in locum dēmisērunt. Centuriōnēs, quōrum nōn nūllī ex īnferiōribus ōrdinibus reliquārum legiōnum virtūtis causā in superiōrēs erant ōrdinēs hūius legiōnis trāductī, nē ante partam reī mīlitāris laudem āmitterent, fortissimē pūgnantēs concidērunt. Mīlitum pars, hōrum virtūte submōtīs hostibus, praeter spem incolumis in castra pervēnit; pars ā barbarīs circumventa periit.

The Germans withdraw and Cæsar arrives.

41. Germānī dēspērātā expūgnātiōne castrōrum, quod nostrōs iam cōnstitisse in mūnītiōnibus vidēbant, cum eā praedā quam in silvīs dēposuerant trāns Rhē-

num sēsē recēpērunt. Āc tantus fuit etiam post discessum hostium terror ut eā nocte, cum C. Volusēnus missus cum equitātū in castra vēnisset, fidem nōn faceret adesse cum incolumī Caesarem exercitū. Sīc omnium animōs timor praeoccupāverat ut paene aliēnātā mente, dēlētīs omnibus cōpiīs, equitātum sē ex fugā recēpisse dīcerent, neque incolumī exercitū Germānōs castra oppūgnātūrōs fuisse contenderent. Quem timōrem Caesaris adventus sustulit.

Effect of the German Invasion.

42. Reversus ille, — ēventūs bellī nōn īgnōrāns, ūnum quod cohortēs ex statiōne et praesīdiō essent ēmissae questus, nē minimum quidem cāsuī locum relinquī dēbuisse, — multum fortūnam in repentīnō hostium adventū potuisse iūdicāvit; multō etiam amplius, quod paene ab ipsō vāllō portīsque castrōrum barbarōs āvertisset. Quārum omnium rērum māximē admīrandum vidēbātur, quod Germānī, quī eō cōnsiliō Rhēnum trānsierant ut Ambiorīgis fīnīs dēpopulārentur, ad castra Rōmānōrum dēlātī optātissimum Ambiorīgī beneficium obtulerant.

Cæsar further punishes the Resisting Tribes.

43. Caesar, rūrsus ad vexandōs hostīs profectus, māgnō equitum coāctō numerō ex fīnitimīs cīvitātibus, in omnīs partīs dīmittit. Omnēs vīcī atque omnia aedificia quae quisque cōnspexerat incendēbantur; praeda ex omnibus locīs agēbātur; frūmenta nōn sōlum ā tantā multitūdine iūmentōrum atque hominum cōnsūmēbantur, sed etiam annī tempore atque imbribus prōcubuerant; ut, sī quī etiam in praesentia sē

occultāssent, tamen hīs dēductō exercitū rērum omnium inopiā pereundum vidērētur. Āc saepe in eum locum ventum est, tantō in omnīs partīs dīmissō equitātū, ut [nōn] modo vīsum ab sē Ambiorīgem in fugā circumspicerent captīvī, nec plānē etiam abīsse ex cōnspectū contenderent; ut, spē cōnsequendī inlātā atque īnfīnītō labōre susceptō, quī sē summam ā Caesare grātiam initūrōs putārent, paene nātūram studiō vincerent, semperque paulum ad summam fēlīcitātem dēfuisse vidērētur; atque ille latebrīs aut saltibus sē ēriperet; et noctū occultātus aliās regiōnēs partīsque peteret nōn māiōre equitum praesidiō quam IIII, quibus sōlīs vītam suam committere audēbat.

Execution of Acco. Cæsar returns to Italy.

44. Tālī modō vāstātīs regiōnibus exercitum Caesar duārum cohortium damnō Dūrocortorum Rēmōrum dēdūcit; conciliōque in eum locum Galliae indictō dē coniūrātiōne Senonum et Carnutum quaestiōnem habēre īnstituit; et dē Accōne, quī prīnceps ēius cōnsilī fuerat, graviōre sententiā prōnūntiātā, mōre māiōrum supplicium sūmpsit. Nōn nūllī iūdicium veritī profūgērunt; quibus cum aquā atque īgnī interdīxisset, duās legiōnēs ad fīnīs Trēverōrum, duās in Lingonibus, sex reliquās in Senonum fīnibus Agēdincī in hībernīs conlocāvit; frūmentōque exercituī prōvīsō, ut īnstituerat, in Ītaliam ad conventūs agendōs profectus est.



Hasta.



Gladiī.

BOOK VII.

The Great Uprising of Gaul under Vercingetorix.
B.C. 52.

The Gauls unite to secure Independence.

QUIĒTĀ Galliā Caesar, ut cōnstituerat, in Ītaliam ad conventūs agendōs proficīscitur. Ibi cōgnōscit de P. Clōdī caede; *dē* senātūsque cōnsultō certior factus ut omnēs iūniōrēs Ītaliae coniūrārent, dēlēctum tōtā prōvinciā habēre īnstituit. Eae rēs in Galliam Trānsalpīnam celeriter perferuntur. Addunt ipsī et adfingunt rūmōribus Gallī (quod rēs poscere vidēbātur) retinērī urbānō mōtū Caesarem neque in tantīs dissēnsiōnibus ad exercitum venīre posse. Hāc impulsī occāsiōne quī iam ante sē populī Rōmānī imperiō subiectōs dolērent līberius atque audācius dē bellō cōnsilia inīre incipiunt. Indictīs inter sē prīncipēs Galliae conciliīs silvestribus āc remōtīs locīs queruntur dē Accōnis morte; posse hunc cāsum ad ipsōs recidere dēmōnstrant; miserantur commūnem Galliae fortūnam; omnibus pollicitātiōnibus āc praemiīs dēposcunt quī bellī initium faciant et suī capitis perīculō Galliam in lībertātem vindicent. In prīmīs ratiōnem

esse habendam dīcunt, priusquam eōrum clandestīna cōnsilia efferantur, ut Caesar ab exercitū interclūdātur. Id esse facile, quod neque legiōnēs audeant absente imperātōre ex hībernīs ēgredī, neque imperātor sine praesidiō ad legiōnēs pervenīre possit; postrēmō, in aciē praestāre interficī quam nōn veterem bellī glōriam lībertātemque quam ā māiōribus accēperint recuperāre.

The Carnutes begin the War.

2. Hīs rēbus agitātīs profitentur Carnutes sē nūllum perīculum commūnis salūtis causā recūsāre, prīncipēsque ex omnibus bellum factūrōs pollicentur; et, quoniam in praesentia obsidibus cavēre inter sē nōn possint, nē rēs efferātur, ut iūre iūrandō āc fidē sanciātur petunt, conlātīs mīlitāribus sīgnīs (quō mōre eōrum gravissima caerimōnia continētur), nē factō initiō bellī ab reliquīs dēserantur. Tum conlaudātīs Carnutibus, datō iūre iūrandō ab omnibus quī aderant, tempore ēius reī cōnstitūtō, ā conciliō discēditur.

The News travels fast.

3. Ubi ea diēs vēnit, Carnutes Cotuātō et Conconnetodumnō ducibus, dēspērātīs hominibus, Cēnabum sīgnō datō concurrunt, cīvīsque Rōmānōs quī negōtiandī causā ibi cōnstiterant, in hīs C. Fūfium Citam, honestum equitem Rōmānum, quī reī frūmentāriae iūssū Caesaris praeerat, interficiunt bonaque eōrum dīripiunt. Celeriter ad omnīs Galliae cīvitātīs fāma perfertur. Nam ubi quae māior atque inlustrior incidit rēs, clāmōre per agrōs regiōnēsque sīgnificant; hunc aliī deinceps excipiunt et proximīs trādunt, ut tum accidit. Nam quae Cēnabī oriente sōle gesta

essent ante prīmam cōnfectam vigiliam in fīnibus Arvernōrum audīta sunt, quod spatium est mīlium passuum circiter CLX.

Vercingetorix, Chief of the Arverni, assumes Command and induces Many Tribes to join him. His Stern Discipline.

4. Similī ratiōne ibi Vercingetorīx, Celtillī fīlius, Arvernus, summae potentiae adulēscēns, — cūius pater prīncipātum tōtīus Galliae obtinuerat, et ob eam causam quod rēgnum adpetēbat ā cīvitāte erat interfectus, — convocātīs suīs clientibus facile incendit. Cōgnitō ēius cōnsiliō ad arma concurritur. Prohibētur ā Gobannitiōne, patruō suō, reliquīsque prīncipibus, quī hanc temptandam fortūnam nōn exīstimābant; expellitur ex oppidō Gergoviā; nōn dēstitit tamen atque in agrīs habet dēlēctum egentium āc perditōrum. Hāc coāctā manū quōscumque adit ex cīvitāte ad suam sententiam perdūcit; hortātur ut commūnis lībertātis causā arma capiant; māgnīsque coāctīs cōpiīs adversāriōs suōs, ā quibus paulō ante erat ēiectus, expellit ex cīvitāte. Rēx ab suīs appellātur. Dīmittit quōque versus lēgātiōnēs; obtestātur ut in fidē maneant. Celeriter sibi Senonēs, Parīsiōs, Pictonēs, Cadūrcōs, Turonōs, Aulercōs, Lemovīcēs, Andōs, reliquōsque omnīs quī Ōceanum attingunt adiungit; omnium cōnsēnsū ad eum dēfertur imperium. Quā oblātā potestāte omnibus hīs cīvitātibus obsidēs imperat; certum numerum mīlitum ad sē celeriter addūcī iubet; armōrum quantum quaeque cīvitās domī, quodque ante tempus efficiat, cōnstituit; in prīmīs equitātuī studet. Summae dīligentiae summam imperī sevēritātem addit; māgnitūdine supplicī dubitantīs cōgit: nam māiōre

commissō dēlictō īgnī atque omnibus tormentīs necat; leviōre dē causā auribus dēsectīs aut singulīs effossīs oculīs domum remittit, ut sint reliquīs documentō et māgnitūdine poenae perterreant aliōs.

He compels the Bituriges to join him.

5. Hīs suppliciīs celeriter coāctō exercitū Lucterium Cadūrcum, summae hominem audāciae, cum parte cōpiārum in Rutēnōs mittit; ipse in Biturīgēs proficīscitur. Ēius adventū Biturīgēs ad Haeduōs (quōrum erant in fidē) lēgātōs mittunt subsidium rogātum, quō facilius hostium cōpiās sustinēre possint. Haeduī dē cōnsiliō lēgātōrum, quōs Caesar ad exercitum relīquerat, cōpiās equitātūs peditātūsque subsidiō Biturīgibus mittunt. Quī cum ad flūmen Ligerim vēnissent, quod Biturīgēs ab Haeduīs dīvidit, paucōs diēs ibi morātī neque flūmen trānsīre ausī, domum revertuntur, lēgātīsque nostrīs renūntiant sē Biturīgum perfidiam veritōs revertisse, quibus id cōnsilī fuisse cōgnōverint ut, sī flūmen trānsīssent, ūnā ex parte ipsī, alterā Arvernī sē circumsisterent. Id eāne dē causā quam lēgātīs prōnūntiārunt an perfidiā adductī fēcerint, quod nihil nōbīs cōnstat, nōn vidētur prō certō esse pōnendum. Biturīgēs eōrum discessū statim sē cum Arvernīs iungunt.

Cæsar's Difficulty to reach his Army.

6. Hīs rēbus in Ītaliam Caesarī nūntiātīs, cum iam ille urbānās rēs virtūte Cn. Pompēī commodiōrem in statum pervēnisse intellegeret, in Trānsalpīnam Galliam profectus est. Eō cum vēnisset, māgnā difficultāte adficiēbātur, quā ratiōne ad exercitum pervenīre pos-

set. Nam sī legiōnēs in prōvinciam arcesseret, sē absente in itinere proeliō dīmicātūrās intellegēbat; sī ipse ad exercitum contenderet, nē eīs quidem eō tempore quī quiētī vidērentur suam salūtem rēctē committī vidēbat.

He counteracts the Designs of Lucterius at Narbo.

7. Interim Lucterius Cadūrcus in Rutēnōs missus eam cīvitātem Arvernīs conciliat. Prōgressus in Nitiobrigēs et Gabalōs ab utrīsque obsidēs accipit, et māgnā coāctā manū in prōvinciam Narbōnem versus inruptiōnem facere contendit. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar omnibus cōnsiliīs antevertendum exīstimāvit, ut Narbōnem proficīscerētur. Eō cum vēnisset, timentīs cōnfīrmat, praesidia in Rutēnīs prōvinciālibus, Volcīs Arecomicīs, Tolōsātibus circumque Narbōnem, quae loca hostibus erant fīnitima, cōnstituit; partem cōpiārum ex prōvinciā, supplēmentumque quod ex Ītaliā addūxerat in Helviōs, qui fīnīs Arvernōrum contingunt, convenīre iubet.

Cæsar crosses the Cevennes through the Snow. Vercingetorix returns to defend the Arverni.

8. Hīs rēbus comparātīs, repressō iam Lucteriō et remōtō, quod intrāre intrā praesidia perīculōsum putābat, in Helviōs proficīscitur. Etsī mōns Cevenna, quī Arvernōs ab Helviīs disclūdit, dūrissimō tempore annī altissimā nive iter impediēbat; tamen, discussā nive in altitūdinem pedum VI atque ita viīs patefactīs, summō mīlitum labōre ad fīnīs Arvernōrum pervēnit. Quibus oppressīs inopīnantibus, quod sē Cevennā ut mūrō mūnītōs exīstimābant, āc nē singulārī quidem

umquam hominī eō tempore annī sēmitae patuerant, equitibus imperat ut quam lātissimē possint vagentur et quam māximum hostibus terrōrem īnferant.

Celeriter haec fāma ac nūntiī ad Vercingetorīgem perferuntur; quem perterritī omnēs Arvernī circumsistunt atque obsecrant ut suīs fortūnīs cōnsulat, neu sē ab hostibus dīripī patiātur; praesertim cum videat omne ad sē bellum trānslātum. Quōrum ille precibus permōtus castra ex Biturīgibus movet in Arvernōs versus.

Leaving Brutus in Command Cæsar seeks Reinforcements. Vercingetorix proceeds against the Boii.

9. At Caesar bīduum in hīs locīs morātus, quod haec dē Vercingetorīge ūsū ventūra opīniōne praecēperat, per causam supplēmentī equitātūsque cōgendī ab exercitū discēdit; Brūtum adulēscentem hīs cōpiīs praeficit; hunc monet ut in omnīs partīs equitēs quam lātissimē pervagentur; datūrum sē operam nē longius trīduō ā castrīs absit. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus, suīs inopīnantibus, quam māximīs potest itineribus Viennam pervenit. Ibi nactus recentem equitātum, quem multīs ante diēbus eō praemīserat, neque diurnō neque nocturnō itinere intermissō, per fīnīs Haeduōrum in Lingonēs contendit, ubi duae legiōnēs hiemābant; ut, sī quid etiam dē suā salūte ab Haeduīs inīrētur cōnsilī, celeritāte praecurreret. Eō cum pervēnisset, ad reliquās legiōnēs mittit, priusque omnīs in ūnum locum cōgit quam dē ēius adventū Arvernīs nūntiārī posset. Hāc rē cōgnitā Vercingetorīx rūrsus in Biturīgēs exercitum redūcit, atque inde profectus Gorgobinam, Bōiōrum oppidum, quōs ibi Helvēticō

proeliō victōs Caesar conlocāverat Haeduīsque attribuerat, oppūgnāre īnstituit.

Cæsar determines to relieve the Boii.

10. Māgnam haec rēs Caesarī difficultātem ad cōnsilium capiendum adferēbat: sī reliquam partem hiemis ūnō locō legiōnēs continēret, nē stīpendiāriīs Haeduōrum expūgnātīs cūncta Gallia dēficeret, quod nūllum amīcīs in eō praesidium positum vidēret; sī mātūrius ex hībernīs ēdūceret, nē ab rē frūmentāriā dūrīs subvectiōnibus labōrāret. Praestāre vīsum est tamen omnīs difficultātīs perpetī quam, tantā contumēliā acceptā, omnium suōrum voluntātīs aliēnāre. Itaque cohortātus Haeduōs dē supportandō commeātū, praemittit ad Bōiōs quī dē suō adventū doceant, hortenturque ut in fidē maneant atque hostium impetum māgnō animō sustineant. Duābus Agēdincī legiōnibus atque impedīmentīs tōtīus exercitūs relictīs ad Bōiōs proficīscitur.

He occupies Two Towns near the Loire.

11. Alterō diē cum ad oppidum Senonum, Vellaunodūnum, vēnisset, nē quem post sē hostem relinqueret, *et* quō expedītiōre rē frūmentāriā ūterētur, oppūgnāre īnstituit, eōque bīduō circumvāllāvit; tertiō diē missīs ex oppidō lēgātīs dē dēditiōne, arma cōnferrī, iūmenta prōdūcī, sexcentōs obsidēs darī iubet. Ea quī cōnficeret C. Trebōnium lēgātum relinquit; ipse ut quam prīmum iter cōnficeret, Cēnabum Carnutum proficīscitur; quī tum prīmum adlātō nūntiō dē oppūgnātiōne Vellaunodūnī, cum longius eam rem ductum īrī exīstimārent, praesidium Cēnabī tuendī causā, quod eō mitterent, comparābant.

Hūc bīduō pervenit. Castrīs ante oppidum positīs, diēī tempore exclūsus in posterum oppūgnātiōnem differt, quaeque ad eam rem ūsuī sint mīlitibus imperat; et, quod oppidum Cēnabum pōns flūminis Ligeris contingēbat, veritus nē noctū ex oppidō profugerent, duās legiōnēs in armīs excubāre iubet. Cēnabēnsēs, paulō ante mediam noctem silentiō ex oppidō ēgressī flūmen trānsīre coepērunt. Quā rē per explōrātōrēs nūntiātā Caesar legiōnēs, quās expedītās esse iusserat, portīs incēnsīs, intrōmittit atque oppidō potītur, perpaucīs ex hostium numerō dēsīderātīs quīn cūnctī caperentur, quod pontis atque itinerum angustiae multitūdinī fugam interclūserant. Oppidum dīripit atque incendit, praedam mīlitibus dōnat; exercitum Ligerim trādūcit atque in Biturīgum fīnīs pervenit.

Noviodunum surrenders, but on the Approach of Vercingetorix prepares for Defense.

12. Vercingetorīx ubi dē Caesaris adventū cōgnōvit, oppūgnātiōne dēsistit atque obviam Caesarī proficīscitur. Ille oppidum Biturīgum positum in viā Noviodūnum oppūgnāre īnstituerat. Quō ex oppidō cum lēgātī ad eum vēnissent ōrātum ut sibi īgnōsceret suaeque vītae cōnsuleret, ut celeritāte reliquās rēs cōnficeret quā plēraque erat cōnsecūtus, arma cōnferrī, equōs prōdūcī, obsidēs darī iubet. Parte iam obsidum trāditā, cum reliqua administrārentur, centuriōnibus et paucīs mīlitibus intrōmissīs quī arma iūmentaque conquīrerent, equitātus hostium procul vīsus est, quī agmen Vercingetorīgis antecesserat. Quem simul atque oppidānī cōnspēxērunt atque in spem auxilī vēnērunt, clāmōre sublātō arma capere, portās clau-

dere, mūrum complēre coepērunt. Centuriōnēs in oppidō, cum ex sīgnificātiōne Gallōrum novī aliquid ab hīs inīrī cōnsilī intellēxissent, gladiīs dēstrictīs portās occupāvērunt suōsque omnīs incolumīs recēpērunt.

Cæsar captures Noviodunum and moves upon Avaricum.

13. Caesar ex castrīs equitātum ēdūcī iubet, proeliumque equestre committit; labōrantibus iam suīs Germānōs equitēs circiter CCCC submittit, quōs ab initiō sēcum habēre īnstituerat. Eōrum impetum Gallī sustinēre nōn potuērunt, atque in fugam coniectī multīs āmissīs sē ad agmen recēpērunt; quibus prōflīgātīs rūrsus oppidānī perterritī comprehēnsōs eōs quōrum operā plēbem concitātam exīstimābant ad Caesarem perdūxērunt sēsēque eī dēdidērunt. Quibus rēbus cōnfectīs Caesar ad oppidum Avaricum, quod erat māximum mūnītissimumque in fīnibus Biturīgum atque agrī fertilissimā regiōne, profectus est; quod eō oppidō receptō cīvitātem Biturīgum sē in potestātem redāctūrum cōnfīdēbat.

Vercingetorix's Advice to the Gauls to keep the Romans from Supplies.

14. Vercingetorīx tot continuīs incommodīs Vellaunodūnī, Cēnabī, Noviodūnī acceptīs suōs ad concilium convocat. Docet 'longē aliā ratiōne esse bellum gerendum atque anteā gestum sit; omnibus modīs huic reī studendum ut pābulātiōne et commeātū Rōmānī prohibeantur: id esse facile, quod equitātū ipsī abundent et quod annī tempore subleventur; pābulum secārī nōn posse; necessāriō dispersōs hostīs

ex aedificiīs petere; hōs omnīs cotīdiē ab equitibus dēlērī posse. Praetereā, salūtis causā reī familiāris commoda neglegenda; vīcōs atque aedificia incendī oportēre hōc spatiō [ā Bōiā] quōque versus, quō pābulandī causā adīre posse videantur. Hārum ipsīs rērum cōpiam suppetere, quod quōrum in fīnibus bellum gerātur eōrum opibus subleventur: Rōmānōs aut inopiam nōn lātūrōs aut māgnō cum perīculō longius ā castrīs prōcessūrōs; neque interesse ipsōsne interficiant *an* impedīmentīs exuant, quibus āmissīs bellum gerī nōn possit. Praetereā, oppida incendī oportēre quae nōn mūnītiōne et locī nātūrā ab omnī sint perīculō tūta; nē suīs sint ad dētrectandam mīlitiam receptācula, neu Rōmānīs prōposita ad cōpiam commeātūs praedamque tollendam. Haec sī gravia aut acerba videantur, multō illa gravius aestimārī dēbēre, līberōs, coniugēs in servitūtem abstrahī, ipsōs interficī; quae sit necesse accidere victīs.'

The Gauls burn Many Cities, but spare Avaricum.

15. Omnium cōnsēnsū hāc sententiā probātā ūnō diē amplius xx urbēs Biturīgum incenduntur. Hōc idem fit in reliquīs cīvitātibus. In omnibus partibus incendia cōnspiciuntur; quae etsī māgnō cum dolōre omnēs ferēbant, tamen hōc sibi sōlācī prōpōnēbant, quod sē prope explōrātā victōriā celeriter āmissa recuperātūrōs cōnfīdēbant. Dēlīberātur dē Avaricō in commūnī conciliō, incendī placeat an dēfendī. Prōcumbunt omnibus Gallīs ad pedēs Biturīges, nē pulcherrimam prope tōtīus Galliae urbem, quae et praesidiō et ōrnāmentō sit cīvitātī, suīs manibus succendere cōgantur; facile sē locī nātūrā dēfēnsūrōs dīcunt,

quod, prope ex omnibus partibus flūmine et palūde circumdata, ūnum habeat et perangustum aditum. Datur petentibus venia, dissuādente prīmō Vercingetorīge, post concēdente, et precibus ipsōrum et misericordiā volgī. Dēfēnsōrēs oppidō idōneī dēliguntur.

Vercingetorix keeps an Eye on Cæsar.

16. Vercingetorīx minōribus Caesarum itineribus subsequitur, et locum castrīs dēligit palūdibus silvīsque mūnītum, ab Avaricō longē mīlia passuum XVI. Ibi per certōs explōrātōrēs in singula diēī tempora quae ad Avaricum gererentur cōgnōscēbat, et quid fierī vellet imperābat. Omnīs nostrās pābulātiōnēs frūmentātiōnēsque observābat, dispersōsque, cum longius necessāriō prōcēderent, adoriēbātur māgnōque incommodō adficiēbat; etsī, quantum ratiōne prōviderī poterat, ab nostrīs occurrēbātur, ut incertīs temporibus dīversīsque itineribus īrētur.

Fortitude of the Roman Soldiers amid Privations.

17. Castrīs ad eam partem oppidī positīs Caesar quae intermissa [ā] flūmine et palūde aditum, ut suprā dīximus, angustum habēbat, aggerem adparāre, vīneās agere, turrīs duās cōnstituere coepit; nam circumvāllāre locī nātūra prohibēbat. Dē rē frūmentāriā Bōiōs atque Haeduōs adhortārī nōn dēstitit: quōrum alterī, quod nūllō studiō agēbant, nōn multum adiuvābant; alterī nōn māgnīs facultātibus, quod cīvitās erat exigua et īnfīrma, celeriter quod habuērunt cōnsūmpsērunt. Summā difficultāte reī frūmentāriae adfectō exercitū, tenuitāte Bōiōrum, indīligentiā Haeduōrum, incendiīs aedificiōrum, — ūsque eō ut complūrīs diēs

frūmentō mīlitēs caruerint, et pecore ē longinquiōribus vīcīs adāctō extrēmam famem sustentārint, — nūlla tamen vōx est ab eīs audīta populī Rōmānī māiestāte et superiōribus victōriīs indīgna. Quīn etiam Caesar cum in opere singulās legiōnēs appellāret, et sī acerbius inopiam ferrent, sē dīmissūrum oppūgnātiōnem dīceret, ūniversī ab eō nē id faceret petēbant: 'Sīc sē complūrīs annōs illō imperante meruisse ut nūllam īgnōminiam acciperent, numquam īnfectā rē discēderent; hōc sē īgnōminiae lātūrōs locō, sī inceptam oppūgnātiōnem relīquissent: praestāre omnīs perferre acerbitātīs quam nōn cīvibus Rōmānīs quī Cēnabī perfidiā Gallōrum interīssent parentārent.' Haec eadem centuriōnibus tribūnīsque mīlitum mandābant, ut per eōs ad Caesarem dēferrentur.

Cæsar comes up with Vercingetorix.

18. Cum iam mūrō turrēs adpropinquāssent, ex captīvīs Caesar cōgnōvit Vercingetorīgem cōnsūmptō pābulō castra mōvisse propius Avaricum, atque ipsum cum equitātū expedītīsque quī inter equitēs proeliārī cōnsuēssent, īnsidiandī causā eō profectum quō nostrōs posterō diē pābulātum ventūrōs arbitrārētur. Quibus rēbus cōgnitīs mediā nocte silentiō profectus ad hostium castra māne pervēnit. Illī, celeriter per explōrātōrēs adventū Caesaris cōgnitō, carrōs impedīmentaque sua in artiōrēs silvās abdidērunt, cōpiās omnīs in locō ēditō atque apertō īnstrūxērunt. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar celeriter sarcinās cōnferrī, arma expedīrī iussit.

He finds him strongly intrenched.

19. Collis erat lēniter ab īnfimō acclīvis. Hunc ex omnibus ferē partibus palūs difficilis atque impedīta

cingēbat, nōn lātior pedibus L. Hōc sē colle interruptīs pontibus Gallī fīdūciā locī continēbant, generātimque distribūtī [in cīvitātīs] omnia vada [āc saltūs] ēius palūdis obtinēbant, sīc animō parātī ut, sī eam palūdem Rōmānī perrumpere cōnārentur, haesitantīs premerent ex locō superiōre; ut, quī propinquitātem locī vidēret, parātōs prope aequō Mārte ad dīmicandum exīstimāret; qui inīquitātem condiciōnis perspiceret, inānī simulātiōne sēsē ostentāre cōgnōsceret. Indīgnantīs mīlitēs Caesar, quod cōnspectum suum hostēs ferre possent tantulō spatiō interiectō, et sīgnum proelī exposcentīs, ēdocet quantō dētrīmentō et quot virōrum fortium morte necesse sit cōnstāre victōriam; quōs cum sīc animō parātōs videat ut nūllum prō suā laude perīculum recūsent, summae sē inīquitātis condemnārī dēbēre, nisi eōrum vītam laude suā habeat cāriōrem. Sīc mīlitēs cōnsōlātus eōdem diē redūcit in castra; reliquaque quae ad oppūgnātiōnem oppidī pertinēbant administrāre instituit.

The Gauls begin to suspect Vercingetorix. His Defense and Appeal to his Countrymen.

20. Vercingetorīx cum ad suōs redīsset, prōditiōnis īnsimulātus, — quod castra propius Rōmānōs mōvisset, quod cum omnī equitātū discessisset, quod sine imperiō tantās cōpiās relīquisset, quod ēius discessū Rōmānī tantā opportūnitāte et celeritāte vēnissent; nōn haec omnia fortuitō aut sine cōnsiliō accidere potuisse; rēgnum illum Galliae mālle Caesaris concessū quam ipsōrum habēre beneficiō, — tālī modō accūsātus ad haec respondit: ‘Quod castra mōvisset, factum inopiā pābulī, etiam ipsīs hortantibus; quod

propius Rōmānōs accessisset, persuāsum locī opportūnitāte, quī sē ipse sine mūnītiōne dēfenderet; equitum vērō operam neque in locō palūstrī dēsīderārī dēbuisse, et illīc fuisse ūtilem quō sint profectī. Summam imperī sē cōnsultō nūllī discēdentem trādidisse, nē is multitūdinis studiō ad dīmicandum impellerētur; cui reī propter animī mollitiem studēre omnīs vidēret, quod diūtius laborem ferre nōn possent. Rōmānī sī cāsū intervēnerint, fortūnae; sī alicūius indiciō vocātī, huic habendam grātiam, quod et paucitātem eōrum ex locō superiōre cōgnōscere et virtūtem dēspicere potuerint, quī dīmicāre nōn ausī turpiter sē in castra recēperint. Imperium sē ā Caesare per prōditiōnem nūllum dēsīderāre, quod habēre victōriā posset, quae iam esset sibi atque omnibus Gallīs explōrāta: quīn etiam ipsīs remittere, sī sibi magis honōrem tribuere quam ab sē salūtem accipere videantur.' "Haec ut intellegātis," inquit, "ā mē sincērē prōnūntiārī, audīte Rōmānōs mīlitēs." Prōdūcit servōs, quōs in pābulātiōne paucīs ante diēbus excēperat, et famē vinculīsque excruciāverat. Hī, iam ante ēdoctī quae interrogātī prōnūntiārent, mīlitēs sē esse legiōnāriōs dīcunt; famē et inopiā adductōs clam ex castrīs exīsse, sī quid frūmentī aut pecoris in agrīs reperīre possent; similī omnem exercitum inopiā premī, nec iam vīrīs sufficere cūiusquam nec ferre operis labōrem posse: itaque statuisse imperātōrem, sī nihil in oppūgnātiōne oppidī prōfēcissent, trīduō exercitum dēdūcere. "Haec," inquit, "ā mē," [Vercingetorīx] "beneficia habētis, quem prōditiōnis īnsimulātis; cūius operā sine vestrō sanguine tantum exercitum victōrem famē cōnsūmptum vidētis; quem turpiter sē

ex hāc fugā recipientem nē qua cīvitās suīs fīnibus recipiat, ā mē prōvīsum est."

His Complete Acquittal.

21. Conclāmat omnis multitūdō et suō mōre armīs concrepat, — quod facere in eō cōnsuērunt cūius ōrātiōnem adprobant: 'Summum esse Vercingetorīgem ducem, nec dē ēius fidē dubitandum, nec māiōre ratiōne bellum administrārī posse.' Statuunt ut x mīlia hominum dēlēcta ex omnibus cōpiīs in oppidum submittantur, nec sōlīs Biturīgibus commūnem salūtem committendam cēnsent; quod paene in eō, sī id oppidum retinuissent, summam victōriae cōnstāre intellegēbant.

Skilful Defense of the Gauls against the Roman Works.

22. Singulārī mīlitum nostrōrum virtūtī cōnsilia cūiusque modī Gallōrum occurrēbant, ut est summae genus sollertiae atque ad omnia imitanda et efficienda quae ā quōque trāduntur aptissimum. Nam et laqueīs falcīs āvertēbant; quās, cum dēstināverant, tormentīs intrōrsus redūcēbant; et aggerem cunīculīs subtrahēbant, eō scientius quod apud eōs māgnae sunt ferrāriae, atque omne genus cunīculōrum nōtum atque ūsitātum est. Tōtum autem mūrum ex omnī parte turribus contabulāverant atque hās coriīs intēxerant. Tum crēbrīs diurnīs nocturnīsque ēruptiōnibus aut aggerī īgnem īnferēbant aut mīlitēs occupātōs in opere adoriēbantur; et nostrārum turrium altitūdinem, quantum hās cotīdiānus agger expresserat, commissīs suārum turrium mālīs adaequābant; et apertōs cunīculōs praeūstā et praeacūtā māteriā et pice fervefactā et

māximī ponderis saxīs morābantur moenibusque adpropinquāre prohibēbant.

A Gallic Wall and its Construction.

23. Mūrī autem omnēs Gallicī hāc ferē formā sunt. Trabēs dīrēctae, perpetuae in longitūdinem paribus intervāllīs, distantēs inter sē bīnōs pedēs, in solō conlocantur. Hae revinciuntur intrōrsus et multō aggere vestiuntur; ea autem quae dīximus intervālla grandibus in fronte saxīs effarciuntur. Hīs conlocātīs et coagmentātīs alias īnsuper ōrdō additur, ut idem illud intervāllum servētur neque inter sē contingant trabēs, sed, paribus intermissīs spatiīs, singulae singulīs saxīs interiectīs artē contineantur. Sīc deinceps omne opus contexitur dum iūsta mūrī altitūdō expleātur. Hōc cum in speciem varietātemque opus dēforme nōn est, alternīs trabibus āc saxīs, quae rēctīs līneīs suōs ōrdinēs servant, tum ad ūtilitātem et dēfēnsiōnem urbium summam habet opportūnitātem; quod et ab incendiō lapis et ab ariete māteria dēfendit, quae perpetuīs trabibus pedum quadrāgēnum plērumque intrōrsus revincta neque perrumpī neque distrahī potest.

A Sortie by the Gauls.

24. Hīs tot rēbus impeditā oppūgnātiōne mīlitēs, cum tōtō tempore frīgore et adsiduīs imbribus tardārentur, tamen continentī labōre omnia haec superāvērunt, et diēbus XXV aggerem lātum pedēs CCCXXX, altum pedēs LXXX exstrūxērunt. Cum is mūrum hostium paene contingeret, et Caesar ad opus cōnsuētūdine excubāret mīlitēsque hortārētur nē quod omnīnō tempus ab opere intermitterētur, — paulō ante tertiam

vigiliam est animadversum fūmāre aggerem, quem cunīculō hostēs succenderant; eōdemque tempore, tōtō mūrō clāmōre sublātō, duābus portīs ab utrōque latere turrium ēruptiō fīēbat. Aliī facīs atque āridam māteriam dē mūrō in aggerem ēminus iaciēbant; picem reliquāsque rēs quibus īgnis excitārī potest fundēbant; ut, quō prīmum occurrerētur aut cui reī ferrētur auxilium, vix ratiō inīrī posset. Tamen, quod īnstitūtō Caesaris duae semper legiōnēs prō castrīs excubābant, plūrēsque partītīs temporibus erant in opere, celeriter factum est ut aliī ēruptiōnibus resisterent aliī turrīs redūcerent aggeremque interscinderent, omnis vērō ex castrīs multitūdō ad restinguendum concurreret.

Their Desperate Valor.

25. Cum in omnibus locīs, cōnsūmptā iam reliquā parte noctis, pūgnārētur semperque hostibus spēs victōriae redintegrārētur, — eō magis quod deūstōs pluteōs turrium vidēbant, nec facile adīre apertōs ad auxiliandum animadvertēbant, — semperque ipsī recentēs dēfessīs succēderent, omnemque Galliae salūtem in illō vestīgiō temporis positam arbitrārentur; accidit īnspectantibus nōbīs quod dīgnum memoriā vīsum praetereundum nōn exīstimāvimus. Quīdam ante portam oppidī Gallus per manūs sēbī āc picis trāditās glēbās in īgnem ē regiōne turris prōiciēbat; scorpiōne ab latere dextrō trāiectus exanimātusque concidit. Hunc ex proximīs ūnus iacentem trānsgressus eōdem illō mūnere fungēbātur; eādem ratiōne ictū scorpiōnis exanimātō alterō successit tertius et tertiō quartus; nec prius ille est ā prōpūgnātōribus vacuus relictus locus quam, restīnctō aggere atque

omnī parte submōtīs hostibus, fīnis est pūgnandī factus.

The Women dissuade the Gauls from abandoning Avaricum.

26. Omnia expertī Gallī, quod rēs nūlla successerat, posterō diē cōnsilium cēpērunt ex oppidō profugere hortante et iubente Vercingetorīge. Id silentiō noctis cōnātī nōn māgnā iactūrā suōrum sēsē effectūrōs spērābant; propterea quod neque longē ab oppidō castra Vercingetorīgis aberant, et palūs perpetua, quae intercēdēbat, Rōmānōs ad īnsequendum tardābat. Iamque hōc facere noctū adparābant, cum mātrēs familiae repente in pūblicum prōcurrērunt flentēsque, prōiectae ad pedēs suōrum, omnibus precibus petiērunt nē sē et commūnīs līberōs hostibus ad supplicium dēderent, quōs ad capiendam fugam nātūrae et vīrium īnfīrmitās impedīret. Ubi eōs in sententiā perstāre vīdērunt, quod plērumque in summō perīculō timor misericordiam nōn recipit, conclāmāre et sīgnificāre dē fugā Rōmānīs coepērunt. Quō timōre perterritī Gallī, nē ab equitātū Rōmānōrum viae praeoccupārentur, cōnsiliō dēstitērunt.

The Romans carry the Walls by Storm.

27. Posterō diē Caesar prōmōtā turrī dīrectīsque operibus quae facere īnstituerat, māgnō coörtō imbrī, nōn inūtilem hanc ad capiendum cōnsilium tempestātem arbitrātus, quod paulō incautius custōdiās in mūrō dispositās vidēbat, suōs quoque languidius in opere versārī iussit, et quid fierī vellet ostendit. Legiōnibusque [intrā vīneās] in occultō expedītīs, cohortātus ut aliquandō prō tantīs labōribus frūctum victōriae

perciperent, eīs quī prīmī mūrum adscendissent praemia prōposuit mīlitibusque sīgnum dedit. Illī subitō ex omnibus partibus ēvolāvērunt mūrumque celeriter complēvērunt.

Capture of the Town, and Butchery of the Inhabitants.

28. Hostēs rē novā perterritī, mūrō turribusque dēiectī, in forō āc locīs patentiōribus cuneātim cōnstitērunt, hōc animō ut, sī quā ex parte obviam [contrā] venīrētur, aciē īnstrūctā dēpūgnārent. Ubi nēminem in aequum locum sēsē dēmittere, sed tōtō undique mūrō circumfundī vīdērunt, veritī nē omnīnō spēs fugae tollerētur, abiectīs armīs ultimās oppidī partīs continentī impetū petīvērunt; parsque ibi, cum angustō exitū portārum sē ipsī premerent, ā mīlitibus, pars iam ēgressa portīs ab equitibus est interfecta; nec fuit quisquam quī praedae studēret. Sīc et Cēnabēnsī caede et labōre operis incitātī nōn aetāte cōnfectīs, nōn mulieribus, nōn īnfantibus pepercērunt. Dēnique ex omnī numerō, quī fuit circiter mīlium XL, vix DCCC, quī prīmō clāmōre audītō sē ex oppidō ēiēcerant, incolumēs ad Vercingetorīgem pervēnērunt. Quōs ille multā iam nocte silentiō ex fugā excēpit, *et* veritus nē qua in castrīs ex eōrum concursū et misericordiā volgī sēditiō orerētur, [ut,] procul in viā dispositīs familiāribus suis prīncipibusque cīvitātum, disparandōs dēdūcendōsque ad suōs cūrāvit, quae cuique cīvitātī pars castrōrum ab initiō obvēnerat.

Vercingetorix does not lose Heart.

29. Posterō diē conciliō convocātō cōnsōlātus cohortātusque est: 'Nē sē admodum animō dēmit-

terent, nēve perturbārentur incommodō; nōn virtūte neque in aciē vīcisse Rōmānōs, sed artificiō quōdam et scientiā oppūgnātiōnis, cūius reī fuerint ipsī imperītī; errāre, sī quī in bellō omnīs secundōs rērum prōventūs exspectent; sibi numquam placuisse Avaricum dēfendī, cūius reī tēstīs ipsōs habēret, sed factum imprūdentiā Biturīgum et nimiā obsequentiā reliquōrum utī hōc incommodum acciperētur; id tamen sē celeriter māiōribus commodīs sānātūrum. Nam, quae ab reliquīs Gallīs cīvitātēs dissentīrent, hās suā dīligentiā adiūnctūrum atque ūnum cōnsilium tōtīus Galliae effectūrum, cūius cōnsēnsuī nē orbis quidem terrārum possit obsistere; idque sē prope iam effectum habēre. Intereā aequum esse ab eīs commūnis salūtis causā impetrārī ut castra mūnīre īnstituerent, quō facilius repentīnōs hostium impetūs sustinēre possent.'

He inspires the Gauls to Renewed Efforts.

30. Fuit haec ōrātiō nōn ingrāta Gallīs, et māximē quod ipse animō nōn dēfēcerat tantō acceptō incommodō, neque *sē* in occultum abdiderat et cōnspectum multitūdinis fūgerat; plūsque animō prōvidēre et praesentīre exīstimābātur, quod rē integrā prīmō incendendum Avaricum, post dēserendum cēnsuerat. Itaque, ut reliquōrum imperātōrum rēs adversae auctōritātem minuunt, sīc hūius ex contrāriō dīgnitās incommodō acceptō in diēs augēbātur. Simul in spem veniēbant ēius adfīrmātiōne dē reliquīs adiungendīs cīvitātibus; prīmumque eō tempore Gallī castra mūnīre īnstituērunt, et sīc erant animō cōnfīrmātī, hominēs īnsuētī labōris, ut omnia quae imperārentur sibi patienda exīstimārent.

He secures More Troops.

31. Nec minus quam est pollicitus Vercingetorīx animō labōrābat ut reliquās cīvitātīs adiungeret, atque eārum prīncipēs dōnīs pollicitātiōnibusque adliciēbat. Huic reī idōneōs hominēs dēligēbat, quōrum quisque aut ōrātiōne subdolā aut amīcitiā facillimē capere posset. Quī Avaricō expūgnātō refūgerant, armandōs vestiendōsque cūrat. Simul, ut dēminūtae cōpiae redintegrārentur, imperat certum numerum mīlitum cīvitātibus, quem, et quam ante diem, in castra addūcī velit; sagittāriōsque omnīs, quōrum erat permāgnus in Galliā numerus, conquīrī et ad sē mittī iubet. Hīs rēbus celeriter id quod Avaricī dēperierat explētur. Interim Teutomatus, Ollovicōnis fīlius, rēx Nitiobrigum, cūius pater ab senātū nostrō amīcus erat appellātus cum māgnō numerō equitum suōrum et quōs ex Aquītāniā condūxerat ad eum pervēnit.

A Dispute among the Hædui. They appeal to Cæsar to settle it.

32. Caesar Avaricī complūrīs diēs commorātus summamque ibi cōpiam frūmentī et reliquī commeātūs nactus, exercitum ex labōre atque inopiā reficit. Iam prope hieme cōnfectā, — cum ipsō annī tempore ad gerendum bellum vocārētur et ad hostem proficīscī cōnstituisset, sīve eum ex palūdibus silvīsque ēlicere sīve obsidiōne premere posset, — lēgātī ad eum prīncipēs Haeduōrum veniunt ōrātum ut māximē necessāriō tempore cīvitātī subveniat: 'Summō esse in perīculō rem; quod, cum singulī magistrātūs antīquitus creārī atque rēgiam potestātem annum obtinēre cōnsu-

cōnstāre vidērētur. Hīs quam longissimē possent prōgredī iūssīs, cum iam ex diēī tempore coniectūram caperet in castra perventum, īsdem sublicīs, quārum pars īnferior integra remanēbat, pontem reficere coepit. Celeriter effectō opere legiōnibusque trāductīs et locō castrīs idōneō dēlēctō, reliquās cōpiās revocāvit. Vercingetorīx rē cōgnitā, nē contrā suam voluntātem dimicāre cōgerētur, māgnīs itineribus antecessit.

Cæsar secures a Good Position at Gergovia.

36. Caesar ex eō locō quīntīs castrīs Gergoviam pervēnit, equestrīque eō diē proeliō levī factō, perspectō urbis sitū, quae posita in altissimō monte omnīs aditūs difficilīs habēbat, dē oppūgnātiōne dēspērāvit; dē obsessiōne nōn prius agendum cōnstituit quam rem frūmentāriam expedīsset. At Vercingetorīx castrīs prope oppidum in monte positīs, mediocribus circum sē intervāllīs sēparātim singulārum cīvitātum cōpiās conlocāverat; atque omnibus ēius iugī collibus occupātīs quā dēspicī poterat, horribilem speciem praebēbat; prīncipēsque eārum cīvitātum, quōs sibi ad cōnsilium capiendum dēlēgerat, prīmā lūce cotīdiē ad sē convenīre iubēbat, seu quid commūnicandum seu quid administrandum vidērētur; neque ūllum ferē diem intermittēbat quīn equestrī proeliō, interiectīs sagittāriīs, quid in quōque esset animī āc virtūtis suōrum perīclitārētur. Erat ē regiōne oppidī collis sub ipsīs rādīcibus montis ēgregiē mūnītus atque ex omnī parte circumcīsus, quem sī tenērent nostrī et aquae māgnā parte et pābulātiōne līberā prohibitūrī hostīs vidēbantur; sed is locus praesidiō ab hīs nōn īnfirmō tenēbātur; tamen silentiō noctis Caesar ex castrīs



MINERVA
(The goddess of war, wisdom, and the liberal arts)

ēgressus, priusquam subsidiō ex oppidō venīrī posset, dēiectō praesidiō potītus locō, duās ibi legiōnēs conlocāvit fossamque duplicem duodēnum pedum ā māiōribus castrīs ad minōra perdūxit, ut tūtō ab repentīnō hostium incursū etiam singulī commeāre possent.

The Hædui plan a Revolt.

37. Dum haec ad Gergoviam geruntur, Convictolitavis Haeduus, cui magistrātum adiūdicātum ā Caesare dēmōnstrāvimus, sollicitātus ab Arvernīs pecūniā cum quibusdam adulēscentibus conloquitur, quōrum erat prīnceps Litavīcus atque ēius frātrēs, amplissimā familiā nātī adulēscentēs. Cum hīs praemium commūnicat hortāturque ut sē līberōs et imperiō nātōs meminerint: 'Ūnam esse Haeduōrum cīvitātem quae certissimam Galliae victōriam distineat; ēius auctōritāte reliquās continērī; quā trāductā locum consistendī Rōmānīs in Galliā nōn fore. Esse nōn nūllō sē Caesaris beneficiō adfectum, sīc tamen ut iūstissimam apud eum causam obtinuerit; sed plūs commūnī lībertātī tribuere. Cūr enim potius Haeduī dē suō iūre et dē lēgibus ad Caesarem disceptātōrem, quam Rōmānī ad Haeduōs veniant?' Celeriter adulēscentibus et ōrātiōne magistrātūs et praemiō dēductīs, cum sē vel prīncipēs ēius cōnsilī fore profitērentur, ratiō perficiendī quaerēbātur, quod cīvitātem temerē ad suscipiendum bellum addūcī posse nōn cōnfīdēbant. Placuit ut Litavīcus decem illīs mīlibus quae Caesarī ad bellum mitterentur praeficerētur, atque ea dūcenda cūrāret frātrēsque ēius ad Caesarem praecurrerent. Reliqua quā ratiōne agī placeat cōnstituunt.

Litavicus incites his Troops to desert the Roman Cause.

38. Litavīcus acceptō exercitū, cum mīlia passuum circiter xxx ā Gergoviā abesset, convocātīs subitō mīlitibus lacrimāns, "Quō proficīscimur," inquit, "mīlitēs? Omnis noster equitātus, omnis nōbilitās interiit; prīncipēs cīvitātis, Eporēdorīx et Viridomārus, īnsimulātī prōditiōnis, ab Rōmānīs indictā causā interfectī sunt. Haec ab hīs cōgnōscite quī ex ipsā caede effūgērunt; nam ego, frātribus atque omnibus meīs propinquīs interfectīs, dolōre prohibeor quae gesta sunt prōnūntiāre." Prōdūcuntur eī quōs ille ēdocuerat quae dīcī vellet, atque eadem quae Litavīcus prōnūntiāverat multitūdinī expōnunt: 'Omnēs equitēs Haeduōrum interfectōs, quod conlocūtī cum Arvernīs dīcerentur; ipsōs sē inter multitūdinem mīlitum occultāsse atque ex mediā caede effūgisse.' Conclāmant Haeduī et Litavīcum obsecrant ut sibi cōnsulat. "Quasi vērō," inquit ille, "cōnsilī sit rēs, āc nōn necesse sit nōbīs Gergoviam contendere et cum Arvernīs nōsmet coniungere! An dubitāmus quīn nefāriō facinore admissō Rōmānī iam ad nōs interficiendōs concurrant? Proinde, sī quid in nōbīs animī est, persequāmur eōrum mortem quī indīgnissimē interiērunt, atque hōs latrōnēs interficiāmus!" Ostendit cīvīs Rōmānōs quī ēius praesidī fīdūciā ūnā erant; continuō māgnum numerum frūmentī commeātūsque dīripit; ipsōs crūdēliter excruciātōs interficit. Nūntiōs tōtā cīvitāte Haeduōrum dīmittit; eōdem mendāciō dē caede equitum et prīncipum permovet; hortātur ut similī ratiōne atque ipse fēcerit suās iniūriās persequantur.

Eporedorix informs Cæsar of this.

39. Eporēdorīx Haeduus, summō locō nātus adulēscēns et summae domī potentiae, et ūnā Viridomārus, parī aetāte et grātiā sed genere disparī, quem Caesar ab Dīviciācō sibi trāditum ex humilī locō ad summam dīgnitātem perdūxerat, in equitum numerō convēnerant nōminātim ab eō ēvocātī. Hīs erat inter sē dē prīncipātū contentiō; et in illā magistrātuum contrōversiā alter prō Convictolitave alter prō Cotō, summīs opibus pūgnāverant. Ex eīs Eporēdorīx cōgnitō Litavīcī cōnsiliō mediā ferē nocte rem ad Caesarem dēfert; ōrat nē patiātur cīvitātem prāvīs adulēscentium cōnsiliīs ab amīcitiā populī Rōmānī dēficere; quod futūrum prōvideat, sī sē tot hominum mīlia cum hostibus coniūnxerint, quōrum salūtem neque propinquī neglegere neque cīvitās levī mōmentō aestimāre possit.

Cæsar promptly puts down the Revolt.

40. Māgnā adfectus sollicitūdine hōc nūntiō Caesar, quod semper Haeduōrum cīvitātī praecipuē indulserat, nūllā interpositā dubitātiōne legiōnēs expedītās quattuor equitātumque omnem ex castrīs ēdūcit; nec fuit spatium tālī tempore ad contrahenda castra, quod rēs posita in celeritāte vidēbātur. C. Fabium lēgātum cum legiōnibus duābus castrīs praesidiō relinquit. Frātrēs Litavīcī cum comprehendī iussisset, paulō ante reperit ad hostīs profūgisse. Adhortātus mīlitēs nē necessāriō tempore itineris labōre permoveantur, cupidissimīs omnibus prōgressus mīlia passuum XXV, agmen Haeduōrum cōnspicātur, immissō equitātū iter eōrum morātur atque impedit; interdīcitque omnibus nē quemquam interficiant. Eporēdorīgem et Viri-

domārum, quōs illī interfectōs exīstimābant, inter equitēs versārī suōsque appellāre iubet. Hīs cōgnitīs et Litavīcī fraude perspectā, Haeduī manūs tendere, et dēditiōnem sīgnificāre, et prōiectīs armīs mortem dēprecārī incipiunt. Litavīcus cum suīs clientibus, quibus mōre Gallōrum nefās est etiam in extrēmā fortūnā dēserere patrōnōs, Gergoviam profugit.

And returns to Gergovia to relieve Fabius.

41. Caesar nūntiīs ad cīvitātem Haeduōrum missīs quī suō beneficiō cōnservātōs docērent, quōs iūre bellī interficere potuisset, tribusque hōrīs [noctis] exercituī ad quiētem datīs castra ad Gergoviam movet. Mediō ferē itinere equitēs ā Fabiō missī quantō rēs in perīculō fuerit expōnunt; summīs cōpiīs castra oppūgnāta dēmōnstrant, cum crēbrō integrī dēfessīs succēderent nostrōsque adsiduō labōre dēfatīgārent, quibus propter māgnitūdinem castrōrum perpetuō esset īsdem in vāllō permanendum; multitūdine sagittārum atque omnī genere tēlōrum multōs volnerātōs; ad haec sustinenda māgnō ūsuī fuisse tormenta; Fabium discessū eōrum, duābus relictīs portīs, obstruere cēterās pluteōsque vāllō addere et sē in posterum diem similemque cāsum adparāre. Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs Caesar summō studiō mīlitum ante ortum sōlis in castra pervēnit.

The Gauls continue their Plots.

42. Dum haec ad Gergoviam geruntur, Haeduī prīmīs nūntiīs ab Litavīcō acceptīs nūllum sibi ad cōgnōscendum spatium relinquunt. Impellit aliōs avāritia, aliōs īrācundia et temeritās, quae māximē illī hominum generī est innāta, ut levem audītiōnem

habeant prō rē compertā. Bona cīvium Rōmānōrum dīripiunt, caedīs faciunt, in servitūtem abstrahunt. Adiuvat rem prōclīnātam Convictolitavis plēbemque ad furōrem impellit, ut facinore admissō ad sānitātem revertī pudeat. M. Aristium, tribūnum mīlitum, iter ad legiōnēs facientem, fidē datā ex oppidō Cabillōnō ēdūcunt; idem facere cōgunt eōs quī negōtiandī causā ibi cōnstiterant. Hōs continuō *in* itinere adortī omnibus impedīmentīs exuunt; repūgnantīs diem noctemque obsident; multīs utrimque interfectīs māiōrem multitūdinem ad arma concitant.

The Haedui seek to be reconciled to Cæsar, but are Insincere.

43. Interim nūntiō adlātō omnīs eōrum mīlitēs in potestāte Caesaris tenērī, concurrunt ad Aristium; nihil pūblicō factum cōnsiliō dēmōnstrant; quaestiōnem dē bonīs dīreptīs dēcernunt; Litavīcī frātrumque bona pūblicant; lēgātōs ad Caesarem pūrgandī suī grātiā mittunt. Haec faciunt recuperandōrum suōrum causā; sed contāminātī facinore et captī compendiō ex dīreptīs bonīs, quod ea rēs ad multōs pertinēbat, et timōre poenae exterritī cōnsilia clam dē bellō inīre incipiunt cīvitātīsque reliquās lēgātiōnibus sollicitant. Quae tametsī Caesar intellegēbat, tamen quam mītissimē potest lēgātōs appellat: ‘Nihil sē propter īnscientiam levitātemque volgī gravius dē cīvitāte iūdicāre, neque dē suā in Haeduōs benevolentiā dēminuere.’ Ipse māiōrem Galliae mōtum exspectāns, nē ab omnibus cīvitātibus circumsisterētur, cōnsilia inībat quem ad modum ā Gergoviā discēderet āc rūrsus omnem exercitum contraheret, nē profectiō nāta ab timōre dēfectiōnis similisque fugae vidērētur.

Cæsar applies himself to the Capture of Gergovia.

44. Haec cōgitantī accidere vīsa est facultās bene gerendae reī. Nam cum in minōra castra operis perspiciendī causā vēnisset, animadvertit collem quī ab hostibus tenēbātur nūdātum hominibus, quī superiōribus diēbus vix prae multitūdine cernī poterat. Admīrātus quaerit ex perfugīs causam, quōrum māgnus ad eum cotīdiē numerus cōnfluēbat. Cōnstābat inter omnīs, quod iam ipse Caesar per explōrātōrēs cōgnōverat, dorsum esse ēius iugī prope aequum, sed silvestre et angustum, quā esset aditus ad alteram partem oppidī; vehementer huic illōs locō timēre, nec iam aliter sentīre, ūnō colle ab Rōmānīs occupātō, sī alterum āmīsissent, quīn paene circumvāllātī atque omnī exitū et pābulātiōne interclūsī vidērentur; ad hunc mūniendum omnīs ā Vercingetorīge ēvocātōs.

Clever Disposition of the Roman Troops.

45. Hāc rē cōgnitā Caesar mittit complūrīs equitum turmās eō dē mediā nocte; imperat ut paulō tumultuōsius omnibus locīs pervagentur. Prīmā lūce māgnum numerum impedīmentōrum ex castrīs mūlōrumque prōdūcī dēque hīs strāmenta dētrahī mūliōnesque cassidibus, equitum speciē āc simulātiōne, collibus circumvehī iubet. Hīs paucōs addit equitēs quī lātius ostentātiōnis causā vagentur. Longō circuitū eāsdem omnīs iubet petere regiōnēs. Haec procul ex oppidō vidēbantur, ut erat ā Gergoviā dēspectus in castra; neque tantō spatiō, certi quid esset, explōrārī poterat. Legiōnem x eōdem lūce mittit et paulum prōgressam īnferiōre cōnstituit locō silvīsque

occultat. Augētur Gallīs suspīciō atque omnēs illō ad munītiōnem cōpiae trādūcuntur. Vacua castra hostium Caesar cōnspicātus, tectīs īnsīgnibus suōrum occultātīsque sīgnīs mīlitāribus, rārōs mīlitēs (nē ex oppidō animadverterentur) ex māiōribus castrīs in minōra trādūcit, lēgātīsque quōs singulīs legiōnibus praefēcerat quid fierī velit ostendit: in prīmīs monet ut contineant mīlitēs nē studiō pūgnandī aut spē praedae longius prōgrediantur; quid inīquitās locī habeat incommodī prōpōnit; hōc ūnā celeritāte posse vītārī; occāsiōnis esse rem, nōn proelī. Hīs rēbus expositīs sīgnum dat et ab dextrā parte aliō ascēnsū eōdem tempore Haeduōs mittit.

Capture of the Enemy's Camp.

46. Mūrus oppidī ā plānitiē atque initiō ascēnsūs rēctā regiōne, sī nūllus ānfrāctus intercēderet MCC, passūs aberat; quicquid hūc circuitūs ad molliendum clīvum accesserat, id spatium itineris augēbat. Ā mediō ferē colle in longitūdinem, ut nātūra montis ferēbat, ex grandibus saxīs VI pedum mūrum quī nostrōrum impetum tardāret praedūxerant Gallī atque, īnferiōre omnī spatiō vacuō relictō, superiōrem partem collis ūsque ad mūrum oppidī dēnsissimīs castrīs complēverant. Mīlitēs datō sīgnō celeriter ad mūnītiōnem perveniunt eamque trānsgressī trīnīs castrīs potiuntur. Āc tanta fuit in castrīs capiendīs celeritās ut Teutomatus, rēx Nitiobrigum, subitō in tabernāculō oppressus, ut merīdiē conquiēverat, superiōre parte corporis nūdā, volnerātō equō vix sē ex manibus praedantium mīlitum ēriperet.

Eagerness of the Roman Soldiers.

47. Cōnsecūtus id quod animō prōposuerat Caesar receptuī canī iussit, legiōnisque x, quācum erat, contiōnātus, sīgna cōnstituit. At reliquārum legiōnum mīlitēs nōn audītō sonō tubae, quod satis māgna vallēs intercēdēbat tamen ā tribūnīs mīlitum lēgātīsque, ut erat ā Caesare praeceptum, retinēbantur. Sed ēlātī spē celeris victōriae et hostium fugā et superiōrum temporum secundīs proeliīs, nihil adeō arduum sibi exīstimābant quod nōn virtūte cōnsequī possent; neque finem prius sequendī fēcērunt quam mūrō oppidī portīsque adpropinquārunt. Tum vērō ex omnibus urbis partibus ortō clāmōre, quī longius aberant repentinō tumultū perterritī, cum hostem intrā portās esse exīstimārent, sē ex oppidō ēiēcērunt. Mātrēs familiae dē mūrō vestem argentumque iactābant; et pectore nūdō prōminentēs, passīs manibus obtestābantur Rōmānōs ut sibi parcerent; neu, sīcut Avaricī fēcissent, nē ā mulieribus quidem atque īnfantibus abstinērent. Nōn nūllae dē mūrō per manūs dēmissae sēsē mīlitibus trādēbant. L. Fabius, centuriō legiōnis VIII, quem inter suōs eō diē dīxisse cōnstābat excitārī sē Avaricēnsibus praemiīs, neque commissūrum ut prius quisquam mūrum ascenderet, trīs suōs nactus manipulārīs atque ab eīs sublevātus mūrum ascendit. Hōs ipse rūrsus singulōs exceptāns in mūrum extulit.

Reinforcements come up to the Aid of the Gauls.

48. Interim eī quī ad alteram partem oppidī, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, mūnītiōnis causā convēnerant, prīmō exaudītō clāmōre, inde etiam crēbrīs nūntiīs incitātī oppidum ab Rōmānīs tenērī, praemissīs equiti-

bus māgnō cursū eō contendērunt. Eōrum ut quisque prīmus vēnerat, sub mūrō cōnsistēbat suōrumque pūgnantium numerum augēbat. Quōrum cum māgna multitūdō convēnisset, mātrēs familiae, quae paulō ante Rōmānīs dē mūrō manūs tendēbant, suōs obtestārī et mōre Gallicō passum capillum ostentāre līberōsque in cōnspectum prōferre coepērunt. Erat Rōmānīs nec locō nec numerō aequa contentiō; simul et cursū et spatiō pūgnae dēfatīgātī nōn facile recentīs atque integrōs sustinēbant.

A Close Fight.

49. Caesar cum inīquō locō pūgnārī hostiumque cōpiās augērī vidēret, praemetuēns suīs ad T. Sextium lēgātum, quem minōribus castrīs praesidiō relīquerat, mīsit ut cohortīs ex castrīs celeriter ēdūceret et sub īnfimō colle ab dextrō latere hostium cōnstitueret; ut, sī nostrōs locō dēpulsōs vīdisset, quō minus līberē hostēs īnsequerentur terrēret. Ipse, paulum ex eō locō cum legiōne prōgressus ubi cōnstiterat, ēventum pūgnae exspectābat.

Gallantry of a Centurion.

50. Cum ācerrimē comminus pūgnārētur, hostēs locō et numerō, nostrī virtūte cōnfīderent, subitō sunt Haeduī vīsī ab latere nostrīs apertō, quōs Caesar ab dextrā parte aliō ascēnsū manūs distinendae causā mīserat. Hī similitūdine armōrum vehementer nostrōs perterruērunt; āc, tametsī dextrīs umerīs exsertīs animadvertēbantur, quod īnsīgne pāctum esse cōnsuērat, tamen id ipsum suī fallendī causā mīlitēs ab hostibus factum exīstimābant. Eōdem tempore L. Fabius centuriō quīque ūnā mūrum ascenderant circumventī atque

interfectī dē mūrō praecipitābantur. M. Petrōnius, ēiusdem legiōnis centuriō, cum portās excīdere cōnātus esset, ā multitūdine oppressus āc sibi dēspērāns, multīs iam volneribus acceptīs, manipulāribus suīs quī illum secūtī erant, "Quoniam," inquit, "mē ūnā vōbīscum servāre nōn possum, vestrae quidem certē vītae prōspiciam, quōs cupiditāte glōriae adductus in perīculum dēdūxī. Vōs datā facultāte vōbīs cōnsulite." Simul in mediōs hostīs inrūpit duōbusque interfectīs reliquōs ā portā paulum submōvit. Cōnantibus auxiliārī suīs, "Frūstrā," inquit, "meae vītae subvenīre cōnāminī, quem iam sanguis vīrēsque dēficiunt. Proinde abīte dum est facultās vōsque ad legiōnem recipite." Ita pūgnāns post paulum concidit āc suīs salūtī fuit.

Repulse of the Romans.

51. Nostrī cum undique premerentur, XLVI centuriōnibus āmissīs dēiectī sunt locō; sed intolerantius Gallōs īnsequentīs legiō X tardāvit, quae prō subsidiō paulō aequiōre locō cōnstiterat. Hanc rūrsus XIII legiōnis cohortēs excēpērunt, quae ex castrīs minōribus ēductae cum T. Sextiō lēgātō cēperant locum superiōrem. Legiōnēs ubi prīmum plānitiem attigērunt, īnfēstīs contrā hostem sīgnīs cōnstitērunt. Vercingetorīx ab rādīcibus collis suōs intrā mūnītiōnēs redūxit. Eō diē mīlitēs sunt paulō minus DCC dēsīderātī.

Cæsar by Turns chides and praises his Men.

52. Posterō diē Caesar contiōne advocātā temeritātem cupiditātemque mīlitum reprehendit, quod sibi ipsī iūdicāvissent quō prōcēdendum aut quid agendum

vidērētur, neque sīgnō recipiendī datō cōnstitissent neque ā tribūnīs mīlitum lēgātīsque retinērī potuissent. Exposuit quid inīquitās locī posset, quod ipse ad Avaricum sēnsisset, cum sine duce et sine equitātū dēprehēnsīs hostibus explōrātam victōriam dīmīsisset, nē parvum modo dētrīmentum in contentiōne propter inīquitātem locī accideret. Quantō opere eōrum animī māgnitūdinem admīrārētur, quōs nōn castrōrum mūnītiōnēs, nōn altitūdō montis, nōn mūrus oppidī tardāre potuisset, tantō opere licentiam adrogantiamque reprehendere, quod plūs sē quam imperātōrem dē victōriā atque exitū rērum sentīre exīstimārent; nec minus sē ā mīlite modestiam et continentiam quam virtūtem atque animī māgnitūdinem dēsīderāre.

Cæsar moves towards the Hædui.

53. Hāc habitā contiōne et ad extrēmam ōrātiōnem cōnfīrmātīs mīlitibus, nē ob hanc causam animō permovērentur, neu, quod inīquitās locī attulisset, id virtūtī hostium tribuerent; eadem dē profectiōne cōgitāns quae ante sēnserat, legiōnēs ex castrīs ēdūxit aciemque idōneō locō cōnstituit. Cum Vercingetorīx nihilō magis in aequum locum dēscenderet, levī factō equestrī proeliō atque eō secundō, in castra exercitum redūxit. Cum hōc idem posterō diē fēcisset, satis ad Gallicam ostentātiōnem minuendam mīlitumque animōs cōnfīrmandōs factum exīstimāns, in Haeduōs mōvit castra. Nē tum quidem īnsecūtīs hostibus, tertiō diē ad flūmen Elaver *vēnit;* pontīs refēcit atque exercitum trādūxit.

His Suspicions that the Hædui mean to revolt are confirmed.

54. Ibi ā Viridomārō atque Eporēdorīge Haeduīs appellātus, discit cum omnī equitātū Litavīcum ad sollicitandōs Haeduōs profectum; opus esse ipsōs antecēdere ad cōnfīrmandam cīvitātem. Etsī multīs iam rēbus perfidiam Haeduōrum perspectam habēbat, atque hōrum discessū mātūrārī dēfectiōnem cīvitātis exīstimābat; tamen eōs retinendōs nōn cēnsuit, nē aut īnferre iniūriam vidērētur aut daret timōris aliquam suspīciōnem. Discēdentibus eīs breviter sua in Haeduōs merita exposuit; quōs et quam humilīs accēpisset, compulsōs in oppida, multātōs agrīs, omnibus ēreptīs cōpiīs impositō stīpendiō, obsidibus summā cum contumēliā extortīs; et quam in fortūnam quamque in amplitūdinem dūxisset, ut nōn sōlum in prīstinum statum redīssent, sed omnium temporum dīgnitātem et grātiam antecessisse vidērentur. Hīs datīs mandātīs eōs ab sē dīmīsit.

The Gauls kill the Roman Garrison at Noviodunum, destroy Cæsar's Stores, and set Fire to the Town.

55. Noviodūnum erat oppidum Haeduōrum ad rīpās Ligeris opportūnō locō positum. Hūc Caesar omnīs obsidēs Galliae, frūmentum, pecūniam pūblicam, suōrum atque exercitūs impedīmentōrum māgnam partem contulerat; hūc māgnum numerum equōrum, hūius bellī causā in Ītaliā atque Hispāniā coēmptum, mīserat. Eō cum Eporēdorīx Viridomārusque vēnissent et dē statū cīvitātis cōgnōvissent, Litavīcum Bibracte ab Haeduīs receptum, quod est oppidum apud eōs māximae auctōritātis, Convictolitavim magistrātum māgnamque partem senātūs ad eum convē-

nisse, lēgātōs ad Vercingetorīgem dē pāce et amīcitiā conciliandā pūblicē missōs; nōn praetermittendum tantum commodum exīstimāvērunt. Itaque interfectīs Noviodūnī custōdibus quīque eō negōtiandī causā convēnerant, pecūniam atque equōs inter sē partītī sunt; obsidēs cīvitātum Bibracte ad magistrātum dēdūcendōs cūrāvērunt; oppidum, quod ā sē tenērī nōn posse iūdicābant, nē cui esset ūsuī Rōmānīs, incendērunt; frūmentī quod subitō potuērunt nāvibus āvexērunt, reliquum flūmine atque incendiō corrūpērunt. Ipsī ex fīnitimīs regiōnibus cōpiās cōgere, praesidia custōdiāsque ad rīpās Ligeris dispōnere, equitātumque omnibus locīs iniciendī timōris causā ostentāre coepērunt; sī ab rē frūmentāriā Rōmānōs exclūdere [aut adductōs inopiā in prōvinciam expellere] possent. Quam ad spem multum eōs adiuvābat quod Liger ex nivibus crēverat, ut omnīnō vadō nōn posse trānsīrī vidērētur.

Cæsar crosses the Loire.

56. Quibus rēbus cōgnitīs Caesar mātūrandum sibi cēnsuit, sī esset in perficiendīs pontibus perīclitandum, ut prius quam essent māiōrēs eō coāctae cōpiae dīmicāret. Nam nē commūtātō cōnsiliō iter in prōvinciam converteret, ut *nōn* nēmō tum quidem necessāriō faciundum exīstimābat, cum īnfāmia atque indīgnitās reī et oppositus mōns Cevenna viārumque difficultās impediēbat; tum māximē quod abiūnctō Labiēnō atque eīs legiōnibus quās ūnā mīserat vehementer timēbat. Itaque admodum māgnīs diurnīs nocturnīsque itineribus cōnfectīs, contrā omnium opīniōnem ad Ligerim vēnit; vadōque per equitēs inventō prō reī necessitāte opportūnō, ut bracchia modo atque umerī

ad sustinenda arma līberī ab aquā esse possent, dispositō equitātū quī vim flūminis refringeret, atque hostibus prīmō adspectū perturbātīs, incolumem exercitum trādūxit; frūmentumque in agrīs et pecoris cōpiam nactus, replētō hīs rēbus exercitū iter in Senonēs facere īnstituit.

Labienus marches towards Lutetia (Paris).

57. Dum haec apud Caesarem geruntur, Labiēnus eō supplēmentō quod nūper ex Ītaliā vēnerat relictō Agēdincī, ut esset impedīmentīs praesidiō, cum quattuor legiōnibus Lutetiam proficīscitur. Id est oppidum Parīsiōrum positum in īnsulā flūminis Sēquanae. Cūius adventū ab hostibus cōgnitō māgnae ex fīnitimīs cīvitātibus cōpiae convēnērunt. Summa imperī trāditur Camulogenō Aulercō, quī prope cōnfectus aetāte tamen propter singulārem scientiam reī mīlitāris ad eum est honōrem ēvocātus. Is cum animadvertisset perpetuam esse palūdem, quae īnflueret in Sēquanam atque illum omnem locum māgnopere impedīret, hīc cōnsēdit nostrōsque trānsitū prohibēre īnstituit.

He falls back to Metiosedum, which he captures. The Gauls follow him.

58. Labiēnus prīmō vīneās agere, crātibus atque aggere palūdem explēre atque iter mūnīre cōnābātur. Postquam id difficilius fierī animadvertit, silentiō ē castrīs tertiā vigiliā egressus, eōdem quō vēnerat itinere Metiosēdum pervēnit. Id est oppidum Senonum in īnsulā Sēquanae positum, ut paulō ante dē Lutetiā dīximus. Dēprehēnsīs nāvibus circiter L celeriterque coniūnctīs atque eō mīlitibus impositīs et reī novitāte

perterritīs oppidānīs, quōrum māgna pars erat ad bellum ēvocāta, sine contentiōne oppidō potītur. Refectō ponte, quem superiōribus diēbus hostēs resciderant, exercitum trādūcit et secundō flūmine ad Lutetiam iter facere coepit. Hostēs rē cōgnitā ab eīs quī ā Metiosēdō profūgerant, Lutetiam incendī, pontīsque ēius oppidī rescindī iubent; ipsī profectī ā palūde in rīpā Sēquanae ē regiōne Lutetiae contrā Labiēnī castra cōnsīdunt.

News comes to Labienus of Cæsar's Repulse at Gergovia and of the Spread of the Gallic Insurrection.

59. Iam Caesar ā Gergoviā discessisse audiēbātur; iam dē Haeduōrum dēfectiōne et secundō Galliae mōtū rūmōrēs adferēbantur; Gallīque in conloquiīs interclūsum itinere et Ligerī Caesarem, inopiā frūmentī coāctum, in prōvinciam contendisse cōnfīrmābant. Bellovacī autem dēfectiōne Haeduōrum cōgnitā, quī iam ante erant per sē īnfidēlēs, manūs cōgere atque apertē bellum parāre coepērunt. Tum Labiēnus tantā rērum commūtātiōne longē aliud sibi capiendum cōnsilium atque anteā sēnserat intellegēbat; neque iam ut aliquid acquīreret proeliōque hostīs lacesseret, sed ut incolumem exercitum Agēdincum redūceret cōgitābat. Namque alterā ex parte Bellovacī, quae cīvitas in Galliā māximam habet opīniōnem virtūtis, īnstābant; alteram Camulogenus parātō atque īnstrūctō exercitū tenēbat; tum legiōnēs ā praesidiō atque impedīmentīs interclūsās māximum flūmen distinēbat. Tantīs subitō difficultātibus obiectīs ab animī virtūte auxilium petendum vidēbat.

Labienus's Skilful Stratagem.

60. Itaque sub vesperum cōnciliō convocātō, cohortātus ut ea quae imperāsset dīligenter industriēque administrārent, nāvīs quās Metiosēdō dēdūxerat singulās equitibus Rōmānīs attribuit; et prīmā cōnfectā vigiliā IIII mīlia passuum secundō flūmine silentiō prōgredī ibique sē exspectāre iubet. V cohortīs quās minimē fīrmās ad dīmicandum esse exīstimābat castrīs praesidiō relinquit; V ēiusdem legiōnis reliquās dē mediā nocte cum omnibus impedīmentīs adversō flumine māgnō tumultū proficīscī imperat. Conquīrit etiam lintrīs; hās māgnō sonitū rēmōrum incitātās in eandem partem mittit. Ipse post paulō silentiō ēgressus cum tribus legiōnibus eum locum petit quō nāvīs adpellī iusserat.

He brings about a Division of the Gallic Forces.

61. Eō cum esset ventum, explōrātōrēs hostium, ut omnī flūminis parte erant dispositī, inopīnantēs, quod māgna subitō erat coörta tempestās, ā nostrīs opprimuntur; exercitus equitātusque, equitibus Rōmānīs administrantibus quōs eī negōtiō praefēcerat, celeriter trānsmittitur. Ūnō ferē tempore sub lūcem hostibus nūntiātur in castrīs Rōmānōrum praeter cōnsuētūdinem tumultuārī, et māgnum īre agmen adversō flūmine sonitumque rēmōrum in eādem parte exaudīrī, et paulō īnfrā mīlitēs nāvibus trānsportārī. Quibus rēbus audītīs, quod exīstimābant tribus locīs trānsīre legiōnēs, [atque omnīs perturbātōs dēfectiōne Haeduōrum fugam parāre], suās quoque cōpiās in trīs partīs distribuērunt. Nam praesidiō ē regiōne castrōrum relictō, et parvā manū Metiosēdum versus missā quae tantum prōgre-

derētur quantum nāvēs prōcessissent, reliquās cōpiās contrā Labiēnum dūxērunt.

Rout of the Gauls. Labienus rejoins Cæsar.

62. Prīmā lūce et nostrī omnēs erant trānsportātī et hostium aciēs cernēbātur. Labiēnus, mīlitēs cohortātus ut suae prīstinae virtūtis et tot secundissimōrum proeliōrum retinērent memoriam, atque ipsum Caesarem, cūius ductū saepe numerō hostīs superāssent, praesentem adesse exīstimārent, dat sīgnum proelī. Prīmō concursū ab dextrō cornū, ubi septima legiō cōnstiterat, hostēs pelluntur atque in fugam coniciuntur; ab sinistrō, quem locum XII legiō tenēbat, cum prīmī ōrdinēs hostium trānsfīxī pīlīs concidissent, tamen ācerrimē reliquī resistēbant, nec dabat suspīciōnem fugae quisquam. Ipse dux hostium Camulogenus suīs aderat atque eōs cohortābātur. At incertō etiam nunc exitū victōriae, cum VII legiōnis tribūnīs esset nūntiātum quae in sinistrō cornū gererentur, post tergum hostium legiōnem ostendērunt sīgnaque intulērunt. Nē eō quidem tempore quisquam locō cessit, sed circumventī omnēs interfectīque sunt. Eandem fortūnam tulit Camulogenus. At eī quī in praesidiō contrā castra Labiēnī erant relictī, cum proelium commissum audīssent, subsidiō suīs iērunt collemque cēpērunt, neque nostrōrum mīlitum victōrum impetum sustinēre potuērunt. Sīc cum suīs fugientibus permixtī, quōs nōn silvae montēsque tēxērunt, ab equitātū sunt interfectī. Hōc negōtiō cōnfectō Labiēnus revertitur Agēdincum, ubi impedīmenta tōtīus exercitūs relicta erant. Inde cum omnibus cōpiīs ad Caesarem pervenit.

The Uprising spreads. Vercingetorix officially appointed Commander-in-chief. The Haedui object.

63. Dēfectiōne Haeduōrum cōgnitā bellum augētur. Lēgātiōnēs in omnīs partīs circummittuntur; quantum grātiā, auctōritāte, pecūniā valent, ad sollicitandās cīvitātīs nītuntur. Nactī obsidēs quōs Caesar apud eōs dēposuerat, hōrum suppliciō dubitantīs territant. Petunt ā Vercingetorīge Haeduī ut ad sē veniat ratiōnēsque bellī gerundī commūnicet. Rē impetrātā contendunt ut ipsīs summa imperī trādātur; et rē in contrōversiam dēductā, tōtīus Galliae concilium Bibracte indīcitur. Conveniunt undique frequentēs. Multitūdinis suffrāgiīs rēs permittitur; ad ūnum omnēs Vercingetorīgem probant imperātōrem. Ab hōc conciliō Rēmī, Lingones, Trēverī āfuērunt: illī, quod amīcitiam Rōmānōrum sequēbantur; Trēverī, quod aberant longius et ā Germānīs premēbantur, quae fuit causa quā rē tōtō abessent bellō et neutrīs auxilia mitterent. Māgnō dolōre Haeduī ferunt sē dēiectōs prīncipātū; queruntur fortūnae commūtātiōnem et Caesaris in sē indulgentiam requīrunt; neque tamen susceptō bellō suum cōnsilium ab reliquīs sēparāre audent. Invītī summae speī adulēscentēs, Eporēdorīx et Viridomārus, Vercingetorīgī pārent.

Energetic Measures of Vercingetorix.

64. Ipse imperat reliquīs cīvitātibus obsidēs; dēnique eī reī cōnstituit diem. Hūc omnīs equitēs, xv mīlia numerō, celeriter convenīre iubet; peditātū quem ante habuerit sē fore contentum dīcit, neque fortūnam temptātūrum aut aciē dīmicātūrum; sed quoniam abundet equitātū, perfacile esse factū frū-

mentātiōnibus pābulātiōnibusque Rōmānōs prohibēre; aequō modo animō sua ipsī frūmenta corrumpant, aedificiaque incendant; quā reī familiāris iactūrā perpetuum imperium lībertātemque sē cōnsequī videant. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus Haeduīs Segusiāvīsque, quī sunt fīnitimī [eī] prōvinciae, x mīlia peditum imperat; hūc addit equitēs DCCC. Hīs praeficit frātrem Eporēdorīgis bellumque īnferrī Allobrogibus iubet. Alterā ex parte Gabalōs proximōsque pāgōs Arvernōrum in Helviōs, item Rutēnōs Cadūrcōsque ad fīnīs Volcārum Arecomicōrum dēpopulandōs mittit. Nihilō minus clandestīnīs nūntiīs lēgātiōnibusque Allobrogas sollicitat, quōrum mentīs nōndum ab superiōre bellō resēdisse spērābat. Hōrum prīncipibus pecūniās, cīvitātī autem imperium tōtīus prōvinciae pollicētur.

Cæsar summons Cavalry from Germany.

65. Ad hōs omnīs cāsūs prōvīsa erant praesidia cohortium duārum et vīgintī, quae ex ipsā coācta prōvinciā ab L. Caesare lēgātō ad omnīs partīs oppōnēbantur. Helviī suā sponte cum fīnitimīs proeliō congressī pelluntur, et C. Valeriō Donnotaurō, Caburī fīliō, prīncipe cīvitātis, complūribusque aliīs interfectīs, intrā oppida mūrōsque compelluntur. Allobrogēs crēbrīs ad Rhodanum dispositīs praesidiīs māgnā cum cūrā et dīligentiā suōs fīnīs tuentur. Caesar, quod hostīs equitātū superiōrēs esse intellegēbat, et interclūsīs omnibus itineribus nūllā rē ex prōvinciā atque Ītaliā sublevārī poterat, trāns Rhēnum in Germāniam mittit ad eās cīvitātīs quās superiōribus annīs pācāverat; equitēsque ab hīs arcessit et levis armātūrae peditēs, quī inter eōs proeliārī cōnsuērant. Eōrum adventū,

quod minus idōneīs equīs ūtēbantur, ā tribūnīs mīlitum reliquīsque [sed et] equitibus Rōmānīs atque ēvocātīs equōs sūmit Germānīsque distribuit.

Vercingetorix induces the Gallic Cavalry to attack the Romans.

66. Intereā, dum haec geruntur, hostium cōpiae ex Arvernīs, equitēsque quī tōtī Galliae erant imperātī conveniunt. Māgnō hōrum coāctō numerō, cum Caesar in Sēquanōs per extrēmōs Lingonum fīnīs iter faceret, quō facilius subsidium prōvinciae ferre posset, circiter mīlia passuum x ab Rōmānīs trīnīs castrīs Vercingetorīx cōnsēdit; convocātīsque ad cōncilium praefectīs equitum vēnisse tempus victōriae dēmōnstrat: 'Fugere in prōvinciam Rōmānōs Galliāque excēdere. Id sibi ad praesentem obtinendam lībertātem satis esse; ad reliquī temporis pācem atque ōtium parum prōficī; māioribus enim coāctīs cōpiīs reversūrōs neque fīnem bellandī factūrōs. Proinde *in* agmine impedītōs adoriantur. Sī peditēs suīs auxilium ferant atque in eō morentur, iter facere nōn posse; sī, id quod magis futūrum cōnfīdat, relictīs impedīmentīs suae salūtī cōnsulant, et ūsū rērum necessāriārum et dīgnitāte spoliātum īrī. Nam dē equitibus hostium, quīn nēmō eōrum prōgredī modo extrā agmen audeat, nē ipsōs quidem dēbēre dubitāre. Id quō māiōre faciant animō, cōpiās sē omnīs prō castrīs habitūrum et terrōrī hostibus futūrum.' Conclāmant equitēs: 'Sānctissimō iūre iūrandō cōnfīrmārī oportēre nē tēctō recipiātur, nē ad līberōs, nē ad parentīs, nē ad uxōrem aditum habeat, quī nōn bis per agmen hostium perequitārit.'

The Attack fails.

67. Probātā rē atque omnibus ad iūs iūrandum adāctīs, posterō diē in trīs partīs distribūtō equitātū duae sē aciēs ab duōbus lateribus ostendunt, ūna ā prīmō agmine iter impedīre coepit. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar suum quoque equitātum tripartītō dīvīsum contrā hostem īre iubet. Pūgnātur ūnā omnibus in partibus. Cōnsistit agmen; impedīmenta intrā legiōnēs recipiuntur. Sī quā in parte nostrī labōrāre aut gravius premī vidēbantur, eō sīgna īnferrī Caesar aciemque cōnvertī iubēbat; quae rēs et hostīs ad īnsequendum tardābat et nostrōs spē auxilī cōnfirmābat. Tandem Germānī ab dextrō latere summum iugum nactī hostīs locō dēpellunt: fugientīs ūsque ad flūmen, ubi Vercingetorīx cum pedestribus cōpiīs cōnsēderat, persequuntur complūrīsque interficiunt. Quā rē animadversā reliquī, nē circumvenīrentur veritī, sē fugae mandant. Omnibus locīs fit caedēs. Trēs nōbilissimī Haeduī captī ad Caesarem perdūcuntur: Cotus, praefectus equitum, quī contrōversiam cum Convictolitavī proximīs comitiīs habuerat; et Cavarillus, quī post dēfectiōnem Litavīcī pedestribus cōpiīs praefuerat; et Eporēdorīx, quō duce ante adventum Caesaris Haeduī cum Sēquanīs bellō contenderant.

Vercingetorix falls back upon Alesia, which Cæsar determines to invest.

68. Fugātō omnī equitātū Vercingetorīx cōpiās suās, ut prō castrīs conlocāverat, redūxit prōtinusque Alesiam, quod est oppidum Mandubiōrum, iter facere coepit; celeriterque impedīmenta ex castrīs ēdūcī et sē subsequī iussit. Caesar impedīmentīs in proximum

collem ductīs, duābus legiōnibus praesidiō relictīs, secūtus hostīs quantum diēī tempus est passum, circiter III mīlibus ex novissimō agmine interfectīs, alterō diē ad Alesiam castra fēcit. Perspectō urbis sitū perterritīsque hostibus, quod equitātū (quā māximē parte exercitūs cōnfīdēbant) erant pulsī, adhortātus ad labōrem mīlitēs Alesiam circumvāllāre īnstituit.

Alesia and its Defences.

69. Ipsum erat oppidum in colle summō admodum ēditō locō, ut nisi obsidiōne expūgnārī nōn posse vidērētur. Cūius collis rādīcēs duo duābus ex partibus flūmina subluēbant. Ante oppidum plānitiēs circiter mīlia passuum III in longitūdinem patēbat; reliquīs ex omnibus partibus collēs, mediocrī interiectō spatiō, parī altitūdinis fastīgiō oppidum cingēbant. Sub mūrō, quae pars collis ad orientem sōlem spectābat, hunc omnem locum cōpiae Gallōrum complēverant, fossamque et māceriam in altitūdinem VI pedum praedūxerant. Eius mūnītiōnis quae ab Rōmānīs īnstituēbātur circuitus XI mīlia passuum tenēbat. Castra opportūnīs locīs erant posita VIII castellaque XXIII facta; quibus in castellīs interdiū statiōnēs pōnēbantur, nē qua subitō ēruptiō fieret; haec eadem noctū excubitōribus āc fīrmīs praesidiīs tenēbantur.

A Cavalry Battle in the Plain. Slaughter of the Gauls.

70. Opere īnstitūtō fit equestre proelium in eā plānitiē quam intermissam collibus tria mīlia passuum in longitūdinem patēre suprā dēmōnstrāvimus. Summā vī ab utrīsque contenditur. Labōrantibus nostrīs Caesar Germānōs submittit legiōnēsque prō castrīs cōn-

stituit, nē qua subitō inruptiō ab hostium peditātū fīat. Praesidiō legiōnum additō nostrīs animus augētur; hostēs in fugam coniectī sē ipsī multitūdine impediunt atque angustiōribus portīs relictīs coartantur. Germānī ācrius ūsque ad mūnītiōnēs sequuntur. Fit māgna caedēs; nōn nūllī relictīs equīs fossam transīre et māceriam trānscendere cōnantur. Paulum legiōnēs Caesar quās prō vāllō cōnstituerat prōmovērī iubet. Nōn minus quī intrā mūnītiōnēs erant Gallī perturbantur; venīrī ad sē cōnfestim exīstimantēs ad arma conclāmant; nōn nūllī perterritī in oppidum inrumpunt. Vercingetorīx iubet portās claudī, nē castra nūdentur. Multīs interfectīs, complūribus equīs captīs, Germānī sēsē recipiunt.

Vercingetorix dismisses his Cavalry and Calls upon all Gaul for Help.

71. Vercingetorīx, priusquam mūnītiōnēs ab Rōmānīs perficiantur, cōnsilium capit omnem ab sē equitātum noctū dīmittere. Discēdentibus mandat ut suam quisque eōrum cīvitātem adeat omnīsque quī per aetātem arma ferre possint ad bellum cōgant. Sua in illōs merita prōpōnit, obtestāturque ut suae salūtis ratiōnem habeant, neu sē optimē dē commūnī lībertāte meritum in cruciātum hostibus dēdant. Quod sī indīligentiōrēs fuerint, mīlia hominum dēlēcta LXXX ūnā sēcum interitūra dēmōnstrat. Ratiōne initā frūmentum sē exiguē diērum XXX habēre, sed paulō etiam longius tolerāre posse parcendō. Hīs datīs mandātīs, quā nostrum opus intermissum, secundā vigiliā silentiō equitātum dīmittit; frūmentum omne ad sē referrī iubet; capitis poenam eīs quī nōn pāru-

erint cōnstituit; pecus, cūius māgna erat cōpia ā Mandubiīs compulsa, virītim distribuit; frūmentum parcē et paulātim mētīrī īnstituit; cōpiās omnīs quās prō oppidō conlocāverat in oppidum recipit. Hīs ratiōnibus auxilia Galliae exspectāre et bellum administrāre parat.

Cæsar's Siege Works.

72. Quibus rēbus cōgnitīs ex perfugīs et captīvīs Caesar haec genera mūnītiōnis īnstituit: fossam pedum vīgintī dīrēctīs lateribus dūxit, ut ēius fossae solum tantundem patēret quantum summa labra distārent. Reliquās omnīs mūnītiōnēs ab eā fossā pedēs CCCC redūxit: [id] hōc cōnsiliō (quoniam tantum esset necessāriō spatium complexus, nec facile tōtum opus corōnā mīlitum cingerētur), nē dē imprōvīsō aut noctū ad mūnītiōnēs multitūdō hostium advolāret, aut interdiū tēla in nostrōs operī dēstinātōs conicere possent. Hōc intermissō spatiō duās fossās XV pedēs lātās, eādem altitūdine perdūxit; quārum interiōrem campestribus āc dēmissīs locīs aquā ex flūmine dērīvātā complēvit. Post eās aggerem āc vāllum XII pedum exstrūxit: huic lōrīcam pinnāsque adiēcit, grandibus cervīs ēminentibus ad commissūrās pluteōrum atque aggeris, quī ascēnsum hostium tardārent; et turrīs tōtō opere circumdedit quae pedēs LXXX inter sē distārent.

Obstructions and Defenses.

73. Erat eōdem tempore et māteriārī et frūmentārī et tantās mūnītiōnēs fierī necesse, dēminūtīs nostrīs cōpiīs, quae longius ā castrīs prōgrediēbantur; āc nōn numquam opera nostra Gallī temptāre atque ēruptiōnem ex oppidō plūribus portīs summā vī facere cōnā-

bantur. Quā rē ad haec rūrsus opera addendum Caesar putāvit, quō minōre numerō mīlitum mūnītiōnēs dēfendī possent. Itaque truncīs arborum aut admodum fīrmīs rāmīs abscīsīs, atque hōrum dēlibrātīs ac praeacūtīs cacūminibus, perpetuae fossae quīnōs pedēs altae dūcēbantur. Hūc illī stīpitēs dēmissī et ab īnfimō revinctī, nē revellī possent, ab rāmīs ēminēbant. Quīnī erant ōrdinēs coniūnctī inter sē atque implicātī; quō quī intrāverant, sē ipsī acūtissimīs vāllīs induēbant. Hōs cippōs appellābant. Ante hōs oblīquīs ōrdinibus in quīncūncem dispositīs scrobēs in altitūdinem trium pedum fodiēbantur paulātim angustiōre ad īnfimum fastīgiō. Hūc teretēs stīpitēs feminis crassitūdine ab summō praeacūtī et praeūstī dēmittēbantur, ita ut nōn amplius digitīs IIII ex terrā ēminērent; simul cōnfīrmandī et stabiliendī causā singulī ab īnfimō solō pedēs terrā exculcābantur; reliqua pars scrobis ad occultandās īnsidiās vīminibus āc virgultīs integēbātur. Hūius generis octōnī ōrdinēs ductī ternōs inter sē pedēs distābant. Id ex similitūdine flōris līlium appellābant. Ante haec tāleae pedem longae ferreīs hāmīs īnfīxīs tōtae in terram īnfodiēbantur, mediocribusque intermissīs spatiīs omnibus locīs disserēbantur, quōs stimulōs nōminābant.

Defenses against Enemies from Outside.

74. Hīs rēbus perfectīs regiōnes secūtus quam potuit aequissimās prō locī nātūrā, XIV mīlia passuum complexus parīs ēiusdem generis mūnītiōnes, dīversās ab hīs, contrā exteriōrem hostem perfēcit, ut nē māgnā quidem multitūdine [sī ita accidat ēius discessū], mūnītiōnum praesidia circumfundī possent; nē autem cum

perīculō ex castrīs ēgredī cōgātur, diērum xxx pābulum frūmentumque habēre omnīs convectum iubet.

All Gaul combines for the Relief of Alesia.

75. Dum haec apud Alesiam geruntur, Gallī conciliō prīncipum indictō nōn omnīs quī arma ferre possent, ut cēnsuit Vercingetorīx, convocandōs statuunt, sed certum numerum cuique cīvitātī imperandum; nē tantā multitūdine cōnfūsā nec moderārī nec discernere suōs nec frūmentandī ratiōnem habēre possent. Imperant Haeduīs atque eōrum clientibus, Segusiāvīs, Ambivaretīs, Aulercīs, Brannovīcibus, [Blannoviīs,] mīlia xxxv; parem numerum Arvernīs, adiūnctīs Eleutetīs, Cadūrcīs, Gabalīs, Vellāviīs, quī sub imperiō Arvernōrum esse cōnsuērunt; Sēquanīs, Senonibus, Biturīgibus, Santonīs, Rutēnīs, Carnutibus duodēna mīlia; Bellovacīs x; totidem Lemovīcibus octōna Pictonibus et Turonīs et Parīsiīs et Helvētiīs; sēna Andibus, Ambiānīs, Mediomatricīs, Petrocoriīs, Nerviīs, Morinīs, Nitiobrigibus; quīna mīlia Aulercīs Cēnomānīs; totidem Atrebātibus; IIII Veliocassīs; [Lexoviīs, et] Aulercīs Eburovīcibus III; Rauracīs et Bōiīs bīna; x ūniversīs cīvitātibus quae Ōceanum attingunt quaeque eōrum cōnsuētūdine Aremoricae appellantur, quō sunt in numerō Coriosolites, Redones, Ambibariī, Caletes, Osismī, Venetī, Lexoviī, Venellī. Ex hīs Bellovacī suum numerum nōn contulērunt, quod sē suō nōmine atque arbitriō cum Rōmānīs bellum gestūrōs dīcerent, neque cūiusquam imperiō obtemperātūrōs; rogātī tamen ā Commiō prō ēius hospitiō duo mīlia mīsērunt.

Enthusiastic Approach of the Gauls.

76. Hūius operā Commī, ut anteā dēmōnstrāvimus, fidēlī atque ūtilī superiōribus annīs erat ūsus in Britanniā Caesar; prō quibus meritīs cīvitātem ēius immūnem esse iusserat, iūra lēgēsque reddiderat atque ipsī Morinōs attribuerat. Tanta tamen ūniversae Galliae cōnsēnsiō fuit lībertātis vindicandae et prīstinae bellī laudis recuperandae ut neque beneficiīs neque amīcitiae memoriā movērētur, omnēsque et animō et opibus in id bellum incumberent. Coāctīs equitum mīlibus VIII et peditum circiter CCL, haec in Haeduōrum fīnibus recēnsēbantur, numerusque inībātur, praefectī cōnstituēbantur; Commiō Atrebātī, Viridomārō et Eporēdorīgī Haeduīs, Vercassivellaunō Arvernō, cōnsobrīnō Vercingetorīgis, summa imperī trāditur. Hīs dēlēctī ex cīvitātibus attribuuntur quōrum cōnsiliō bellum administrārētur. Omnēs alacrēs et fīdūciae plēnī ad Alesiam proficīscuntur; neque erat omnium quisquam quī adspectum modo tantae multitūdinis sustinērī posse arbitrārētur, praesertim ancipitī proeliō, cum ex oppidō ēruptiōne pūgnārētur, forīs tantae cōpiae equitātūs peditātūsque cernerentur.

A Council of War at Alesia. Speech of Critognatus and his Desperate Plan.

77. At ēi quī Alesiae obsidēbantur, praeteritā diē quā auxilia suōrum exspectāverant, cōnsūmptō omnī frūmentō, īnsciī quid in Haeduīs gererētur, conciliō coāctō dē exitū suārum fortūnārum cōnsultābant. Āc variīs dictīs sententiīs, quārum pars dēditiōnem, pars, dum vīrēs suppeterent, ēruptiōnem cēnsēbat, nōn praetereunda ōrātiō Critōgnātī vidētur propter ēius singulārem āc nefāriam crūdēlitātem.

Hīc summō in Avernīs ortus locō et māgnae habitus auctōritātis: "Nihil," inquit, "dē eōrum sententiā dictūrus sum quī turpissimam servitūtem dēditiōnis nōmine appellant, neque hōs habendōs cīvium locō neque ad concilium adhibendōs cēnseō. Cum hīs mihi rēs est quī ēruptiōnem probant; quōrum in cōnsiliō omnium vestrum cōnsēnsū prīstinae residēre virtūtis memoria vidētur. Animī est ista mollitia, nōn virtūs, paulisper inopiam ferre nōn posse. Quī sē ultrō mortī offerant facilius reperiuntur quam quī dolōrem patienter ferant. Atque ego hanc sententiam probārem (tantum apud mē dīgnitās potest), sī nūllam praeterquam vītae nostrae iactūram fierī vidērem; sed in cōnsiliō capiendō omnem Galliam respiciāmus, quam ad nostrum auxilium concitāvimus. Quid, hominum mīlibus LXXX ūnō locō interfectīs, propinquīs cōnsanguineīsque nostrīs animī fore exīstimātis, sī paene in ipsīs cadāveribus proeliō dēcertāre cōgentur? Nōlīte hōs vestrō auxiliō expoliāre quī vestrae salūtis causā suum perīculum neglēxērunt; nec stultitiā āc temeritāte vestrā, aut animī imbēcillitāte, omnem Galliam prōsternere et perpetuae servitūtī subicere. An, quod ad diem nōn vēnerunt, dē eōrum fidē cōnstantiāque dubitātis? Quid ergō? Rōmānōs in illīs ulteriōribus mūnītiōnibus animīne causā cotīdiē exercērī putātis? Sī illōrum nūntiīs cōnfīrmārī nōn potestis omnī aditū praeseptō, hīs ūtiminī testibus adpropinquāre eōrum adventum; cūius reī timōre exterritī diem noctemque in opere versantur.

"Quid ergō meī cōnsilī est? Facere quod nostrī māiōrēs nēquāquam parī bellō Cimbrōrum Teutonumque fēcērunt; quī in oppida compulsī āc similī inopiā



The Ruins of the Old Aqueduct at Rome

subāctī, eōrum corporibus quī aetāte ad bellum inūtilēs vidēbantur vītam tolerāvērunt, neque sē hostibus trādidērunt. Cūius reī sī exemplum nōn habērēmus, tamen lībertātis causā īnstituī et posterīs prōdī pulcherrimum iūdicārem. Nam quid illī simile bellō fuit? Dēpopulātā Galliā Cimbrī, māgnāque inlātā calamitāte, fīnibus quidem nostrīs aliquandō excessērunt atque aliās terrās petiērunt; iūra, lēgēs, agrōs, lībertātem nōbīs relīquērunt. Rōmānī vērō quid petunt aliud aut quid volunt, nisi invidiā adductī, quōs fāmā nōbilīs potentīsque bellō cōgnōvērunt, hōrum in agrīs cīvitātibusque cōnsīdere atque hīs aeternam iniungere servitūtem? Neque enim umquam aliā condiciōne bella gessērunt. Quod sī ea quae in longinquīs nātiōnibus geruntur īgnōrātis, respicite fīnitimam Galliam, quae in prōvinciam redācta, iūre et lēgibus commūtātīs, secūribus subiecta perpetuā premitur servitūte!"

The Mandubii are driven out of the Town. Cæsar declines to receive them.

78. Sententiīs dictīs cōnstituunt ut eī quī valētūdine aut aetāte inūtilēs sint bellō oppidō excēdant, atque omnia prius experiantur quam ad Critōgnātī sententiam dēscendant: illō tamen potius ūtendum cōnsiliō, sī rēs cōgat atque auxilia morentur, quam aut dēditiōnis aut pācis subeundam condiciōnem. Mandubiī, quī eōs oppidō recēperant, cum līberīs atque uxōribus exīre cōguntur. Hī cum ad mūnītiōnēs Rōmānōrum accessissent, flentēs omnibus precibus ōrābant ut sē in servitūtem receptōs cibō iuvārent. At Caesar dispositīs in vāllō custōdiīs recipī prohibēbat.

Arrival of the Relieving Army amid the Joy of the Besieged.

79. Intereā Commius reliquīque ducēs, quibus summa imperī permissa erat, cum omnibus cōpiīs ad Alesiam perveniunt, et colle exteriōre occupātō nōn longius mīlle passibus ā nostrīs mūnītiōnibus cōnsīdunt. Posterō diē equitātū ex castrīs ēductō omnem eam plānitiem, quam in longitūdinem mīlia passuum III patēre dēmōnstrāvimus, complent; pedestrīsque cōpiās paulum ab eō locō abductās in locīs superiōribus cōnstituunt. Erat ex oppidō Alesiā dēspectus in campum. Concurrunt hīs auxiliīs vīsīs; fit grātulātiō inter eōs atque omnium animī ad laetitiam excitantur. Itaque prōductīs cōpiīs ante oppidum consistunt, et proximam fossam crātibus integunt atque aggere explent, sēque ad ēruptiōnem atque omnīs cāsūs comparant.

A Fierce Struggle in the Valley. Defeat of the Gauls.

80. Caesar omnī exercitū ad utramque partem mūnītiōnum dispositō, ut, sī ūsus veniat, suum quisque locum teneat et nōverit, equitātum ex castrīs ēdūcī et proelium committī iubet. Erat ex omnibus castrīs, quae summum undique iugum tenēbant, dēspectus; atque omnēs mīlitēs intentī pūgnae prōventum exspectābant. Gallī inter equitēs rārōs sagittāriōs expedītōsque levis armātūrae interiēcerant, quī suīs cēdentibus auxiliō succurrerent et nostrōrum equitum impetūs sustinērent. Ab hīs complūrēs dē imprōvīsō volnerātī proeliō excēdēbant. Cum suōs pūgnā superiōrēs esse Gallī cōnfīderent et nostrōs multitūdine premī vidērent, ex omnibus partibus et eī quī mūnītiōnibus con-

tinēbantur et eī quī ad auxilium convēnerant clāmōre et ululātū suōrum animōs cōnfīrmābant. Quod in cōnspectū omnium rēs gerēbātur, neque rēctē āc turpiter factum cēlārī poterat; utrōsque et laudis cupiditās et timor īgnōminiae ad virtūtem excitābat. Cum ā merīdiē prope ad sōlis occāsum dubiā victōriā pūgnārētur, Germānī ūnā in parte cōnfertīs turmīs in hostīs inpetum fēcērunt eōsque prōpulērunt. Quibus in fugam coniectīs sagittāriī circumventī interfectīque sunt. Item ex reliquīs partibus nostrī cēdentīs ūsque ad castra īnsecūtī suī conligendī facultātem nōn dedērunt. At eī quī Alesiā prōcesserant, maestī prope victōriā dēspērātā sē in oppidum recēpērunt.

A Night Attack on the Romans.

81. Ūnō diē intermissō Gallī atque hōc spatiō māgnō crātium, scālārum, harpagōnum numerō effectō, mediā nocte silentiō ex castrīs ēgressī ad campestrīs mūnītiōnēs accēdunt. Subitō clāmōre sublātō, quā sīgnificātiōne quī in oppidō obsidēbantur dē suō adventū cōgnōscere possent, crātīs prōicere, fundīs, sagittīs, lapidibus nostrōs dē vāllō prōturbāre, reliquaque quae ad oppūgnātiōnem pertinent parant administrāre. Eōdem tempore clāmōre exaudītō dat tubā sīgnum suīs Vercingetorīx atque ex oppidō ēdūcit. Nostrī, ut superiōribus diēbus suus cuique erat locus attribūtus, ad mūnītiōnēs accēdunt; fundīs lībrīlibus, sudibusque quās in opere disposuerant, āc glandibus Gallōs prōterrent. Prōspectū tenebrīs ademptō multa utrimque volnera accipiuntur; complūra tormentīs tēla coniciuntur. At M. Antōnius et C. Trebōnius lēgātī, quibus hae partēs ad dēfendendum obvēnerant, quā ex parte

nostrōs premī intellēxerant, hīs auxiliō et ulteriōribus castellīs dēductōs submittēbant.

It fails.

82. Dum longius ā mūnītiōne aberant Gallī, plūs multitūdine tēlōrum prōficiēbant; posteāquam propius successērunt, aut sē stimulīs inopīnantēs induēbant aut in scrobīs dēlātī trānsfodiēbantur aut ex vāllō āc turribus trāiectī pīlīs mūrālibus interībant. Multīs undique volneribus acceptīs, nūllā mūnītiōne perruptā, cum lūx adpeteret, veritī nē ab latere apertō ex superiōribus castrīs ēruptiōne circumvenīrentur, sē ad suōs recēpērunt. At interiōrēs, dum ea quae ā Vercingetorīge ad ēruptiōnem praeparāta erant prōferunt, priōrēs fossās explent; diūtius in hīs rēbus administrandīs morātī, prius suōs discessisse cōgnōvērunt quam mūnītiōnibus adpropinquārent. Ita rē īnfectā in oppidum revertērunt.

The Last Attempt of the Army of Relief.

83. Bis māgnō cum dētrīmentō repulsī Gallī quid agant cōnsulunt. Locōrum perītōs adhibent; ex hīs superiōrum castrōrum sitūs mūnītiōnēsque cōgnōscunt. Erat ā septentriōnibus collis, quem propter māgnitūdinem circuitūs opere circumplectī nōn potuerant nostrī; necessāriōque paene inīquō locō et lēniter dēclīvī castra fēcerant. Haec C. Antistius Rēgīnus et C. Canīnius Rebilus lēgātī cum duābus legiōnibus obtinēbant. Cōgnitīs per explōrātōrēs regiōnibus ducēs hostium LX mīlia ex omnī numerō dēligunt, eārum cīvitātum quae māximam virtūtis opīniōnem habēbant; quid quōque pactō agī placeat occultē inter sē cōnstituunt; adeundī tempus dēfīniunt cum merīdiēs esse

videātur. Hīs cōpiīs Vercassivellaunum Arvernum, ūnum ex IIII ducibus, propinquum Vercingetorīgis, praeficiunt. Ille ex castrīs prīmā vigiliā ēgressus, prope cōnfectō sub lūcem itinere, post montem sē occultāvit mīlitēsque ex nocturnō labōre sēsē reficere iussit. Cum iam merīdiēs adpropinquāre vidērētur, ad ea castra quae suprā dēmōnstrāvimus contendit; eōdemque tempore equitātus ad campestrīs mūnītiōnēs accēdere et reliquae cōpiae prō castrīs sēsē ostendere coepērunt.

Vercingetorix takes a Hand. The Romans' Critical Position.

84. Vercingetorīx ex arce Alesiae suōs cōnspicātus ex ōppidō ēgreditur: crātīs, longuriōs, mūsculōs, falcīs, reliquaque quae ēruptiōnis causā parāverat prōfert. Pūgnātur ūnō tempore omnibus locīs atque omnia temptantur; quae minimē vīsa pars fīrma est hūc concurritur. Rōmānōrum manus tantīs mūnītiōnibus distinētur nec facile plūribus locīs occurrit. Multum ad terrendōs nostrōs valet clāmor, quī post tergum pūgnantibus exstitit, quod suum perīculum in aliēnā vident virtūte cōnstāre; omnia enim plērumque quae absunt vehementius hominum mentīs perturbant.

Valorous Fighting on Both Sides.

85. Caesar idōneum locum nactus quid quāque ex parte gerātur cōgnōscīt; labōrantibus *subsidium* submittit. Utrīsque ad animum occurrit ūnum esse illud tempus quō māximē contendī conveniat: Gallī, nisi perfrēgerint mūnītiōnēs, dē omnī salūte dēspērant; Rōmānī, sī rem obtinuerint, fīnem labōrum omnium exspectant. Māximē ad superiōrēs mūnītiōnēs labōrā-

tur, quō Vercassivellaunum missum dēmōnstrāvimus. Inīquum locī ad dēclīvitātem fastīgium māgnum habet mōmentum. Aliī tēla cōniciunt, aliī testūdine factā subeunt; dēfatīgātīs in vicem integrī succēdunt. Agger ab ūniversīs in mūnītiōnem coniectus et ascēnsum dat Gallīs, et ea quae in terrā occultāverant Rōmānī contegit; nec iam arma nostrīs nec vīrēs suppetunt.

Cæsar exhorts his Troops.

86. Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs Caesar Labiēnum cum cohortibus VI subsidiō labōrantibus mittit. Imperat, sī sustinēre nōn possit, dēductīs cohortibus ēruptiōne pūgnet; id nisi necessāriō nē faciat. Ipse adit reliquōs; cohortātur nē labōrī succumbant; omnium superiōrum dīmicātiōnum frūctum in eō diē atque hōrā docet cōnsistere. Interiōrēs, dēspērātīs campestribus locīs propter māgnitūdinem mūnītiōnum, loca praerupta [ex] ascēnsū temptant; hūc ea quae parāverant cōnferunt. Multitūdine tēlōrum ex turribus prōpūgnantīs dēturbant, aggere et crātibus fossās explent, falcibus vāllum āc lōrīcam rescindunt.

And is all over the Field.

87. Mittit prīmum Brūtum adulēscentem cum cohortibus Caesar, post cum aliīs C. Fabium lēgātum; postrēmō ipse cum vehementius pūgnārētur, integrōs subsidiō addūcit. Restitūtō proeliō āc repulsīs hostibus, eō quō Labiēnum mīserat contendit; cohortīs IIII ex proximō castellō dēdūcit, equitum partem sē sequī, partem circumīre exteriōrēs mūnītiōnēs et ā tergō hostīs adorīrī iubet. Labiēnus, postquam neque aggerēs neque fossae vim hostium sustinēre poterant, coāctīs XL cohor-

tibus, quās ex proximīs praesidiīs dēductās fors obtulit, Caesarem per nūntiōs facit certiōrem quid faciendum exīstimet. Accelerat Caesar ut proeliō intersit.

The Gauls are utterly defeated.

88. Ēius adventū ex colōre vestītūs cōgnitō, [quō īnsīgnī in proeliīs ūtī cōnsuērat], turmīsque equitum et cohortibus vīsīs quās sē sequī iusserat, ut dē locīs superiōribus haec dēclīvia et dēvexa cernēbantur, hostēs proelium committunt. Utrimque clāmōre sublātō excipit rūrsus ex vāllō atque omnibus mūnītiōnibus clāmor. Nostrī omissīs pīlīs gladiīs rem gerunt. Repente post tergum equitātus cernitur; cohortēs aliae adpropinquant. Hostēs terga vertunt; fugientibus equitēs occurrunt; fit māgna caedēs. Sedulius, dux et prīnceps Lemovīcum, occīditur; Vercassivellaunus Arvernus vīvus in fugā comprehenditur; sīgna mīlitāria LXXIIII ad Caesarem referuntur; paucī ex tantō numerō sē incolumēs in castra recipiunt. Cōnspicātī ex oppidō caedem et fugam suōrum, dēspērātā salūte, cōpiās ā mūnītiōnibus redūcunt. Fit prōtinus hāc rē audītā ex castrīs Gallōrum fuga. Quod nisi crēbrīs subsidiīs āc tōtīus diēī labōre mīlitēs essent dēfessī, omnēs hostium cōpiae dēlērī potuissent. Dē mediā nocte missus equitātus nōvissimum agmen cōnsequitur: māgnus numerus capitur atque interficitur; reliquī ex fugā in cīvitātīs discēdunt.

Surrender of Vercingetorix.

89. Posterō diē Vercingetorīx conciliō convocātō id bellum sē suscēpisse nōn suārum necessitātum sed commūnis lībertātis causā dēmōnstrat; et quoniam sit for-

tūnae cēdendum, ad utramque rem sē illīs offerre, seu morte suā Rōmānīs satisfacere seu vīvum trādere velint. Mittuntur dē hīs rēbus ad Caesarem lēgātī. Iubet arma trādī, prīncipēs prōdūcī. Ipse in mūnītiōne prō castrīs cōnsīdit; eō ducēs prōdūcuntur. Vercingetorīx dēditur; arma prōiciuntur. Reservātīs Haeduīs atque Arvernīs, sī per eōs cīvitātīs recuperāre posset, ex reliquīs captīvīs tōtī exercituī capita singula praedae nōmine distribuit.

Cæsar distributes his Forces for the Winter. A Thanksgiving decreed at Rome.

90. Hīs rēbus cōnfectīs in Haeduōs proficīscitur; cīvitātem recipit. Eō lēgātī ab Arvernīs missī quae imperāret sē factūrōs pollicentur. Imperat māgnum numerum obsidum. Legiōnēs in hīberna mittit; captīvōrum circiter xx mīlia Haeduīs Arvernīsque reddit. T. Labiēnum cum duābus legiōnibus et equitātū in Sēquanōs proficīscī iubet; huic M. Semprōnium Rutilum attribuit. C. Fabium lēgātum et L. Minucium Basilum cum legiōnibus duābus in Rēmīs conlocat, nē quam ā fīnitimīs Bellovacīs calamitātem accipiant. C. Antistium Rēgīnum in Ambivaretōs, T. Sextium in Biturīgēs, C. Canīnium Rebilum in Rutēnōs, cum singulīs legiōnibus mittit. Q. Tullium Cicerōnem et P. Sulpicium Cabillōnī et Matiscōne in Haeduīs ad Ararim reī frūmentāriae causā conlocat. Ipse Bibracte hiemāre cōnstituit.

Hīs *rēbus ex Caesaris* litterīs cōgnitīs Rōmae diērum vīgintī supplicātiō redditur.

NOTES.

REFERENCES AND ABBREVIATIONS.

cf. (confer) = *compare.*
e.g. (exempli gratia) = *for example.*
etc. (et cetera) = *and the rest; and so forth.*
i.e. (id est) = *that is.*
in fin. (in fine) = *at the end.*
lit. = *literal, literally.*
Ms. = *manuscript;* Mss. = *manuscripts.*
p. (pagina) = *page;* pp. (paginae) = *pages.*
sc. (scilicet) = *understand, supply.*

DICTIONARIES.

Crombie, — *Crombie's* Gymnasium sive Symbola Critica.
Dict. Antiqq., — *Smith's* Dictionary of Greek and Roman Antiquities.
Dict. Biog., — *Smith's* Dictionary of Greek and Roman Biography and Mythology.
Dict. Geog., — *Smith's* Dictionary of Greek and Roman Geography.
Lex. or Lexicon, — *Andrews's Freund's* Latin Lexicon, or *Harper's* Latin Dictionary.

NOTES.

A = Allen and Greenough's *New Latin Grammar;* B = Bennett's *Latin Grammar;* G = Gildersleeve-Lodge *Latin Grammar;* H = Harkness's *Complete Latin Grammar.*

BOOK I.

Events of the year 58 B.C. Consuls, L. Calpurnius Piso Caesoninus and Aulus Gabinius. I. A general description of Gaul. II. The war with the Helvetians. III. The war with Ariovistus.

Commentarii. Sketches, memoirs, which were professedly not of an elaborate kind or finished style. *Commentarii* is the title of the two historical works composed by Caesar, *De Bello Gallico* and *De Bello Civili.*

Page 1, line 1. CHAPTER 1. — **Gallia . . . tris,** *all Gaul is divided into three parts.*

Omnis, except the Roman province, **provincia,** in the southern part.

Est divisa, *is divided;* lit., has been divided. But the so-called present passive (*is divided*) in English expresses a completed action, and is therefore often used to translate the Latin perfect passive.

Quarum, partitive gen. governed by **unam.** B. 201, 1; H. 442; A. 346, *a*, 2; G. 367.

Quarum, etc. Order: unam (*partem*) quarum Belgae incolunt, Aquitani (*incolunt*) aliam (*partem*), (*ii incolunt*) tertiam (*partem*) qui linguâ ipsorum (*appellantur*) Celtae, nostrâ (*linguâ*) appellantur Galli.

2. **Belgae.** For this and all other geographical words, see Geographical Index.

3. **Ipsorum lingua,** lit., in the language of themselves = *in their own language.*

Lingua, instrumental abl. B. 218; H. 476; A. 409; G. 401.

4. **Lingua, institutis**, abl. of specification (denoting *in what respect*). B. 226; H. 480, 3; A. 418; G. 397.

Inter se, lit., among themselves = *from one another*.

5. **Flumen**, supply **dividit**.

Matrŏna and **Sequăna** have a verb (**divĭdit**) in the sing. because they are considered as a whole. B. 255, 3; H. 392, 4; A. 317, *b*; G. 285, 2. With **dividit** supply **eos** = Gallos, *the Gauls*.

7. **Horum**, partitive gen. governed by **fortissimi**.

Proptereā quod (= *propter-ea, quod*, lit., on account of these things, that) = *because*.

Cultu, *the culture* (civilization), **humanitate**, *the refinement*.

8. **Provinciae**, *of the province*, *i.e.* the Roman province in Transalpine Gaul, whence the modern *Provence*. See Map and Index.

Minime saepe, *least frequently*.

10. **Atque**, etc. Order: atque important ea (*those things*) quae pertinent ad effeminandos animos (lit., minds = *the mind*).

Effeminandos, *effeminating*, enervating. How is the gerundive used? B. 338, 3; H. 628; A. 503, 506; G. 427.

11. Before **proximi** repeat **proptereā quod**.

Germanis, *to the Germans*. Dat. limiting **proximi**. B. 192, 1; H. 434, 2; A. 384; G. 359.

12. **Quibuscum** = cum quibus.

13. **Quoque**, *also*, always follows the emphatic word.

Virtute, *in bravery*. Abl. of specification, denoting *in what respect*. B. 226; H. 480, 3; A. 418; G. 397.

14. **Fere . . . proeliis.** Take the **in**, which is a part of the meaning of **proeliis**, before **fere**, *i.e.* translate, *in almost daily battles*.

Proeliis, instrumental abl.

15. **Cum**, *when* = on which occasions.

Suis finibus, *from their territories*. **Suis** refers to the Helvetians, and **eos** to the Germans. Why? B. 244, 1; H. 503; A. 300, 1; G. 309, 1.

Finibus, abl. of separation. B. 214, 2; H. 464, 1; A. 400; G. 390, 2.

16. **Ipsi**, *they themselves*, *i.e.* the Helvetians. Look for **ipse** in the index of your grammar, and find the reference.

17. **Eorum**, *of them* (*i.e. horum omnium*). Partitive gen.

Quam . . . est, *which it has been said that the Gauls possess.* **Gallos** is subject accusative of **obtinere**, and **Gallos obtinere** (*that the Gauls possess*) depends on the word of saying, **dictum est** (which is here used impersonally). B. 330; H. 615; A. 562, 4, *b*; G. 528. Remember that in translating the subject accus. it is generally preceded by the word *that.*

18. **Continetur**, lit., it is held in = *it is bounded.*

19. **Ab**, *in the direction of.*

Page 2, line 7. **Ditissimus**, from **dives.**

8. **Marco . . . consulibus**, *Marcus Messāla and Marcus Piso being consuls* = in the consulship of Marcus, etc. This is one of the Roman methods of designating *the year* of an event. By referring to a chronological list of Roman consuls (*e.g.* in vol. 3d of Smith's Dict. of Greek and Rom. Biog. and Myth.), we find the year was 61 B.C.

M. Messāla, M. Pisone, abl. absolute without a participle. B. 227, 1; H. 489; A. 419, *a*; G. 410.

10. CHAPTER 2. — **Civitati**, *the state.* Dat. (limiting **persuasit**) of the indirect object; the direct object is the object clause **ut . . . exirent.** B. 187, ii, *a*; H. 426, 2; A. 367; G. 346, 2.

11. **Exirent.** Subjunctive of *purpose*, after **ut.** B. 295, 1; H. 565; A. 563; G. 546. Why in the imperfect tense? (Because it follows the historical perfect or secondary tense **persuasit.**) B. 267, 268, 1; H. 543, 546; A. 483, 485, *a*; G. 509.

Perfacile esse, *that it was very easy.* The subject of **esse** (represented in the translation by *it*) is the substantive clause **totius . . . potiri**; the infinitive with its subject accus. follows the verb **persuasit**, which implies a word of *saying.*

Cum . . . praestarent, *since* (because) *they excelled all in valor.*

Virtute, abl. *of specification.*

12. **Omnibus**, dat. limiting the compound **praestarent**, because the prep. (**prae**) retains its force (*i.e.* they stood *before* all, etc.). B. 187, iii, 1; H. 429; A. 370; G. 347.

Praestarent. Causal subjunct. after **cum.** B. 286, 2; H. 598; A. 549; G. 586.

Imperio, abl. governed by **potiri.** B. 218, 1; H. 477; A. 410; G. 407 .

13. **Hoc facilius**, *the more easily on this account.* **Hoc**, abl. of cause.

14. **Una ex parte**, *on one side.*

15. **Helvetium**, an adj. from *Helvetius.*

17. **Tertia**, *i.e.* tertia ex parte continentur.

20. **His . . . fiebat**, *from these circumstances it happened.*

Rebus, abl. of cause.

Minus late, *less widely*, than they wished to do.

Vagarentur, *they roamed about*, wandered. Subjunct. of result after **ut.** B. 297, 2; H. 571, 1; A. 537; G. 553, 3.

In translating the subjunctive, use those auxiliaries (when auxiliaries are necessary) which best convey the real meaning. The auxiliaries given in Latin grammars are merely those which most frequently apply.

22. **Bellandi**, *of waging war:* gen. limiting **cupidi.** B. 204, 1, 338, 1, *b*; H. 451, 1; A. 349, *a*; G. 374.

24. **Angustos . . . habere**, *that they had narrow territories.*

Se, subject accus. of **habere**; following **arbitrabantur.**

25. **Milia**, accus. of *extent of space.* B. 181; H. 417; A. 425; G. 335.

Passuum, *of paces.* Partitive gen. **Passus**, a Roman measure of length = five Roman feet. **Mille passuum** = one Roman mile ; **milia passuum** = *miles.*

28. Chapter 3. **Ea quae pertinerent**, *those things which pertained*, but with the force of "such things as pertained"; **pertinerent** is subjunct. of characteristic. B. 283, 1 and 2; H. 591, 1; A. 535; G. 631, 2. This may also be taken as a dependent clause in implied indir. disc. B. 323; H. 649, 1; A. 591, 1; G. 628.

Page 3, line 1. **Quam . . . numerum**, *as large a number as possible.* Notice this use and meaning of **quam** with the superlative. B. 240, 3; H. 159, 2; A. 291, *c*; G. 303.

3. **Suppeteret**, *might be at hand* (ready). Subjunct. of purpose. B. 282; H. 568; A. 530, 531; G. 545.

5. **Conficiendas,** *accomplishing:* a gerundive.

Biennium, *that two years:* subject accus. of **esse**; following the verb of thinking **duxerunt.**

Sibi, *for them:* dat. limiting the indeclinable adj. **satis.**

6. **In,** *for.*

9. **Sibi suscepit,** *undertook for himself, i.e.* he reserved that duty for himself.

12. **Amicus,** and that was considered a distinguished honor.

13. **Occuparet.** As **persuadet** in line 10 is a present tense, why is **occuparet** an imperfect instead of a present? Because **persuadet** is an *historical present* (= persuasit).

14. Order: itemque persuadet Dumnorigi, Haeduo, fratri Diviciaci, qui, etc.

16. **Maxime acceptus,** *especially agreeable.*

18. **Perfacile . . . perficere,** *he proves to them that to accomplish their undertakings is very easy to do.* **Conata perficere** is subject accus. of **esse,** depending on **probat.**

Factu. How is the supine in **u** used? B. 340, 2; H. 635, 1; A. 510, and Note 1; G. 436.

19. **Obtenturus esset,** *was about* (*intended*) *to seize upon;* the active periphrastic form. B. 115; H. 236; A. 195; G. 247. The subjunctive refers the assertion to Orgetorix. B. 314, 1; H. 643; A. 592, 3; G. 541.

20. **Non esse dubium,** *that it was not doubtful.* The speech now takes the form of **oratio obliqua. Quin,** *that,* is used with verbs of doubt, when they are negatived or questioned.

Galliae, partitive gen.; **totius Galliae** = *omnium Gallorum.*

21. **Plurimum possent** = *were the most powerful.* **Possent,** subjunct. of result after **quin.** B. 298; H. 595, 1; A. 558, *a*; G. 555, 2.

22. **Conciliaturum** (esse), *will procure.* Why *must* **esse** be supplied? Because it is necessary to complete the *verbal form,* fut. infin.

23. **Inter se** = *to one another.*

24. **Regno occupato,** abl. absolute. Order: sperant sese posse (*will be able*) potiri totius Galliae per tris, etc.

25. **Galliae,** gen. governed by **potiri.** B. 212, 2; H. 477, I, 3; A. 410, *a*; G. 407, N. *d.*

Posse (= *fore ut possint*).

26. Chapter 4. — **Est enuntiata** = enuntiata est.

27. **Ex . . . dicere,** *to plead his cause in chains* (lit., out of chains).

28. Order: oportebat poenam, ut cremaretur igni (abl.), sequi (*eum*) damnatum (lit., condemned = if he should be condemned).

Poenam sequi, *that the punishment should follow* (overtake), is subject of **oportebat.**

Page 4, line 1. **Die constituta,** *on the appointed day.* **Die,** abl. of *time when.* B. 230; H. 486; A. 423; G. 393. **Dictionis,** *of the pleading,* limits **die.**

2. **Familiam,** *household,* among the Romans often denoted the slaves belonging to one master. Dict. Antiqq.

Ad, *about,* when used with numerals.

5. **Ne,** *that . . . not.*

7. **Conaretur,** *was endeavoring.* Subjunct. after **cum** temporal. B. 288, 1, *B*; H. 600, II; A. 546; G. 585.

8. **Neque** = *and . . . not; i.e. and the suspicion is not wanting.*

9. **Quin ipse consciverit,** *that he himself inflicted* (lit., decreed, resolved on). **Consciverit,** subjunct. of result. B. 298; H. 595, 1; A. 558; G. 555, 2.

Sibi, *on himself.*

11. Chapter 5. — **Nihilo minus** (= **nihilomĭnus**), lit., less in nothing = *nevertheless.* **Nihilo,** abl. of deg. of diff. **Id** is defined by the clause **ut . . . exeant,** which is in apposition with it.

13. **Paratos,** an adj.

14. **Numero,** *in number;* abl. of specification.

17. **Domum,** *home.* B. 182, 1, *b*; H. 419, 1; A. 427, 2; G. 337.

Spe, abl. absol.

Sublata, *being removed:* from **tollo.**

18. **Subeunda,** *undergoing:* a gerundive from **subeo.** Order: iubent quemque efferre domo sibi trium mensium (*three months'*) molita cibaria.

Molita cibaria, *i.e.* ground corn, of which bread was made.

19. **Domo.** B. 229, 1, *b*; H. 462, 4; A. 427, 1; G. 390, 2.

22. **Uti** = ut.

25. **Oppugnarant** = oppugnaverant.

Nore′-i-am.

Receptos . . . adsciscunt = *they take to themselves and admit to themselves as allies.* For the translation of **receptos,** see H. 639; A. 496, N. 2; G. 664, R.

Sibi. B. 187, III; H. 429; A. 370; G. 347.

Page 5, line 2. **Singuli carri,** *a single wagon at a time.* Notice the force of the distributive.

Ducerentur, *could be drawn:* subjunctive of characteristic. B. 283; H. 591, 1; A. 535; G. 631, 2.

4. **Multo,** lit., by much = much. Abl. of degree of difference. B. 223; H. 479, 1; A. 414; G. 403.

7. **Non nullis locis,** *in some places.* Prep. *in* omitted.

10. **Allobrogibus . . . persuasuros** (esse), *that they would either persuade the Allobrogians.*

11. **Bono animo,** *of good mind, i.e.* well disposed: abl. of quality. B. 224, 1; H. 473, 2; A. 415; G. 400.

12. **Viderentur,** *they seemed,* subjunct. because the sentiment or thought is that of the Helvetians. B. 314, 1; H. 588, II; A. 592, 3; G. 541.

Vel (*se*) **coacturos** (*esse eos*) **vi.**

15. **Qua die conveniant** = ut ea die conveniant, *that they may assemble on that day;* or, *on which day they are to assemble;* hence **conveniant** is subjunct. of purpose. B. 282, 2; H. 590; A. 531, 2; G. 630.

16. **a. d. v. Kal. Apr.** (ante diem quintum Kalendas Aprīlīs), *the fifth day before the Calends of April.* One of the Roman methods of fixing *the day of the month.* In determining such a day the Romans always counted the day *from* which and that *to* which they reckoned. Thus, commencing with April first and counting back five days, you will fix the date = March 28th. (This reduction is based upon the Julian calendar.) B. 371, 5, *d*; H. 754; A. 631; G. p. 491.

Diem, an idiomatic accus. *as if* governed by **ante,** but **ante** governs **Kalendas.**

Aprilis, plural adj. (*īs* being the termination of the accus. plural of -i stems).

Consulibus. B.C. 58.

19. CHAPTER 7.—**Iter facere** = *to march.*

Urbe, *i.e.* Rome.

20. **Quam . . . itineribus,** *by as great journeys as he can.* B. 240, 3; H. 159, 2; A. 291, *c*; G. 303.

21. **Ulteriorem,** *farther* = Transalpinam, beyond the Alps.

Provinciae toti imperat, *he assigns to* (*i.e.* levies on) *the whole province.*

25. **Certiores . . . sunt** = *were informed.*

28. **Qui . . . dicerent** = ut illi dicerent, *who were to say* (that they might say; to say); subjunct. of purpose. B. 282, 2; H. 590; A. 531, 2; G. 630.

Sibi . . . liceat. This is the speech of the ambassadors, which is given in *oratio obliqua.*

Sibi . . . animo, lit., that they have in mind = *that they intend.*

Sibi, dat. of the possessor. B. 190; H. 430; A. 373; G. 349.

Page 6, line 1. **Haberent,** *they had* (not, they might have).

Rogare, sc. *se, that they ask,* followed by the object clause **ut . . . liceat.**

3. **Memoria,** *in memory:* abl. of means.

Lucium . . . occisum (esse), *that Lucius Cassius the consul had been slain,* in 107 B.C. Why *had been slain?* Because **occisum esse** is past with respect to **tenebat,** which is *also past.*

5. **Iugum,** *the yoke,* which consisted of two spears set upright and one across their top. Under this the conquered army was obliged to pass, without arms, in token of submission.

Concedendum (esse sibi). The student should endeavor to gain a clear idea of the nature and meaning of this construction, which is of very frequent occurrence in Latin writers. Let him observe (1) that **esse** is necessary to complete the verbal form — the passive periphrastic; (2) that **sibi** indicates the agent, in the dative case. B. 189, 1; H. 431; A. 374; G. 355; (3) that the verb is here, as it frequently is, used impersonally, *i.e.* without a subject accus., both verb and subject being expressed by a single form — a usage unknown to English;

(4) and that such forms are best translated either (*a*) by rendering the dative of the agent (sometimes, as here, understood) as if it were the subject; *that he ought to grant the request;* or (*b*) we may form a subject out of the substantive idea implied in the verb, "concession," "grant"; *that the concession should be made* by him. Order: neque existimabat homines inimico animo temperaturos (esse) ab iniuria et maleficio, facultate faciendi itineris per provinciam data.

6. **Inimico animo.** B. 224; H. 473, 2; A. 415; G. 400.

7. **Itineris faciundi,** *of making a march.* B. 339, 1; H. 623, 626; A. 503, 504; G. 428.

9. **Convenirent,** *should assemble:* B. 293, III, 2; H. 603, II, 2; A. 553; G. 572.

10. **Si . . . reverterentur.** In *oratio recta* it would be, si quid vultis, ad Idus Aprilis revertimini.

11. **Idus Aprilis,** *the Ides of April* = April 13th. The Ides fell on the 15th of March, May, July, and October, and on the 13th of the remaining months.

Reverterentur, as expressing a command, was imperative in *oratio recta.* B. 316; H. 642; A. 588; G. 652.

17. CHAPTER 8.—**Perducit,** *he constructs.*

18. **Quo** = (ut eo), *in order that,* followed by **possit,** subjunct. of purpose. B. 282, 1, *a*; H. 568, 7; A. 531, *a*; G. 545, 2.

Se invito, *he being unwilling* = against his will. Abl. absol.

21. **Negat se posse** = *he says that he cannot.*

23. **Prohibiturum,** *sc.* se esse.

24. **Spe,** abl. of separation (here governed by **de** in composition).

Navibus, abl. absol.

25. **Alii** = *some, sc.* conati transire; the **conati** expressed agrees with **Helvetii.** The meaning evidently is, that while the Helvetians generally tried to force a passage in boats and on rafts, yet *some of them* endeavored to cross by the fords of the river.

26. Order: conati nonnumquam interdiu, saepius noctu, si possent perrumpere, (*tamen*) repulsi munitione operis et concursu, etc.

27. **Possent,** subjunct. of indirect question after **si** = num. B. 300, 3; H. 649, II, 3; A. 576, *a*; G. 460, 1, *b*.

28. **Conatu,** abl. of separation (governed by **de** in composition).

Page 7, line 3. CHAPTER 9. — **Sua sponte,** *of themselves*, without the aid of others.

4. **Eo,** *through him*: abl. of means.

5. **Gratia . . . largitione,** *on account of his popularity and liberal giving*: abl. of cause. In rendering the oblique cases use *those phrases and prepositions* which best convey the real meaning.

6. **Plurimum poterat** = *was very powerful.*

8. **Novis . . . studebat,** *was eager for new things* (political changes).

9. **Beneficio,** *kindness, good services.*

12. **Sequăni,** *sc.* uti obsides dent.

13. **Itinere,** *from a march*: abl. of separation. B. 214, 2; H. 464; A. 400; G. 390, 2.

19. CHAPTER 10. — **Provinciae,** *to the province*: gen. limiting **periculo.**

Futurum (esse), *that it would happen*: used impersonally.

Ut haberet, *that it* (the province) *should have.*

20. **Locis . . . finitimos,** *adjacent to open and very fertile districts.* **Locis,** dat. limiting **finitimos.**

22. **Munitioni,** dat. limiting **praefecit,** the prep. (**prae**) retaining its force in the compound.

26. **Quā,** an adv.

Proximum = *shortest.*

Page 8, line 3. **Compluribus . . . pulsis,** *these having been defeated in several battles.*

Proeliis, instrumental abl.

4. **Citerioris,** *of the hither* = Cisalpinae.

Extremum, a noun.

12. CHAPTER 11. — **Se suaque,** *themselves and their property* (interests).

13. **Rogatum,** *to ask.* B. 340, 1, *a*; H. 633; A. 509; G. 435.

Ita . . . debuerint. The speech of the ambassadors, given in *oratio obliqua.*

Se meritos esse, *that they had deserved*, follows **legatos mittunt**, which involves the idea of *saying*.

14. Order: ut agri (*eorum*) non debuerint vastari, liberi eorum (*non debuerint*) abduci in servitutem, etc.

15. **Nostri**, gen. agreeing with **exercitus.**

18. **Certiorem faciunt** = *inform.*

22. **Sibi . . . reliqui**, *that they have nothing* (*of*) *remaining but the soil of the ground.* **Sibi**, dat. of the possessor.

23. **Reliqui**, partitive gen. after **nihil.**

Quibus rebus = *by these circumstances.*

Non . . . sibi = *that he ought not to wait.* See note on line 5, page 6. **Sibi**, dat. of the agent. B. 189, 1; H. 431; A. 374; G. 355.

28. Chapter 12.—**Fluat**, *it flows* (not, may flow), subjunct. of indirect question. B. 300, 1; H. 649, II; A. 573, 574; G. 467.

Page 9, line 1. **Ratibus**, *by means of rafts:* abl. of means. (Abl. absol. of means would do, but the former is more direct.)

3. Order: Helvetios iam (*already*) traduxisse id flumen tris partis (= *three-fourths*) copiarum.

Flumen, accus. governed by **trans** in composition. B. 179, 1; H. 413; A. 395; G. 331, R. 1.

4. **De tertia vigilia**, *in the third watch.* The Romans divided the night into four **vigiliae** or watches. The first began at sunset, the second ended at midnight, and the fourth ended at sunrise. Their length of course varied with the season of the year.

5. **Profectus**, from **proficiscor.**

7. **Adgressus**, *having attacked.*

8. **Mandarunt** = mandaverunt.

9. **In**, followed by the accus., implies that they *went to* the woods and *there* concealed themselves.

11. **Unus** = *particular.*

12. **Memoria**, abl. of time when = *within the memory.*

14. **Sive . . . sive**, *either . . . or.*

Consilio, *by the design:* abl. of cause.

Quae . . . Helvetiae, *the part of the Helvetian state which.*

15. **Pars** is emphatically repeated in **ea**, *that.*

Populo, dat. governed by the compound **intulerat,** indirect obj. B. 187, III; H. 429; A. 370; G. 347.

16. **Princeps persolvit,** *was the first to suffer.*

18. Order: quod Tigurini, eodem proelio, quo interfecerant Cassium (*etiam interfecerant*), Lucium Pisonem legatum, avum Luci Pisonis eius (*i.e. Caesar's*) soceri.

22. Chapter 13. —**Faciendum** (esse), *should be made.* Passive periphrastic form.

25. **Diebus,** abl. of time within which. B. 231; H. 487; A. 423; G. 393.

Aegerrime, *with the greatest difficulty.*

Ut . . . transirent, is in apposition with **id.**

28. **Bello,** abl. of *time when.*

29. **Egit,** *treated.*

Si pacem, etc. Divico's speech, given in *oratio obliqua,* the principles of which the student should endeavor to comprehend: "*he who knows the Oratio Obliqua knows Latin.*" See B. 313; H. 641; A. 577; G. 508.

30. **Ituros** (esse), **futuros** (esse). The omission of *esse* in the fut. inf. act. is very common.

Page 10, line 1. **Helvetios ituros** (esse), *that the Helvetians would go,* follows **egit,** which implies a word of *saying.*

2. **Persequi,** *sc.* eos.

3. **Reminisceretur,** *he should remember* (let him remember). In the *oratio recta* (*i.e.* Divico's own words), it was **reminiscere,** imperative. B. 316; H. 642; A. 588; G. 652. So, **tribueret, despiceret,** and **committeret,** farther on.

3. **Incommodi,** *disaster.* B. 206, 2; H. 454; A. 350, *c*; G. 376.

4. **Quod . . . esset,** *because he had suddenly attacked one canton.*

6. **Suis,** *sc.* sociis, or amicis, *to their companions* (friends).

8. **Didicisse,** from **disco.**

9. **Insidiis,** abl. of means.

10. **Ne committeret,** *he should not allow;* followed by the object clause **ut . . . capĕret.**

Constitissent, *they had taken their stand.*

12. **Memoriam proderet,** *should hand down* (transmit) *the memory* (of it).

13. CHAPTER 14.—**Eo . . . dari,** *that less* (*of*) *doubt is afforded* (*to*) *him on this account.* **Eo,** abl. (from *is*) of cause. **Minus,** subject. accus. of **dari**; following **respondit.**

14. **Commemorassent** = commemoravissent, subjunct. in *oratio obliqua.*

15. **Eo gravius . . . quo minus,** *the more grievously . . . the less;* lit., more grievously in that degree . . . by which the less: **eo, quo,** abl. of degree of difference, best rendered *the . . . the.* B. 223; H. 479; A. 414, *a*; G. 403.

16. **Quī sī fuisset** = *if they* (the Roman people) *had been.*

18. **Cavere,** *sc.* eum (*i.e.* populum Romanum).

Eo (eum) **deceptum** (esse), *that they had been deceived in this.*

Commissum (esse) = *that any fault had been committed.* Used impersonally.

20. **Timendum** (esse sibi) = *that they should fear.* See note on line 5, page 6.

Quod si, *but if.*

21. **Num memoriam deponere** (eum) **posse,** *could they lay aside the recollection?* A *rhetorical* question, and hence the infin. **posse** instead of the subjunct. B. 315, 2; H. 642, 2; A. 586; G. 651, R.

Num, an interrogative particle, implying that the answer will be "No."

24. **Quod gloriarentur,** *that they boasted.* The clauses beginning with **quod** are the subjects accus. of **pertinere.**

Victoria, abl. of cause.

26. **Se . . . tulisse,** *that they had inflicted injuries with impunity.*

Eodem = *to the same end.*

27. Order: enim immortalīs deos consuesse (= *consuevisse*) interdum concedere secundiores (*more prosperous*) res et diuturniorem impunitatem his, quos velint ulcisci pro eorum scelere, quo (*in order that*) homines doleant gravius ex commutatione rerum.

Page 11, line 1. **Cum**, *although*, followed by **sint** (*are*), subjunct. of concession. B. 309, 3; H. 598; A. 549; G. 587.

2. **Facturos**, *sc.* eos esse, *that they will perform*.

7. **Consuerint** = consueverint.

12. CHAPTER 15.—**Coactum habebat** = *had* (*i.e.* already possessed) *collected;* a periphrasis. B. 337, 6; H. 431, 3; A. 497, *b*; G. 238.

Qui videant = ut ii videant, *that they may observe*, or, *who are to observe;* subjunct. of purpose. B. 282, 2; H. 590; A. 531, 2; G. 630.

13. **Novissimum agmen** = *the rear*. (1) **Exercitus**, *an army;* the generic word. (2) **Agmen**, *an army in line of march*. (3) **Acies**, *an army drawn up and ready for battle*.

14. **Alieno loco**, *in an unfavorable position*. **Loco**, abl., prep. *in* omitted.

17. **Quo** = *by this*.

19. **Subsistere**, *to stand*.

Novissimo agmine, *sc.* in, *at their rear*.

20. **Proelio** = *to battle;* abl. Lit., with battle.

21. **Satis habebat**, *considered it sufficient*.

23. **Ita**, *in such a manner*, **uti**, *that*.

24. **Primum**, *sc.* agmen, *the van*, the advance.

25. **Quinis . . . senis**, *than five or six*, for each of the fifteen days; hence the use of the distributives.

Milibus, abl., after the comparative **amplius**, which is subject of **interesset**.

27. CHAPTER 16.—**Haeduos frumentum**, *corn of the Hæduans*. B. 178, 1, *a*; H. 411; A. 396; G. 339.

28. **Essent . . . polliciti**, *they had promised in the name of the state*.

Flagitare = flagitabat, *demanded*, and is called the *historical infinitive*. B. 335; H. 610; A. 463; G. 647.

Page 12, line 3. **Ne quidem**, *not even*.

4. **Frumento**, governed by **uti**. B. 218, 1; H. 477; A. 410; G. 407.

Flumine, abl. of means = (*by means of*) *the river*.

5. **Navibus**, *in boats*, abl. of the instrument.

Propterea quod (*i.e.* propter ea, quod), *on this account, because.*

Minus here = non, *not.*

7. **Diem . . . ducere,** *delayed* (*sc.* him = put him off) *day after day.* **Diem,** accus. of time *how long.* **Ducere,** *historical infin.*

Conferri . . . dicere, *they said that it* (the corn) *was being gathered, was being collected, was at hand.*

10. **Oporteret.** The subjunct. here reflects Cæsar's own past thoughts (principle of *oratio obliqua*).

14. **Annuus,** *annually.* Difference of idiom often renders it necessary to translate adjectives as adverbs.

In suos, *over his people.*

16. **Posset,** *sc.* frumentum.

17. **Sublevetur.** B. 286, 1; H. 588, II; A. 540; G. 541.

22. CHAPTER 17.—**Esse non nullos,** *that there are some,* follows **proponit,** which implies a word of *saying.* The speech of Liscus is given in *oratio obliqua.*

23. **Plurimum valeat,** *is very powerful.*

24. **Plus possint,** *are more powerful.*

26. **Quod . . . debeant,** *which they ought to furnish.* The reading of this passage in the Mss. is various.

28. **Quam,** *than;* after the comparative implied in **praeferre.**

29. **Una,** an adv.

Page 13, line 1. **Haeduis,** *from the Hæduans:* dat. rendered *from.* B. 188, 2, *d*; H. 427; A. 381; G. 347, R. 5.

Sint erepturi, *they will wrest* (take away). This so-called periphrastic form here supplies the place of the fut. subjunc. B. 269, 3; H. 541, N. 1; G. 514.

2. **Quaeque** = et quae, *and those things which.*

3. **Quin etiam** = *moreover.*

5. **Fecerit,** *he did;* subjunct. of indirect question (and would be subjunct. in *oratio recta* also). B. 300, 1. H. 649, II; A. 574; G. 467.

6. **Quam diu,** abbreviated from the full form, tam diu quam diu = *so long as.*

8. CHAPTER 18.—**Pluribus,** *several.* Abl. absol.

10. **Solo,** *sc.* eo, *him alone.*

13. **Dumnorigem,** *that Dumnorix,* subject accus. of **esse,** depending on **reperit,** a word of *perceiving.*

Audacia, abl. of quality. B. 224; H. 473, 2; A. 415; G. 400.

13. **Redempta habere,** *sc.* illum, *that he had bought up.* Refer to note on line 12, page 11.

17. **Illo licente** (from **liceor**), *he bidding* (= when he bid).

Contra = *against him.*

18. **Suam . . . familiarem** = *his property,* estate.

18. **Facultatis,** *means,* resources.

20. **Alere,** *that he maintained.* Supply *se.*

22. **Largiter posse,** *sc.* se = *that he had great influence.*

23. **Matrem collocasse** = *that he had given his mother in marriage:* supply the supine, **nuptum,** expressed below.

25. **Sororem . . . matre,** *his sister on his mother's side.*

26. **Cupere,** *wished well.*

27. **Suo nomine,** *on his own account:* abl. of cause.

Page 14, line 1. **Sit** belongs equally to **deminuta** and **restitutus.**

3. **Imperio** = (*that*) *under the government:* abl. of cause.

5. **Quod** = *as* (as to the fact that), **proelium factum,** *an unsuccessful cavalry engagement had been fought a few days before.*

Quod proelium, lit., what battle = *as to the battle which.*

6. **Diebus.** B. 223; H. 479; A. 414; G. 403.

Factum. Supply *esse,* which is very often omitted in the compound forms of the infinitive.

8. **Auxilio Caesari.** B. 191, 2. *b*; H. 433; A. 382; G. 356.

11. CHAPTER 19. — **Quibus,** *these.*

12. **Accederent,** *were added:* subjunct. of cause. B. 286, 2; H. 598; A. 549; G. 586.

13. **Traduxisset,** *he had led:* subjunct. because the statement is made on another's authority.

14. **Dandos** (esse), *should be given:* pres. inf. of the passive periphrastic conjugation.

16. **Satis causae,** *sufficient* (*of*) *cause:* partitive gen.

17. **In eum animadverteret** = *should punish him.* "Note: That *animadvertere in aliquem,* by an ellipsis of *supplicio,* signifies *to punish any one.*"

19. **Unum repugnabat** = *one consideration opposed itself.*

22. **Ne**, *that*, after verbs of fearing. B. 296, 2; H. 567, 1; A. 564;. G. 550, 2.

24. **Conaretur**, *he should attempt;* subjunct. with an idea of purpose and anticipation. B. 292; H. 605; A. 551, *b*; G. 577.

26. **Principem**, *a leading man.*

27. **Cui**, *in whom:* dat. of advantage after the phrase **fidem habebat.**

Page 15, line 1. **Ipso**, *Diviciaco;* abl. absol.

3. **Apud se**, *in his* (Cæsar's) *presence.*

4. **Causa cognita**, *his case having been investigated.*

7. CHAPTER 20. — **Ne**, *that . . . not.* Why not *ut non?* Because **statueret** is subjunct. of *purpose.*

Quid gravius, *anything too severe.*

8. **Ex . . . capere**, *feel more (of) pain on that account than himself.*

9. **Cum**, *although;* hence **posset**, subjunct. of concession.

10. **Gratia**, *on account of his popularity.*

Plurimum, *sc.* posset.

11. **Minimum posset**, *was by no means powerful.*

Per se, *i.e.* Diviciacum.

12. **Opibus**, abl. with **uteretur.**

13. **Suam** belongs to both nouns.

15. **A Caesare**, *on the part of Cæsar.*

16. (1) **Eum** = talem. (2) **Eum**, *i.e.* Cæsar.

17. **Non . . . factum** (esse), *it had not been done at his desire.*

18. **Futurum** (esse), *it would happen.*

20. **Cum**, *while.*

21. **Rogat** (ut) **faciat**. B. 295, 8; H. 565, 4; A. 565, *a*; G. 546, R. 2.

22. **Tanti . . . esse**, *that his influence with him is so great.* **Tanti**, gen. of degree of value. B. 203, 3; H. 448, 1; A. 417; G. 380.

23. **Rei publicae iniuriam**, *the injury to the state;* **rei publicae**, obj. gen. limiting **iniuriam.**

Eius voluntati = *for the sake of his good will.*

25. **Quae** (*what*); hence **reprehendat** (*he censures*, blames), subjunct. of indir. question. B. 300, 1; H. 649, II; A. 574; G. 467.

28. **Praeterita**, *the past*, lit., things past; a perf. part.

Fratri, *for* (the sake of) *his brother*.

29. **Dumnorigi**, *over Dumnorix;* dat. of disadvantage.

Agat, *he does;* subjunct. of indirect question.

Page 16, line 1. CHAPTER 21.—**Certior factus** = *having been informed.*

2. **Hostis** (*that the enemy*), subject accus. of **consedisse**.

Sub, *near*, at the base of.

Milia. B. 181; H. 417; A. 425; G. 335.

Passuum, partitive gen. governed by **octo milia**.

4. **Qui . . . misit** = misit (*milites*) ut ii cognoscerent, and hence the subjunct. in a relative clause of purpose. B. 282, 2; H. 590; A. 531, 2; G. 630.

5. **Facilem esse**, *sc.* ascensum.

Legatum . . . praetore = *his lieutenant with praetorian power.*

7. **Summum iugum**, *the highest ridge.*

8. **Quid . . . sit**, *what his plan is:* **consili**, partitive gen. limiting **quid**.

9. **Itinere**, instrumental abl.

11. **Rei**, gen. limiting **peritissimus**.

Habebatur, *was considered.*

12. **In**, *sc.* exercitu.

14. CHAPTER 22.—**Prima luce** = *at daybreak, dawn.*

Summus mons, *the top of the mountain.* B. 241, 1; H. 498, 1; A. 293; G. 291, R. 2.

15. Repeat **cum** before **ipse**.

16. **Neque . . . aut . . . aut** = *and . . . neither . . . nor.* **Neque** = ne + que, *and not.*

18. **Equo admisso** = *his horse at full speed;* lit, urged on.

19. **Montem . . . cognovisse.** Cæsar gives the report of Considius in *oratio obliqua.*

20. **Insignibus**, *ornaments*, decorations.

22. **Aciem instruit**, *he draws up his army in battle array.* See note on line 13, page 11.

22. **Erat . . . praeceptum** = *he had been instructed* (enjoined); or, instruction (command) had been given him. The verb is used impersonally. Compare note on line 5, page 6.

26. **Nostros**, *our men; sc.* milites.

Multo die = *late in the day;* in contrast with **prima luce**.

27. **Et . . . et . . . et**, *both . . . and . . . and.*

Montem (*that the mountain*), subject accus. of **teneri**, *was held.*

29. **Vidisset** (*he had seen*), subjunct. in *oratio obliqua*. **Pro viso**, *as seen.*

Page 17, line 1. Order: eo die sequitur hostīs intervallo (*abl. of distance*) quo (*with which*) consuerat (= *consueverat*).

4. CHAPTER 23.—**Diei**. B. 201, 3, *a*; H. 446, 5; A. 359, *b*.

Supererat, from **supersum**.

5. **Metiri**, supply *eum*, its subject accus.

7. **Milibus**, abl. of deg. of diff.; **amplius** does not affect the construction.

8. **Rei frumentariae**, *a supply of corn.* B. 187, III; H. 429; A. 370; G. 347.

Prospiciendum (esse sibi) = *he ought to provide for.* See note on line 5, page 6.

11. **Seu . . . sive** (line 14), *either . . . or.*

12. **Existimarent** (*they thought*), subjunct. because it represents the thought of the Helvetians. So **commisissent**, **confiderent**. B. 286, 1; H. 588, II; A. 540; G. 541.

Eo, *for this reason:* abl. of cause.

14. **Re**, abl. of separation, depending on **intercludi**.

15. **Posse**, *sc.* Romanos, *that they could.*

18. CHAPTER 24.—**Animum advertit** (= animadvertit), *he observes*, lit., turns his attention to.

20. **Qui sustineret** = *ut is sustineret.* B. 282, 2; H. 590; A. 531, 2; G. 630.

21. **Triplicem aciem**, *a triple line of battle* = his army in three lines: as was usual in Roman tactics.

23. **Proxime**, *lately, recently.*

26. **Eum**, *i.e.* locum.

Constiterant, *had taken their position:* from **consisto**.

Page 18, line 1. **Confertissima acie,** *in very dense array.*

2. **Phalange,** *a phalanx:* consisting of a dense mass of soldiers in a rectangular form, each of whom held his shield over his head, like the soldiers of the Roman **testudo.** See note on line 30, page 45.

Sub, *close to.*

4. CHAPTER 25. — **Suo,** *sc.* equo remoto, implied in **remotis equis.**

6. **Suos,** *his men; sc.* milites.

7. **Pilis,** abl. absol.

9. **Gallis . . . impedimento,** *it was a great hindrance to the Gauls in fighting.* **Gallis impedimento.** B. 191, 2, *a*; H. 433; A. 382; G. 356.

10. **Pluribus,** *several.*

11. **Uno . . . colligatis,** *having been pierced by one blow of the javelins and* (thus) *fastened together.*

Cum, *because.*

12. **Evellere,** *sc.* ferrum.

13. **Multi,** being an emphatic word, precedes **ut** (*so that*), which usually stands first in its clause.

14. **Nudo,** *with unprotected.*

16. **Pedem referre** = *to retire, retreat.*

Mille, acc. of extent of space.

17. **Se recipere,** *to betake themselves.*

19. **Agmen . . . claudebant,** *closed the enemy's line of march.*

Novissimis praesidio, *a protection* (defence) *to the rear.* See references to line 9, above.

Novissimis, *sc.* militibus = *novissimo agmini.*

20. **Latere aperto** (abl. absol.), *on the unprotected flank* = on the right flank, because the shields were carried on the left side.

23. **Conversa . . . intulerunt,** *advanced their standards turned in two directions* = "faced about and advanced in two divisions."

24. **Acies,** *sc.* acies signa intulit.

25. **Tertia,** *sc.* acies signa intulit.

26. CHAPTER 26. — **Ancipiti proelio,** *in a double conflict.*

28. **Alteri . . . alteri,** *the one party* (the Helvetians), *the other party* (the Boii and Tulingi).

Page 19, line 2. **Proelio,** abl. of time when (*in this whole battle*).

Cum, *although:* hence the concessive subjunct. **pugnatum sit.** B. 309, 3; H. 598; A. 549; G. 587.

Hora septima = *one o'clock.* The Roman day, commencing at sunrise and ending at sunset, was divided into twelve hours.

3. **Aversum,** turned away = *put to flight.*

4. **Ad . . . noctem,** *till late at night.*

12. **Ierunt,** from **eo.**

Partem, acc. of duration of time.

16. **Lingonas,** Greek form of the accus.

Litteras, *a letter.*

17. **Iuvarent,** subjunct. of prohibition (command): in *oratio recta* (*i.e.* in Caesar's letter), imperative.

Neve. B. 282, 1, *d*; H. 561, 4; A. 450, N. 5; G. 444, 2.

18. **Qui si,** *if they,* **iuvissent,** *should assist* (them); in *oratio recta,* fut. perf. (**iuveritis**). B. 319, B, *a*; H. 644, 2.

Loco. *In* omitted. *In* **quo** (*habuisset*) **Helvetios.**

Se habiturum (esse), *that he would consider* (them), depends on **litteras . . . misit.**

22. CHAPTER 27.—**Qui** is subject of **paruerunt.**

30. **Ne,** *lest,* that.

Page 20, line 1. **Supplicio afficerentur** = *they would be punished.*

2. **Suam fugam** (subject accus. of **posse**), *that their flight.*

4. **Prima,** *at the beginning of.* B. 241, 1; H. 498, 1; A. 293; G. 291, R. 2.

Egressi, masc. agreeing with **milia,** line 29, p. 19, *in sense.*

6. CHAPTER 28.—**Quod,** *this.* B. 251, 6; H. 510; A. 308, *f*; G. 610, R. 1.

Resciit = **rescivit.**

Order: imperavit his per quorum (*whose*) finīs ierant, uti conquirerent, etc.

8. **Reductos,** *sc.* eos, *them* (when) *brought back.*

In . . . numero, *i.e.* they were put to death.

13. **Quo**, *with which* = ut eo; hence **tolerarent**, subjunct. of purpose.

14. **Facerent** = *they should give* (make up).

16. **Id . . . fecit**, *he did that chiefly for this reason.*

21. Order: concessit Haeduis petentibus, ut collocarent Boios in suis finibus, quod cogniti erant egregia virtute (*they had been ascertained* (to be) *of eminent valor*). The object of **concessit** is the object clause **ut . . . collocarent**.

Virtute, abl. of quality (description). B. 224; H. 473, 2; A. 415; G. 400.

24. **Atque . . . erant**, *to what they themselves were* (in).

26. Chapter 29.—**Tabulae**, lit., *tablets*, like folding slates; hence, *lists*, or *registers.*

27. **Litteris Graecis**, *in Greek letters;* not in the Greek language.

Confectae, *prepared*, made out.

28. **Ratio**, *an account.*

Qui, *what*, interrog. adj. pron.

29. **Exisset**, *had gone out;* subjunct. of indirect question.

Eorum qui possent has the force of "*of such as were able;*" hence *possent* is subjunct. of characteristic. B. 283, 1; H. 591, 1; A. 535; G. 631, 2.

Page 21, line 2. **Capitum**, *souls.*

5. **Ad**, *about.*

6. **Eorum**, governed by **censu**, *an enumeration.*

10. Chapter 30.—**Principes**, *the leading men.*

Gratulatum, *to congratulate* (him): supine.

11. **Intellegere . . . haberent** (line 20), *oratio obliqua:* in which all declarative sentences are expressed by the infin. with a subject accus., and dependent clauses take the subjunct.

12. **Helvetiorum . . . Romani**, *injuries of the Helvetians to the Roman people* (= inflicted by the H. on the R. people). **Helvetiorum**, subjective gen.; **populi**, objective gen.: both governed by **iniuriis.**

13. **Ex usu**, *to the advantage.*

15. **Eo consilio**, *with this design;* abl. of cause.

Rebus, abl. absol.

21. **Uti sibi liceret**, *that it might be allowed* (*to*) *them.*

In, *for.*

23. **Ex**, *with.*

25. **Ne quis** (indef. pron.), *that no one.*

Nisi, *sc.* ii, *those.*

26. **Consilio**, *agreement.*

Inter . . . sanxerunt, *they ratified* (*by an oath*, **iure iurando**) *to one another;* the object of the verb is the object clause **ne . . . enuntiaret.**

Page 22, line 1. CHAPTER 31. — **Secreto in occulto**, *in a secret place apart* (from others). **Secreto**, without participation by others.

In occulto, in a place of concealment.

2. **Agere**, *to treat*, act.

3. **Caesari** = *Cæsar's;* dat. of reference. B. 188, I. N.; H. 525, 4, N.; A. 377; G. 350.

Non . . . laborare, *that they strove and labored no less for this.*

4. **Id** is governed by **contendere**, and refers to **ne . . . impetrarent**, *that those things might not be divulged, which they might say* (not, had said, because **dixissent** = *dixerimus* in *oratio recta*), *than that they might obtain*, etc.

9. **Harum**, *of these* (factions) : partitive gen. limiting **alterius**, *of one.*

11. **Inter se**, *with one another.*

12. **Factum esse**, *it came to pass*, happened.

15. **Copias**, *the abundance*, resources.

16. **Traductos** (esse), *had been brought over.* **Esse**, *sc.* eos, *they are.*

18. **Clientis**, *allies, vassals*, of a more powerful people. **Semel . . . iterum**, lit., once and again = *again and again.*

19. **Accepisse**, *sc.* se, with which the part. **pulsos** agrees; *that having been defeated they had suffered*, etc.

20. **Quibus . . . proeliis** = *by these battles.*

21. **Qui.** Supply *eos; that they who.*

22. **Hospitio.** "The relation of **hospes** to his Roman friend was next in importance to that of **cliens**. The hospitality of the Romans was either **hospitium privatum**, or **publicum**." **Plurimum potuissent**, *had been the most powerful.*

27. **Quo minus essent**, lit., *that they would be the less:* translate, *to be.* The negative in **quo minus** is not to be translated, as it is already implied in **recusaturos** (esse). B. 295, 3; H. 568, 8; A. 558, *b*; G. 549.

28. **Unum**, *the only one.*

29. **Potuerit**, *could:* subjunct. in *oratio obliqua*, and was also subjunct. of characteristic in *oratio recta*, on account of **unum**. B. 283, 2; H. 591, 5; A. 535, *b*; G. 631, 1.

31. **Postulatum**, *to ask.* B. 340, 1; H. 633; A. 509; G. 435.

Page 23, line 1. **Peius**, *a worse thing*, subject accus. of **accidisse**, *had happened.*

4. **Esset**, *was.* *Oratio obliqua.*

5. **Sequanos**, subject accus. of **decedere**: translate, *the Sequanians to depart.*

6. **Harudum hominum**, *Harudians.*

7. **Quibus**, *for whom*, dat. of advantage.

8. **Sedes**, *abodes*, homes.

11. **Conferendum . . . Gallicum** (agrum), *was the Gallic land to be compared.*

12. **Hanc**, *this* = ours, the Gallic. H. 507, 2; A. 297, *a*; G. 305, and 4.

14. **Autem**, *moreover*, besides. **Ut semel**, when once = *as soon as.*

15. **Quod**, *which;* adj. pron. **Ad**, *near.*

16. **Nobilissimi cuiusque**, *of all the most illustrious.* B. 252, 5, *c*; H. 515, 2; A. 313, *b*; G. 318, 2.

17. **Et . . . edere**, *and that he put forth upon them all* (kinds of) *examples and tortures*, *i.e.* he made *examples* of his hostages by *torturing* them.

18. **Si qua**, *if any.* See B. 252, 1; H. 512, 1; A. 149, and *b*; G. 107, 1, R.

19. **Esse**, *sc.* eum, *that he is.*

22. **Quid auxili**, *some (of) help.*

23. **Omnibus . . . faciendum**, *the same thing must be done by all the Gauls.*

Gallis. B. 189, 1; H. 431; A. 374; G. 355.

24. **Ut . . . emigrent** defines **idem** and **quod**.

26. **Enuntiata sint**, *should be divulged.* The regular form

would be **enuntiata essent** (= **enuntiata erunt** in *oratio recta*), since an *historical* tense introduces the speech.

27. **Non** (se) **dubitare,** *that he did not doubt.*

28. **Sumat,** *would take = would inflict;* subjunct. in *oratio obliqua*, and would also be subjunct. in *oratio recta* in consequence of **quin.** B. 298; H. 595, 1; A. 558, *a*; G. 555, 2.

Caesarem . . . posse, *that Cæsar . . . could.*

30. **Deterrere** has for object the object clause **ne. . . traducatur.** See note, line 27, page 22.

31. **Rhenum**: B. 179, 3; H. 413; A. 395; G. 331, R. 1.

32. **Posse,** *i.e.* Caesarem.

Page 24, line 1. CHAPTER 32.—**Habita,** *having been delivered.*

3. **Unos,** *alone.*

4. **Nihil,** *none.*

Rerum, partitive gen.

Facerent, *did.* Subordinate clause in ind. disc.

7. **Respondere, permanere,** historical infin. B. 335; H. 610; A. 463; G. 647.

8. **Neque** = et non, *and . . . not.*

10. Order: fortunam Sequanorum esse (*is*) miseriorem gravioremque prae (*in comparison with*) (*fortuna*) reliquorum hoc (*on this account;* abl. of cause).

11. **Soli,** *they alone.*

13. **Absentis,** *even when absent.*

15. **Tamen,** *notwithstanding, i.e.* their hard condition. Order: vero omnes cruciatus essent perferendi Sequanis (*by the Sequanians;* dat. of agent.

20. CHAPTER 33.—**Sibi curae,** *a care to him.* B. 191, 2, *a*; H. 433; A. 382; G. 356.

21. **Et . . . suo,** *both by his* (Cæsar's) *services.* See chapters 35, 40, and 43.

22. **Iniuriis,** dative.

24. **Secundum,** *in accordance with.*

Quare, an interrog. word, making **putaret** subjunct. of indirect question.

Sibi. See references to **Sequanis,** above.

29. **Quod,** rel. pron. referring to the preceding clause.

Page 25, line 1. **Tanto** = *the great.*

2. **Paulatim . . . consuescere,** *moreover, for the Germans gradually to become accustomed,* depends on **videbat,** and is at the same time subject accus. of *esse* understood.

5. **Periculosum,** neuter accus. agreeing with the clause **Germanos . . . venire.**

Sibi temperaturos (esse), *would restrain themselves,* B. 187, II, *a* ; H. 426, 4, N. ; A. 367 ; G. 346, 2.

6. **Quin exirent** = *from going forth.* B. 298 ; H. 595 ; A. 558 ; G. 555.

7. **Ut,** *as.*

8. **Fecissent,** *had done:* subjunct. of Cæsar's past thought (principle of *oratio obliqua*).

10. **Quibus . . . putabat,** *he thought that he ought to oppose these things as early as possible.* With **occurendum** supply *esse sibi,* and see note on line 5, page 6.

Rebus. B. 187, III ; H. 429; A. 370 ; G. 347.

12. **Spiritus,** *airs.*

15. Chapter 34. — **Qui postularent** = *ut ii postularent* (subjunct. of purpose).

16. **Medium utriusque,** *central with respect to them both.* B. 204, and 1 ; H. 451, 2 ; A. 349, *a* ; G. 374.

17. **Re publica,** *the common welfare.*

18. **Ipsi,** dat. of the possessor.

19. **Venturum fuisse,** *would have come:* corresponding to the plup. subjunct. in the principal clause of a conditional sentence (apodŏsis) in *oratio recta.* B. 321, A, 2, *a* ; H. 647 ; A. 589, *b*, 2 ; G. 597, 4.

20. **Quid . . . velit,** *he wishes anything from him.* "Here we may also notice the expression **velle aliquem aliquid,** *to want a thing from a person, e.g.* quid me vis ?" B. 178, 1, *a* ; H. 411 ; A. 396 ; G. 341, N. 2.

24. **Videri** (*that it seemed*) has for subject accus. the clauses **quid . . . esset,** which are qualified by **mirum.**

Quid Caesari negoti esset, lit., what of business there was to Cæsar = *what business Cæsar had.*

25. **Caesari,** dat. of the possessor.

26. **Negoti,** partitive gen.

Page 26, line 1. CHAPTER 35.— **Tanto . . . adfectus,** *having been treated with his own and the Roman people's very great kindness.*

2. **Cum,** *since,* because : hence **appellatus esset,** causal subjunct. in *oratio obliqua.*

Suo, Cæsar's.

3. **Hanc gratiam referret,** *he was making this requital.* "Referre is thus construed : **Gratiam alicui referre,** to repay a favor to any one. **Referre ad senatum,** to lay before the senate. **Referre aliquem,** to resemble any one. **Refert patris,** it concerns my father. **Refert mea,** it concerns me."

5. **Dicendum** (esse) **sibi** = *that he ought to speak.* See note, line 5, page 6.

6. **Haec esse,** *that these are the things.*

7. **Quam,** *any :* indef. adj. pron. from *quis.*

10. **Eius** = *Ariovisti.*

11. **Iniuria,** *unjustly ;* an adverbial abl.

13. **Gratiam,** *good will.*

14. **Marco Messāla.** See note on line 8, page 2.

15. **Censuisset,** *had decreed.*

16. **Provinciam.** Provinces and the functions of various officers were assigned by lot. The lots or *sortes* were thrown into a narrow-necked urn (*situla, sitella, urna*), and drawn forth one at a time. Dict. Antiqq.

Quod posset, *as far as he could.* **Posset,** subjunct. in a relative clause implying restriction. B. 283, 5 ; H. 591, 3 ; A. 535, *d* ; G. 627, R. 1.

18. **Se** is repeated from line 14 on account of the long parenthesis.

20. CHAPTER 36.— **Jus esse,** etc. *Oratio obliqua.* Remember 1, declarative sentences are expressed by the inf. with a subject accus. ; 2, dependent sentences (*i.e.*, conditional, interrogative, temporal, and causal sentences) which, in their nature are *not* declarative, have their verbs in the subjunct.

23. **Ad,** *according to.*

28. **Essent,** belongs equally to **congressi.**

29. **Qui faceret,** *because he was making* = cum is faceret, hence the subjunct. of cause (*i.e. faceret* would be subjunct.

in *oratio recta* also). B. 283, 3, *a*; H. 592; A. 535, *e*; G. 633.

Page 27, line 2. **Eo**, *that* (condition, stipulation).

3. **Convenisset**, *had been agreed upon.*

4. **Fecissent**, *they should do.* This represents the fut. perf. of the direct disc.

Longe . . . afuturum (esse), *the name of brothers of the Roman people would be far away* (= useless) *from them* (eis, dat.).

5. **Quod**, *that* = as to the fact that; serving to introduce the subject of remark. B. 299, 2; H. 588, II, 3, N.; A. 572, *a*; G. 525, 2.

7. **Congrederetur**, *he might meet him* (in battle). In *oratio recta*, imperative (**congredere**). B. 316; H. 642; A. 588; G. 652.

8. **Intellecturum**, *sc.* eum esse, *that he would learn.*

Quid, *what;* accus. of specification.

10. **Possent** = *could do.*

13. Chapter 37.—**Haedui**, *sc.* veniebant.

Questum, *to complain;* supine.

16. **Treveri**, *sc.* veniebant questum.

19. **Quibus** = *by these.*

Maturandum (esse) **sibi** = *that he ought to make haste.*

20. **Ne**, *lest.*

25. Chapter 38.—**Tridui**, gen. of measure = trium dierum.

Viam. B. 176, 4, *a*; H. 409; A. 390; G. 333, 2.

Page 28, line 1. **Sibi praecavendum** (esse), *that he ought to take precaution;* or, *that precaution should be taken by him.*

5. **Ducendum**, *protracting.*

6. **Ut**, *as if.*

8. **Pedum sexcentorum**, *than six hundred feet;* gen. of measure; a subdivision of the gen. of quality. **Amplius** does not influence the construction. B. 217, 3; H. 471, 4; A. 407, *c*; G. 296, R. 4.

9. **Radices . . . contingant**, *the banks of the river on each side touch the base* (roots) *of the mountain.*

10. **Ripae**, nom., subject of *contingant*, of which **radices** is the object.

11. **Hunc** (*montem*) is governed by **circum** in composition.

16. Chapter 39.— **Causa,** *for the sake:* abl. of cause.

18. **Germanos,** *that the Germans,* subject accus. of **esse,** *were.*

20. **Congressos,** *having met.*

21. **Aciem,** *the look.*

23. **Non mediocriter,** *in no ordinary manner.*

24. **Hic,** *sc.* timor.

Praefectis, *the prefects.* Each consul named twelve superior officers (for the infantry and cavalry of the Roman allies), who were termed **Praefecti Sociorum,** and corresponded to the legionary tribunes. Dict. Antiqq.

26. **Usum,** *experience.*

27. **Quorum . . . petebat,** *one of whom having assigned one reason, another another* (reason), *which he said was a necessary one for departing, begged.* The form **alius alia,** etc., is quite idiomatic. The literal meaning is, "another of whom, another reason being assigned (by him)." B. 253, 2; H. 516, 1; A. 315, *c*; G. 221, R. 1.

31. **Voltum fingere,** *to feign a countenance* = to hide their fear by feigning calmness and composure.

Page 29, line 3. **Castris.** Prep. *in* omitted; a very common omission with nouns qualified by **totus.**

6. **Quique** = et qui, *and those who.*

7. Order: (*ii*) ex his qui volebant se existimari.

10. **Aut . . . timere,** *or that they feared for the supply of corn, that it might not be brought up conveniently enough.*

Ut = *that . . . not,* after words denoting fear. B. 296, 2; H. 567, 1; A. 564; G. 550, 2.

12. **Signa ferri,** *the standards to be advanced* = the army to move.

13. Order: milites non fore audientīs (*obedient*) dicto nec laturos (*esse*) signa propter timorem.

16. Chapter 40.— **Omnium ordinum,** *of all ranks.* **Ordo** is used as equivalent to **centuria,** and the first centuries in a legion are sometimes called **primi ordines** (B. G. v. 28, 44). Even the centurions of the first centuries are occasionally called *primi ordines* (B. G. v. 30; vi. 7).

18. **Sibi quaerendum** (esse) = *they ought to inquire.*

20. **Se consule** = *in his consulship.*

22. **Sibi . . . persuaderi** = *that he at least was persuaded.* In translating such impersonal forms, the best method is to render the indirect object as the subject. B. 187, II, *b*; H. 426, 3; A. 372; G. 217.

24. **Gratiam,** *good will,* friendship.

25. **Quod si,** *but if.*

26. **Tandem,** *in the world,* gives force and spirit to a question.

27. **Sua,** *their own.*

28. **Periculum,** *that a trial,* **factum** (esse), *had been made.*

Page 30, line 2. **Factum,** *sc.* esse periculum.

Servili tumultu, *in the insurrection of the slaves;* conducted by Spartacus, many of whose gladiators were Germans.

3. **Quos.** The antecedent is implied in **servile** = servorum.

Aliquid, *somewhat,* adverbial accus. H. 416, 2; A. 397, *a*; G. 338.

5. **Quantum boni** (partitive gen.), *how much* (*of good*).

9. **Congressi** = *having fought.*

10. **Illorum,** *of the former.*

12. **Quos,** *any:* indef. pron. from quis.

13. Order: hos (*that these*), si quaererent, posse reperire Ariovistum (*that A.*), Gallis defatigatis diuturnitate belli, cum, etc.

15. **Neque . . . fecisset,** *and had made no show of himself* (for the purpose of fighting).

16. Order: subito adortum (*having attacked*) (eos) iam desperantīs, etc.

17. **Ratione,** lit., by system, method = *by stratagem.*

18. **Cui rationi,** etc. It will be better here to transfer the noun (**ratione**) to the antecedent clause, and translate the latter first, thus: *that not even himself hoped that our armies could be entrapped by that stratagem, for which there had been opportunity, etc.*

21. **Qui,** *sc.* eos, *that those who.*

In . . . simulationem, *to a pretence about a supply of corn.*

22. **Conferrent,** *ascribed,* attributed.

28. **Quod,** etc., *as to the fact that the soldiers are said not to intend to be obedient to the word* (of command).

29. **Nihil** ≑ *non*, but stronger.

Scire, *sc.* se.

Quibuscumque, *that to whomsoever;* dat. limiting **dicto audiens.**

31. **Male . . . gesta,** *on account of their affairs having been badly managed;* abl. absol. of cause.

32. **Esse convictam,** *had been proved* (on them).

Suam, *that his own*, is rendered emphatic by its position in the sentence and by being placed before its noun.

Innocentiam, *integrity, i.e.* in respect to any charge of peculation or plunder.

Page 31, line 3. **Longiorem,** *a more distant.*

Conlaturus fuisset, *he had intended to defer:* act. periphrastic form to express *intention.*

4. **Repraesentaturum** (esse), *would do immediately.*

De, *in; i.e.* after the fourth watch had begun.

5. **Quam primum,** *as soon as possible.*

9. **Praetoriam cohortem,** *a praetorian cohort;* a select troop which attended the person of the general or (as he was primitively called) **praetor** of the Roman army. Dict. Antiqq.

14. Chapter 41.—**Innata est,** *arose*, sprung up (from *innascor*).

15. **Ei . . . egit** = *thanked him.* An idiomatic phrase.

18. **Ordinum,** *ranks.* See note on line 16, page 29.

19. **Egerunt,** *acted*, strove.

Caesari. B. 187, II, *a*; H. 426, 1, N. 2; A. 368, 2.

21. **Summa,** *the management.*

Suum esse, to be theirs = *belonged to them.*

Imperatoris, possessive predicate gen. B. 198, 3; H. 439, 447; A. 343, *c*; G. 366.

23. **Ei,** *in him:* dat. governed by **fidem habebat** = confidebat.

Ex aliis = *of (all) others.*

24. **Milium,** *sc.* passuum, *miles;* limiting **circuitu,** *by a circuit.*

Amplius. See note, line 8, page 28.

25. **Locis,** *sc.* in.

26. **Cum,** *as,* because; hence **intermitteret,** subjunct. of cause.

28. **A nostris** (*sc.* copiis), *from ours.* B. 223; H. 491, III, 3; A. 414; G. 403.

Page 32, line 2. CHAPTER 42.—**Quod,** etc., the message of Ariovistus in *oratio obliqua.*

Id licere = *that that might;* **per se** = *so far as he was concerned.*

3. **Se** in **seque** is subject accus. of **posse.**

6. **Petenti,** *sc.* ei.

9. **Fore uti desisteret,** lit., it would happen that he would desist = *that he would desist;* a periphrase for the fut. infin. B. 270, 3; H. 571, 1; 619, 2; A. 569, *a*; G. 248.

Pertinacia, abl. of separation.

11. **Ultro citroque,** thither and hither = *from the one side to the other.*

12. **Quem,** *any.*

14. **Veniret.** In *oratio recta,* uterque veniat, *let both come.*

15. **Ratione,** *manner,* way.

18. **Omnibus . . . detractis,** *all the horses having been taken from the Gallic horsemen.*

Equis, abl. absol.; **equitibus,** a dat. rendered *from.* B. 188, 2, *d*; H. 427; A. 381; G. 345, R. 1.

19. **Eo** = **iis** = *on them.*

21. **Quid . . . facto** = *any need of action.* **Facto,** perf. part. governed by **opus.** B. 218, 2, *c*; H. 477, III; A. 411, *a*; G. 406.

26. **Ad . . . rescribere,** *is transferring it to the cavalry,* a more honorable service. The joke consists in the fact that this phrase also means "to enroll among the knights" or *equites,* who were an aristocratic class in Rome.

28. CHAPTER 43.—**Satis,** *quite.*

Page 33, line 4. **Constiterunt,** *took their stand.*

5. **Ex equis,** from horses = *on horseback.*

6. **Denos,** *ten apiece.* Notice the force of the distributive.

7. **Ventum est** (ab illis) = *they came.*

Initio, abl. of time.

10. **Missa,** *sc.* essent.

Quam rem, *that this thing.*

11. **Illum**, *that he*, subject accus. of **consecutum** (esse).

14. **Quam**, *how, what.*

15. **Ipsis**, *for themselves*, the Romans.

17. **In eos** = in regard to them, *in their favor.*

Ut, *how*: hence **tenuissent**, subjunct. of indirect question (in *oratio obliqua*).

21. **Sui . . . deperdere**, *should lose nothing of their own.* **Sui**, partitive gen. from *suus.*

23. **Eis**, *from them*: dat.

27. **At**, *at least*, yet.

Quos amplius, *any more.*

29. CHAPTER 44.—**Pauca**, lit., a few things = *briefly.*

Page 34, line 4. **Ipsis** = *Gallis*, implied in **Gallia.**

5. **Iure**, *according to the law* (right).

7. **Sibi**, *on him.*

11. **Paratum**, *ready*: an adj.

Uti, *to enjoy.*

14. **Ornamento**, *a distinction.*

20. **Quod**, *as to the fact that.*

22. **Nisi**, *without.*

24. **Prius quam**, *before.*

27. **Quid . . . vellet**, *what did he mean* (want)?

Sibi, ethical dat. B. 188, 2, *b*; H. 432; A. 380; G. 351.

28. **Hanc Galliam**, this Gaul = *this part of Gaul.*

29. **Ut . . . sic**, *as . . . so.*

Concedi non oporteret, *it would be proper* (right) *that no concession should be made.*

30. **Quod interpellaremus**, *because we were interrupting; quod* here = *on the ground that*, hence the subjunct. of cause (which was required in *oratio recta* also). B. 286, 1; H. 588, II; A. 540, 2; G. 541.

32. **Quod.** See references, line 5, page 27.

Page 35, line 1. **Rerum**, gen. limiting **imperitum.** B. 204, 1; H. 451, 1; A. 349, *a*; G. 374.

2. **Allobrogum**, *with the Allobrogians.*

6. **Debere se**, *that he ought.*

Caesarem, *that Cæsar*, subject accus. of **habere**, *has* (it).

8. **Qui nisi** = *unless he.*

10. **Interfecerit,** *he should kill:* perf. subj. In *oratio recta,* fut. perf. ind.

11. Order: sese (*that he*) esse facturum gratum (*a thing pleasing*) multis, etc.

13. **Compertum habere** = *had learned.* B. 337, 7; H. 431, 3; A. 497, *b*; G. 238.

14. **Quod si,** *but if.*

Discessisset, *he should depart;* in *oratio recta,* fut. perf. ind.

19. CHAPTER 45.—**In . . . sententiam,** *to this purport.*

20. **Negotio,** *from the business;* abl. of separation, depending on **de** in composition.

21. **Pati,** *allowed.*

23. **Esse Ariovisti,** *belonged to Ariovistus.* B. 198, 3; H. 447; A. 343, *b*; G. 366.

Bello . . . Arvernos, depends on **dicta sunt.**

25. **Quibus,** *whom;* not, to whom, because *had forgiven* (**ignovisset**) is transitive in English.

Neque, *and . . . not.*

27. **Antiquissimum . . . tempus,** *all the most ancient time* = the greatest antiquity. B. 252, 5, *c*; H. 515, 2; A. 313, *b*; G. 318, 2.

30. **Quam . . . voluisset,** *which* (though) *conquered in war, they* (the senate) *had wished should enjoy its own laws.* **Quam** is subj. accus. of **uti.**

Page 36, line 1. CHAPTER 46.—**Nuntiatum est** = *word is brought:* the subject (*nuntius*) being implied in the (impersonal) verb.

2. **Tumulum,** governed by **propius.** "*Propius* and *proxime,* from *prope,* are also used as prepositions with the accusative." B. 141, 3; H. 420, 5; A. 432, *a*; G. 359, N. 1.

5. **Quod,** *any:* adj. pron. from **qui.**

Suis (*sc.* militibus), *his men.*

8. **Committendum** (esse), *that it should be allowed.* The inf. without a subject *i.e.* impersonally.

9. **Per fidem,** *through good faith* in Cæsar's intentions.

10. **Elatum est** (*it was carried out*) = *it was reported.*

11. **Omni . . . interdixisset,** *had interdicted the Romans from all Gaul.*

Gallia, abl. of separation; **Romanis**, dat. governed by the compound **interdixissent** (subjunct. of indirect question).

13. **Ut,** *how;* introducing an indirect question.

18. CHAPTER 47.—**Coeptae essent,** *had begun* (subj. in *oratio obliqua*). Why not *coepissent?* B. 133, 1; H. 299, 1; A. 205, *a*; G. 423, N. 3.

Neque = ne + que, *and . . . not.*

19. **Constitueret,** *he would appoint:* instead of infin. with accus. B. 296, 1; H. 565; A. 563, *b*; G. 546.

20. **Minus** = non, *not.*

21. **Eo,** *for this reason:* abl. of cause.

23. **Quin conicerent** = *from throwing.*

26. **C.** = *Caius,* the name proper to the individual; **Valerium,** *Valerius,* the name of his *gens* or clan; **Procillum,** *Procillus,* the name of his family (the change from **Caburus** to **Procillus** being probably the result of adoption into a Roman family).

27. **Humanitate,** *refinement.*

Page 37, line 1. **Civitate,** *with citizenship.*

3. **Multā,** *much,* agreeing with **quā.**

Longinquā, *from long.*

4. **In eo,** *in his case.*

6. **Utebatur,** *was wont* (used) *to enjoy.* Notice the force of the imperf.

7. **Quos** = *them.*

9. **Quid . . . venirent** (*were they coming*)? In *oratio recta* (*i.e.* A. said), "**Quid ad me venitis?**" B. 315, 1; H. 642; A. 586; G. 651.

10. **An,** *sc.* venirent, *were they coming?* B. 162, 4, *a*; H. 380, 3; A. 335, *a*; G. 457, 1.

Conantīs, *sc.* eos.

16. CHAPTER 48.—**Consilio,** *design,* purpose: abl. of cause.

Frumento, *from corn:* abl. of separation.

Qui agrees with the nearest antecedent.

22. **Castris.** *In* omitted.

23. **Quo,** *in which;* abl. of means.

24. **Numero,** *in number:* abl. of specification.

26. **Singuli singulos,** *each one, one:* **singuli** agrees with *ii* understood, and **singulos** with **quos.** Notice the force of the distributives.

27. **Versabantur** = *they acted.*

28. **Qui,** *any one:* indef. pron.

29. **Si . . . recipiendum,** *if an advance was to be made farther in any direction* (anywhere), *or a retreat was to be made rather hastily.*

Page 38, line 6, CHAPTER 49.—**Castris,** *for the camp:* dat.

Acie triplici. See note, line 21, page 17.

8. **In armis,** *under arms.*

11. **Expedita,** *unencumbered,* carrying only their arms.

13. **Nihilo secius** = *nevertheless:* lit., differently in nothing, **nihilo** being abl. of degree of difference.

18. CHAPTER 50.—**Instituto suo,** *according to his plan.*

19. **Paulum,** accus. of extent of space.

20. **Potestatem fecit,** *he afforded an opportunity.*

23. **Quae** = ut ea, *that it,* and hence **oppugnaret,** subjunct. of purpose. B. 282, 2; H. 590; A. 531, 2; G. 630.

26. **Et inlatis,** *having been both inflicted.*

Page 39, line 2. **Esset,** *was,* the subjunct. refers the statement to **captivis.** B. 286, 1; H. 588, II; A. 592, 3; G. 541.

3. **Matres familiae,** *the mothers of family; the matrons.*

4. **Utrum . . . necne.** B. 300, 4, *a*; H. 650; A. 335; G. 459.

5. **Eas,** *that they:* subj. accus. of **dicere,** *spoke.*

Non . . . fas, *that it was not the will of heaven:* **fas,** *right,* in relation to divine law.

7. CHAPTER 51.—**Praesidio,** *as a defense* (protection), dat. of purpose; **castris,** dat. of advantage. B. 191, 2; H. 433; A. 382; G. 356.

8. **Alarios,** *the auxiliaries,* which were placed on the wings (*alae*) of the legions; hence the name.

10. **Minus valebat,** *he was less strong.*

Pro, *in proportion to.*

11. **Ad speciem,** *for show* (effect).

12. **Acie,** of the Roman legions.

14. **Generatim,** *by nations* or *tribes.*

17. **Ne qua**, *that no.*

18. **Eo**, *there* = in redis et carris.

19. **Passis manibus**, *with outstretched hands.*

Passis, perf. part. from **pando.**

21. CHAPTER 52. — **Caesar . . . praefecit**, *Cæsar appointed over each legion a lieutenant and a quæstor* (*i.e.* one quæstor in all).

23. **Cornu**, *wing*, of his own army: hence **eam partem** refers to the enemy's left wing.

26. **Itá-que** = et ita, *and so.*

28. **Reiectis**, *being thrown aside.*

Page 40, line 3. **Phalanga**, Greek accus. sing. B. 47, 1; H. 109, 3; A. 81, 2; G. 66, 3.

Insilirent in, *leaped against;* subjunct. of characteristic after the indefinite expression **reperti sunt milites.** B. 283, 2; H. 591, 1; A. 535, *a*, and N. 1; G. 631, 2.

4. **Manibus**, *with their hands.*

Desuper, *from above*, *i.e.* over the top of the enemy's shields, to grasp which was the object of the leap.

9. **Expeditior**, *more disengaged.*

Inter . . . versabantur, *were engaged in the line of battle.*

10. **Laborantibus** (dat.), *hard pressed.*

12. CHAPTER 53. — **Prius quam**, *before:* **quam** being here, as elsewhere after the comparative, a conjunction.

14. **Viribus confisi**, *relying on* (*i.e.* on account of) *their strength.* **Viribus**, abl. of cause.

19. **Sueva natione**, *a Suevian by nation.* B. 226; H. 480; A. 418; G. 397.

20. **Norica**, *sc.* natione.

21. **Duxerat**, *sc.* in matrimonium = *he had married.*

22. **Altera . . . altera**, *the one . . . the other.*

23. **Est** belongs equally to **occisa** and **capta.**

24. **Trinis** = *threefold, three.* B. 81, 4, *b*; H. 164, 3; A. 137, *b*; G. 97, R. 3.

In ipsum Caesarem incidit, *fell in with Cæsar himself.*

25. **Quae res**, *this circumstance.*

30. **De tanta**, *from so great.*

Quicquam, *aught*, anything.

Page 41, line 2. **Consultum** (esse), *sc.* ab eis = *that they had consulted;* or, *that a consultation had been held:* impersonally.

8. CHAPTER 54. — **Rhenum. Proximus** is often followed by the accus., but **ad** may be supplied. See B. 141, 3; H. 435, 2; A. 432, *a*; G. 359, N. 1.

10. **Duobus**, *i.e.* the Helvetian and the German.

11. **Paulo**, *a little,* lit., by a little: abl. of deg. of diff. B. 223; H. 479, 1; A. 414; G. 403.

13. **Ad . . . agendos**, *to hold the assizes, i.e.* the district courts, to adjust lawsuits, and all matters pertaining to the civil jurisdiction of the country.

BOOK II.

Events of the year 57 B.C. Consuls, P. Cornelius Lentulus Spinther and Q. Cæcilius Metellus Nepos. I. Conspiracy and defeat of the Belgians. II. Defeat of the Nervians. III. Expedition of Publius Crassus into the maritime states, and their submission.

Page 42, line 1. CHAPTER 1. — **Ita uti**, *just as.*

3. **Omnīs Belgas**, *that all the Belgians.* **Belgas**, subject accus. of **coniurare** and **dare**, depending on the preceding clause.

4. **Quam esse**, *which . . . is.*

5. **Inter se** = *to one another.*

7. **Vererentur**, *they feared:* subjunct. to assign a reason on another's authority. B. 286, 1; H. 588, II; A. 592, and 3; G. 541.

9. **Partim qui . . . partim qui** (line 12), *some of whom . . . others of whom.*

10. **Versari**, *should remain*, or, *to remain.*

11. **Moleste ferebant**, *they bore* (it) *grievously* = *they took it ill.*

13. **Ab non nullis**, *sc.* sollicitarentur (*they were incited*).

14. **Conducendos**, *hiring.*

15. **Regna**, *royal power.*

16. **Imperio nostro** = *under our government:* abl. absolute; the idea is, "the government being ours."

18. CHAPTER 2. — **Inita aestate**, lit., the summer being entered upon = *at the beginning of summer:* abl. absol. to express the *time.*

19. **Qui deduceret** = *to lead* (them) *down* = ut is deduceret, and hence the subjunct. of *purpose.*

20. **Cum primum** (when first) = *as soon as.*

Pabuli, *of food.*

Page 43, line 1. **Dat negotium**, *he assigns the business,* which is defined in the clause **uti . . . faciant.**

4. **Constanter**, *uniformly, consistently.*

5. **Manus cogi**, *that bands* (forces) *were being collected.*

6. **Dubitandum** (esse sibi) = *that he ought to hesitate.*

10. CHAPTER 3. — **De improviso**, *unexpectedly.*

Celerius . . . opinione, lit., sooner than every expectation = *than one would think.* B. 217, 4; H. 471, 8; A. 406, *a*; G. 398, N. 1.

11. **Proximi . . . sunt**, *are the nearest of the Belgians to* (Celtic) *Gaul.*

Ex Belgis = Belgarum. B. 201, 1, *a*; H. 444; A. 346, 4, *c*; G. 372, R. 2.

13. **Qui dicerent** = ut ii dicerent, *who were to say* (or simply, *to say*).

Se is the object of **permittere**: its subject accus. *se* is understood.

Se . . . omnia, *themselves and all their property.*

16. **Coniurasse** = coniuravisse, *sc.* se, *had they conspired.*

17. **Oppidis**, *into their towns;* instrumental abl. B. 218, 7; H. 476; A. 409; G. 401, and 389, end.

18. **Recipere**, *sc.* Romanos.

20. **Incolant**, *dwell:* subjunct. in *oratio obliqua.*

21. Order: ut potuerint deterrere ne quidem Suessiones, suos fratres, etc.

23. **Unum**, *sc.* et.

25. **Quin consentirent** = *from conspiring.* B. 295, 3, *a*; H. 595, 2; A. 558; G. 555.

26. CHAPTER 4. — **Quae**, *what:* interrog. adj. pron. from *quis:* hence **essent**, *were;* indirect question.

27. **Quid possent** = *how powerful they were.*

30. **Gallos** is the object of **expulisse.**

Solosque esse, *and that they were the only* (people).

Page 44, line 3. **Prohibuerint,** *prevented;* subjunct. in *oratio obliqua*, and was also subjunct. of characteristic in *oratio recta*. B. 283, 2; H. 591, 5; A. 535, *b*.

Fieri, *it came to pass;* impersonally.

4. **Memoria,** *in consequence of the recollection;* abl. of cause: in line 1 it is abl. of *time when*.

5. **Re militari,** *the art of war.*

6. **Habere explorata** = *had ascertained.*

7. **Propinquitatibus,** *by blood relationships;* **adfinitatibus,** *by marriage relationships.*

9. **Plurimum valere,** *were the most powerful.*

12. **Pollicitos** (esse).

14. **Suos,** *i.e.* of the Remi.

16. **Diviciacum,** a different person from Diviciacus the Hæduan.

17. **Cum . . . tum,** *both . . . and.* B. 290, 2; H. 657, 4, N. 1; A. 323, *g*; G. 588.

19. **Summam,** *the management* (conduct).

22. **Nervios,** *sc.* polliceri.

Maxime, *most,* with **feri** forms a superlative.

Ipsos, *themselves, i.e.* the Belgians generally.

28. **Arbitrari,** *sc.* se, *they* (the Remi) *supposed.*

29. CHAPTER 5. — **Liberaliter prosecutus** = *having treated them kindly;* lit., having followed up (their services) kindly in a speech.

Page 45, line 2. — **Ad diem,** *to the day, i.e.* on the very day appointed.

3. **Quanto opere** = quantopere, *how much.*

4. **Reipublicae.** B. 211, 1; H. 449, 1, 2; A. 355; G. 381.

Intersit, *it concerns.*

5. **Ne . . . sit** (sibi) = *that he might not have to contend.*

10. **Neque** = et non. Order: neque cognovit (*and learned*) ab his exploratoribus, quos miserat, et ab Remis (*eas*) iam longe abesse (*that they were now not far distant*).

15. Order: et reddebat tuta ab hostibus (*ea loca*) quae erant post eum.

16. Order: et efficiebat (*brought it about*) ut commeatus possent portari ad eum sine periculo ab Remis. The strong emphasis given to **commeatus** places it at the beginning of the sentence, and displaces the conj. **ut.**

19. **In . . . parte,** *on the other side.*

20. There were ten cohorts in a legion: the number of men in a legion varied at different times from three thousand to six thousand.

21. **Vallo,** *with a palisaded rampart,* the construction of which was as follows: When the Romans were about to encamp, (1) they dug a trench all round the camp; (2) the earth thrown from the trench formed the rampart or **agger**; (3) on the top of the agger, at its outer edge, stakes (**valli**) were firmly set, thus completing the **vallum.**

Pedum duodecim, gen. of quality.

Duodeviginti pedum, *i.e.* in latitudinem.

24. Chapter 6.—**Ex itinere,** *on the march.*

26. Order: oppugnatio Gallorum eadem atque (*as*) Belgarum est haec (*this* = the following).

28. **Moenibus.** B. 187, 3; H. 429, 2; A. 370; G. 348.

29. **Iaci . . . sunt,** *have begun to be thrown.* B. 133, 1; H. 299, 1; A. 205, *a*; G. 423, 3.

Defensoribus, abl. of separation.

30. **Testudine,** *a testudo* (tortoise), here, a body of soldiers arranged in a compact mass, each holding his shield over his head, and the shields of the entire body fitting so closely together as to form a protection against stones, arrows, darts, etc. Also, a military machine moving upon wheels and roofed over, used in besieging cities, under which the soldiers worked in undermining the walls, plying the battering-ram, etc. (as in Book V. 42, 43). Dict. Antiqq.

Portas, *sc.* ad.

Page 46, line 4. **Nobilitate,** abl. of quality.

10. Chapter 7.—**Cretas,** Greek acc. pl.

13. **Accessit** = *was added.*

Hostibus, *from the enemy;* dat. of disadvantage.

14. **Potiundi,** the older form of the gerundive.

17. **Copiis,** abl. of accompaniment: supply **cum,** which

Cæsar sometimes uses and sometimes omits. B. 222, 1; H. 474, 2, N. 1; A. 413, and *a*; G. 392, R. 1.

A minus, *at the distance of less than:* **minus** does not influence the construction. "If the place from which the distance is reckoned is not specified, the prep. **ab** often stands only before the measure."

19. **Amplius**, *more than;* accus. of extent of space.

20. **Milibus**, abl. after the comparative **amplius**.

22. CHAPTER 8.—**Opinionem**, *reputation* (for).

Proelio, *from battle:* abl. of separation.

"**Supersedēre** takes the abl. because its sense is equivalent to *abstinēre*."

25. **Loco pro**, *the place in front of:* **loco**, abl. absolute expressing cause.

Page 47, line 1. **Tantum . . . poterat**, *extended in breadth as great a space in front* (of the camp) *as an army drawn up could occupy.*

Adversus, an adj. agreeing with **collis**. Supply **loci** after **tantum** and omit it after **quantum**.

3. **Atque . . . habebat**, *and* (the hill) *had slopes* (lit., depressions of the side) *on each side.*

Et . . . redibat, *and sloping gently in front, returned gradually to the plain.*

6. **Extremas fossas**, *the ends of the trenches.*

7. **Tormenta**, *the hurling engines*, by which large stones, darts, arrows, etc., were hurled against the enemy. The exact construction of them is unknown.

11. **Quo**, *of anything.*

14. **Eductas instruxerunt** = eduxerunt et instruxerunt.

16. CHAPTER 9.—**Si**, *if* = to see if (whether).

20. **Contendebatur**, impersonally = *a contest was carried on.*

21. **Neutri**, *neither side.*

22. **Secundiore . . . nostris** (militibus), *the engagement of the cavalry being more favorable to our men;* **proelio**, abl. absol. with **secundiore**.

24. **Quod**, subject accus. of esse, depending on the impersonal verb **demonstratum est**.

26. **Consilio**, *design:* abl. of cause (motive).

28. **Minus** = non, *not.*

29. **Popularentur.** Repeat the **ut**, previously expressed.

30. **Commeatu**, abl. of separation.

Page 48, line 2. CHAPTER 10. — **Armaturae**, gen. of quality.

10. **Spem . . . fefellisse**, *that hope had deceived them:* fefellisse, from **fallo.**

11. **Neque** = et non, *and . . . not; and saw that our men did not advance, etc.*

14. **Quorum**, etc. Translate the antecedent clause (**ad . . . convenirent**) first.

16. **Convenirent**, *sc.* ut.

17. **Domesticis**, (which they had) *at home.*

21. **Finibus**, *the territories;* dat. gov. by the compound **adpropinquare.**

His persuaderi non poterat = *these* (latter) *could not be persuaded.* A strictly literal translation of such constructions is impossible, because we cannot say "it could not be persuaded to them."

22. **Neque ferrent**, *and not bring.*

25. CHAPTER 11. — **Neque** (certo) **imperio**, *and under no definite command.*

Cum, *because*, since.

26. **Fecerunt** (*they effected*) = they acted in such a manner.

27. Order: hac re statim cognita per speculatores, Caesar veritus insidias continuit exercitum equitatumque castris, quod nondum, etc.

Page 49, line 3. **Novissimum agmen**, *the rear.*

6. **Novissimos** (*milites*) = novissimum agmen.

8. **Ab . . . agmine**, *at the end of the line of march*, nearest the pursuing Romans.

Ventum erat (ab nostris) = *they had come*, because we cannot say "it had been come."

9. **Consisterent**, *they made a stand;* subjunct. after **cum** *in narration.*

10. **Priores**, *sc.* et, the former ones = *those in advance.*

15. **Quantum . . . spatium**, *as there was space of the day* = as the remainder of the day permitted.

Occasum. **Sub** with the accus. in expressions of time means *towards.*

18. Chapter 12.—**Diei.** B. 201, 3, *a*; H. 446, 5; A. 359, *b*.

19. **Reciperent,** *should recover.* B. 292, 1, *b*; H. 605; A. 551, *b*; G. 577.

24. **Paucis defendentibus,** abl. absol., with the force of a concessive clause, *though few defended it.* B. 227, 2, *c*; H. 489, 1; A. 420, 3.

25. **Vineas agere,** *to advance the sheds.* The **vinea** was a shed-like structure, sixteen feet long and seven broad, resting on posts eight feet high. It was constructed of light materials so as to be easily moved, and was covered on the top and sides with raw hides to protect it against fire. Under cover of such a machine, the Roman soldiers undermined the walls of towns or plied the battering-ram (*aries*).

Quaeque = et (ea) que.

28. **Aggere iacto,** *a mound having been thrown up.* The **agger** was a mound of earth or other materials, raised as near as possible to a besieged town, so as to form an elevated position from which, by means of the engines of war, stones, darts, etc., might be hurled into the town. It was sometimes flanked with towers (hence **turribus constitutis**), and surmounted by parapets. These contrivances of ancient warfare served the same purposes as the modern heavy artillery. See also note on line 25, page 77.

Page 50, line 5. Chapter 13.—**In deditionem,** *on surrender.*

6. **Qui cum** = *when they.*

9. **Maiores natu** = *the older men,* lit., greater *in respect to birth.*

14. **Passis,** *with outstretched,* from *pando.*

18. Chapter 14.—**Facit verba** = *speaks.*

Bellovacos, etc. The speech of Diviciacus is given in *oratio obliqua.*

19. **Impulsos,** *that they having been impelled:* a perf. part. agreeing with *eos* understood, which is subject accus. of **defecisse** and **intulisse.**

20. **Dicerent**, *said:* subjunct. because the speech is in *oratio obliqua*.

22. **Perferre**, *were suffering*.

Et . . . et (*had both . . . and*).

23. **Qui.** Supply *eos*, which is subject accus. of **profugisse.**

Principes, *the authors*.

27. **In eos**, towards them = *in their favor*.

Quod . . . fecerit, *if he should do that:* **fecerit**, perf. subj.; in *oratio recta*, fut. perf. ind. B. 319, *a*; H. 644, 2; A. 484, *c*; G. 656.

Page 51, line 1. **Si qua bella** = *whatever wars;* lit., if any.

3. CHAPTER 15. — **Honoris causā**, *out of respect* (*to*).

4. **Recepturum** (esse).

5. **Magna auctoritate**, *of great authority* (influence): abl. of quality.

12. **Nullum . . . accepturos** (esse), line 19, *oratio obliqua*.

Nihil (eos) **pati**, *that they suffered no*.

14. **Remitti**, *is relaxed*.

16. **Virtutis**, gen. of quality.

Qui dedidissent, *because they had surrendered;* a relative clause assigning a reason; the verb would therefore be subjunct. in *oratio recta*. B. 283, 3; H. 592; A. 535, *e*; G. 633.

22. CHAPTER 16. — **Amplius**, *more than:* although a comparative without **quam**, it does not influence the construction, *i.e.* **milia** is accus. of *extent of space*. B. 217, 3; H. 471, 4; A. 407, *c*; G. 296, R. 4.

Page 52, line 4. CHAPTER 17. — **Qui deligant** = ut ii deligant, hence the subjunct. of purpose.

Cum, *as*, since.

5. **Ex . . . Belgis**, *of . . . the Belgians*. B. 201, 1, *a*; H. 444; A. 346, *c*; G. 372, R. 2.

6. **Una**, *along with him*.

7. **Eorum . . . perspecta** = *having clearly seen the manner of the marching of our army during* (lit., of) *those days:* **dierum** and **exercitus** are both governed by **itineris.**

9. **Inter . . . legiones** = *between every two legions*.

11. **Neque . . . negoti**, *and that there would be no difficulty*.

13. **Sub sarcinis**, *under their burdens*, including the armor,

provisions, and implements, carried by the Roman soldiers while marching.

15. **Adiuvabat**, *it aided;* the subject is the clause **quod Nervii**, etc., *that the Nervii, etc.*

16. **Deferebant**, *reported.*

17. **Cum nihil possent** = *since they were not powerful.*

Neque student = *they do not pay attention* (aim at).

18. **Quicquid possunt** = *whatever power they have;* **quicquid** is accus. of specification.

19. **Quo**, *in order that.*

21. **Teneris . . . posset**, *tender* (young) *trees having been cut into and bent, numerous branches having sprung out breadthwise* (lit., into breadth) *and brambles and briers having been thrown in between, they had brought it to pass that these hedges furnished defences like a wall, which* (lit., whither) *could not only not be entered, but not even seen through.*

29. CHAPTER 18. — **Collis . . . declivis**, *a hill sloping evenly from the top.*

Page 53, line 2. **Nascebatur**, *arose.*

Adversus . . . contrarius, *opposite to and facing this one.*

4. **Infimus apertus**, *clear at its base:* **infimus collis** = *the base of a hill.*

6. **Secundum**, *along.*

7. **Stationes**, *sentinels*, sentries.

10. CHAPTER 19. — **Ratio . . . agminis**, *the plan and the order of the line of march.*

Copiis. B. 222, 1; H. 474, 2, N. 1; A. 413, *a*; G. 392, R. 1.

11. **Ac**, *than.*

15. **Agmen**, *line of march.*

Praesidio impedimentis, *a guard* (defence) *for the baggage.*

18. Order : cum illi identidem reciperent se in silvas ad suos.

20. **Neque nostri**, *and our men* (*did*) *not.*

Quam . . . pertinebant, *than to what limit* (= as far as) *the clear open ground extended.*

22. **Cedentīs**, *sc.* eos = *hostīs.*

23. **Dimenso** = *having measured off:* passively. B. 112, *b*; H. 222, 2; A. 190, *b*.

26. **Convenerat**, *had been agreed upon.*

Ut . . . confirmaverant, *just as they had established their line and their ranks within the woods and* (as) *they had encouraged one another* (to do).

Page 54, line 4. **Adverso colle** = *up the hill:* abl. of the way by which (= means).

7. Chapter 20. — **Caesari,** *by Cæsar.*

8. **Vexillum,** *the red flag.*

9. **Concurri,** *sc.* ab militibus.

Signum, *the signal* which called the soldiers together: in line 12 it is *the watchword.*

10. **Aggeris,** *i.e.* materials for constructing *a mound.*

14. **Impediebat,** singular, because the subjects are considered collectively as a whole.

18. **Singulis . . . legionibus,** *and from their respective legions;* **singulos legatos,** *the lieutenants individually.*

21. **Nihil** = *non:* accus. of specification.

22. **Videbantur,** *seemed proper.*

24. Chapter 21. — **Quam in partem** = in eam partem quam.

25. **Non longiore,** *in no longer.*

27. **Neu** = et ne, *and* (*that they should*) *not.*

Page 55, line 1. **Quo,** lit., whither = *as far as.* **Quo posset,** a clause of characteristic. B. 283, 1; H. 591, 6; A. 535, *c*; G. 298.

Quo, rel. adv.

3. **Pugnantibus,** *sc.* militibus, or eis, *them fighting;* dative.

5. **Ad . . . accommodanda,** *for fitting on the ornaments,* probably on the helmets.

6. **Scutis,** *from the shields:* abl. of separation (which may or may not be governed by a preposition), depending on **de** in composition.

7. **Tegimenta,** *the covers,* to keep them dry.

Order: in quam (= *whatever*) partem quisque devenit casu ab opere, quaeque (= et quae = *whatever*) signa conspexit prima, ad haec constitit (*by these he took his stand*).

12. Chapter 22. — **Quam . . . ordo,** *than as the science and method of war.*

13. **Cum . . . resisterent,** *since the separate legions, some in one place, others in another, were resisting the enemy.*

16. **Neque . . . subsidia,** *and no certain reserves.*

Conlocari. Repeat **poterant,** line 18. Order: neque (poterat) quid esset opus in quaque parte provideri.

19. **Fortunae,** gen. limiting **eventus.**

22. CHAPTER 23.—**Acie,** old form of gen. for **aciei.**

Constiterant, *they had taken their stand.*

Cursu exanimatos, *exhausted with running.*

Page 56, line 4. **In ipsis,** *on the very.*

7. **Constitisset,** subjunct. of cause after **cum,** *since,* because. B. 286, 2; H. 598; A. 549; G. 586.

8. **Agmine,** abl. of manner; **duce** = *under their leader.*

9. **Summam imperi** = *the chief command.*

10. **Aperto latere** (abl. absol.), *on their unprotected flank:* that is, the space between the left of the seventh and the left wing, which had been uncovered by the four legions.

13. CHAPTER 24. — **Una,** *along.*

14. **Pulsos** (esse), *had been repulsed.*

15. **Adversis hostibus,** *the enemy in front of them:* dative.

16. **Decumana porta,** *the decuman gate,* the largest of the four in a Roman camp and the principal gate of ingress and egress, in the rear of the camp, and so named because the tenth (*decimus*) cohorts had their stations near it.

17. **Summo iugo** = *the summit.*

19. **Versari,** *were busy,* occupied.

22. **Alii . . . partem,** *some . . . in one direction, others in another.* B. 253, 2; H. 516, 1; A. 315, *c*; G. 319.

24. **Virtutis opinio,** *reputation for bravery.*

28. **Dispersos,** *separated.*

Page 57, line 2.—**Castris potitos** (esse). B. 218, 1; H. 477, I; A. 410 and N.; G. 407.

7. CHAPTER 25.—**Sibi ipsos esse impedimento,** *were themselves a hindrance to themselves;* were in one another's way.

11. **Primipilo,** *the chief centurion.*

12. **Ut** = *so that.*

14. **Ab novissimis** (militibus) = *from the rear.*

17. **Rem . . . angusto** = *that matters were in a strait, i.e.* in a critical condition.

18. **Ab,** *in.*

Uni militi, *from a soldier.*

20. **Processit.** The subject is **Caesar,** the first word in the chapter.

21. **Inferre,** *to advance* against the enemy.

23. **Inlata,** *having been infused.*

24. **Pro se quisque,** *every one for his part,* to the best of his ability.

25. **In extremis,** *in the extremity of.*

Operam navare, *to act vigorously.*

Page 58, line 2. CHAPTER 26.—**Et . . . inferrent,** *and (should) advance their standards turned about against the enemy, i.e.* to face about (**convertere signa**), and then advance (**signa inferre**) against the enemy.

3. **Aversi,** *while turned away, i.e.* lest, being attacked in the rear, they should be surrounded.

10. **Gererentur.** B. 300, 1; H. 649, II; A. 573, 574; G. 467.

11. **Qui cum,** *when they, i.e.* the tenth legion. The relative at the beginning of a sentence is often most neatly rendered by the personal pronoun.

13. **Versaretur** = *were.*

14. **Nihil . . . fecerunt** (lit., made for themselves nothing of remainder for speed) = *made all the haste they could.*

Reliqui, partitive gen.

17. CHAPTER 27.—**Scutis innixi,** *leaning on their shields:* **scutis,** dat. depending on the compound **in-nixi.** This may also be explained as an abl. of means.

18. **Armatis,** *sc.* iis, *them armed;* dative. Repeat the preceding **ut** with **occurrerent.**

20. **Quo . . . praeferrent,** *that they might bring themselves before (= might excel) the legionary soldiers.* The Mss. readings here vary considerably.

21. **In extremā,** *at the end of,* at the extremity of.

23. **Cecidissent,** from **cado.**

Iacentibus = occisis, *the slain;* dative.

26. **Ut . . . tumulo,** *as from a mound* of the slain.

27. Order: ut (*so that*) deberet iudicari homines tantae virtutis non ausos esse nequiquam transire.

Page 59, line 1. **Ex** = *from being.*

Animi, *of courage.*

4. CHAPTER 28.—**Maiores natu**, lit., older in respect to birth = *the older men.*

6. **Coniectos** (esse); its subject is **quos**, depending on **dixeramus.**

7. **Nihil**, *sc.* esse.

12. **Possent**, *were able* (could): subjunct. because the statement is made by Nervians. This may also be explained as a subjunct. of characteristic.

13. **Quos** = *them.*

In, *towards.*

18. CHAPTER 29.—**Auxilio Nerviis** = *to the aid of the Nervians.*

21. **Quod cum**, *although this.*

22. **In . . . partibus**, *sides round about*, lit., sides in a circuit.

Despectus, *slopes.*

24. **Non amplius**, *not more than*, does not influence the construction.

Pedum, gen. of quality, or measure.

26. **Ponderis**, gen. of quality.

28. **Cum iter**, etc., just before their disastrous defeat by Caius Marius.

Page 60, line 3.—**Custodiam**, *a guard.*

4. **Eorum**, *of the former*, who had fallen in battle.

5. **Cum . . . defenderent**, *as* (because) *they sometimes waged war, sometimes repelled* (it) *waged* (on them): with **inlatum** supply *bellum sibi.*

10. CHAPTER 30.—**Pedum**, *sc.* in altitudinem.

12. **Oppido**, instrumental abl., or place where.

14. **Inridere, increpitare**, historical infinitives.

15. **Ab . . . spatio**, *at so great a distance.* See note on line 17, page 46.

Institueretur. B. 286, 1; H. 588, II; A. 540; G. 541.

Quibusnam manibus, *with what hands, pray.* The **nam** expresses wonder in the questioner.

17. **Prae**, *in comparison with.*

19. **In**, *on.*

21. CHAPTER 31.—**Moveri**, *sc.* eam = turrim.

23. **Qui locuti . . . dixerunt** (line 27), *who having spoken . . . said.*

24. **Existimare**, *sc.* se.

25. **Qui** = cum ii, *because they*, and is followed by subjunct. of reason, **possent**, independently of *oratio obliqua.* B. 283, 3, *a*; H. 592; A. 540, *c*; G. 633.

27. **Unum . . . deprecari**, *sc.* se, *that they begged and earnestly entreated one thing.*

28. **Pro**, *in accordance with.*

Page 61, line 4. **Traditis armis** = si arma tradita essent. B. 227, 2, *b*; H. 489, 2; A. 521, *a*, and 420, 4; G. 667, and N.

5. **Sibi praestare**, *that it would be better for them;* the subject accus. (represented in the translation by *it*) is the clause **quamvis . . . pati.**

11. CHAPTER 32. — **Prius quam** = priusquam, *before.*

Aries, *the battering-ram*, consisted of a heavy beam from 80 to 120 feet in length, to one end of which was attached a mass of bronze or iron in the form of a ram's head. This machine, plied by a hundred or more men, was sufficient to demolish strong towers and massive walls.

13. **In**, *in the case of.*

14. **Quam**, *any.*

16. **Facere**, *sc.* se, *that they were doing*, *i.e.* were already collecting their arms, as is implied by the present tense.

24. CHAPTER 33.—**Ante inito consilio** = *by a plan* (design) *previously formed.*

Ut . . . est, *as was evident:* impersonally.

26. **Deducturos** (esse), *would draw off.*

Denique, here, *at least.*

Page 62, line 1. **Scutis**, repeat **cum.**

2. **Viminibus**, repeat **ex.**

3. **Pellibus induxerant** (ablative of means) = *they had covered with hides.*

Qua, *where*, sc. *via.*

6. **Celeriter**, to be joined with **facta.**

8. **Ita . . . ut,** *as . . . as*, the **ut** indicating a comparison, and hence the indicative, **debuit,** *ought.*

9. **Iniquo loco,** *in an unfavorable position ; sc.* in.

Eos qui has the force of *such as*, and hence **iacerent,** subjunct. of characteristic. B. 283, 1; H. 591, 1; A. 535; G. 631, 2.

12. **Ad,** *about*, with numerals.

15. **Sectionem universam vendidit,** *sold at auction the entire property in parcels*, including the citizens and the movable property.

Sectio, strictly a cutting or dividing, is technically used of an auction sale where goods are sold in parcels. "Those are called **sectores** who buy property **publice,** and sometimes the things sold were called **sectio.**"

16. **Capitum,** *souls.*

27. CHAPTER 35. — **Daturas** (esse), feminine, because **se** = nationes.

Page 63, line 2. — **Inita . . . aestate,** lit., the next summer having been entered on = *at the beginning of the next summer :* abl. absol. of time.

7. **Dies quindecim,** *for fifteen days.*

Supplicatio, "a solemn *thanksgiving* or supplication to the gods decreed by the senate, when all the temples were opened and the statues of the gods frequently placed in public upon couches (*pulvinaria*), to which the people offered up their thanksgivings and prayers."

Quod, etc. The reference is not to the thanksgiving, but to the duration of it; *i.e.* the antecedent is the preceding clause.

BOOK III.

Events of the year 56 B.C. Consuls, Cn. Cornelius Lentulus Marcellinus, L. Marcius Philippus. I. War with some of the Alpine Communities. II. War with the Venĕti. III. War with the Venelli. IV. Expedition of Crassus into Aquitania. V. Expedition of Cæsar against the Morĭni and Menapii.

Page 64, line 4. CHAPTER 1. — **Summas,** *the summits of.* B. 241, 1; H. 497, 4; A. 293; G. 291, R. 2.

6. **Quo,** adv.

9. **Hiemandi causa.** B. 338, 1, *c*; A. 504, *b*; G. 428, R. 2.

Secundis, *successful*, favorable.

16. **Cum hic** (vicus), *since* (as) *this* village; hence causal subjunct. **divideretur.**

Page 65, line 2. CHAPTER 2.—**Eo,** *thither*, *i.e.* in hiberna.

6. **Id,** *this*, is defined by the clause **ut . . . caperent.**

7. **Opprimendae,** *of crushing.*

8. **Neque eam plenissimam,** *and that not a very full one;* for the reason stated in the next clause.

12. **Iniquitatem,** *the unevenness*, and hence, the unfavorableness.

15. **Accedebat,** *there was added* (as another reason); its subject is **quod . . . habebant** (line 19).

Abstractos (esse).

16. **Romanos conari,** *that the Romans were attempting.*

19. **Sibi . . . habebant** = *they had persuaded themselves.*

Persuasum agrees with the clauses **Romanos . . . adiungere.**

20. CHAPTER 3.—**Cum,** *since* (as), hence followed by **essent perfectae,** subjunct. of reason.

21. **Essent perfectae,** *had been completed.* **Perfectae** applies equally to **opus,** but agrees only with the nearest noun, **munitiones.** B. 235, 2, *b*, γγ; H. 392; A. 287, 2; G. 286, 1, *b*.

22. **Satis . . . provisum** = *had sufficient provision been made:* impersonally.

24. **Timendum,** *sc.* esse sibi.

26. **Periculi,** partitive gen.

Praeter, *contrary to.*

28. **Neque . . . veniri** (posset) = *neither could aid* (reënforcement) *come* to them; lit., neither could it be come (to them) for aid, which is not English.

Page 66, line 5. **Ad extremum,** *till the last*, *i.e.* their last effort.

6. **Rei . . . experiri,** *to try the outcome of the matter*, *i.e.* to wait and see how the matter would end.

7. CHAPTER 4.—**Constituissent,** *they had determined upon:* subjunct. by attraction.

8. **Conlocandis,** *for arranging:* dat. of the gerundive, agreeing with **rebus.**

9. **Decurrere**, etc., historical infinitives.

11. **Integris**, *with fresh.*

14. **Hoc superari**, *they were surpassed in this.* **Hoc.** B. 226; H. 480, 3; A. 418; G. 397. **Superari.** The historical inf. in the pass. is far less common than in the active.

17. **Non modo** = non modo non, the negative **ne** in *ne quidem* belonging to both clauses. B. 343, 2, *a*; H. 656, 3; A. 217, *e*; G. 482, R. 1. Order: ac non modo facultas excedendi ex pugna (non) dabatur defesso (militi), sed (facultas) relinquendi eius loci (*that place*), ubi constiterat, ac recipiendi sui (*of recovering himself*) (dabatur) ne quidem saucio (militi).

21. CHAPTER 5.—**Horis**, abl. after the comparative **amplius.**

23. **Languidioribus nostris**, *our men being rather faint:* abl. absol.

24. **Vallum scindere**, *to demolish the rampart*, by cutting away the palisades and thus making an opening.

25. **Ad extremum casum**, *to the last extremity.*

Page 67, line 1. **Unam**, *the only.*

2. **Extremum auxilium**, *a last resource.*

4. **Intermitterent**, *ut* is omitted. B. 295, 1, 8; H. 562, 1, N.; A. 565, *a*, and N.; G. 546, R. 2, and 652.

5. **Exciperent**, *they should pick up.*

8. CHAPTER 6.—**Portis**, abl. of the *way by which* (instrumental abl.).

10. **Sui colligendi**, *of collecting themselves.* **Sui**, gen. sing. neuter. B. 339, 5; H. 626, 3; A. 504, *c*; G. 428, R. 1.

11. **Potiundorum**, older form of the gerundive.

12. **Circumventos interficiunt** = circumveniunt et interficiunt.

13. **Amplius** and **plus** (line 14) are used without **quam** and without influence on the construction.

17. **Armis**, *of their arms;* abl. of separation.

19. **Saepius**, *too often.*

20. **Alio . . . viderat**, *he remembered that he had come into winter-quarters with one purpose*, (and) *he had seen that he had encountered other things* (than this).

28. CHAPTER 7.—**Pacatam** (esse).

Page 68, line 2. **Inita hieme** = *at the beginning of winter;* lit., winter having been entered on.

6. **Mare Oceanum**, *the ocean sea* = the Atlantic Ocean. B. 141, 3; H. 435, 2; A. 432, *a*; G. 359, N. 1.

7. **Praefectos.** See note on line 24, page 28.

12. CHAPTER 8.—Order: auctoritas huius civitatis est longe amplissima omnis maritimae orae earum regionum: **orae**, partitive gen.

16. **Et . . . interiectis**, *and* (only) *a few harbors having been established* (lit., placed between) *along the great and unbroken violence of the sea; i.e.* unbroken by natural or other obstacles.

18. **Habent vectigalīs**, *they hold as tributary.*

19. **Retinendi**, *i.e.* the Venĕti detained Silius and Velanius, and their example was followed by other communities.

25. **Inter se** = *with one another.*

Communi consilio, *in accordance with their common purpose.*

Acturos, *sc.* se esse, *that they will do.*

28. **Acceperint**, subjunctive in informal indirect discourse.

Page 69, line 2. **Suos**, *his* hostages. **Suos** and **sibi** here, contrary to the general rule, refer to different subjects.

3. **Sibi**, *to them.*

Remittat, *let him send back;* in *oratio recta*, **remittas**, or **remitte** (the imperative becoming subjunct. in *oratio obliqua*).

5. CHAPTER 9.—**Longius**, *too far.*

Navīs longas, *long ships* = ships of war, propelled by oars.

7. **Institui**, *to be procured.* See Lex.

12. **Admisissent**, *they had committed;* **in se**, *against themselves.*

Legatos retentos (esse), is in apposition with **facinus**, and defines it: the construction depends on **intellegebant**.

Quod nomen, *a name which.*

17. **Hoc . . . spe**, *with the greater hope on this account:* **hoc**, abl. of cause.

17. **Natura**, *in* (*i.e.* by reason of) *the nature:* abl. of cause.

18. **Pedestria itinera**, *that the roads by land.*

22. **Ut**, *although*, hence followed by concessive subjunct. **Acciderent**, *should* happen. B. 308; H. 586, II; A. 527, *a*; G. 608.

23. **Plurimum posse**, *were very powerful.*

24. **Facultatem**, *abundance.*

26. **Longe aliam**, *far different.*

Concluso, *a confined, inclosed, e.g.* the Mediterranean.

27. **Atque** = *from that*, because *different* in English is not followed by *than.*

29. **Navis quam plurimas**, *as many ships as possible.*

Page 70, line 8. CHAPTER 10. — **Iniuria, rebellio**, etc., are in apposition with **multa.**

Retentorum, translate *of detaining.*

Equitum, objective gen. **Equitum . . . retentorum** is an appositional gen.

11. **Sibi . . . licere**, *that the same thing was allowed them.*

12. **Novis rebus**, *i.e.* revolutions in governments, political changes.

14. **Autem**, *and.*

16. **Conspirarent**, *should conspire.* B. 292; H. 605; A. 551, *b*; G. 577.

Partiendum (esse).

19. CHAPTER 11. — **Proximi** here governs **flumini** in the dat. Compare note on line 8, page 41.

20. **Adeat**, *sc.* ut. Compare note on line 4, page 67.

21. **Auxilio**, dat. of end or purpose.

22. **Arcessiti** (esse).

28. **Qui curet** = ut is curet.

Page 71, line 1. **Manum**, *force.*

5. **Copiis**, *sc.* cum. B. 222, 1; H. 474, 2, N. 1; A. 413, *a*; G. 392, R. 1.

6. CHAPTER 12. — **Posita**, *i.e.* **oppida**, implied in **oppidorum.**

7. **Extremis**, *the extremities of.*

8. **Se incitavisset**, had urged itself = *had rushed in.*

9. **Neque navibus**, *nor by ships.*

11. **Adflictarentur**, *would be dashed:* subjunct. in the apodŏsis, **minuente aestu** supplying the protăsis.

Utraque re, *by both circumstances.*

13. **Extruso . . . molibus**, *the sea being kept off by a mound and dikes;* **mari**, abl. absol.

14. **His**, *i.e.* aggere ac molibus, of their besiegers.

Fortunis, dative, governed by **desperare**, which, in Cæsar, is usually followed by **de**.

15. **Adpulso**, *having been brought to land:* from **adpello**.

Cuius rei = quarum, *of which*.

19. **Eo**, *on this account:* abl. of cause.

Partem. B. 181; H. 417; A. 423; G. 336.

20. Order: difficultas navigandi erat summa vasto atque aperto mari (*on account of the vast and open sea*), magnis aestibus (*the high tides*).

23. Chapter 13.—**Ipsorum**, *their own*.

24. **Planiores**, more level = *flatter*.

26. **Excipere possent**, *they might be able to take*.

28. **Factae**, *sc.* sunt.

Page 72, line 1. **Contumeliam**, *violence*, of storms.

Transtra, *the cross-banks* for rowers.

2. **Pedalibus . . . trabibus**, *of beams a foot thick*.

Trabibus, abl. of the material.

Confixa (sunt) ferreis clavis crassitudine (*of the thickness*) digiti pollicis.

3. **Crassitudine**, abl. of quality, the gen. **pollicis** taking the place of the accompanying adjective.

Pro = *instead of*.

4. **Alutae . . . confectae**, *and leather thinly dressed*.

8. **Regi**, be directed, *propelled*.

9. **Non . . . commode**, *not well enough*.

Order: congressus nostrae classi (= *of our fleet*) cum his navibus erat eius modi.

10. **Classi**, dat. of the possessor.

11. **Reliqua**, (all) *other things*.

12. **Pro**, *considering*.

13. **Nostrae** (naves); **eis**, dat.

Rostro, *with the beak*, a projection of pointed iron fitted to the prow of ancient war vessels, somewhat similar to those of modern steam-rams.

16. **Copulis**, *with grappling-irons*.

19. **Nihil** = non, but stronger.

20. **Navibus**, dat. of the agent.

21. **Casus**, *the chance*.

24. Chapter 14. — **Captis oppidis**, *i.e.* though their towns were taken.

Neque . . . posse = *and that no injury could be done to them.*

25. **Exspectandam** (esse sibi) **classem** = *that he ought to wait for the fleet.*

27. **Paratissimae**, *admirably prepared.*

Ornatissimae, *splendidly furnished.*

28. **Profectae**, from **proficiscor.**

29. Order: neque constabat satis Bruto.

Page 73, line 1. **Singulae naves**, *a ship apiece.*

3. **Insisterent**, *they should pursue:* subjunct. of deliberative indirect question.

Rostro, abl.; **noceri non posse** = *that no harm could be done.*

4. **Excitatis**, *having been erected* on our ships.

5. **Ex**, *of*, but in the sense of *raised up from.*

6. **Adigi.** Notice the force of **ad** = *to* or *into them.*

7. **Missa**, *those thrown, sc.* tela.

Magno usui = *of great service;* dat. of the end or purpose.

8. **Falces praeacutae**, *sharpened hooks, sickle-shaped.*

9. **Non . . . falcium**, *of a form not unlike* (that of = **formae**) *mural hooks;* **forma**, abl. of description (quality). **Murales falces** were sickle-shaped hooks of iron fastened to long poles, used to pull down the walls of besieged towns.

11. **Navigio**, of the Romans.

14. **Gallicis navibus**, dat. limiting **consisteret**, but may be rendered as a gen. limiting **spes.**

19. **Paulo fortius**, *a little braver* than usual; **paulo**, abl. of degree of difference.

22. Chapter 15. — **Singulas . . . circumsteterant**, *two and three* (Roman) *ships had surrounded a single one* (of the enemy's), *i.e.* in one instance two, in another three. Notice the fine effect of the distributives **binae, ternae**, exhibiting a number of such conflicts.

23. **Summa vi** = *with all their might.*

24. **Quod fieri** = *that this was being done.*

Page 74, line 1. **Singulas**, *them one by one* = one after another.

4. **Hora quarta,** *i.e.* four hours after six o'clock = *ten o'clock* in the morning.

7. CHAPTER 16.—**Cum . . . tum** (line 9), *both . . . and also.*

8. **Gravioris,** *of more venerable.*

9. **Navium quod,** lit., *what of ships = whatever ships:* partitive gen.

11. **Quo,** *whither,* introducing an indirect question with the additional ideas of purpose and deliberation.

12. **Habebant,** had = *knew.*

13. **In quos,** *upon whom.*

Eo, *for this reason.*

Gravius vindicandum (esse sibi) = *that punishment,* etc.

14. **Quo,** *in order that* = ut eo.

16. **Sub corona,** lit., under a wreath or garland = *as slaves;* because when prisoners of war were to be sold as slaves they were crowned like an animal for sacrifice.

Page 75, line 2. CHAPTER 17.—**Omnibus rebus,** *in all respects;* abl. of specification.

Loco, *in* omitted.

Cum, *although.*

7. **Non nihil,** *somewhat:* acc. of specification.

Opinionem, *an impression.*

10. **Eo,** *i.e.* Caesar.

12. **Legato,** dat. of the agent; **dimicandum** (esse), impersonal use of the gerundive.

16. CHAPTER 18.—**Uti . . . transeat,** an object clause following **persuadet**; in English = *to pass over to the enemy.*

17. **Qui ubi** = *when he.*

Pro, *as.*

19. **Neque . . . abesse,** *and that it was not farther off.*

20. **Proxima,** on the nearest, *i.e. on the approaching.*

23. **Negoti . . . gerendi** = *of achieving an exploit.*

24. **Iri opórtere,** *sc.* ab iis, *that they ought to go.* Such constructions are not used in English, and therefore a strictly literal translation cannot be given.

25. **Superiorum,** *on the previous.*

27. **Erat provisum** = *provision had been made.*

29. **Prius** with **quam** (line 1, page 76) = *before.*

Page 76, line 1. — **Arma** stands before the connective **uti** on account of its strong emphasis.

2. **Ut . . . victoria**, *as if victory were certain* (lit., having been ascertained).

3. **Victoria**, abl. absol.

Quibus = ut eis, *that with them*, hence **compleant**, subjunct. of purpose.

5. CHAPTER 19. — **Ab . . . acclivis**, *ascending from the bottom* (base).

9. **Cupientibus**, *sc.* eis, *to them eager for it.*

11. **Factum est**, *it happened.*

13. **Superiorum**, *in former.*

17. Order: equites consectati reliquos, reliquerunt paucos (*but few*), qui evaserant ex fuga.

22. **Minime resistens**, *by no means resolute.*

Page 77, line 1. CHAPTER 20. — **Paucis . . . annis**, according to the usual explanation, in the war with Sertorius, who was aided by Sequanians.

7. **Tolosa**, *from Toulouse.*

9. **Regionibus**, dat. limiting **finitimae**.

11. **Quo . . . valebant**, *in which they were very powerful.*

12. **Agmen.** The column (in marching order).

18. CHAPTER 21. — **Superioribus victoriis**, *on former victories;* abl. of cause or means, with **freti**.

20. **Adulescentulo duce** = *with a mere boy as their leader;* abl. absol. without a participle. Note the force of the diminutive.

21. **Perspici**, *that it should be seen;* its subject accus. (represented in the translation by *it*) is the clause **quid . . . possent.**

23. **Ex itinere** = *on his march.*

25. **Vineas.** See note on line 25, page 49.

Turrīs. Movable towers were among the most important engines used in storming a fortified place. Their height was such as to overtop the walls, towers, and all other fortifications of the besieged place. They were 10, 15, and 20 stories high. The use of the stories was to receive the engines of war, **tormenta**, and slingers and archers. The battering-ram, **aries**, was placed in the lowest story.

Alias . . . alias, *at one time . . . at another time.*

26. **Cuniculis**, *underground passages* or *mines*, which, by the removal of earth from beneath the fortifications and works of the besiegers, caused their destruction: so called from their resemblance to the burrowing of a rabbit.

Aggerem. See note, line 28, page 49.

Cuius rei, *in which*, *i.e.* the art of constructing **cuniculi.**

28. **Secturae**, *quarries*, in connection with the mines. The correct reading is uncertain.

Order: ubi intellexerunt nihil posse profici his rebus (abl. of means) diligentia (*on account of the diligence*, abl. of cause) nostrorum.

Page 78, line 5. CHAPTER 22.—**Soldurios**, *retainers*, of a Gallic chieftain. A Celtic word which Cæsar makes = **devotis.**

6. **Uti . . . fruantur**, a clause in apposition with **condicio**, and defining it.

7. **Quorum amicitiae**, *to whose friendship;* **dediderint**, *they have devoted:* subjunct. by attraction.

9. **Ferant.** Repeat **uti**, line 6.

12. **Recusaret**, *refused:* subjunct. of characteristic. B. 283, 2; H. 591, 1; A. 535; G. 631, 2.

Cum his, etc., repeated from line 5, on account of the long intervening parenthesis.

21. CHAPTER 23.—**Paucis . . . quibus**, *within a few days after* (*which*).

Ventum erat, *sc.* ab Romanis = *they had come.*

22. **Expugnatum** (esse).

25. **Citerioris Hispaniae**, *of Hither Spain.* Hispania was divided into **citerior** and **ulterior**, the Ibērus (Ebro) being the dividing line.

Finitimae, *bordering on*, adjacent to; hence **Aquitaniae** is dat.

Page 79, line 1. **Omnīs annos**, *i.e. during all the years*, about six, of the military career of Sertorius.

3. **Loca capere**, *to occupy positions.*

5. **Quod** is defined in the clauses **suas . . . augēri** (line 10).

9. **In dies**, *from day to day*, daily; used of progressive increase or decrease.

10. **Cunctandum** (esse sibi).

14. CHAPTER 24.—**Duplici acie,** *a double line of battle* = his army in two lines; instead of the usual **triplici acie,** because his army was small.

19. **Obsessis** = *having blockaded.*

21. **Sese recipere,** *to retreat.*

22. **Infirmiores animo,** *less resolute in courage.*

25. **Sua . . . timoris,** *by their own delay and an impression of their fear.*

28. **Exspectari,** *sc.* a se = *to wait.*

29. **Iretur,** *sc.* a se = *they should go.*

Page 80, line 1. CHAPTER 25.—**Cum alii . . . alii,** *while some . . . others.*

3. **Quibus,** *in whom;* dat. of ind. obj. with **confidebat.**

4. **Subministrandis,** *by supplying;* **comportandis,** *by collecting.*

6. **Opinionem pugnantium,** *the impression of their fighting.*

10. **Ab,** *about.*

Munita, *sc.* esse.

12. CHAPTER 26.—**Praefectos.** See note on line 24, page 28.

15. **Intritae,** *not exhausted, unworn.*

16. **Longiore,** *by a rather long;* **itinere,** *route;* abl. of means.

20. **Prius,** with **quam** = *before.*

21. **Quid rei** (partitive gen.) = *what.*

22. **Ab,** *in;* **parte,** *direction.*

25. **Per,** *by means of.*

27. **Apertissimis,** *in very open* = unobstructed, and therefore favorable for the operations of cavalry.

Page 81, line 1. **Multa nocte,** *late at night.*

8. CHAPTER 27.—**Confisae,** *relying;* **tempore,** abl. of cause.

11. CHAPTER 28.—**Supererant,** *alone remained* = *soli erant,* and hence **essent, misissent,** subjunct. of characteristic.

14. **Longe . . . ac,** *in a manner far different from* (lit., in a manner far other than).

16. **Continentis,** *continuous.*

18. **Quarum** = *of these.*

19. **Neque,** *and no.*

24. **Longius . . . locis**, *too far in places too* (much) *obstructed.*

27. **Militibus**, abl. absol. or dat. of disadvantage.

Page 82, line 1. CHAPTER 29. — **Ab latere**, *on the flank.*

4. **Magno spatio**, i.e. *a large* (cleared) *space.*

5. **Extrema**, *the rear of.*

6. **Ipsi**, *sc.* et.

8. **Sub pellibus** = *in tents* (because they were covered with skins) = in the camp.

BOOK IV.

Events of the year 55 B.C. Consuls, Cn. Pompeius Magnus, M. Licinius Crassus. I. War with the Usipĕtes and Tencteri. II. Cæsar builds a bridge over the Rhine and crosses into Germany. III. Cæsar passes over into Britain. Battle with the natives. A description of their mode of fighting. IV. War with the Morĭni and Menapii.

Page 83, line 1. CHAPTER 1. — **Ea hieme**, *during that winter.*

Qui here agrees with the following noun, **annus**, instead of the preceding, **hieme**. Observe that the date is fixed by naming the consuls for the year.

6. **Premebantur**. What does the use of the indicative here show? (That the facts related were matters of Cæsar's own personal knowledge.)

7. **Agri cultura**, abl. of separation.

9. **Omnium** occupies one of the places of strong emphasis — the *end* of the sentence.

10. **Singula . . . armatorum**, *a thousand* (*of*) *armed men each.* Notice the force of the distributive.

12. **Illos**, *the former.*

Hi . . . illi, *the latter . . . the former.*

In vicem (= invicem), *in turn.*

13. **Anno** (*by a year*) **post** = *the year after.*

14. **Ratio . . . usus**, *the science and practice.*

17. **Maximam partem**, *for the most part.* B. 185, 1; H. 416, 2; A. 397, *a*; G. 334, R. 2.

19. **Et . . . et**, *both . . . and.*

Page 84, line 2. **Officio** is best explained as abl. of means.

3. **Et . . . et**, *both . . . and.*

4. **Magnitudine**, abl. of description (quality).

Efficit, *makes* them.

Eam = talem, *such.*

5. **Vestitus quicquam**, lit., anything of clothing = *any clothing.*

7. **Lavarentur** = *they bathe;* with reflexive force.

9. CHAPTER 2. — **Eo**, *on this account;* abl. of cause. Order: ut habeant (*eos*) quibus vendant (*ea*) quae ceperint bello.

10. **Quibus vendant** = ut eis vendant; hence subjunct. of purpose.

Quam . . . quo (*than that*), has the force of *non quo* (= non quod), and is used with **desiderent** to denote that the supposed reason is not the true one. B. 286, 1, *b*; H. 588, II, 2; A. 592, 3, N.; G. 541, 1.

11. **Quin etiam**, *moreover, nay even.*

12. **Quaeque** = et quae, *and those which.*

15. **Summi laboris**, (capable) *of the greatest labor:* predicate gen. of quality.

Efficiunt, lit., *they effect.* Its object is the object clause **summi . . . laboris.**

16. **Equestribus proeliis**, *in cavalry engagements:* abl. of time when.

17. **Vestigio.** Prep. in omitted.

25. CHAPTER 3. — **Publice**, *in a public point of view.*

28. **A Suevis**, *in the direction of the Suevians.*

Page 85, line 1. **Agri** is the subject.

3. **Captus**, *the standard.*

Ei . . . humaniores, *and they are a little more civilized than the others of the same stock.*

6. **Ventitant**, *go often:* notice the force of the frequentative.

7. **Moribus**, abl.

12. CHAPTER 4. — **Causa**, *case.*

14. **Ad extremum** = *at last.*

21. **Transire**, difference of idiom requires us to render "*from crossing.*"

25. **Viam**, *a journey:* accus. of extent of space.

28. **Certiores facti** = *having been informed.*

Page 86, line 3. **Fieret.** B. 292, 1, *b*; H. 605, II; A. 551, *b*; G. 577.

Transierunt, *i.e.* the Germans.

4. **Partem**, accus. of time *how long.*

6. CHAPTER 5. — **Infirmitatem**, want of stability = *fickleness.*

8. **Mobiles**, *changeable.*

10. **Consuetudinis**, possessive predicate gen. B. 198, 3; H. 447; A. 343, *c*; G. 366.

Consistere, *to stop.*

13. **Quibusque ex** = et ex quibus.

16. **Quorum eos.** B. 209, 1; H. 457; A. 354, *b*; G. 377.

In vestigio = *at once.*

17. **Serviant**, *they are slaves:* causal subjunct. after **cum**.

18. **Ad . . . eorum**, *in accordance with their wish.*

Ficta, fictions = *falsely;* really a cognate accus.

22. CHAPTER 6. — **Facta**, *sc.* esse: so with **missas**.

24. **Quae postulassent**, *which they should ask.* In *oratio recta* the tense would be fut. perf. indic. (*postulaveritis*).

25. **Fore parata**, *would be provided.* This form may be called a fut. perf. infin. B. 270, 4; H. 619, 4.

Page 87, line 2. **Equitatu imperato**, *and the cavalry* (*i.e.* the amount to be furnished) *having been ordered.* The cavalry of the Romans was mostly furnished by their allies.

8. CHAPTER 7. — **Priores**, *first;* because two parties are referred to.

9. **Recusare quin contendant** = *refuse to contend.* B. 298; H. 595, 2; A. 558; G. 555.

12. **Resistere**, *sc.* iis.

Neque deprecari, *and not to beg off.*

Dicere, *sc.* se, *they say.*

13. **Gratiam**, *good will.*

15. **Attribuant**, *let them assign;* subjunct. here because in *oratio recta* the verb was either subjunct. or imperative.

16. **Concedere**, *yield.*

17. **Reliquum neminem**, *no other* (people). These words occupy the places of strongest emphasis — the *beginning* and the *end* of the clause.

19. CHAPTER 8. — **Visum est**, *it appeared proper;* **respondēre** is understood.

21. **Verum esse**, *was it right.*

22. **Alienos** (agros), *those of others.*

24. **Licere**, *sc.* iis = *they may.*

Page 88, line 3. CHAPTER 9. — **Propius se.** See note on line 2, page 36.

14. CHAPTER 10. — **Longo spatio**, *in a long course.*

16. **Citatus**, *rapidly*, as an adv.

17. **In plurīs partīs**, *in several directions.*

20. **Multis capitibus**, *by many mouths.*

26. CHAPTER 11. — **Agmen**, *their line of march.*

Page 89, line 1. **Ut faceret** = *that he would grant.*

2. **Quorum . . . principes** = *if their leading men.*

Fidem fecisset = *would give a pledge of good faith:* in *oratio recta*, **fidem fecerint** (fut. perf.). Order: ostendebant se usuros (*esse*) (*would avail themselves of*) ea condicione.

5. **Eodem illo**, *to that same purpose, i.e.* delay.

9. **Quam frequentissimi**, *in as large numbers as possible.*

12. **Mittit**, *sc.* eos.

Proelio, *to battle;* abl. of means.

15. CHAPTER 12. — **Ubi primum** = *as soon as.*

16. **Cum**, *although:* with **haberet**, subjunct. of concession. Observe that **amplius** does not influence the case of **equites**.

22. **Resistentibus**, *i.e.* nostris militibus: abl. absol.

23. **Subfossis equis**, *our horses having been stabbed underneath, i.e.* in the belly.

25. **Prius quam**, *before.*

28. **Amplissimo genere**, *of a most illustrious family:* abl. of source. B. 215; H. 469, 2; A. 403, *a*; G. 395.

Page 90, line 1. **Intercluso**, *cut off, i.e.* intercepted.

5. **Incitato** = *urging on.*

8. CHAPTER 13. — **Audiendos** (esse), *ought to be listened to.*

9. **Ultro**, *actually.*

10. **Intulissent**, *had waged.* B. 283, 2; H. 591, 1; A. 535; G. 631, 2.

11. **Summae . . . esse,** *would be* (an indication of) *the greatest folly:* **dementiae.** predicate gen. of quality. B. 203, 5; H. 447; A. 343, *c*; G. 366.

13. Order: quantum auctoritatis hostes, etc.

16. **Consilio**, *his plan.*

Quaestore. "The proconsul or prætor, who had the administration of a province, was attended by a quæstor." The duties of a quæstor combined those of quartermaster and paymaster in the army.

22. **Contra atque** = *contrary to what.*

24. **Si . . . impetrarent.** *if they could do anything, they might obtain it by deceiving him in regard to a truce.*

25. Order: Caesar gavisus (*rejoicing*) quos (= *that they*) oblatos (*esse*) sibi, iussit illos retineri.

Simul . . . simul = *both . . . and.*

Page 91, line 3. CHAPTER 14. — **Quid ageretur,** *what was being done.*

5. **Discessu suorum,** *i.e.* of their leaders and principal men, whom Cæsar had detained.

Concili habendi, *for holding a council, i.e.* for deliberation.

7. **Ne praestaret,** *whether it were better.* **Ne . . . an.** B. 300, 4; H. 650, 1; A. 335; G. 458.

9. **Pristini diei** = *of the day before.*

17. CHAPTER 15. — **Post tergum** = *in the rear.*

23. **Ad unum,** *to a man.*

24. **Ex,** *after.*

Cum, *although.*

Page 92, line 4. CHAPTER 16. — **Suis . . . rebus,** *for their own affairs also.*

6. **Accessit,** *there was added.*

9. **Neque interfuisse,** *and had not been present;* **proelio,** *in the battle:* dat.

12. Order: qui postularent (ut) dederent sibi eos, qui intulissent, etc.

16. **Sui . . . potestatis,** *that any (thing of) authority or power should belong to him.* **Sui** is possessive predicate gen. of the possessive pronoun, *suus.*

22. **Modo,** *only.*

24. **Opinionem**, *the reputation.*

26. **Ad**, *among.*

Page 93, line 1. CHAPTER 17.—**Commemoravi.** One of the few instances in which Cæsar uses the verb in the first person sing.

3. **Suae . . . esse**, *that it did not belong to* (become) *his dignity nor that of the Roman people.*

6. **Id . . . contendendum**, *that he should strive to do it.*

8. **Rationem**, *plan.*

9. **Tigna . . . sesquipedalia**, *pairs of beams a foot and a half thick.* The distributive **bina** is used because many such pairs were required. The accompanying plan of Cæsar's bridge will render its construction quite intelligible.

Paulum . . . praeacuta, *sharpened a little at the* (lower) *end.*

10. **Dimensa**, *proportioned* (lit., measured off), *i.e.* to the depth of the river in different places.

11. **Inter se** = *from one another; i.e.* the beams were two feet apart.

Cum, *when;* conjunction.

Machinationibus immissa, *let down by means of machines.*

13. **Sublicae modo**, *after the manner of a pile.*

14. **Secundum . . . fluminis**, *according to the nature of the river;* that is, in the direction of the current; the top of the beam being farther down the stream than the bottom.

Ut procumberent, *so that they leaned forward* with the current.

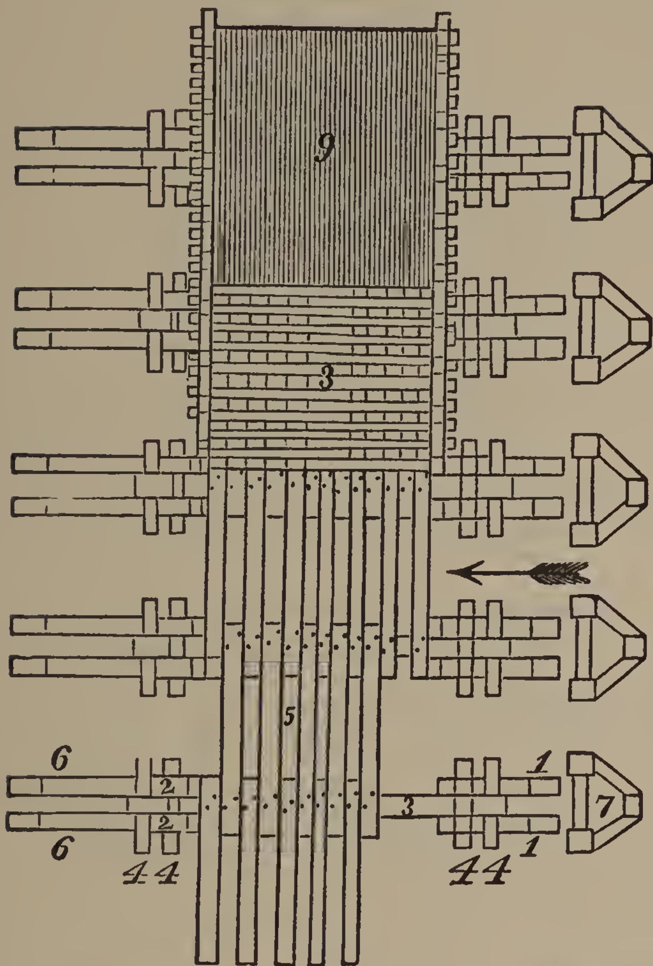
15. Order: item statuebat contraria his (*tignis*) duo (*tigna*) iuncta ad eundem modum intervallo quadragenûm pedum ab (*at*) inferiore parte (*fluminis*) conversa contra vim atque impetum fluminis. Hence the distance between the opposite pairs of beams, measured on the river bed, was forty feet.

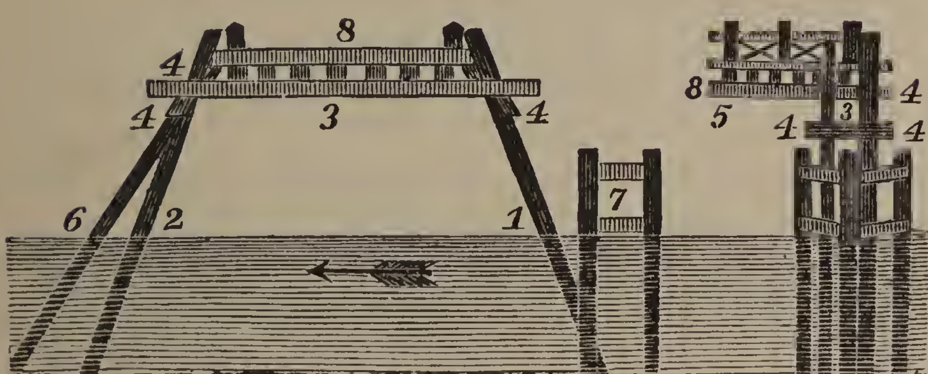
16. **Quadragenum** = quadragenorum: a contraction quite common with the distributives.

17. **Contra . . . conversa**, *i.e.* sloping against the current, the bottom of the beam being farther down the stream than the top.

18. Order: utraque haec (*both these* pairs) distinebantur trabibus bipedalibus immissis insuper (*let in above*), quantum iunctura eorum tignorum distabat (*as far as the joining of those

PLAN OF THE BRIDGE





1. Bina tigna sesquipedalia prona ac fastigata secundum fluminis naturam. — 2. Alia bina ex adverso defixa. — 3. Trabes bipedales. — 4. Binae fibulae. — 5. Materia directa. — 6. Sublicae obliquae. — 7. Defensores. — 8. Longurii. — 9. Crates.

beams stood apart, i.e. two feet), binis fibulis (*there being pairs of braces*) utrimque ab extrema parte (*at the end*).

21. **Quibus . . . revinctis**, *these* (pairs of beams) *being* (thus) *kept apart and being firmly bound together in the opposite direction;* that is, while the **trabs** tended to keep the sloping beams apart, the power of the **fibulae** was exerted in an opposite direction and tended to brace them together.

22. **Ea** = talis, *such.*

23. **Quo maior . . . hoc artius**, *the greater . . . the more tightly.*

24. **Haec contexebantur**, *these* (cross beams) *were connected* (or *covered*) *by timber laid on straight:* **derecta**, straight, lengthwise of the bridge.

26. **Nihilo secius** = *notwithstanding;* lit., in nothing differently.

27. **Oblique agebantur**, *were driven in obliquely.*

28. **Pro . . . subiectae**, *added as a buttress.*

29. **Aliae**, *sc.* sublicae.

Supra pontem, *i.e.* in the stream a short distance *above the bridge.*

30. **Deiciendi.** Supply **causā**, *for the purpose.*

32. **Neu**, *and not.*

Page 94, line 1. CHAPTER 18.—**Diebus . . . quibus** = *within ten days after.*

3. **Ad . . . partem**, *at each end.*

7. **Ex . . . quo**, *from the time that.*

20. CHAPTER 19.—**Hunc . . . earum**, *that this* (place) *had been selected nearly central in those regions.*

Regionum limits **medium.** B. 204; H. 450; A. 349; G. 374.

23. **Constituisse**, *sc.* eos, *that they had determined.*

26. **Ut . . . liberaret.** These clauses define Cæsar's object in crossing the Rhine, and are in apposition with **his rebus.**

Page 95, line 1. **Prōfectum** (esse), from **prōficio.**

4. CHAPTER 20.—**Maturae**, *early.*

5. **In Britanniam.** Cæsar was the first Roman to invade Britain.

6. **Omnibus fere**, *in nearly all;* **bellis**, abl. of time when.

7. **Inde**, *thence, i.e.* from Britain.

9. **Modo**, *only*.

10. **Adisset** = adiisset, *he should go to*.

12. **Neque quisquam** = *no one*.

Temere, *without purpose*.

13. **Neque quicquam** = *and nothing*.

14. **Gallias**, *the Gauls*, i.e. *divisions of Gaul*.

16. **Neque quanta . . . portus**, clauses (of indirect question) depending on **reperire poterat**.

17. **Quem . . . belli**, *what experience in war*.

21. CHAPTER 21. — **Periculum**, *the trial*.

23. **Navi longā**. See Vocab.

Huic mandat, *he commissions him*.

27. **Et quam . . . fecerat**, instead of **et classem, quam**, etc., the relative clause preceding the antecedent.

Superiore, *in the preceding*.

Page 96, line 3. **Qui polliceantur** = *to promise*. B. 282, 2; H. 590; A. 531, 2; G. 630.

Dare, *to give*; instead of **se daturos esse**. H. 619, 1; A. 580, *c*, N.; G. 527, R. 3.

8. **Virtutem**, *energy*; **consilium**, *prudence*, judgment.

10. **In . . . regionibus** refers to Britain.

Magni, *great*. B. 203, 3; H. 448, 1; A. 417; G. 379, 380, 1.

11. (Ut) adeat (eas) civitatīs quas possit (*sc*. adire).

Ut . . . sequantur=*to pursue* (=embrace) *the protection, etc.*

14. **Quantum** (for tantum quantum) = *as far as*.

Qui non auderet, *to one who did not dare*, subjunct. of characteristic.

16. **Quae**, *what* (things); interrog. pron.

Perspexisset. B. 300, 1, *a*; H. 649, II; A. 574; G. 467.

19. CHAPTER 22. — **Temporis**, *occasion*. See Book III, 28.

23. **Satis**, *quite*.

24. **Post tergum** = *behind him*.

26. **Tantularum**, *with such trifling*.

29. **Coactis contractisque**, *having been collected and brought together*.

Page 97, line 1. **Quod . . . habebat**, *what* (*of*) *war vessels he had besides*.

2. **Praefectis.** This shows that Cæsar took with him auxiliaries besides the two legions. See note on line 24, page 28.

Huc accedebant, *to these there were added.*

3. **A,** *at the distance of.*

4. **Tenebantur quo minus possent** = *were detained from being able.*

12. CHAPTER 23.—**Solvit,** *sc.* navīs (he loosens the ships) = *he sets sail.*

17. **Expositas,** *displayed.*

19. **Continebatur,** *was bounded.*

25. **Ut . . . ratio,** *as the science of war.*

26. **Ut . . . haberent,** *inasmuch as they had* (= were characterized by) *a rapid and changeable movement.* On **ut quae** in relative clauses with subjunct. of reason, see B. 283, 3, *a*; H. 592, and 2; A. 535, *e*, and N. 1; G. 633.

29. **Secundum,** *favorable.*

Page 98, line 2. **Litore,** *in* omitted.

5. CHAPTER 24.—**Copiis.** Supply **cum,** which is often omitted with the abl. of accompaniment.

7. **Nisi . . . alto,** *except in deep water.*

8. **Militibus,** dat. of the agent. Render: *moreover, the soldiers had, at the same time, to leap down from the ships, etc.*

12. **Cum,** *while.*

13. **Notissimis** = *well known.*

14. **Insuefactos** = *their trained.*

21. CHAPTER 25.—**Ad . . . apertum,** *on the unprotected flank; i.e.* unprotected by shields.

22. **Tormentis.** See note on line 7, page 47.

25. **Constiterunt . . . rettulerunt,** *halted and* (then) *retreated only a little.*

28. **Aquilam.** The chief centurion of the legion (primipīlus) stood next in rank to the Tribuni militum; he had a seat in the military council; and to his charge was committed the eagle of the legion, whence he is sometimes styled Aquilifer.

Ea res, *i.e.* his intended leaping into the water.

Page 99, line 2. **Certe,** *at least;* not *certainly,* which usually is **certo.**

6. **Inter se** = *one another.*

7. **Universi**, *all together.*

Ex proximis, *sc.* ii, *those from the nearest.*

12. CHAPTER 26. — **Signa.** While the **aquila** was the principal standard of the legion, the **signa** were, in a special sense, those of the cohorts.

Alius . . . adgregabat, *one from one ship, another from another, was ranging himself under whatever standards he had chanced to meet.*

15. **Aliquos singularīs egredientīs**, *any disembarking one at a time.*

17. **Ab . . . aperto** = *on its unprotected flank.*

In universos = *at the whole body.*

19. **Speculatoria navigia**, *observation vessels*, light and swift.

21. **Simul** = simul atque, *as soon as.*

22. **Suis**, *their comrades.*

24. **Cursum . . . capere**, *to hold on their course and to reach the island.*

26. **Caesari**, *of Cæsar;* dat. governed by **defuit**.

Page 100, line 1. CHAPTER 27. — **Quaeque** = et (*ea*) quae.

4. **Praemissum** (esse). See Chap. 21.

Cum, *although.*

5. **Oratoris modo**, *in the character of an ambassador.*

8. **Contulerunt**, *they heaped.*

9. **Ut ignosceretur** (*sc.* sibi) = *that they might be pardoned.*

10. **Quod cum**, *because although.*

Ultro, *actually;* or, *on their part.*

11. **Ignoscere**, *sc.* se.

12. **Imprudentiae.** B. 187, II, *a*; H. 426, 2; A. 367; G. 346, R. 2.

15. **Suos** = *their followers.*

18. CHAPTER 28. — **Post . . . quam**, *the fourth day after.*

20. **Sustulerant**, *had taken up*, *i.e.* on board. From **tollo**.

24. **Aliae . . . aliae**, *some . . . others.*

26. **Occasum.** See note, line 2, page 36.

Suo, *to themselves.*

27. **Quae tamen cum**, *as these, however.*

Ancoris iactis, *i.e.* when the anchors were cast.

28. **Adversa nocte**, *in the face of the night;* the sense being, "*though* the night was against them."

Provectae, *having sailed out.*

In altum = *to sea.*

Page 101, line 1. CHAPTER 29.—**Luna plena.** Modern astronomy, combining the necessary data, has determined this "full moon"; it occurred on the night of August 30th–31st, B.C. 55.

2. **Aestus maximos**, *the highest tides.* The tides are produced by the joint attractions of the sun and moon; and when the moon is either new or full, their joint attractions produce the highest tides. The student may thus observe that the statements of ancient authors often find new and unlooked-for corroboration in the discoveries of modern science.

3. **Incognitum**, *unknown;* because, in a confined sea like the Mediterranean (to which the observations of the Romans had been limited), the tides are scarcely perceptible.

5. **In . . . subduxerat**, *and had drawn on* (*dry*) *land.* The ships of the Romans, when not in use, and especially in winter, were drawn on shore: hence the phrase **navīs subducere.**

8. **Facultas**, *means.*

14. **Deërant**, *were wanting:* from **desum.**

15. **Hiemari oportere** = *that the winter must be spent.*

22. CHAPTER 30.—**Hoc**, *on this account:* abl. of cause.

24. **Optimum**, *the best thing.*

Page 102, line 4. CHAPTER 31.—**Eventu**, *the accident* (to).

5. **Fore id**, *that that would happen.*

8. **Quae naves.** In translating, transfer **naves** to the antecedent clause; *the timber and copper of those ships which, etc.*

13. **Effecit.** Its object is the object clause **reliquis . . . posset** = *he effected that they could sail* (**navigari**, *sc.* ab iis), *etc.*

18. CHAPTER 32.—**Ventitaret**, *kept coming.* Notice the force of the frequentative.

In statione, *on guard.*

20. **Consuetudo ferret**, lit., *custom produced* = than was customary.

21. **Id . . . erat** = *what it was.*

22. **Aliquid . . . consili** = *that some new design had been entered into by the barbarians.*

Consili, partitive gen.

27. **Conferta,** *being crowded together.*

Page 103, line 3. **Dispersos** = *them while scattered; sc.* milites.

5. **Incertis ordinibus,** *their ranks being confused.*

8. Chapter 33.—**Ipso,** *by the very.*

13. **Illi,** *the former, i.e.* the warriors.

14. **Receptum,** *retreat.*

16. **Usu,** *practice.*

17. **Incitatos . . . sustinēre,** *to check their horses* (previously) *urged swiftly on.*

21. Chapter 34.—**Quibus rebus,** *by these circumstances;* abl. of means.

Perturbatis nostris is dat. with **auxilium tulit.**

26. **Suo loco,** *in his own position, i.e.* where he then was.

28. Order: reliqui (*i.e. Britanni*), qui erant in agris discesserunt; that is, to join their countrymen in the army.

Page 104, line 2. **Quae . . . continerent** = ut illae continerent, *so that they kept:* hence the subjunct. of result.

3. **A pugna.** The preposition is not necessary, but it expresses the idea more dèfinitely.

6. **In perpetuum** (*sc.* tempus), *for ever.*

11. Chapter 35.—**Idem fore,** *that the same thing would happen.*

12. **Ut . . . effugerent,** a clause in apposition with **idem.**

19. **Cursu,** *by running.*

25. Chapter 36.—**Propinqua aequinocti,** *the day of the equinox being near.* The autumnal equinox is meant, which occurs September 21st or 22d.

26. **Hiemi . . . subiciendam** (esse), *that the voyage should be exposed to a storm.* The allusion is to the stormy weather known as "the equinoctial storm."

28. **Navīs solvit,** loosed his ships = *set sail.*

Page 105, line 1. **Capĕre,** *to reach.*

6. Chapter 37.—**Primo,** *at first.*

Non . . . numero, *with not so large a number of their forces,* i.e. *with not a very large number.*

8. **Orbe facto,** *a circular line of battle having been formed.* The **orbis** was formed when a small force was attacked by a much superior one. The advantage of it was, that every part of such a line became a point of resistance.

13. **Horis,** abl. with **amplius.**

14. **Postea . . . quam,** *but after.*

21. **Siccitatīs,** *the dryness.* "The plural of abstract nouns is much more common in Latin than in our own language, to denote a repetition of the same thing, or its existence in different objects."

Order: non haberent quo (*whither*) reciperent se.

Page 106, line 3. Chapter 38.—**Ex litteris,** *from the letters,* addressed to the senate, and containing reports of his military operations.

4. **Dierum viginti,** *of twenty days.* Compare Book II, 35, line 7, page 63, and note on the same.

Supplicatio. See note, line 7, page 63.

BOOK V.

Events of the year 54 B.C. Consuls, L. Domitius Ahenobarbus, App. Claudius Pulcher. I. Cæsar's second expedition into Britain. II. War with Ambiorix. III. Insurrection among the Treveri.

Page 107, line 4. Chapter 1.—Order: uti curent quam plurimas navīs (*that as many ships as*) possint aedificandas (*esse*).

5. **Modum,** *the measure.*

7. **Subductionis,** *drawing them on shore.* See note on line 5, page 101.

Quibus, *sc.* eas, *those which.*

8. **Nostro mari,** among Roman writers, is the Mediterranean.

Id, *sc.* facit, *he does that;* **eo magis,** *the more on this account.*

13. **Actuarias** = *swift sailers.*

14. **Usui** = *of service;* dat. of the end or purpose.

15. **Conventibus,** *the assizes.* See note, line 13, page 41.

16. **Illyricum** formed part of Cæsar's province.

18. **Civitatibus . . . imperat.** *Impero* here takes a dir. obj. (milites) in the acc., and an indir. obj. (civitatibus) in the dat.

Page 108, line 1. **Qui doceant** = ut ii doceant; hence subjunct. of purpose.

2. **Omnibus rationibus**, *in all respects.*

5. **Nisi . . . fecerint**, *if they should not do so:* in *oratio recta*, nisi ita feceritis (fut. perf. indic.).

7. **Litem**, *the damages.*

13. Chapter 2.—**Cuius**, *of which*, *i.e.* navīs cuius generis.

14. **Longas**, *sc.* navīs.

15. **Neque multum**, etc., *and that not much was wanting from this, that, etc.*

16. **Deduci**, *to be launched.*

Deducere navīs = *to launch the ships.* See note, line 5, page 101.

21. **Satis militum**, enough (of) soldiers = *soldiers enough.*

24. **Imperio**, *his authority.*

27. Chapter 3.—**Longe plurimum valet** = *is by far the strongest.*

Page 109, line 2. **Inter se** = *with one another.*

5. **Officio**, *allegiance.*

7. **Quaeque** = et (*ea*) quae.

8. **Indutiomārus**, subject of **instituit**.

16. **Civitati consulere**, *to consult the interests of the state.* H. 426, 4; A. 367, *c*; G. 346, N. 2.

19. **Idcirco**, *for this reason*, refers forward to the clause **quo . . . continēret**.

21. **Laberetur**, *might fall off*, *i.e.* from their allegiance.

24. **Eius fidei**, *to his protection.*

26. Chapter 4. — **Quaeque res** = et quae res, *and what reason.*

Page 110, line 4. **Cum . . . tum**, *both . . . and also.*

Merito eius, *in accordance with his desert.*

5. **Magni interesse**, *that it was of great importance.* **Magni**. gen. of degree of value. B. 203, 3; H. 448, 1; A. 417; G. 379, 380, 1.

8. **Id . . . factum** (esse), *that this had been done.*

9. **Suam gratiam,** *that his influence.*

Qui = cum is, *while he:* hence **fuisset,** subjunct. of cause or concession.

10. **Hoc dolore** = *with indignation at this* = huius rei dolore.

17. CHAPTER 5. — **Eodem,** *at the same place, i.e.* the port Itius.

21. **Loco,** *in the place* = *as.*

25. CHAPTER 6. — **Eum,** *sc.* esse.

27. **Accedebat huc,** *to this there was added.*

Page 111, line 1. **Quod dictum** (esse), *that this had been said.*

7. **Religionibus,** *by religious obligations,* such, *e.g.*, as the performance of vows previously made.

10. **Singulos,** *them individually.*

15. **Fidem . . . interponĕre,** *he pledged his word to the rest.*

22. CHAPTER 7. — **Longius,** *too far.*

23. **Prospiciendum** (esse sibi) = *he ought to take care.*

Quid, *in any way:* cognate or adverbial accus.

27. **Dabat operam** = *he was exerting himself,* taking care.

28. Repeat **ut** before **nihilo.**

Page 112, line 6. **Vim faciat,** *he should use force.*

7. **Pro sano,** *as a sane man.*

Qui = *because he;* hence **neglexisset,** *had disregarded,* subjunct. of cause.

16. CHAPTER 8. — **Quaeque** = et (*ea*) quae.

18. **Pro . . . re,** *according to the occasion and the circumstance.*

Pari, *i.e.* the number of cavalry which he took with him was equal to that which he left in Gaul.

20. **Leni Africo,** *by a gentle southwest wind:* the wind derived its name from **Africa,** the quarter whence it blew.

22. **Orta luce** = *at dawn,* daybreak.

Sub, *on.*

Page 113, line 2. **Cum,** *although.*

Manus, *bands,* forces.

3. **Annotĭnis** (navibus), the year-old ships = *those of the preceding year.*

4. **Sui commŏdi**, *for his own convenience:* pred. gen. of quality.

11. CHAPTER 9. — **Eo**, *on this account.*

12. **Molli . . . aperto**, *a smooth and open*, *i.e.* not steep and rocky.

13. **Praesidio navibus**, *the guard for the ships;* both in the dative. **Navibus** is best explained as a dat. of the end or object for which, though **praesidio** depends on the compound verb.

22. **Rari**, *in small parties.*

Page 114, line 3. CHAPTER 10. — **Aliquantum itineris** = *a short distance;* the accus. is that of extent of space.

8. **Sustinerent**, *held out*, *i.e.* withstood the force of the tempest.

9. **Ex . . . concursu**, *from that collision.*

12. CHAPTER 11. — **In . . . resistere**, *to halt on their march.*

15. **Magno negotio**, *with great trouble.*

17. **Labieno**, *to Labienus*, *i.e.* for his guidance; **ad Labienum** would simply imply sending a letter to him.

18. **Eis**, *with those*, *i.e.* employing them.

19. **Multae**, (one) *of much.*

Operae, predicate gen. of quality.

20. **Esse**, *that it was.* The subject is the clause **omnīs . . . coniungi.**

21. **Subduci**, *should be drawn on shore.*

28. **Summa . . . administrandi**, *the chief command and direction of the war.*

Page 115, line 2. **Huic cum reliquis** = *between him and the other.*

6. CHAPTER 12. — **Quos natos** (esse), *who were born*, *i.e.* were aboriginal, and produced from the very soil.

7. **Proditum** (esse), *it has been handed down.*

15. **Examinatis**, *weighed.*

16. **Ibi**, Cornwall, in the southwest.

21. **Animi** *of amusement.*

22. **Remissioribus frigoribus**, *the cold seasons being milder.*

27. CHAPTER 13. — **Inferior**, *sc.* angulus.

28. **Alterum**, *sc.* latus.

Page 116, line 2. **Dimidio,** *by a half;* abl. of degree of difference.

3. Order : sed transmissus (*i.e.* ex Hibernia) in Britanniam est pari spatio (*of the same length*) atque (*as*) ex Gallia.

4. **Hoc medio,** *the middle of this.*

6. **Subiectae** (esse), *to be presented,* or exposed to view.

7. **Dies . . . noctem** *that about the winter solstice* (*i.e.* Dec. 22d) *it is night for thirty successive days.* The report mentioned in the text is physically impossible. A night of thirty days' duration occurs only at much higher latitudes.

9. **Ex aqua,** *by means of water.* The allusion is to the water-clock (*clepsydra*), in which water performed the part of sand in the hour-glass.

11. **Fert,** *gives out,* reports.

12. **Tertium,** *sc.* latus.

23. Chapter 14. — **Hoc,** *on this account.*

Capillo sunt promisso, lit., they are (a people) of long hair = *they have long hair.*

26. **Deni . . . que,** *parties of ten and twelve.*

Inter se, *with one another.*

28. **Quo** = ad quos, *to whom.*

Primum . . . est, *each maiden was first conducted.* Cæsar here speaks *more Romano:* **deducere uxorem domum** = to conduct the bride home to her husband.

Page 117, line 2. Chapter 15. — **Tamen ut,** *yet so that.*

3. **Omnibus partibus,** *in all respects.*

8. **In statione,** *on guard.*

10. **Atque . . . duarum,** *and these* (two cohorts) *the first of two legions, i.e.* the first cohorts of two different legions.

13. **Per medios,** *sc.* hostīs.

18. Chapter 16. — **Intellectum est,** *it became evident.*

20. **Cedentīs,** *sc.* eos = hostīs.

23. **Consulto,** *intentionally.*

26. **Ratio,** *their mode,* manner.

Cedentibus, *sc.* nostris militibus.

Page 118, line 1. **Alios . . . exciperent,** *they relieved one another in succession.*

9. Chapter 17. — **Absisterent**, lit., *they did not keep off*, implying that they came close up to.

15. **Ex protĭnus**, *immediately after.*

17. **Summis**, *with all their.*

21. Chapter 18. — **Hoc aegre**, *that with difficulty.*

24. **Praefixis**, *fixed* (planted) *in front*, *i.e.* of the bank.

29. **Cum**, *although.*

Capite solo, *with the head only;* abl. of degree of difference.

Page 119, line 2. **Dimitterent**, *they left*, abandoned.

7. Chapter 19. — **Servabat**, *kept watching.*

9. **Quibus**, *sc.* in.

12. **Omnibus viis**, *by all the roads;* instrumental abl.

14. **Hoc metu**, through this fear = *through fear of this.*

15. **Longius**, *too far.*

16. **Tantum hostibus noceretur** = *that* (only) *so much injury could be done to the enemy.*

18. **Labore**, etc. That is, the injuries inflicted upon the enemy were now confined to the line of march of the legions, and cavalry digressions were prohibited.

22. Chapter 20. — **Fidem**, *the protection.*

28. **Qui** (*ei*) **praesit** = ut is (*ei*) praesit, *that he may preside over it.*

Page 120, line 4. Chapter 21. — **Militum** = *by the soldiers.*

5. **Prohibitis**, *having been protected.*

9. **Satis**, *quite.*

24. Chapter 22. — **Castra navalia**, *the naval camp*, *i.e.* the ships, which, as previously stated, Cæsar had connected with the camp.

Page 121, line 6. **Neque multum**, *and as* (cum, repeated) *not much.*

7. **Id . . . posse**, *that that might easily be wasted*, *i.e.* the remainder of the summer.

8. **Quid vectigalis**, *what* (*of*) *tribute*, *i.e.* how much. **Vectigalis**, partitive gen.

13. Chapter 23. — **Deductis**, *having been launched.*

15. **Duobus commeatibus**, *by two transportations.*

22. **Locum caperent** = *reached their destination*, in Britain.

25. **Aequinoctium.** The autumnal equinox, Sept. 21st or 22d.

Page 122, line 4. CHAPTER 24.—**Aliter ac**, *otherwise than* (during).

7. **Q. Ciceroni.** A brother of the Roman orator.

18. **Mederi**, *to remedy.*

21. **Milibus . . . centum**, *within a hundred miles.*

25. CHAPTER 25.—**Summo loco**, *of the highest rank;* abl. of source.

Page 123, line 2. **Ex civitate**, *of the state;* meaning, probably, prominent men connected with the government. The reading of this passage in the MSS. is various.

4. **Quod**, *because.*

8. **Interfectum**, *sc.* esse.

10. **Perventum**, *sc.* esse ab iis = *they had arrived.*

14. CHAPTER 26.—**Cum**, *although.*

15. **Sabino . . . fuissent**, *had met Sabinus and Cotta.*

24. **Ex nostris**, *of our men;* instead of the partitive gen. **nostrorum**.

25. **Re**, *concern*, interests.

27. CHAPTER 27.—**Arpineius**, pronounce Arpiné-yus.

28. **Eques Romanus**, *a Roman knight*, a member of the equestrian order. "The Roman Equites were originally the horse-soldiers of the Roman state, and did not form a distinct class or **ordo** in the commonwealth till the time of the Gracchi, B.C. 123." The farmers of the public revenue (*publicani*) belonged chiefly to the equestrian order.

Page 124, line 3. **Sese**, subject of **confiteri**.

4. **Debēre**, *sc.* se, *that he owed.*

16. **Ex . . . sua**, *from his own weakness.*

18. **Galliae**, dat. of the possessor.

24. **Quibus . . . satisfecerit**, *inasmuch as he had done enough for them* (*i.e.*, the Gauls) *so-far-as-it-concerned his loyalty.* **Pietas** embraces duty to the gods (*piety*), to country (*loyalty*, *patriotism*), to parents and relatives (in general, *affection*).

25. **Rationem offici**, *regard to his duty.*

Pro, *in consideration of.*

28. **Adfŏre** = adfuturam esse, *would be present.*

Ipsorum . . . consilium, lit., *that their deliberation was* = it was for them to decide.

Page 125, line 2. **Civitati . . . consulĕre**, *he consults the interests of the state.*

19. CHAPTER 28.—**Ultro inlatis**, *having been inflicted besides*, *i.e.* besides repelling the attack of the enemy.

22. **Quid . . . turpius**, *what was more trifling or shameful.* A *rhetorical* question (*i.e.* one which is in effect declarative).

25. CHAPTER 29.—**Contra**, *in reply to.*

Sero, *too late.* Notice the force of the frequentative, **clamitabat**, *kept crying out.*

Page 126, line 1.—**Consulendi**, *of taking measures*, consulting their interests.

2. **Arbitrari**, *sc.* se.

4. **Fuisse capturos**, *would have taken* or formed.

6. **Rem**, *the situation.*

7. **Dolori**, (cause of) *resentment, smart.*

8. **Mortem.** This is the first allusion that Caesar makes to the death of Ariovistus.

10. **Redactam**, *sc.* se esse, *that she* (Gaul) *had been brought.*

11. **Sine . . . spe**, *without a fixed hope.*

13. **In . . . partem**, *on both sides;* in either case.

14. **Si . . . durius**, *if there should be nothing more difficult*, *i.e.* than usual.

16. **Unam**, *that the only.*

19. **At**, *yet.*

22. CHAPTER 30.—**Ordinibus**, *ranks = centurions.*

23. **Vincite**, *carry your point:* introducing a speech in *oratio recta.*

27. **Abs** is antiquated, except before **te**.

28. **Perendino die**, *on the day after to-morrow.*

Liceat, sustineant (*would endure*). What does the present subjunct. here imply? B. 303; H. 576; A. 516, *b*; G. 596.

Page 127, line 3. CHAPTER 31.—**Consurgitur**, *sc.* ab iis = *they rise.*

6. **Unum**, *the same thing.*

9. **Dat manus** = *yields:* **dăre manus**, idiomatic for *to give up, yield, surrender.*

11. **Vigiliis**, *in wakefulness, i.e.* without sleep.

13. **Instrumento**, *the furniture*, in general.

15. **Nec maneatur**, *sc.* ab iis = *they cannot remain.*

17. **Ut . . . non**, *as if they had not been persuaded.*

24. CHAPTER 32. — **A**, *at the distance of.* See note on line 17, page 46.

28. **Iniquissimo nostris**, *most disadvantageous to our men.*

Page 128, line 1. CHAPTER 33. — **Qui**, *inasmuch as he*, introduces a relative clause expressing a *reason:* hence causal subjunct. **providisset**. B. 283, 3, *a*; H. 592, 1; A. 535, *e*, and N. 1; G. 633.

2. **Trepidare**, historical infin.

3. **Ut**, *as if.*

6. **Qui cogitasset**. See note on line 1, above.

11. **Omnia obire**, *to perform all things.*

13. **In orbem**. See note on line 8, page 105.

18. **Factum**, *sc.* esse.

21. Repeat **ut** before **properaret** and **complerentur**.

23. CHAPTER 34. — **Consilium**, *prudence, judgment.*

24. **Tota acie**, *throughout the whole line;* **in** is omitted: = per totam aciem (in Livy).

Page 129, line 6. **Cedant**, *sc.* ut, *that they should give way.*

7. **Nihil . . . posse**, *that no injury could be done to them.*

20. CHAPTER 35. — **Cum**, *although.*

21. **Ipsis indignum**. B. 226, 2; H. 481; A. 418, *b*; G. 397, N. 2.

22. **T. Balventio**, dat. of disadvantage, but may be rendered *of Titus Balventius.*

27. **In . . . os**, *full in the mouth.*

Page 130, line 3. CHAPTER 36. — **Licere**, *sc.* ei = *that he might.*

5. **Ipsi . . . iri**, *but that no injury would be done to himself.* **Nihil**, accus. of specification.

6. **Fidem**, *word.*

7. **Si videatur**, *if it should seem proper.*

16. CHAPTER 37.—**Inter . . . agunt**, *they treat with one another.*

26. **Ad unum**, *to a man.*

Page 131, line 6. CHAPTER 38.—Order: ne dimittant occasionem liberandi sui in perpetuum atque, etc.

10. **Nihil . . . negoti**, *that there would be no difficulty.*

19. CHAPTER 39.—**Munitionis**, *of fortifying, i.e.* collecting materials for that purpose.

Page 132, line 2. CHAPTER 40.—**Propositis.** Supply *eis qui litteras ferrent.*

5. **Admŏdum**, with numerals = *about, fully.*

14. **Muralium pilorum**, *of mural javelins, i.e.* such as were thrown from the walls of besieged places.

15. **Pinnae . . . que**, *battlements and parapets.*

16. **Tenuissima**, *in very delicate;* **valetudine**, *health;* abl. of quality.

18. **Ultro**, *actually.*

21. CHAPTER 41.—**Sermonis aditum**, *access* (to him) *for conversation.*

23. **Egerat**, *had discussed.*

27. **Fidei . . . causa**, *for the purpose of securing belief.*

Page 133, line 3. **Per se** = *so far as they were concerned.*

5. **Unum modo**, *one thing only.*

8. **Utantur**, *let them use;* in *oratio recta*, imperative.

9. **Pro**, *in consideration of.*

15. CHAPTER 42.—**Nulla copia**, *there being no supply;* abl. absol.

24. CHAPTER 43.—**Ferventīs . . . glandīs**, *glowing balls of pliant clay.*

25. **Casas**, *the huts*, in winter-quarters.

Page 134, line 2. **Turrīs.** See note on line 25, page 77. **Agere**, *to move.*

8. **Quisquam.** In what kind of sentences used? B. 252, 4; H. 513; A. 311; G. 317, 1.

15. **Turri**, abl. absol.

17. **Nutu . . . que** = *by beck and call.*

20. **Deturbati,** *sc.* hostes sunt.

23. CHAPTER 44. — **Qui adpropinquarent,** *who were approaching.* A graphic use of the subjunct. of characteristic. **Adpropinquabant** would simply state a *fact, i.e.* that they were actually rising to the rank of chief centurions; **adpropinquarent** delineates *character*, and to that subordinates the fact.

31. **Quaque,** *and where.*

Page 135, line 5. **Hunc,** *the latter.*

6. **In illum,** *at the former.*

8. **Pulloni,** *of Pullo;* dat. of disadvantage, or reference.

19. **Sic . . . versavit,** *thus fortune whirled them both about* (tossed them up and down) *in their contest* (*i.e.* with one another) *and conflict* (*i.e.* with the enemy).

21. **Uter utri,** *which . . . to the other.* On their juxtaposition, see H. 667.

23. CHAPTER 45. — **Quanto gravior . . . tanto crebriores,** *the more severe . . . the more frequently.*

30. **Prima,** *the beginning of.*

Page 136, line 4. **Versatus,** *moving about.*

23. CHAPTER 47. — **Litteras publicas,** *the public documents; i.e.* such accounts and materials for reports as a commanding general would necessarily keep.

Page 137, line 1. **Praesertim quos sciret** = praesertim cum eos sciret, *especially since he knew that they;* the relative, strengthened by **praesertim,** introducing a reason. B. 283, 3; H. 592; A. 535, *e*; G. 633.

7. CHAPTER 48. — **Opinione deiectus,** *disappointed in his expectation.*

14. **Graecis litteris,** *in Greek letters; i.e.* Latin words in Greek characters. Educated Romans in Cæsar's time were generally quite familiar with Greek.

19. **Adfŏre** = adfuturum esse.

24. **Perlectam** (previously), *read through.*

Page 138, line 4. CHAPTER 49. — **Faciat.** Supply *ut.*

8. **Animo,** *in their courage:* abl. denoting *in what respect.*

13. **Aequo . . . existimabat,** *he thought that he should relax in speed without anxiety.*

15. **Haec,** *sc.* castra.

17. **Viarum.** The Roman camp was laid out with great regularity and precision. It was divided into sections by streets at right angles with each other.

23. CHAPTER 50.—**Utrīque** = *both parties,* each side.

Page 139, line 4. **Concursari,** *sc.* ab militibus = *that they should run to and fro;* so, **agi** = *that they should act.* See note on line 22, page 142.

8. CHAPTER 51.—**Vallo,** *the rampart.* See note, line 21, page 45.

14. **In speciem,** *for show.*

Singulis ordinibus, *by single rows, i.e.* one row deep.

15. **Ea,** *in that direction.*

22. CHAPTER 52.—**Neque . . . videbat,** *and he saw that the place was not left with trifling loss to them.*

26. **Non quemque,** *that not every tenth* = more than one in ten.

Page 140, line 23. CHAPTER 53.—**Trinis hibernis,** *in three winter-quarters.* The distributives are used with the force of cardinals with plural nouns which have no singular.

28. **Quid . . . consili** = *what other plan.*

Page 141, line 2. **Neque . . . fere** = *and scarcely any.*

5. **In his,** *among these, sc.* nuntiis.

20. CHAPTER 54.—**Publico consilio,** *by a public resolution.*

Cum, *although.*

24. **Tantum valuit** = *so great an influence did it exert.*

25. **Principes inferendi,** (to be) *first in waging.*

28. **Alteros,** *the one,* the Haedui.

30. **Alteros,** *the other,* the Remi.

Page 142, line 1. **Suspecta,** *suspected;* **nobis,** dat., but may be rendered *by us.*

Idque . . . sit, *and I do not know whether this ought so much to be wondered at.*

2. **Cum . . . tum maxime,** *both . . . and particularly.*

4. Order: dolebant gravissime se deperdidisse tantum eius opinionis (*of that reputation*).

15. CHAPTER 55.—**Lapsus**, lit., having fallen = *being disappointed.*

22. CHAPTER 56.—**Ultro . . . veniri** = *that men came to him freely.* The verb thus used without a subject (impersonally) expresses in a forcible manner the very *essence of action;* thus, **veniri** means "that a coming took place."

24. **Altera**, *sc.* ex parte.

26. **Armatum concilium**, *an armed council.*

27. **Quo**, whither = *to which.*

Page 143, line 1. **Adfectus**, *visited.* In general, the accompanying noun determines the meaning of **adficio**.

4. **Fidem**, *the protection.*

5. **Bona**, *property.* Compare the English "goods."

7. **Huc**, *i.e.* into the territories of the Senŏnes and Carnŭtes.

11. CHAPTER 57.—**Munitissimis**, *admirably fortified.*

13. **Rei . . . gerendae**, *of managing the affair well = of performing an exploit.*

16. **Habuerat** = *he had delivered.*

19. **Sub**, *close to*, near to.

23. **Opinionem**, *the impression.*

26. CHAPTER 58.—**Nocte una**, *within one night.*

Page 144, line 1. **Nulla ratione**, *in no way*, manner.

2. **Ex**, *according to.*

7. **Ubi . . . est**, *when it seemed proper.*

Sub, *towards.*

9. **Praecipit**, *he directs*, refers to the object clause **unum . . . Indutiomarum**, the conj. **ut** being omitted.

Interdicit, *he forbids*, refers to the object clause **neu . . . viderit**. It would be more in accordance with English idiom to omit **atque interdicit** in their present position, and to render them just before **neu quis**, which must then be translated *that any one*, on account of the negative force of **interdicit**: *he directs that, the enemy having been frightened off and put to flight, etc., and forbids that any one shall wound, etc.*

13. **Spatium . . . illum**, *that he, having found time.*

16. **Hominis** = Labieni.

18. **Deprehensus**, *overtaken.*

22. **Factum**, a perf. participle agreeing with **id**, but may be rendered *exploit*, or *was done*.

BOOK VI.

Events of the year 53 B.C. Consuls, Cn. Domitius Calvinus, M. Valerius Messāla. I. A rebellion in nearly all the states of Gaul. Their subjugation. II. Cæsar's expedition against the Suevi. III. Punishment of Ambiŏrix and the Eburōnes.

Page 145, line 4. CHAPTER I. — **Proconsule**, *proconsul*, of Spain; an officer who acted in the place of a consul without holding the office of consul itself; though the proconsul was generally one who had held the office of consul, so that the proconsulship was a continuation, though a modified one, of the consulship. Dict. Antiqq.

5. **Ad urbem**, *near the city*, Rome.

cum imperio, *with military command;* because a proconsul was not permitted to enter the city while he held the **imperium**.

6. **Consul . . . rogavisset**, lit., *the consul had questioned by oath;* because they were *asked* to swear that they would obey their leaders, and never desert their standards.

8. **Magni interesse**, *that it was of great importance.* B. 203, 3; H. 448, 1, 449, 3; A. 417, 335, N. 2; G. 382, 1.

9. **Ad . . . Galliae**, *for an impression on Gaul.*

12. **Augēri** must be rendered *more than compensated.* The propriety of its use here is questionable.

Page 146, line 6. CHAPTER 2. — **Obsidibus . . . cavent**, *and in regard to the money they take precaution by means of hostages*, *i.e.* to secure its payment.

12. **Consilia communicare**, *are concerting plans.*

14. **Maturius**, *earlier*, *i.e.* than usual.

22. CHAPTER 3. — **Primo vere**, *at the beginning of spring.*

26. **Lutetiam Parisiorum**, *to Lutetia of the Parisians;* the modern Paris.

27. **Civitatem coniunxerant**, *they* (the Parisii) *had united their state with them* (the Senŏnes).

Page 147, line 1. **Pro suggestu,** *from a stage* or platform.

4. CHAPTER 4.—**Princeps,** *author.*

6. **Conantibus,** *i.e.* eis conantibus in oppida convenire.

9. **Quorum in fide,** *under whose protection.*

18. CHAPTER 5.—**Totus,** etc., *he applies himself wholly, with mind and soul, to the war, etc.*

21. Order: ne quis motus exsistat aut ex huius (*his*) iracundia, aut ex eo odio civitatis (*of the state* = on the part of the state), etc.

23. **Pro explorato,** *as settled,* determined.

Page 148, line 1. **Venisse,** *sc.* Ambiorigem.

2. **Illi detrahenda** (esse), *ought to be drawn off from him.* B. 188, 2, *d*; H. 427; A. 381; G. 347, R. 5.

19. CHAPTER 6.—**Custodis loco,** *in the position of* (= *as*) *a guard.*

26. **A,** *at the distance of.*

Page 149, line 5. CHAPTER 7.—**Ripis praeruptis,** *with steep banks:* abl. of description or quality.

10. **In . . . devocaturum** (esse), *that he will not call in doubt* = he will not jeopardize.

12. Order: ut ex magno numero Gallorum equitum natura cogebat non nullos favēre Gallicis rebus.

15. **Ordinibus,** *ranks* = *centurions.*

18. **Fert consuetudo,** lit., *custom brings* = is customary.

20. **In tanta,** *in view of the great.*

24. CHAPTER 8.—**Longum** = *too long.*

29. **Quae fore,** *that these things would happen.*

Page 150, line 6. **Imperatori,** *to your commander,* Cæsar.

23. **Est traditum,** *were delivered.*

30. CHAPTER 9.—**Nota . . . ratione,** *the plan being known and having been adopted.* See plan and notes, Book IV.

Page 151, line 8. **Communi odio,** *in his general hatred;* abl. of cause.

10. **Cognita causa,** *the case having been investigated.* The position of **Caesar** between these words (in the abl. absolute) shows *that he was the investigator.*

21. CHAPTER 10.—**Condicionem,** *terms.*

27. **Penitus . . . recepisse,** *had betaken themselves* (= had gone) *inwardly towards the boundaries of their territories, i.e.* towards the opposite borders of their country.

30. **Nativo,** *a natural.*

Obiectam = *presenting itself;* opposed.

Page 152, line 1. **Suevorum,** *on the part of Suevians;* subjective gen.

5. CHAPTER 11. — **Alienum,** *foreign, irrelevant,* to the subject. The subject of **videtur** is the clause **de . . . proponĕre.**

6. **Quo,** *in what respect.*

8. **Singulis** = *each.*

9. **Principes sunt,** *they are the leaders.*

11. **Quorum . . . redeat,** *to whose decision and judgment the management of all affairs and measures falls.*

13. **Institutum,** *sc.* esse.

14. **Auxili egēret,** *should be without assistance.* B. 212, 1; H. 458, 2; A. 356 and N.; G. 383, 1.

17. **Ratio,** *principle.*

In . . . Galliae, *in the constitution of all Gaul:* so prominent a place does the principle occupy.

Page 153, line 1. CHAPTER 12. — **Publice,** *in the name of their state.*

10. **Se uti,** *that they were enjoying.*

11. **Reliquis rebus,** *in other respects.*

13. **Quos adaequare,** *that they* (the Remi) *were equal.*

14. **Gratia,** *in influence,* favor.

21. CHAPTER 13. — **Aliquo numero,** *in any estimation;* abl. of quality.

24. **Aere alieno,** *by debt:* lit., another's money.

28. **Druĭdum,** (that) *of the Druids.* "The party of Druids, represented by Diviciācus and Liscus, was the popular party, strong especially in the large towns; it was opposed by the old clan-feeling kept up by military chiefs (**principes**), such as Orgetŏrix and Dumnŏrix."

Page 154, line 1. **Religiones,** *the doctrines of religion.*

7. **Qui,** *any one;* indef. adj.

20. **Media,** *the middle;* an adj.

25. **Eam rem,** *this matter,* the system of the Druids.

30. CHAPTER 14.—**In disciplinam,** *for instruction.*

Page 155, line 2. **Ediscĕre,** *to learn by heart.* In this manner long poems, like those of Ossian and Homer, have been traditionally preserved from very ancient times.

3. **Vicenos,** *twenty, i.e.* each person twenty years.

In, *under.*

4. **Ea,** *those matters,* which are subjects of instruction.

Cum, *although.*

5. **Rationibus,** *transactions,* accounts.

6. **Graecis litteris,** *i.e.* merely the *Greek characters.*

7. **Volgus.** How declined ?

8. **Litteris,** *on letters;* abl. of cause.

12. **Non . . . animas,** *that souls do not perish* (= are immortal).

Sed . . . alios, *but pass, after death, from one person to another;* lit., from some to others. This is the doctrine of the transmigration of souls, or metempsychosis.

15. **Mundi,** *of the universe.*

21. CHAPTER 15.—**Inlatas,** *sc.* sibi iniurias, *injuries inflicted on them.*

22. **Versantur,** *are engaged.*

Ut amplissimus . . . ita plurimos, *the more illustrious . . . the more.*

Ut . . . ita, with the superlative in both clauses = *the more . . . the more.*

24. **Hanc . . . noverunt,** *they are acquainted with this* (kind of) *influence and power only.*

27. CHAPTER 16.—**Religionibus,** *to religious rites.*

Page 156, line 4. **Eiusdem generis,** *i.e.* of human beings.

13. CHAPTER 17. **Mercurium,** *i.e.* a Gallic god whose general attributes resembled those of the Roman Mercury.

14. **Hunc,** *sc.* esse.

15. **Ferunt,** *they say,* report.

20. **Initia tradere,** *imparts the first principles.*

28. **Capta,** *the things taken* by him in war.

Page 157, line 1. CHAPTER 18.—**Ab . . . patre,** *from Dis as their father.*

3. **Spatia . . . temporis**, *the lengths of every period of time.*

5. **Ut . . . subsequatur**, *that the day follows the night*, *i.e.* they count their days from sunset to sunset.

7. **Ut possint**, *so that they are able.*

13. CHAPTER 19. **Cum . . . communicant**, *add to the dowries.*

14. **Ratio**, *an account.*

Fructus, *the interest.*

21. **Si . . . est**, *if a discovery* (of criminality) *is made.*

22. **Pro cultu**, *for the mode of life*, the degree of civilization.

23. **Vivis . . . fuisse** = *were dear to them when living.*

25. **Supra . . . memoriam**, *before the present recollection.*

26. **Iustis . . . confectis**, *the funeral rites being* (thus) *made complete.*

Page 158, line 2. CHAPTER 20. — **Habent sanctum** = *have enacted;* the part. agreeing with the clause **si . . . communicet**.

8. **Visa sunt**, *have seemed proper.*

10. **Nisi . . . concilium**, *unless in council.*

13. CHAPTER 21. **Student**, *do they pay attention.*

15. **Volcanum**, who represents the active agency of fire.

17. **Studiis**, *occupations*, pursuits.

24. **Renonum** = *of deerskins.*

Page 159, line 1. CHAPTER 22. — **Finīs proprios**, *limits as his own.*

2. **Gentibus . . . que**, *to the tribes and kinships.*

3. **Quantum . . . agri**, *as much land as seems proper and in what place.*

5. **Alio**, an adv.

7. **Agri cultura**, *for agriculture;* abl. of price.

Commutent here is used like a verb of selling.

8. **Humiliores**, *the weaker.*

9. **Accuratius**, *too carefully.*

15. CHAPTER 23. **Hoc . . . virtutis**, *this as a peculiar mark of valor.*

17. **Neque . . . prope** = *and that scarcely any one.*

Page 160, line 3. **Omnium rerum fides**, *confidence in all things.*

4. **His**, *from them;* dative.

6. **Sanctos habent,** *they regard as inviolable.*

17. Chapter 24.—**Iustitiae opinionem,** *reputation for justice.*

18. **Eadem,** *the same, i.e.* as in earlier times.

19. **Cultu,** *clothing,* dress.

21. **Multa . . . largitur,** *bestow many things in abundance and for enjoyment.*

25. Chapter 25. **Novem . . . expedito,** *a journey of nine days for one unencumbered.*

Expedito, *sc.* alicui.

26. **Aliter,** *otherwise, i.e.* than by days' journeys.

28. **Recta regione,** *in the straight line.*

Page 161, line 4. **Huius** = *of this part.*

10. Chapter 26.—**Bos,** generally believed to be the reindeer.

Figurā, abl. of quality, **cervi** being equivalent to an adjective.

13. **Sicut palmae,** *as it were palms; i.e.* palm-leaves.

17. Chapter 27. **Mutilae sunt cornibus,** lit., are mutilated in their horns = *have their horns broken off.* **Mutilus** is used of horned animals that have lost one or both horns.

18. **Nodis . . . que,** *joints and articulations.*

22. **Paulum . . . reclinatae** = *reclining only a little.*

24. **Omnes** agrees with **arbores.**

25. **Summa,** lit., the highest = *every.*

Page 162, line 1. Chapter 28.—**Uri,** *wild oxen.* A Celtic word.

8. **Quae sint** = ut eae sint, *that they may be.*

13. **Ab labris,** *around the rims.*

17. Chapter 29.—**Minime student,** *pay the least attention.*

20. **Barbaris,** *from the barbarians;* dat. of disadvantage.

23. **Extremo,** *the end of.*

Page 163, line 2. **Milibus,** *sc.* passuum = *miles.*

3. **Si quid proficere possit,** *if he can accomplish anything;* equivalent to *ut, si quid possit, proficiat.* Subj. of indir. question. B. 300, 3; H. 649, II, 3; A. 576, *a*; G. 460, I, *b*.

6. **Sese subsĕqui,** *that he follows,* instead of *sese subsecuturum esse:* but the present gives an air of despatch to the expression.

12. Chapter 30. — **Multum . . . fortuna,** *fortune exerts great influence not only in all things, but especially also in military affairs.*

15. **Videretur,** is subjunct. of result after **ut,** repeated, and **adferretur,** after **priusquam.**

16. **Magnae fortunae,** *a piece of great good fortune.*

22. **Propinquitatīs,** *the neighborhoods.*

24. **Illum . . . equum,** *him on horseback.*

27. Chapter 31. — **Ambiorix,** etc., *it is doubtful whether* (**ne**) *Ambiorix did not draw his forces together from choice* (**iudicio,** an act of judgment).

Page 164, line 5. — **Oceăno.** Dat. of nearness with **proximi.**

8. **Alienissimis,** *to entire strangers.*

10. **Confectus** = *enfeebled.*

11. **Precibus,** prayers for evil = *curses,* imprecations.

13. **Taxo,** *i.e.* with the juice of its poisonous berries.

19. Chapter 32. — **Unam,** *a common one.*

28. **Cum . . . tum quod,** *both . . . and particularly because.*

Page 165, line 6. Chapter 33. — **Versus in,** *towards.* **Versus** is often thus used with **ad** and **in.**

16. **Commodo** = *consistently with the interest.*

17. **Communicato** = *having concerted together.*

24. Chapter 34. — **Vicinitatibus,** *to those in the neighborhood:* the abstract for the concrete.

26. **Universis,** *sc.* militibus, *to them in a body.*

Page 166, line 1. **Ex parte** = *in some degree.*

8. **Instituta ratio,** *the established method.*

9. **Ex occulto,** *in concealment.*

15. **Noceretur,** *that injury should be inflicted.*

23. Chapter 35. — **Adpetebat,** *was approaching.*

27. **Modo,** *even.*

29. **Ultro,** *freely.*

Page 167, line 6. **Primos finīs** = *the nearest borders.*

11. **Profectum,** *sc.* eum esse.

13. **Quid vos,** etc. A speech in *oratio recta.*

18. **Cingi,** be encircled = *be manned.*

21. **Eodem duce,** *the same person as guide.*

23. CHAPTER 36.—**Qui continuisset,** *although he had kept.* The relative is here equivalent to **cum is**; hence the subjunctive. B. 283, 3, *b*; H. 593, 2; A. 535, *e*; G. 634. See also Crombie's Gymnasium, vol. i, pp. 376–377, where this passage is discussed.

26. **Numero dierum,** mentioned on page 165, line 13.

Page 168, line 2. Order: quo (= ut eo, *that by it*) posset offendi (*an error could be committed* by him) in milibus passuum tribus (*within three miles* of his camp), legionibus oppositis (*i.e.* to the enemy) maximoque equitatu, etc.

5. **Mittit.** Its subject is **Cicero,** at the beginning of the chapter.

Quas inter, instead of the usual order, **inter quas.**

7. **Hoc spatio,** *in this interval, i.e.* since Cæsar's departure.

14. CHAPTER 37.—**Ab . . . porta,** *by the decuman gate*, in the rear of the camp.

16. **Usque eo,** *to such a degree.*

Qui . . . tenderent=*who had their tents close to the ramparts.* With **tenderent** supply **tabernacŭla** for a full construction.

23. **Trepidatur,** *alarm prevails.*

28. **Novas religiones,** *strange superstitious notions.*

Page 169, line 6. CHAPTER 38.—**Apud Caesărem,** *with Cæsar*, as commander.

10. **In . . . discrimine,** *that matters were in the greatest danger.*

12. **In statione,** *on guard.*

13. **Relinquit . . . Sextium,** *consciousness leaves Sextius* = Sextius faints.

15. **Per manus,** lit., through hands = *from hand to hand.*

21. CHAPTER 39.—**Quae recipiat** = ut ea recipiat, *that can receive.*

Modo, *but recently.*

Page 170, line 2. CHAPTER 40.—**Manipulos,** *the maniples* = companies. "In legione sunt centuriae sexaginta, manipuli triginta, cohortes decem." Cincius, *De Re Militari.* The word (from **manus**) originally meant *a handful or wisp of hay, straw, fern, or the like*, and this, according to Roman tradition, affixed to the end of a pole, formed the primitive military standard.

3. Order: alii (*some*) censent ut cuneo facto perrumpant celeriter.

Cuneo. The *wedge* was employed when a concentration of force upon a given point of the enemy was desirable. The **cuneus** allowed the soldiers composing it to discharge their weapons at such a point.

6. **At,** *yet.*

Alii, *others, sc.* censent.

14. **Usu,** *experience.*

15. Order: potuerunt neque permanere in eo consilio, quod probaverant, ut defenderent se superiore loco, neque imitari eam vim celeritatemque, quam viderant prodesse (*were profitable*) aliis.

21. Order: traducti erant in superiores ordines huius legionis.

Page 171, line 3. CHAPTER 41.—**Fidem . . . faceret,** *could not secure belief.*

5. **Paene . . . mente** = *almost deprived of reason.*

7. **Incolumi exercitu,** *the army being safe* = si incolumis fuisset exercitus; the abl. absolute having the force of a conditional sentence.

8. **Oppugnaturos fuisse.** See note and references, line 19, page 25.

11. CHAPTER 42.—**Unum questus,** *complaining of one thing.*

Ex . . . praesidio, *off guard and out of the garrison.*

12. **Ne . . . debuisse,** *that room should not have been left to even the smallest chance.*

14. **Multo . . . amplius.** Repeat **fortunam potuisse.**

16. **Avertisset,** *she* (fortune) *had diverted.*

Page 172, line 1. CHAPTER 43.—**His pereundum** (esse) = *that these must perish.*

2. **In . . . est** = *matters reach such a point.* A translation of the mere words here would give neither the sense nor the spirit.

4. Order: ut captivi circumspicerent Ambiorigem modo visum (*but just now seen*) ab se in fuga.

5. **Plane,** *entirely.*

7. **Ab,** *with.*

8. **Studio,** *in their zeal.*

9. **Paulum,** *only a little.*

15. CHAPTER 44.—**Damno,** *with the loss;* may be taken as abl. of price or attendant circumstance.

Durocortorum, terminal accus.

19. **More maiorum,** *according to the custom of our ancestors* = in accordance with ancient rigor.

25. **Ad . . . agendos.** See note on line 13, page 41.

BOOK VII.

Events of the year 52 B.C. Consuls, Cn. Pompeius Magnus III. (alone until August 1st), Q. Cæcilius Metellus Pius Scipio.—THE WAR WITH VERCINGETŎRIX. The Gauls concert measures for renewing the war. Cæsar returns to Gaul. Siege and capture of Avarĭcum. Siege and capture of Alesĭa, and surrender of Vercingetŏrix.

Page 173, line 3. CHAPTER 1.—**Clodi,** *of Clodius,* a turbulent Roman and the implacable enemy of Cicero; slain in an encounter with Milo.

4. **Coniurarent** = *should take up arms:* should band together by an oath, under Pompey, to quell the disorders consequent upon the death of Clodius.

8. **Urbano** = *in the city,* Rome.

12. The position of **principes** between **indictis** and **conciliis** shows that *the leading men* were the actors in appointing the councils.

14. **Posse recidere,** *may happen in turn.*

16. **Deposcunt,** *sc.* eos.

18. **Rationem . . . habendam,** *that care should be taken;* regard should be had.

Page 174, line 9. CHAPTER 2.—**Principes,** *first.*

11. **Obsidibus,** *by means of hostages.*

12. **Fide,** *by a pledge of honor.*

14. **Continetur,** *is comprised.*

27. CHAPTER 3.—**Hunc,** *sc.* clamorem.

Excipiunt, *take up.*

Page 175, line 7. CHAPTER 4.—**Adpetebat,** *he was aiming at.*

19. **In fide**, *in their allegiance.*

23. **Imperium**, *the (military) command.*

26. **Quaeque**, from **quisque**.

Quod . . . tempus, *and before what time.*

Page 176, line 2. **Singulis oculis**, *one eye*, from each person: hence the use of the distributive.

9. CHAPTER 5. — **Quorum . . . fide**, *under whose protection they were.*

11. **De . . . legatorum**, *in accordance with the advice of the lieutenants.*

19. **Altera**, *sc.* ex parte.

Id, etc., *whether they did that for that reason*, etc., **ne** being interrogative.

25. CHAPTER 6. — **Urbanas res**, *affairs in the city*, Rome.

Virtute, *by the energy.*

28. **Ratione**, *manner*, way.

Page 177, line 2. **Dimicaturas**, *i.e.* legiones dimicaturas esse.

11. CHAPTER 7. — **Omnibus consiliis**, *to all* (other) *designs.*

13. **Provincialibus**, *provincial*, *i.e.* those of them within the limits of the Roman province.

20. CHAPTER 8. — **Intra** = *within the line of.*

23. **Discussa . . . pedum**, *the snow six feet in depth having been cleared away.*

27. **Singulari homini**, *to a single person.*

Page 178, line 9. **In versus**, *towards.*

12. CHAPTER 9. — **Haec . . . praeceperat**, *he had, in thought, anticipated that these things would happen in the case of Vercingetŏrix.*

13. **Per causam**, *under the pretext.*

16. **Daturum** (esse) **. . . operam** = *that he will take care.*

23. **Quid consili**, *any design.*

De = *against.*

Page 179, line 7. CHAPTER 10. — **In eo**, *i.e.* Caesare.

11. **Suorum**, *sc.* sociorum, *his allies.*

18. CHAPTER 11. — **Altero die**, *on the second day.*

20. **Expeditiore**, *more readily;* as an adv.

21. **Circumvallavit**, *he invested*, *i.e.* encompassed in a hostile manner.

28. **Ductum iri,** *would be protracted.*

29. **Quod . . . mitterent** = ut id eo mitterent.

Page 180, line 2. **Posterum,** *sc.* diem.

4. **Contingebat oppidum** = *connected with the town.*

6. **Cenabenses,** *the people of Cenăbum.*

11. **Quin,** here, has the force of *so that nearly.*

17. CHAPTER 12.—**Obviam Caesari** = *to meet Cæsar.* B. 192, 1; A. 370, *c.*

21. **Consuleret,** that he would take measures = *that he would spare.*

27. **Agmen,** *the line of march.*

Page 181, line 7. CHAPTER 13.—**Laborantibus** = *hard pressed.*

12. **Comprehensos perduxerunt** = *they seized and brought.*

17. **Agri . . . regione,** *in a very fertile tract of land.*

23. CHAPTER 14.—**Atque** = *from what.*

Omnibus . . . studendum (esse), *that attention must be given to this thing by all means.*

27. **Dispersos** = *in scattered parties.*

Page 182, line 9. **Neque interesse,** *and that it makes no difference.*

Ne . . . an, *whether . . . or.* B. 162, 4; H. 380; A. 335; G. 458.

13. **Ne . . . neu,** *that . . . neither . . . nor.*

Neu (neve) is used as a continuative after **ut** and **ne.**

24. CHAPTER 15.—**Amissa,** the things lost = *their losses.*

26. **Incendi.** Supply **utrum.**

Page 183, line 9. CHAPTER 16.—**In . . . tempora** = *for each hour of the day:* **singula tempora diei** has, however, the force of *equal subdivisions of the day;* not necessarily hours.

15. **Occurrebatur,** was met = *was provided for.*

18. CHAPTER 17.—**Intermissa** = *unoccupied.*

Page 184, line 8. **Meruisse,** *had served.* Supply **stipendia** for a full construction: *had earned pay as soldiers.*

12. **Quam non parentarent,** *than that they should not avenge.* **Parentare,** properly, to make an offering to the manes of the dead; here, by slaughtering their enemies.

18. CHAPTER 18. — **Propius Avaricum.** See note, line 2, page 36.

25. **Artiores** (= arctiores), *the denser.*

28. CHAPTER 19. — **Ab infimo,** *from its base.*

Page 185, line 3. **In civitatīs,** *according to their states.*

Saltus, *passes,* passages.

6. **Ut qui,** *so that one who.*

7. **Aequo Marte** = *on equal terms;* the idea being, Mars favoring one side no more than the other.

8. **Condicionis,** *of situation.*

13. **Constare,** *should cost.*

20. CHAPTER 20. — **Proditionis.** B. 208, 1; H. 456; A. 352; G. 378.

28. **Quod,** *as to the fact that;* serving merely to introduce the subject of remark.

Page 186, line 3. **Equitum . . . debuisse,** *that the assistance of the cavalry ought not to be missed in a marshy place.*

9. **Fortunae.** Supply **habendam gratiam,** from the following line: *that thanks were due to fortune.*

12. **Qui** = cum ii, *because they:* hence **receperint,** *betook,* subjunct. of cause.

16. **Quin etiam** (se) **remittere,** *moreover he would even submit* (it). The object of **remittere** (represented by *it*) is the object clause **si . . . videantur.**

18. **Haec . . . milites.** Observe the change from *oratio obliqua* to *oratio recta.*

32. **Victorem,** *a victorious.*

Page 187, line 4. CHAPTER 21. — **In eo,** *in the case of one,* or *him.*

6. **Maiore ratione,** *with greater prudence;* on a more comprehensive plan.

10. **In eo,** *sc.* oppido.

11. **Summam victoriae,** *the whole* (*of the*) *victory, i.e.* their final triumph.

13. CHAPTER 22. — **Consilia . . . Gallorum,** *devices of every kind on the part of the Gauls.*

17. **Falcīs,** *i.e.* falcīs muralīs, used in pulling down the walls.

18. **Subtrahebant.** Notice the force of the **sub**, *they pulled down from underneath.*

21. **Totum,** etc.; lit., they had planked, *i.e. they had covered the whole wall with towers.*

25. Order: et, malis (*the beams*) suarum turrium commissis (*being joined together, i.e.* to increase the height of their towers), adaequabant altitudinem nostrarum quantum turrium cotidianus (= *the daily addition to*) agger expresserat (= *had raised*) has.

27. **Apertos,** etc., *they retarded our mines* (when) *opened,* etc., that is, by countermining.

Page 188, line 4. Chapter 23. — **Perpetuae,** *continuous, i.e.* by being joined together at the ends.

6. **Introrsus,** *on the inside.*

10. **Inter se** = *one another.*

11. **Singulae** (trabes), *each row* (of beams).

Singulis . . . interiectis, *by a row of stones placed between.*

12. **Arte** = arcte, *tightly.*

19. **Trabibus,** abl. of material (quality), limiting **quae.**

Page 189, line 3. Chapter 24. — **Toto muro,** *sc.* in, *along the whole wall.* **In** is very often omitted with nouns qualified by **totus.**

7. **Occurreretur,** *resistance should be offered,* opposition should be made: used impersonally.

8. **Ratio,** *a plan.*

9. **Instituto,** *according to a regulation.*

10. **Partitis,** *having been portioned out.*

12. **Interscinderent,** *cut asunder, i.e.* made a cut separating the part on fire from the rest.

18. Chapter 25. — **Pluteos,** *that the parapets,* or breastworks; made of boards and similar materials.

Apertos, *exposed.*

22. Order: accidit nobis inspectantibus quod (*what*) visum (*having appeared*) dignum memoria non existimavimus praetereundum (*esse*).

24. **Per manus** = *from hand to hand.*

25. **E . . . turris,** *opposite the tower.*

26. **Scorpione,** *by a scorpio,* a military engine of whose construction we have no reliable information.

27. **Iacentem** = *lying dead.*

Page 190, line 4. CHAPTER 26. — **Profugere,** instead of *ut profugerent* or *profugiendi:* the infinitive in such constructions is common in English and Greek, but unusual in Latin prose.

12. **Proiectae** = *falling.*

21. CHAPTER 27. — **Directis,** *having been arranged.*

26. **Versari,** *to be engaged.*

Page 191, line 7. CHAPTER 28. — **Si . . . veniretur** (a Romanis), *if an advance from any part in their direction should be made against them.* **Obviam** has reference to *direction;* **contra,** to *hostile intention.*

16. **Confectis,** *those enfeebled.*

21. **Multa nocte** = *late at night.*

23. **Procul . . . dispositis,** *having been stationed at a distance on the road.*

25. **Quae . . . obvenerat,** (according to) *whatever part of the camp had at the beginning fallen to each state.*

Page 192, line 12. CHAPTER 29. — **Orbis terrarum,** *the whole world:* lit., the circle of lands, because the ancients in the time of Homer conceived the earth to be a circular plain surrounded by the ocean.

22. CHAPTER 30. — **Re integra,** *the matter being as yet undecided,* whether to defend the town or not.

Page 193, line 9. CHAPTER 31. — **Quem . . . diem,** lit., *which* (number) *and before what day, i.e.* which number he wished to be brought to camp, and to have it brought by a certain day.

14. **Amicus.** The honor of being called "*friend*" was eagerly sought by petty princes and kings in alliance with Rome.

25. CHAPTER 32. — **Necessario,** *urgent.*

27. **Singuli,** *a single.* The plural distributive is used because the reference is to the usage of successive years: *one for each year.*

Page 194, line 5. **Cognationis,** *i.e.* his family connections were numerous.

6. **Proximo,** *the preceding.*

8. **Suas . . . clientelas**, lit., that there are the adherents of each of them = *that each has his own adherents.*

10. **Positum** (esse), was placed = *depended*, has for subject accus. the clause **id . . . accidat.**

12. CHAPTER 33.—**Detrimentosum.** A word found only once.

15. **Coniuncta**, *closely allied.*

19. **Praevertendum** (esse sibi) = *that he ought to prevent.*

21. **De iure**, *from their prerogative*, peculiar right.

26. **Atque oportuerit**, *than was proper.*

27. **Renuntiatum** (esse), *had been* (officially) *reported* as having been elected.

Page 195, line 15. CHAPTER 34.—**Parte**, *side.*

17. CHAPTER 35.—**Utrimque**, *on both sides*, *i.e.* one on one side of the river, the other on the other side.

In . . . ponebant = *they pitched their camps in sight of and almost opposite to one another*, rendering **castris** (in the dat. depending upon the idea of *proximity*) *to one another*, to avoid harshness.

26. **In . . . restitit**, *he remained behind in concealment.*

Page 196, line 9. CHAPTER 36.—**Quintis castris**, *in five days' march.* The Romans made an encampment at the end of each day's march. Hence **castra**, when used as a measure of distance, means "*a day's march.*" Cf. the exactly similar use of *σταθμός* in Greek.

17. **Eius iugi**, *of that height.*

24. Order: periclitaretur quid animi ac virtutis esset in quoque suorum.

25. **Collis.** Like a true military genius, Cæsar quickly discerns the enemy's vulnerable point.

Sub ipsis, *at the very.*

Page 197, line 3. **Duodenum** = duodenorum.

4. **Tuto**, an adverb.

12. CHAPTER 37.—**Imperio natos**, *born for dominion*, "born to rule."

17. **Sic . . . obtinuerit**, *yet in such a way that he obtained from him* (only) *a very just decision.*

23. **Vel**, *even.*

27. **Ea,** *i.e.* decem milia.

29. Order: constituunt qua ratione placeat (*it would please them* = they wish) reliqua agi.

Page 198, line 3. CHAPTER 38.—**Quo proficiscimur,** *whither are we going;* introduces a speech in *oratio recta.*

6. **Indicta causa,** lit., their cause being unpleaded = *without trial:* abl. absol.

16. **Ut . . . consulat,** *that he would consult their interests.*

17. **Consili . . . sit,** *it were a matter for deliberation, and it were not necessary.*

Consili, possessive predicate gen. after **sit.**

19. **Nosmet.** B. 84, 2; H. 175, 4; A. 143, *d*; G. 102, N. 2.

21. **Persequamur,** *let us avenge:* subjunct. in exhortation.

24. **Qui . . . erant,** *who were along* (with him) *through a reliance on his protection.*

29. **Atque ipse,** *as he himself.*

Page 199, line 1. CHAPTER 39.—**Summo loco,** *of the highest rank:* abl. of *source* after **natus.**

12. **Quod . . . provideat,** *which he foresees will happen.*

14. **Propinqui,** *their relations, i.e.* the relations of **tot hominum milia**: with **neglegere** supply *possint.*

20. CHAPTER 40.—**Contrahenda,** *contracting;* on account of the diminished forces within.

27. **Immisso,** *having been sent on.*

Page 200, line 2. **Versari,** *to move about.*

5. **Deprecari,** *to pray for the averting of, i.e.* to beg for their lives.

9. CHAPTER 41.—**Conservatos,** *sc.* eos esse, *that those had been preserved.*

13. **Fuerit,** *was:* subjunct. of indirect question.

15. **Quibus,** with **isdem** in the next line, is, lit., *by whom the same,* dat. of the agent; better rendered, *by whom also.* Translate thus: *who also, on account of the great size of the camp, had to remain continuously on the rampart.*

27. CHAPTER 42.—**Cognoscendum,** *becoming informed,* of all the facts.

28. **Quae** relates only to **temeritas,** the nearest noun.

Page 201, line 3. **Rem proclinatam** = *the perilous movement.*

6. **Fide,** *their word of honor.*

14. CHAPTER 43.—**Publico consilio,** *by public resolution* or authority.

18. **Capti,** taken = *charmed.*

24. **Gravius,** *too severe.*

30. **Nata,** *proceeding,* arising.

Page 202, line 1. CHAPTER 44.—**Cogitanti,** *sc.* ei = Caesari.

Facultas, *an opportunity.*

9. **Dorsum,** *that the top.*

19. CHAPTER 45.—**Mulorum . . . stramenta.** These words are omitted in some Mss.

20. **Stramenta,** *the coverings,* perhaps = the pack-saddles.

24. **Easdem regiones,** *the same quarter.*

Page 203, line 3. **Insignibus,** *the ornaments,* particularly the decorations of the helmets.

4. **Raros milites,** *soldiers in small parties.*

6. **Singulis legionibus,** *each legion, i.e.* one lieutenant over each legion.

9. **Quid incommŏdi,** *what (of) disadvantage.*

11. **Occasionis . . . proeli,** *that the affair was* (one) *of opportunity, not of conflict.*

15. CHAPTER 46.—**Recta regione,** *in a straight line.*

16. Order: quicquid circuitus (*whatever of circuit*) accesserat huic (*sc.* spatio) ad molliendum (= *for easing*) clivum, id augebat spatium (*the length*) itineris.

17. **A . . . colle,** *nearly on the middle of the hill.*

18. **In longitudinem,** *lengthwise, i.e.* of the hill.

19. **Ferebat** = *allowed, permitted.*

20. **Praeduxerant,** *had constructed before* them, *i.e.* between themselves and the Romans.

22. **Densissimis,** *pitched very near together;* opposed to raris, *here and there.*

23. **Munitionem,** *i.e.* the wall six feet high.

24. **Trinis castris,** *three camps:* the Gauls had encamped in tribes according to their states.

Page 204, line 2. CHAPTER 47.—**Receptui cani,** *a retreat to be sounded,* lit., to be sounded for a retreat; dative of purpose.

Order: contionatus constituit signa (*he halted the standards, i.e.* preparatory to retreating) decimae legionis quacum erat.

4. **Satis magna,** *quite a large.*

17. **Neu.** Supply **facerent**; *and that they would not do;* whose object is defined in the clause **ne . . . abstinerent** = *spare not even the women, etc.*

19. **Per manus,** here, *by the hands.*

22. **Avaricensibus praemiis,** *by the rewards given at Avarĭcum.*

Neque commissurum (esse), *and that he would not allow.*

23. **Prius** = *before him, i.e.* prius quam ille murum ascendisset.

Suos manipularīs, *men of his own company.*

28. CHAPTER 48.—**Primo . . . inde,** *at first . . . afterwards.*

Page 205, line 8. **Cursu . . . pugnae,** *by their running and the duration of the battle.*

22. CHAPTER 50.—**Ab . . . aperto,** *on our exposed flank.*

23. **Manus,** *the forces,* of the enemy: genitive.

24. **Similitudine,** *i.e.* of their arms to those of the Gauls.

25. **Exsertis,** lit., thrust forth = *bare.*

29. **Quique** = et ei qui.

Page 206, line 5. **Quoniam me,** etc. A speech in *oratio recta.*

17. CHAPTER 51.—**Intolerantius,** too immoderately = *too eagerly.*

20. **Exceperunt,** *supported.*

Page 207, line 7. CHAPTER 52.—**Quanto opere . . . tanto opere,** *as much as . . . so much;* abl. of degree of difference.

11. **Plus se sentire,** *that they knew better.*

15. CHAPTER 53.—**Ad extremam,** *at the close,* conclusion.

21. **Nihilo magis,** *in no respect the more* = not at all.

23. **Satis . . . factum,** *sc.* esse.

Page 208, line 6. CHAPTER 54.—**Horum,** *i.e.* Viridomārus and Eporedŏrix.

10. **Merita,** *services.*

Quos = qualīs, *what* (*i.e.* in what condition); further explained by the addition of **quam humilīs**, *how powerless.*

16. **Gratiam,** *the influence.*

Page 209, line 3. CHAPTER 55. — **Tantum commŏdum,** *that so great advantage,* as was centred in Noviodūnum.

8. **Cui usui,** *of any advantage:* dative of the purpose or object.

9. **Frumenti quod** = quantum frumenti.

20. CHAPTER 56. — **Si esset periclitandum,** *if any risk was to be run:* impersonally.

23. **Ut . . . quidem,** *as every one at that time indeed.* "Be careful to distinguish between **nemo non,** denoting *quisque,* and **non nemo,** signifying *aliquis* or *aliqui.*"

26. **Labieno,** *for Labienus;* dat. limiting **timebat.**

Page 210, line 15. CHAPTER 57. — **Singularem,** *his excellent.*

18. **Impediret,** *obstructed,* hindered access to.

Page 211, line 4. CHAPTER 58. — **Secundo flumine,** *down the river;* lit., the river favoring; while **adverso flumine** = *up the river,* lit., the river being adverse.

11. CHAPTER 59. — **Secundo motu,** *a successful commotion.*

13. **Ligeri,** *i.e.* from crossing it: ablative.

18. **Longe aliud,** *a far different.*

27. **Virtute,** *energy,* vigor.

Page 212, line 3. CHAPTER 60. — **Singulas,** *one apiece.*

4. **Equitibus Romanis,** *to the Roman knights.*

22. CHAPTER 61. — **Tumultuari** = *that a great disturbance prevails:* used impersonally.

29. **Versus,** *towards;* a prep. following its case.

Page 213, line 9. CHAPTER 62. — **Primo concursu,** *at the first charge,* onset.

11. **Cum,** *although.*

17. **Post tergum** = *in the rear.*

21. **Tulit,** bore = *met,* suffered.

Page 214, line 10. CHAPTER 63. — **Frequentes,** *in large numbers.*

11. **Suffragiis,** dative, *to the votes.*

13. **Illi**, *the former*, the Remi and Lingŏnes.

14. **Sequebantur**, *they sought.*

19. **Requirunt**, *they miss.*

Page 215, line 2. CHAPTER 64. — **Aequo . . . corrumpant**, *provided that, with a willing mind, they will themselves destroy their own grain.*

12. **Allobrŏgas**, Greek form of the accusative.

13. **Nondum resedisse** (from **resīdo**), *had not yet calmed down*, *i.e.* that they still entertained resentment against the Romans.

Page 216, line 2. CHAPTER 65. — **Evocatis**, *the volunteer veterans*, soldiers who, having served out their full time, were afterwards persuaded to serve again.

15. CHAPTER 66. — **Otium**, *quiet*, tranquillity.

Parum profici, *that but little was effected.*

16. **Reversuros** (esse), *sc.* Romanos.

17. **Adoriantur**, *they must attack them;* subjunctive of command, and the verb was accordingly subjunctive in *oratio recta*, *i.e.* in the speech of Vercingetŏrix. B. 316; H. 642, 4; A. 588, *a*; G. 652.

18. **In eo**, *in that*, *i.e.* rendering assistance to one another on the march.

19. **Id quod** = *what;* **magis futurum** (esse), *would rather happen.*

21. Order: nam et (*even*) ipsos quidem debere non dubitare de equitibus hostium, quin nemo eorum audeat progrĕdi modo (*even*) extra agmen.

26. **Oportere**, *it ought:* its subject is the clause **ne . . . perequitarit.**

Page 217, line 3. CHAPTER 67. — **Ab . . . lateribus**, *on the two flanks.*

Una, *at the same time.*

A . . . agmine, *in front.*

20. **Proximis comitiis**, *at the last election:* ablative of *time when.*

25. CHAPTER 68. — **Ut**, *in the same order as.*

Page 218, line 2. **Est passum**, *allowed.*

3. **Altero die**, *on the second day.*

5. **Equitatu** *in respect to their cavalry:* abl. of specification.

8. CHAPTER 69.—**In . . . summo,** *on the top of a hill.*

14. **Pari . . . fastigio,** *with an equal rise in height, i.e.* with a uniform slope, while the hill on which Alesia stood, rose precipitously.

17. **Maceriam,** *a stone wall,* built without cement.

22. **Haec eadem,** *sc.* castella.

25. CHAPTER 70.—**Intermissam** = *unoccupied.*

Page 219, line 4. **Angustioribus . . . relictis,** (only) *the narrower gates having been left open.*

10. **Veniri.** See note on line 22, page 142.

20. CHAPTER 71.—**Suae . . . rationem,** *a regard for their own safety.*

24. **Ratione inita,** *a computation having been made.*

29. **Capitis poenam,** *the penalty of the head* = capital punishment.

Page 220, line 8. CHAPTER 72.—**Pedum viginti,** *sc.* in latitudinem.

9. **Directis lateribus,** *with perpendicular sides:* abl. of quality.

Ut . . . pateret, *so that the bottom of this trench extended as much* (= was as wide).

10. **Summa labra,** *the edges at the top.*

12. **Reduxit,** *he constructed back; i.e.* in a direction from the city.

Id, *sc.* fecit.

13. **Totum opus,** *the whole body, i.e.* of fortifications.

14. **Corona militum,** *by the circle of soldiers,* around the besieged city.

21. **Loricam . . . que,** *a parapet and battlements.*

22. **Cervis,** *stakes in the form of a stag's horns.*

Eminentibus . . . aggeris, *projecting out at the junctions of the parapet and rampart.* The **lorica** and **pinnae** composed the **plutei.**

Page 221, line 1. CHAPTER 73.—**Addendum,** *sc.* esse sibi.

5. **Perpetuae fossae,** *a continued trench:* at first, probably, constructed in sections, which were afterwards united into one.

This will explain the use of **perpetuae** and the distributive **quinos.**

6. **Huc . . . revincti,** *those stakes having been sunk into it and fastened at the bottom.* By **stipites** are meant the trunks of trees and strong boughs before mentioned.

7. **Ab . . . eminebant,** *projected* (above the ground) *with the branches* (only), lit., from the branches, *i.e.* from the part where the branches began.

8. **Quini . . . ordines,** *there were rows of five* = these stakes were arranged in rows of five.

9. **Se . . . induebant,** *were themselves impaled on very sharp stakes,* lit., put themselves upon: **ipsi,** *themselves, i.e.* by their own act.

10. **Vallis,** from **vallus**; dative.

Cippos = *bulwarks formed of sharpened stakes.*

11. **Obliquis . . . dispositis,** *in oblique rows arranged in quincunx* (like the five points on dice), thus:



and, extending the arrangement, thus:

 etc.,

in which the rows of three are arranged in an oblique direction.

12. **Paulatim . . . fastigio,** *with a gradually narrower slope to the bottom.*

14. **Ab summo,** *at the top.*

15. **Digitis quattuor,** *than four finger-breadths.* **Digitus** = the sixteenth part of a Roman foot.

16. **Singuli . . . exculcabantur,** *one foot* (deep) *from the bottom in each* (pit) *was trodden with earth.*

19. **Octoni ordines,** *rows of eight.*

22. **Totae,** *wholly,* leaving only the hooks projecting.

25. Chapter 74. — **Regiones . . . natura,** *following as level a district as he could, considering the nature of the place.*

27. **Diversas . . . his,** *opposite to these.* The main works of the Romans, therefore, consisting of the **agger** and **vallum,** with the towers, parapets, and battlements, occupied the centre of the combined fortifications ; the works on each side were of similar construction.

Page 222, line 21. Chapter 75. — **Universis civitatibus,** *to the states collectively.*

Page 223, line 3. Chapter 76. — **Immunem,** *exempt,* from taxes, imposts, etc.

9. **Incumberent,** *were applying themselves.*

11. **Inibatur** = *was taken down,* i.e. *entered officially.*

14. Order: (*ei*) delecti ex his civitatibus attribuuntur (*eis*) quorum consilio (*by whose judgment*) bellum administraretur.

19. **Ancipiti proelio,** *with a double front.*

26. Chapter 77. — **Deditionem censebat,** *decided for* (voted for) *a surrender.*

Page 224, line 1. **Habitus,** *regarded,* considered.

2. **Nihil de eorum,** etc. A speech in *oratio recta.*

4. **Loco,** *in the rank.*

14. **Respiciamus,** *let us regard;* subjunct. of exhortation.

16. Order: octoginta milibus hominum interfectis uno loco, quid animi (*what state of mind*) existimatis fore nostris, etc.

Octoginta, etc. The number of men in Alesia with Vercingetŏrix.

20. **Nec.** We may supply **velitis,** or render *or.* The negative seems attributable to the vehemence of expression, which desired to repeat the negative force of **nolite.**

23. **An,** *or.* The first member of the alternative question is to be mentally supplied: (Is there any other reason for your indecision ?) *or, because they have not come, etc.?* B. 162, 4, *a*; H. 380, 3; A. 335, *b*; G. 457, 1.

24. **Quid ergo ?** *What then ?* Supply **censetis** for a full construction.

25. **Animi** (ne interrogative) **causa,** *for the sake of amusement.*

26. **Illorum,** *i.e.* of the expected allies of the Gauls.

Page 225, line 6. **Depopulata** is here used passively.

17. **Securibus,** *to the axes,* borne by the lictors of Roman magistrates.

22. CHAPTER 78.—**Utendum,** *sc.* esse sibi, *they must avail themselves of.*

Page 226, line 16. CHAPTER 80.—**Ad . . . partem,** *on both sides,* within and without.

22. **Raros** = *here and there.*

Page 227, line 4. **Factum,** *a thing done.*

10. Order: item nostri insecuti (*eos*) cedentīs ex reliquis partibus, etc.

15. CHAPTER 81.—**Harpagonum,** *of grappling hooks,* fastened to long poles and used in pulling down walls, etc.

25. **Librilibus,** *sc.* saxis, lit., *with stones weighing a pound.*

Page 228, line 1. Order: submittebant auxilio his (*milites*) deductos ex ulterioribus castellis.

11. CHAPTER 82.—**Interiores,** *those within* the city.

12. **Priores,** *i.e.* et priores, *and those in advance.*

28. CHAPTER 83.—**Quid . . . pacto,** *what . . . and in what manner.*

Page 229, line 8. **Campestrīs munitiones,** *the fortifications on the plain.*

12. CHAPTER 84.—**Musculos,** *sheds,* or mantelets, "one of the smaller military machines, by which soldiers in besieging a town were protected while engaged in filling up the ditches round the besieged place, so that the movable towers of the besiegers might be made to approach the walls without obstacle." Cæsar describes their form and construction in *De Bello Civili,* II. 10.

17. **Pluribus . . . occurrit,** *run to* (defend) *several places* (at once).

18. **Pugnantibus,** *sc.* eis; dat. of reference with the additional idea of disadvantage.

Page 230, line 2. CHAPTER 85.—**Iniquum . . . momentum,** *an elevation with* (ad) *a declivity,* (although) *unfavorable in position, has great importance.*

6. **Ea quae,** etc., refers to **cippi, taleae,** etc., previously mentioned.

15. CHAPTER 86.—**Praerupta . . . ascensu,** *steep in the ascent.*

Page 231, line 4. CHAPTER 88.—**Ex . . . vestitus.** The reference is more particularly to the **paludamentum**, a purple or crimson cloak, in which Roman commanders were arrayed.

7. **Haec**, *sc.* loca.

8. **Excipit . . . clamor**, *a shout from the rampart and from all the fortifications takes it* (the shout just heard) *up in turn.*

20. **Quod nisi** = quod si non, *and if . . . not.*

Crebris subsidiis, *by the frequent assistance* given to one another.

Page 232, line 5. CHAPTER 89.—**Vercingetorix deditur.** "According to Plutarch, the Gallic chieftain arrayed himself in his most splendid armor, and, having caparisoned his horse, sallied out from the gates of the town. After he had taken some circuits around Cæsar, as the latter was sitting in his tribunal, he dismounted, put off his armor, and seated himself at the feet of the Roman general. Here he remained in silence until Cæsar ordered him to be taken away and reserved for his triumph. Dio Cassius states that he relied on Cæsar's former friendship for forgiveness. This reliance, however, proved unavailing, since, after having been led in triumph at Rome, he was put to death in prison."

8. **Capita singula**, *a head apiece* = one to each soldier.

26. CHAPTER 90.—**His . . . Romae**, *these things having been learned at Rome by letter*, *i.e.* by Cæsar's reports.

27. **Supplicatio.** See note on line 7, page 63.

NOTE.—The subject of the Gallic War is continued in an eighth book, written by Aulus Hirtius, the friend of Cæsar. This eighth book, together with an account of Cæsar's wars in Africa, Spain, and Alexandria, by uncertain authors, is sometimes given in complete editions of Cæsar's works.

MILITARY PHRASES AND IDIOMS.

ā dextrō cornū, on the right wing.
ā fronte, in front.
ā nŏvissĭmō agmĭne, on the rear.
ā sĭnistrō cornū, on the left wing.
ăb tergō, on the rear.
ăciem convertĕre, to face about, *by turning to the right or left*, or *entirely about.*
ăciem dīrĭgĕre, to align the front.
ăciem instruĕre, to form the line of battle.
ăciēs mĕdia, the middle of the line (*of battle*).
ăd ĕquum rescrībĕre, to enroll in the cavalry.
ăd spĕciem, for show.
adversō colle, up the hill.
adversō flūmĭne, up stream, up the river.
ăgĕre cum, to arrange, treat, *or* confer with.
agmen claudĕre, to bring up the rear (*of the line of march*).
āversum hostem vĭdēre, to see the enemy in flight.
bellum dēfendĕre, to ward off war.
cēdentēs et insequentēs, the pursued and the pursuing.
committĕre proelium, to begin the engagement, join battle.
conficĕre exercĭtum, to raise an army.
consĭlium ĭnīre, to form a plan.
consistĕre, to halt; take a stand *or* position.
conversa signa inferre, to face about and advance.
convertĕre signa, to face about.
dăre in fŭgam, to put to flight.
dăre mănūs, to yield.
excursiōnem făcĕre, to make a sally.
ex ĕquō, ex ĕquīs, on horseback.
ex lŏcō infĕriōre, from a lower position.
ex lŏcō sŭpĕriōre, from a higher position.
expĕdīta lĕgio, an unencumbered legion, *i.e.* without a baggage-train.
ferre condĭciōnem *or* **condĭciōnēs**, to propose terms.

hostĭbus adversīs occurrĕre, to come face to face with the enemy.

ĭn orbem consistĕre, to form a circle *or* a circular line of battle.

ĭn stătiōne, on guard.

incĭdit bellum, a war breaks out.

inferre bellum, to make war on.

ĭter făcĕre, to march.

iūs dīcĕre, to administer justice.

lĕgiōnem conscrībĕre, to enroll a legion.

mănĭpŭlōs laxāre (to spread out the maniples), to open out the ranks, *in order to give more space to each soldier.*

mănus conducta, a band of mercenaries.

naves longae, war-ships.

nāvĭgia spĕcŭlātōria, scouting-ships, vessels of observation.

nāvīs armāre, to fit out ships.

nāvīs dēdūcĕre, to launch ships.

nāvīs solvĕre, to set sail, weigh anchor.

nāvīs subdūcĕre, to draw ships up on land.

ŏpĕram dăre, to take pains.

ŏpĕram nāvāre, to do one's best.

ordĭnēs servāre, to keep in line.

pĕdem rĕferre, to retreat.

prīmī ordĭnēs, *often* the centurions of the first rank.

prīmum agmen, the van.

proelia parvŭla, skirmishes.

rŏgāre sacrāmentō, to enlist *under the military oath.*

sē rĕcĭpĕre, to withdraw, retreat.

sĕcundō flūmĭne, down the river, down stream.

signa inferre, to advance.

sŭb pellĭbus, in tents.

summa bellī, the general conduct of the war.

summa exercĭtūs, the main body of the army.

summa impĕri, the chief command.

summā vī, with all *one's* might, with might and main.

sustĭnēre ĕquōs, to check *or* rein in the horses.

vim făcĕre, to use violence.

volnĕra adversa, wounds in front.

VOCABULARY.

VOCABULARY.

ā, ăb, abs, *prep. with the abl.*, from, by; of, after, at; on account of, on, among; at the distance of; in, in the direction of, on the side of; by means of; against. **Ā** is used only before consonants; **ăb**, before vowels and consonants; **abs**, before *q* and *t*.

ab-do, ĕre, dĭdī, dĭtum, *tr.*, to hide, conceal, remove.

ab-dūco, ĕre, ūxī, uctum, *tr.*, to lead away, withdraw, take away.

ăb-ĕo, īre, īvī *or* **iī, ĭtum,** *intr.*, to go away, depart.

ăb-esse. *See* **ab-sum.**

ab-fŭtūrus. *See* **ab-sum.**

ab-ĭcio, ĕre, iēcī, iectum, *tr.* (ab + iacio), to throw away, throw down, cast aside.

ăbĭēs, ĕtis, *f.*, the fir-tree.

ăb-isse = **ăb-iisse,** *from* **ăb-ĕo.**

ab-iungo, ĕre, nxī, nctum, *tr.*, to separate, remove, detach.

ab-rĭpio, ĕre, rĭpuī, reptum, *tr.* (ab + rapio), to carry off by force, wrest away, snatch *or* tear away.

abs-cīdo, ĕre, cīdī, cīsum, *tr.* (abs + caedo), to cut off, cut away.

ab-scindo, ĕre, scĭdī, scissum *tr.*, to cut off, tear away, rend.

absens, entis, *adj.* (absum), absent, remote; when absent, in one's absence.

ab-sĭmĭlis, e, *adj.*, unlike, dissimilar.

ab-sisto, ĕre, stĭtī, —, *intr.*, to withdraw, depart; to abstain, keep off from.

abs-tĭneo, ēre, uī, tentum, *tr.* (abs + tĕneo), to abstain from, refrain from, keep aloof from (= to spare).

abs-trăho, ĕre, xī, ctum, *tr.*, to drag away, take *or* carry away by force.

ab-sum, esse, fuī, —, *intr.*, to be absent, distant, remote; to stand aloof, take no part in.

ăb-undo, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.* (ab + unda), to overflow, abound.

āc, *conj.*, and; than; as. **Aliter ac**, otherwise than.

ac-cēdo, ĕre, essī, essum, *intr.* (ad + cēdo), to approach, arrive at, go near to; to be added. **Accedebat quod,** there was added that.

ac-cĕlĕro, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr. and intr.* (ad + cĕlĕro), to hasten, make haste.

ac-ceptus, a, um, *partic. adj.* (accipio), pleasant, welcome, agreeable, acceptable.

ac-cĭdo, ĕre, ĭdī, —, *intr.* (ad + cado), to fall, befall, happen, occur. **Accĭdit,** *impers.*, it happens.

ac-cīdo, ĕre, cīdī, cīsum, *tr.* (ad + caedo), to cut off, cut down, fell, lop.

ac-cĭpio, ĕre, ēpī, eptum, *tr.* (ad + căpio), to receive, take, obtain, acquire; to hear, learn; to approve.

ac-clīvis, e, *adj.* (ad + clīvus), ascending, rising.

ac-clīvĭtās, ātis, *f.*, an ascent, acclivity, rise.

ac-commŏdātus, a, um, *partic. adj.* (accommodo), suitable, fitted, adapted.

ac-commŏdo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (ad + commodo), to adjust, fit, adapt.

ac-cūrātē, *adv.* (accūrātus), carefully, exactly, attentively. *Comp.* **accūrātĭus,** *sup.* **accūrātissĭmē.**

ac-curro, ĕre, currī *and* **cŭcurrī, cursum,** *intr.* (ad + curro), to run to, hasten to.

ac-cūso, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (ad + causa), to accuse, censure.

ācer, cris, cre, *adj.*, sharp, pungent; severe, violent.

ăcerbē, *adv.*, harshly, bitterly, sharply, keenly. *Comp.* **ăcerbius,** *sup.* **ăcerbissĭmē.**

ăcerbĭtās, ātis, *f.*, harshness, bitterness, sharpness, severity.

ăcerbus, a, um, *adj.* (ācer), sour, unripe; severe, harsh, bitter.

ācerrĭmē, *adv. sup. of* **ācrĭter.**

ăcervus, ī, *m.*, a heap, pile.

ăcĭēs, ēī, *f.*, a sharp edge; keenness, look; a battle, an army in line of battle. **In ăcie,** in line of battle.

ac-quīro, ĕre, sīvī, sītum, *tr.* (ad + quaero), to acquire, procure, obtain.

ācrĭter, *adv.* (ācer), sharply, eagerly, vigorously, courageously. *Comp.* **ācrĭus,** *sup.* **ācerrĭmē.**

actuārĭus, a, um, *adj.* (ago), easily moved, swift.

actus, a, um. *See* **ăgo.**

ăcūtus, a, um, *adj.* (ăcŭo), sharp; pointed.

ăd, *prep. with the accus.*, to, towards, in, at, among, near; till; according to, against, after; with, about (*with numerals*), for.

ăd-actus, a, um. *See* **ăd-ĭgo.**

ăd-aequo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to equal, make equal; to level with.

ăd-ămo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to love greatly, take a liking to.

ăd-augeo, ēre, auxī, auctum, *tr.*, to increase, enlarge, augment.

ad-dīco, ĕre, xī, ctum, *tr.*, to assign, surrender; to devote.
ad-do, ĕre, dĭdī, dĭtum, *tr.*, to add, join, give to.
ad-dūco, ĕre, xī, ctum, *tr.*, to bring, conduct, convey to; to induce, influence; to draw towards, draw tight.
ăd-emptus, a, um. *See* **ăd-ĭmo.**
ăd-ĕo, *adv.* (ad + is), so, so far, so much, to such a degree.
ăd-ĕo, īre, īvī *or* **iī, ĭtum,** *intr.*, to go to, approach; to attack, encounter.
ăd-eptus, a, um. *See* **ăd-ĭpiscor.**
ăd-ĕquĭto, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.*, to ride up to *or* toward.
adf-. *See* **aff-.**
ad-fŏre. *See* **ad-sum.**
adg-. *See* **agg-.**
ăd-haereo, ēre, haesī, haesum, *intr.*, to adhere, stick to.
ăd-hĭbeo, ēre, uī, ĭtum, tr. (ad + hăbĕo), to bring in, admit, call in, receive; to use, apply, employ.
ăd-hortor, ārī, ātus, *tr. dep.*, to exhort, encourage, incite.
ăd-huc, *adv.*, until now, hitherto, thus far, as yet, still.
ad-iăceo, ēre, cuī, —, *intr.*, to lie adjacent, border upon.
adĭcio, ĕre, iēcī, iectum, *tr.* (ad + iăcĭo), to cast, hurl, *or* throw to; to add *or* join to.
ăd-ĭgo, ĕre, ēgī, actum, *tr.* (ad + ago), to drive in, impel; to bring, conduct; to force, compel.
ăd-ĭmo, ĕre, ēmī, emptum, *tr.* (ad + emo), to take away, remove, deprive of.
ăd-ĭpiscor, cī, eptus, *tr. dep.* (ad + apiscor), to obtain, acquire, attain.
ăd-ĭtus, ūs, *m.* (adeo), approach, access.
ad-iūdĭco, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to adjudge, award, assign.
ad-iungo, ĕre, nxī, nctum, *tr.*, to join, add *or* unite to.
ad-iūtor, ōris, *m.* (adiuvo), a helper, aid, assistant.
ad-iŭvo, āre, iūvī, iūtum, *tr.*, to assist, help, aid.
adl-. *See* **all-.**
ad-mātūro, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to mature, ripen; to hasten.
ad-mĭnister, trī, *m.* (ad + manus), a servant, assistant, attendant.
ad-mĭnistro, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to serve, attend; to conduct, direct, manage, guide.
ad-mīror, ārī, ātus, *tr. dep.*, to admire; wonder at.
ad-mitto, ĕre, mīsī, missum, *tr.*, to admit, allow; to commit. **Equo admisso,** with horse at full speed.
ad-mŏdum, *adv.* (ad + modus), quite, very, exceedingly; *with numerals*, about, at least.
ad-mŏneo, ēre, uī, ĭtum, *tr.*, to admonish, warn, advise; to remind.

ăd-ŏlēsco, ĕre, ŏlēvī, ultum, *intr.*, to grow up, mature.
ăd-ŏrĭor, īrī, ortus, *intr. dep.*, to attack, assail; to attempt.
adp-. *See* **app-.**
adr-. *See* **arr-.**
ads.- *See* in general **ass-.**
ad-scisco, ĕre, scīvī, scītum, *tr.*, to take, receive, admit, unite.
ad-sisto, ĕre, stĭtī, —, *intr.*, to stand by *or* near, be present, appear.
ad-sum, esse, adfuī, —, *irr. intr.*, to be present *or* at hand; to aid, assist.
ădŭlēscēns, tis, *m. and f.*, a youth; a young man *or* woman.
ădŭlēscentia, ae, *f.*, youth.
ădŭlēscentŭlus, ī, *m. dim.*, a young man, a youth.
ad-ventus, ūs, *m.*, arrival, approach, coming.
adversārĭus, a, um, *adj.*, hostile, contrary to. **Adversārĭus, ī,** *m.*, an opponent, enemy.
ad-versus, a, um, *adj.* (adverto), opposite, facing, fronting; adverse, unfavorable; opposed, hostile. **Flumine adverso,** up stream. **Res adversae,** adversity.
ad-versus, *prep. with the accus.*, against, toward, opposite to.
ad-verto, ĕre, tī, sum, *tr.*, to turn to *or* toward. **Animum advertere,** to turn one's mind to = to observe, notice.
ad-vŏco, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to call to; to summon.
ad-vŏlo, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.*, to fly to, hasten to, rush to *or* upon.
aedĭfĭcĭum, ī, *n.*, a building, house, edifice.
aedĭfĭco, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (aedes + făcĭo), to build, construct, erect.
aeger, gra, grum, *adj.*, sick, feeble, faint, weary.
aegrē, *adv.* (aeger), hardly, with difficulty, scarcely. *Comp.* **aegrĭus,** *sup.* **aegerrĭmē.**
aequālĭter, *adv.* (aequalis), equally, uniformly.
aequĭnoctĭum, ī, *n.* (aequus + nox), the equinox, *i.e.* when day and night are of equal length.
aequĭtās, ātis, *f.*, equality, justice, equity; evenness; moderation.
aequo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to make equal; to level.
aequus, a, um, *adj.*, even, level; just, right; favorable, advantageous; **aequo Marte,** in an equal contest. **Aequiore animo,** with the greater equanimity.
aerārĭus, a, um, *adj.* (aes), of copper, brass *or* bronze. **Aerāria, ae,** *f.*, a copper mine.
aes, aeris, *n.*, brass, copper; bronze; money. **Aes alienum** (another's money) = debt.

aestās, ātis, *f.*, summer.
aestĭmātio, ōnis, *f.*, valuation, estimate; value, worth.
aestĭmo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (aes), to estimate, value, esteem, regard, determine.
aestīvus, a, um, *adj.* (aestas), of summer, summer.
aestŭārĭum, ī, *n.* (aestus), an estuary, creek, inlet, marsh.
aestus, ūs, *m.*, heat, burning heat; the tide; the surge.
aetās, ātis, *f.*, age; life.
aeternus, a, um, *adj.*, eternal, everlasting, perpetual.
af-fĕro, ferre, attŭlī, allātum, *irr. tr.* (ad + fĕro), to bring to, offer, present; to afford, occasion, produce, cause.
af-fĭcio, ĕre, fēcī, fectum, *tr.* (ad + făcĭo), to affect, influence, move; to show, treat, visit, etc., *according to the connection, by which, in general, the meaning of this verb is to be determined.*
af-fīgo, ĕre, xī, xum, *tr.* (ad + figo), to fix to, fasten to, attach to.
af-fingo, ĕre, inxī, ictum, *tr.* (ad + fingo), to form, devise, invent; to add falsely.
af-fīnĭtās, ātis, *f.* (affīnis), relationship by marriage, connection.
af-firmātio, ōnis, *f.* (affirmo), affirmation, declaration, assertion.
af-fixus, a, um. *See* **af-fīgo.**
afflicto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr. freq.* (afflīgo), to agitate, toss, shatter, afflict, damage.
af-flictus, a, um. *See* **af-flīgo.**
af-flīgo, ĕre, xī, ctum, *tr.* (ad + flīgo), to strike, beat *or* dash against; to shatter, damage, overthrow, prostrate.
af-fŏre, af-fŭtūrus, af-fŏrem, *See* **ad-sum.**
Afrĭcus, ī, *m.* (*sc.* ventus), the southwest wind.
ăger, grī, *m.*, a field, land, territory, country.
agger, ĕris, *m.* (ad + gĕro), a mound, rampart.
ag-grĕdĭor, ī, essus, *tr. dep.* (ad + grădĭor), to go to, go against; to attack; to attempt.
ag-grĕgo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (ad + grĕgo), to collect, to join, attach, ally.
ăgĭto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr. freq.* (ăgo), to drive, follow; to debate, discuss, deliberate.
agmen, ĭnis, *n.* (ago), an army on the march, a march, line of march, a troop, band. **Primum agmen,** the van, front; **novissimum agmen,** the rear.
ăgo, ĕre, ēgī, actum, *tr.*, to drive, conduct, lead, carry off; to move, put in motion; to do, treat, live, act, manage, transact, pass, spend. **Gratias agere,** to thank, return thanks.
agrĭ-cultūra, ae, *f.* (ager + colo), agriculture.

ălăcer, cris, cre, *adj.*, lively, cheerful, spirited, animated, eager, joyous.

ălăcrĭtās, ātis, *f.*, liveliness, alacrity, eagerness, ardor.

ālārĭus, a, um, *adj.* (āla), of a wing, stationed on the wings. **Ālārĭī, ōrum,** *m. pl.*, the auxiliaries, *who were stationed on the wings.*

albus, a, um, *adj.*, white. **Plumbum album,** tin.

alces, is, *f.*, the elk.

ălĭās, *adv.* (ălius), at another time, otherwise. **Alias · · · alias** = at one time · · · at another time ; *or*, sometimes · · · sometimes.

ălĭēno, āre, āvi, ātum, *tr.* (alienus), to alienate, estrange ; to deprive of reason, drive mad.

ălĭēnus, a, am, *adj.* (alius), of another, another's ; unfavorable ; foreign, irrelevant.

ălĭō, *adv.* (alius), in another place, elsewhere, to another place.

ălĭquamdĭū, *adv.*, for some time.

ălĭquandō, *adv.*, at some time, sometimes ; at length.

ălĭquantō, *adv.*, somewhat, a little.

ălĭquantus, a, um, *adj.* (alius), somewhat, a little, some.

ălĭ-quī, qua, quod, *indef. adj. pron.* (alius), some, any.

ălĭquis, qua, quid, *indef. pron.* (alius + quis), some one, any one, some, any, something.

ălĭquot, *indef. num. adj. indecl.* (alius + quot), some, several, a few.

ălĭter, *adv.* (alius), otherwise, in a different manner. **Aliter ac,** otherwise than.

ălĭus, a, ud, *gen.* **ălīus,** *adj.*, another, other. **Alius · · · alius,** one · · · another. **Aliī · · · aliī,** some · · · others.

al-lātus, a, um. *See* **af-fĕro.**

al-lĭcio, ĕre, lexī, lectum, *tr.* (ad + lacio), to allure, entice, attract.

ălo, ĕre, ălŭī, ălĭtum *or* **altum,** *tr.*, to nourish, support, sustain, maintain, foster.

Alpēs, ĭum, *f. pl.*, the Alps.

alter, ĕra, ĕrum, *gen.* **altĕrĭus,** *adj.*, one of two, the other, the second. **Alter · · · alter,** the one · · · the other. **Altĕrī · · · altĕrī,** the one party · · · the other party.

alternus, a, um, *adj.*, one after another, mutual, alternate, by turns.

altĭtūdo, ĭnis, *f.*, height ; depth.

altus, a, um, *adj.* (alo), high, tall, lofty ; deep. **Altum, ī,** *n.* (*sc.* mare), the deep, the sea, deep water.

ālūta, ae, *f.*, soft leather.

ambactus, ī, *m.*, a vassal.

ambo, ae, o, *num. adj.*, both.

āmentia, ae, *f.* (a + mens), madness, folly.

āmentum, ī, *n.*, a strap *or* thong, by means of which javelins and other missiles were thrown with greater force.

amfractus. *See* **anfractus.**

ămīcĭtia, ae, *f.*, friendship, alliance, league.

ămīcus, a, um, *adj.* (amo), friendly.

ămīcus, ī, *m.*, a friend.

ā-mitto, ĕre, mīsī, missum, *tr.* to send away, dismiss; to lose.

ămor, ōris, *m.*, love, affection.

amplē, *adv.* (amplus), amply, abundantly, largely. *Comp.* **amplĭus,** more, further; *super.* **amplissĭmē.**

amplĭfĭco, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (amplus + făcio), to enlarge, increase, extend.

amplĭtūdo, ĭnis, *f.*, greatness, extent, grandeur.

amplus, a, um, *adj.*, large, great, ample, extensive, splendid, illustrious, noble. *Comp.* **amplĭus,** more, farther.

an, *conj.*, or, or whether. *It is chiefly used in introducing the second member of an alternative question.* **An** *may sometimes be omitted in translation.*

anceps, ĭpĭtis, *adj.* (am + caput), double, twofold, doubtful.

ancŏra, ae, *f.*, an anchor.

anfractus, ūs, *m.* (am + frango), a turning, bending, circuit, circuitous route.

angŭlus ī, *m.*, a corner, angle.

angustē, *adv.*, closely, narrowly; sparingly, scantily.

angustiae, ārum, *f. pl.*, narrowness, a narrow pass; difficulty, perplexity, strait.

angustus, a, um, *adj.* (ango), narrow, close, contracted; steep.

ănĭma, ae, *f.*, air, breath; life, soul, spirit.

ănĭm-ad-verto, ĕre, tī, sum, *tr.* (animus + ad + verto), to turn the mind to, *i.e.* to notice, observe, attend; to punish.

ănĭmal, ālis, *n.* (anima), an animal.

ănĭmus, ī, *m.*, the mind, soul, consciousness; will, design, intention; feeling, spirit, courage, heart.

annōtĭnus, a, um, *adj.* (annus), of a year, a year old.

annus, ī, *m.*, a year.

annŭus, a, um, *adj.*, yearly, annual.

anser, ĕris, *m.*, a goose.

antĕ, *prep. with the accus.*, before, above, beyond.

antĕ, *adv.*, before, previously.

antĕā, *adv.*, before, formerly.

antĕ-cēdo, ĕre, cessī, cessum, *tr. and intr.*, to go before, precede; to surpass, excel.

antĕ-cursor, ōris, *m.*, a forerunner, advanced guard, pioneer.

antĕ-fĕro, ferre, tŭlī, lātum, *tr.*, to bear before, place before, prefer.

antemna, ae, *f.*, a sail-yard.

antĕ-pōno, ĕre, pŏsuī, pŏsĭtum, *tr.*, to place before, prefer.

antĕ-verto, ĕre, tī, sum, *tr.*, to precede, anticipate; to prefer, place before.

antīquĭtus, *adv.*, anciently, in ancient times.

antīquus, a, um, *adj.* (ante), old, ancient.

Ap., for Appius.

ăpĕrĭo, īre, ĕruī, ertum, *tr.*, to open, uncover, disclose.

ăpertē, *adv.*, openly, publicly.

ăpertus, a, um, *adj.* (aperio), open, uncovered, unprotected, exposed.

Ăpollo, ĭnis, *m.*, son of Jupiter and Latōna, and god of prophecy, music, archery, poetry, and medicine.

ap-păro, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (ad + păro), to prepare, put in order; to procure, provide, furnish.

appello, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to call, name; to address, accost.

ap-pello, ĕre, pŭlī, pulsum, *tr.* (ad + pello), to drive to; bring to; to make for, steer to; to land.

ap-pĕto, ĕre, īvī *or* **iī, ītum**, *tr.* (ad + peto), to seek for, strive for, aim at; to approach, draw near.

ap-plĭco, āre, āvī, ātum (*or* **plĭcuī, plĭcĭtum**), *tr.* (ad + plico), to join *or* attach to; to bring in contact with; **se applicare ad**, to lean against.

ap-porto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (ad + porta), to carry, convey *or* conduct to.

ap-prŏbo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (ad + prŏbo), to approve, commend.

ap-prŏpinquo, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.*, to approach, draw near.

ap-pulsus, a um. *See* **appello.**

Aprīlis, e, *adj.* (ăpĕrio), of April. **Aprilis, is**, *m.* (*sc.* mensis), April.

aptus, a, um, *adj.*, suitable, adapted, fitted.

ăpud, *prep. with the accus.*, at, near, with, by, among, before, in the presence of.

ăqua, ae, *f.*, water.

ăquātio, ōnis, *f.*, watering, procuring water.

ăquĭla, ae, *f.*, an eagle; the principal standard of the Roman legion; while **signa** were the standards of cohorts.

ăquĭlĭfer, ĕrī, *m.* (ăquĭla + fĕro), a standard-bearer.

Ăquītānus, a, um, *adj.*, Aquitanian. **Ăquītānus, ī**, *m.*, an Aquitanian.

arbĭter, trī, *m.*, an arbitrator, umpire, judge.

arbĭtrĭum, ī, *n.*, the decision of an arbitrator; a decision, determination; will, pleasure.

arbĭtror, ārī, ātus, *tr. dep.* (arbiter), to think, suppose, judge.

arbor *and* **arbos, ŏris**, *f.*, a tree.

arcesso, ĕre, īvī, ītum, *tr.*, to call, send for, summon, invite. *Inf. pass.*, **arcessīrī.**

arctē *or* **artē**, *adv.* (arctus), closely, tightly, narrowly.

arctus *or* **artus, a, um,** *adj.* (arceo), close, dense, narrow.
ardĕo, ēre, sī, sum, *intr.*, to burn, be on fire, blaze; to be eager, impatient; to be inflamed, excited.
ardŭus, a, um, *adj.*, high, lofty, steep; arduous.
argentum, ī, *n.*, silver.
argilla, ae, *f.*, white clay, potter's clay.
ārĭdus, a, um, *adj.* (areo) dry, arid, parched. **Ārĭdum, ī,** *n.*, dry land. **Ex arido** (*sc.* loco), on dry land.
ărĭēs, ĕtis, *m.*, a ram; a battering ram; a buttress, prop.
arma, ōrum, *n. pl.*, arms, weapons; implements; tackling.
armāmenta, ōrum, *n. pl.*, implements, utensils; the tackle *of a ship*, cables, rigging, etc.
armātūra, ae, *f.*, armor, equipment.
armātus, a, um, *partic. adj.* (armo), armed, equipped. **Armātus, ī,** *m.*, an armed man, soldier.
armo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to arm, equip, rig.
ar-rĭpio, ĕre, ĭpuī, eptum, *tr.* (ad + răpio), to seize, appropriate, lay hold of, catch.
ar-rŏganter, *adv.* (arrogans), arrogantly, haughtily, proudly.
ar-rŏgantia, ae, *f.*, arrogance, haughtiness, insolence.
ars, artis, *f.*, art, faculty, quality; skill, method, way; contrivance, stratagem.
artē, *adv.* *See* **arctē.**
artĭcŭlus, ī, *m.* (artus), a joint, knot.
artĭfĭcĭum, ī, *n.* (artifex), art, skill, ingenuity; craft, artifice.
artus, a, um. *See* **arctus.**
Arvernus, a, um, *adj.*, Arvernian. **Arvernus, ī,** *m.*, an Arvernian.
arx, arcis, *f.*, a height; a fortress, citadel, stronghold.
a-scendo, ĕre, dī, sum, *intr.* (ad + scando), to ascend, go up, mount, climb.
a-scensus, ūs, *m.*, an ascent, acclivity.
a-spectus, ūs, *m.* (aspicio), a seeing, look; the sight; looks, aspect, appearance.
asper, ĕra, ĕrum, *adj.*, rough, uneven; harsh, severe; cruel, wild.
as-sĭdŭus, a, um, *adj.* (assĭdĕo), continual, incessant, unremitting; diligent.
as-suē-făcio, ĕre, fēci, factum, *tr.* (assuētus + făcio), to accustom.
as-suesco, ĕre, ēvī, ētum, *intr.* (ad + suesco), to accustom one's self; to be accustomed.
at, *conj.*, but, yet.
at-que, *conj.*, and, than, as.
at-texo, ĕre, xuī, xtum, *tr.* (ad + texo), to weave on, join, add.
at-tingo, ĕre, tĭgī, tactum, *tr.* (ad + tango), to touch, border on; to reach, arrive at.

at-trĭbŭo, ĕre, uī, ūtum, *tr.* (ad + tribuo), to assign, attribute, bestow.
at-tŭlī. *See* **af-fĕro.**
auctor, ōris, *m.* (augeo), an author, originator, maker, adviser, voucher, promoter.
auctōrĭtās, ātis, *f.*, authority, power, influence, reputation.
auctus, a, um, *partic. adj.* (augeo), increased, enlarged.
audācia, ae, *f.* (audax), boldness; audacity, impudence.
audacter *and* **audācĭter,** *adv.*, boldly, courageously; audaciously. *Comp.* **audācĭus,** *super.* **audācissĭmē.**
audĕo, ēre, ausus, *intr. half dep.*, to dare, venture, attempt.
audio, īre, īvī, ītum, *tr.*, to hear. **Dicto audiens** = obedient.
audītio, ōnis, *f.*, hearing, hearsay, rumor, report.
augĕo, ēre, auxī, auctum, *tr.*, to increase, enlarge; to improve, advance, promote.
Aulus, ī, *m.*, a praenōmen.
aurīga, ae, *m.*, a charioteer.
auris, is, *f.*, the ear.
ausus, a, um. *See* **audĕo.**
aut, *conj.*, or; **aut . . . aut,** either . . . or.
autem, *conj.*, but; moreover.
autumnus, ī, *m.* (augeo), autumn.
auxī. *See* **augĕo.**
auxĭlĭāris, e, *adj.*, auxiliary, aiding. **Auxĭlĭāres, ĭum,** *m. pl.*, auxiliary troops, auxiliaries.
auxĭlĭor, ārī, ātus, *tr. dep.*, to assist, help, aid, succor.
auxĭlĭum, ī, *n.* (augeo), assistance, help, aid; resource, remedy. **Auxĭlĭa, ōrum,** *n. pl.*, auxiliaries, auxiliary troops.
Avārĭcensis, e, *adj.* (Avārĭcum), of Avarĭcum.
ăvārĭtia, ae, *f.* (ăvārus), avarice, covetousness.
ā-vĕho, ĕre, vexī, vectum, *tr.*, to carry *or* convey away.
a-versus, a, um, *partic. adj.* (averto), turned away, routed.
ā-verto, ĕre, tī, sum, *tr.*, to turn away, avert, remove, alienate.
ăvis, is, *f.*, a bird.
ăvus, ī, *m.*, a grandfather.

B

Bălĕāris, e, *adj.*, Balearic, of the Balearic islands.
baltĕus, ī, *m.*, a belt, sword-belt, girdle.
barbărus, a, um, *adj.*, barbarous, foreign. **Barbărus, ī,** *m.*, a barbarian, neither a Greek nor a Roman, a foreigner.
bellĭcōsus, a, um, *adj.*, warlike.
bellĭcus, a, um, *adj.*, of war, warlike.
bello, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.*, to wage war, carry on war.
bellum, ī, *n.*, war.
bĕnĕ, *adv.*, well, successfully,

happily, prosperously. *Comp.* **mĕlĭus**, *super.* **optĭmē**.
bĕnĕ-fĭcĭum, ī, *n.* (bene + făcio), a kindness, favor, benefit, service.
bĕnĕ-vŏlentia, ae, *f.* (bene + volo), benevolence, good-will, kindness, friendly disposition.
bĭ-dŭum, ī, *n.* (bis + dies), two days.
bĭ-ennĭum, ī, *n.* (bis + annus), two years.
bīnī, ae, a, *distr. num. adj.* (bis), two by two, two each, two.
bĭ-partītō, *adv.* (bis + partio), in two divisions *or* lines.
bĭ-pĕdālis, e, *adj.* (bis + pes), two feet long, wide *or* thick.
bis, *num. adv.*, twice.
bŏnĭtās, ātis, *f.*, goodness, excellence.
bŏnus, a, um, *adj.*, good, excellent; friendly. *Comp.* **mĕlĭor**, *super.* **optĭmus**. **Bŏnum, ī,** *n.*, a good, advantage, benefit. **Bŏna, ōrum,** *n. pl.*, goods, property.
bōs, bŏvis, *m. and f.*, an ox, cow.
brācchĭum, ī, *n.*, the arm.
brĕvis, e, *adj.*, short, brief. **Brevī** (*sc.* tempore), in a short time.
brĕvĭtās, ātis, *f.*, shortness.
brĕvĭter, *adv.*, shortly, briefly.
Brĭtannĭcus, a, um, *adj.* (Britannia), of Britain, British.
brūma, ae, *f.* (brevis), the winter solstice; winter.

C.

C = centum, a hundred.
C. for Gaius.
căcūmen, ĭnis, *n.*, the top, end, extremity, point.
cădāver, ĕris, *n.* (cado), a dead body, corpse.
cădo, ĕre, cĕcĭdī, cāsum, *intr.*, to fall, die, perish.
caedes, is, *f.* (caedo), a cutting; murder, slaughter.
caedo, ĕre, cĕcīdī, caesum, *tr.*, to cut, cut down, fell; to beat, kill, destroy.
caelestis, e, *adj.* (caelum), celestial, heavenly. **Caelestes, ium,** *m. pl.*, the gods.
caelum, ī, *n.*, heaven.
caerĭmōnĭa, ae, *f.*, a religious ceremony, a sacred rite.
caerŭlĕus, a, um, *adj.*, blue, dark blue, azure.
caespes, ĭtis, *m.*, a sod, turf.
caesus, a, um. *See* **caedo**.
călămĭtās, ātis, *f.*, calamity, disaster, damage.
callĭdus, a, um, *adj.* (calleo), skilful, shrewd, cunning.
cālo, ōnis, *m.*, a soldier's servant.
campester, tris, tre, *adj.* (campus), of a plain; level, flat, plain, on the plain.
campus, ī, *m.*, a plain, field.
căno, ĕre, cĕcĭnī, cantum, *tr.*, to sing; to sound, give a signal.
căper, prī, *m.*, a goat.
căpillus, ī, *m.*, the hair.
căpio, ĕre, cēpī, captum, *tr.*,

to take, occupy, receive, obtain; to choose, select; to entrap, ensnare, captivate; to reach. **Consilium capere**, to adopt a plan, form a resolution.

căpră *or* **căprĕa, ae,** *f.*, a she-goat, a roe.

captīvus, a, um, *adj.* (căpio), captive, captured. **Captīvus, ī,** *m.*, a prisoner.

captus, ūs, *m.*, capacity, understanding, notion, standard.

căput, ĭtis, *n.*, the head; a person, soul; life; mouth *of a river;* fountain, source.

cărĕo, ēre, uī, ĭtum, *intr.*, to be without, want, lack; to be deprived of; to be free from.

cărīna, ae, *f.*, the keel *of a ship.*

căro, carnis, *f.*, flesh.

carpo, ĕre, psī, ptum, *tr.*, to pull, pluck; to pluck at, carp at, revile, slander, upbraid.

carrus, ī, *m. and* **carrum, ī,** n., a wagon, cart.

cārus, a, um, *adj.*, dear, beloved.

căsa, ae, *f.*, a hut, cottage.

cāsĕus, ī, *m.*, cheese.

Cassĭānus, a, um, *adj.* (Cassius), with Cassius, Cassian.

cassis, ĭdis, *f.*, a helmet.

castellum, ī, *n. dim.* (castrum), a castle, fort, stronghold, fortress.

castīgo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to punish, chastise, reprove.

castra, ōrum, *n. pl.* (castrum), a camp, encampment; a day's march.

cāsus, ūs, *m.* (cădo), a fall; chance, accident, misfortune, calamity; an occurrence.

cătēna, ae, *f.*, a chain, fetter.

causa, ae, *f.*, a cause, reason; a case, suit at law; pretence, pretext; condition, situation. **Causā**, for the sake, for the purpose; on account.

cautē, *adv.* (căvĕo), cautiously, prudently, warily.

cautus, a, um, *partic. adj.* (căveo), cautious, careful, wary.

căvĕo, ēre, cāvī, cautum, *intr.*, to be on one's guard; to beware, take care; to take security.

cēdo, ĕre, cessī, cessum, *intr.*, to yield, retreat, withdraw, retire.

cĕler, ĕris, ĕre, *adj.*, swift, speedy.

cĕlĕrĭtās, ātis, *f.*, swiftness, rapidity, speed, celerity.

cĕlĕrĭter, *adv.*, swiftly, quickly, rapidly. *Comp.* **cĕlĕrĭus,** *super.* **cĕlerrĭmē.**

cēlo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to conceal, hide.

cĕnseo, ēre, uī, sum, *tr.*, to think, judge; to decree, ordain, determine.

census, ūs, *m.* (censeo), a census, enumeration.

centum, *num. adj.*, a hundred.

centŭrĭo, ōnis, *m.*, a centurion.

cēpī. *See* **căpĭo.**

cerno, ĕre, crēvī, crētum, *tr.*, to see, discern ; to decree, decide, determine.

certāmen, ĭnis, *n.* (certo), a contest, strife, battle.

certē, *adv.* (certus), certainly, assuredly ; at least.

certo, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.*, to contend, strive ; to attempt.

certus, a, um, *adj.* (cerno), certain, sure, definite ; trusty. **Certior fĭĕrī,** to be informed.

cervus, ī, *m.*, a stag ; **cervi,** forked stakes, *resembling a stag's horns.*

cētĕrus, a, um, *adj.*, the rest, the other, the remainder.

cĭbārĭus, a, um, *adj.* (cibus), of *or* for food. **Cĭbārĭa, ōrum,** *n. pl.*, food, provisions.

cĭbus, ī, *m.*, food ; provender.

cingo, ĕre, nxī, nctum, *tr.*, to gird, surround, encompass, encircle.

cippus, ī, *m.*, a sharp stake, post, palisade.

circā, *prep. with the accus.*, around, about.

circĭnus, ī, *m.*, a pair of compasses.

circĭter, *prep. with accus.*, about, near.

circĭter, *adv.*, about, near.

circŭĕo, īre. *See* **circumĕo.**

circŭĭtus, ūs, *m.*, a circuit, circumference ; a way around.

circum, *prep. with the accus.*, around, about.

circum, *adv.*, around, about.

circum-cīdo, ĕre, cīdī, cīsum, *tr.* (circum + caedo), to cut around, trim.

circum-cīsus, a, um, *partic. adj.* (circumcīdo), cut around, *i.e.* steep, precipitous.

circum-clūdo, ĕre, sī, sum, *tr.*, to shut in, hem in, surround, invest.

circum-do, dăre, dĕdī, dătum, *tr.*, to place around ; to surround, encircle.

circum-dūco, ĕre, xī, ctum, *tr.*, to lead *or* draw around.

circum-ĕo, īre, īvī *or* **iī, ĭtum,** *tr. and intr.*, to go around ; to encompass, surround.

circum-fundo, ĕre, fūdī, fūsum, *tr.*, to pour around ; to surround, encompass; (*passive*) to flock around, collect.

circum-ĭcĭo, ĕre, iēcī, iectum, *tr.*, to cast, throw *or* place around.

circum-mitto, ĕre, mīsī, missum, *tr.*, to send around.

circum-mūnĭo, īre, īvī, ītum *tr.*, to fortify all around.

circum-plector, ī, plexus, *tr. dep.*, to embrace, surround, inclose.

circum-sisto, ĕre, stĕtī, —, *tr. and intr.*, to stand around ; to surround, beset.

circum-spĭcĭo, ĕre, exī, ectum, *tr. and intr.*, to look around ; to weigh, consider.

circum-sto, āre, stĕtī, —, *tr. and intr.*, to stand around ; to surround.

circum-vallo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to surround with a ram-

part, circumvallate; to blockade, invest.

circum-vĕhor, ī, vectus, *intr. dep.* (*to be carried around*=), to ride around, sail around.

circum-vĕnĭo, īre, vēnī, ventum, *tr.*, to come around; to surround, encompass, invest; to deceive, circumvent.

cis, *prep. with the accus.*, on this side of.

Cĭs-alpīnus, a, am, *adj.*, cisalpine, on this side of the Alps.

Cis-rhēnānus, a, um, *adj.* (Rhēnus), on this side of the Rhine.

cĭtātus, a, um, *partic. adj.* (cĭto), urged, hurried; swift, rapid.

cĭtĕrĭor, us, *gen.* **ōris,** *adj. comp.* (cis), hither, nearer.

cĭtŏ, *adv.* (cieo), quickly, rapidly. *Comp.* **cĭtĭus,** *super.* **cĭtissĭmē.**

cĭto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to rouse, excite; to urge, summon.

cĭtrā, *prep. with the accus.* (cis), on this side of.

cĭtrō, *adv.* (cis), hither. **Ultro citroque,** hither and thither, to and fro.

cīvis, is, *m. and f.*, a citizen.

cīvĭtās, ātis, *f.*, a state; citizenship.

clam, *adv.*, secretly, privately.

clāmĭto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr. freq.* (clāmo), to cry out, exclaim.

clāmo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to cry out, exclaim.

clāmor, ōris, *m.*, a loud cry, a shout, clamor, noise.

clandestīnus, a, um, *adj.* (clam), secret, hidden, private.

clārē, *adv.*, clearly, distinctly.

clārus, a, um, *adj.*, clear, distinct, loud; distinguished, renowned, illustrious.

classis, is, *f.*, a fleet.

claudo, ĕre, sī, sum, *tr.*, to shut, close, inclose, conclude. **Agmen claudere,** to close the line, bring up the rear.

clāvus, ī, *m.*, a nail.

clēmenter, *adv.*, gently, mildly.

clēmentĭa, ae, *f.*, mildness, clemency, mercy.

clĭens, tis, *m. and f.*, a client, retainer, dependent, vassal.

clĭentēla, ae, *f.*, clientship, protection, alliance; a client.

clīvus, ī, *m.*, an ascent, hill, acclivity.

Cn. for Gnæus, *m.*, a praenōmen.

cŏ-ăcervo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (con + acervo), to heap up, pile up, accumulate, collect.

cŏ-actus, ūs, *m.* (cogo), constraint, compulsion.

cŏ-actus, a, um. *See* **cōgo.**

cŏ-agmento, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (cogo), to join together, connect.

cŏēgī. *See* **cōgo.**

cŏ-ĕmo, ĕre, ēmī, emptum, *tr.* (con + emo), to buy up, purchase.

cŏ-ĕo, īre, īvī *or* **iī, ĭtum,** *intr.* (con + eo), to go *or* come together; to meet, assemble, collect.

coepī, coepisse, *defect. v.*, I began, commenced.
coeptus, a, um, *from* **coepī.**
cŏ-ercĕo, ēre, uī, ĭtum, *tr.* (con + arceo), to embrace, confine; to restrain, repress, curb.
cōgĭtātio, ōnis, *f.*, a thinking; thought, reflection; design, project.
cōgĭto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (con + agĭto), to think, reflect upon, meditate, design, intend.
co-gnātĭo, ōnis, *f.* (con + nascor), relationship (*by blood*), connection; kindred, relatives.
co-gnosco, ĕre, ōvī, ĭtum, *tr.* (con + nosco), to ascertain, learn; to investigate, examine; to know.
cō-go, ĕre, cŏēgī, cŏactum, *tr.* (con + ago), to drive together, collect, assemble; to force, compel.
cŏhors, tis, *f.*, a cohort; *there were ten cohorts in a legion.*
cŏ-hortātĭo, ōnis, *f.*, exhortation, encouragement.
cŏ-hortor, ārī, ātus, *tr. dep.* (con + hortor), to exhort, encourage.
cŏ-īre. *See* **co-eo.**
col-lātus, a, um. *See* **con-fĕro.**
col-laudo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (con + laudo), to praise, commend, extol.
col-lēga, ae, *m.*, a colleague.
col-lĭgo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (con + lĭgo), to bind together, fasten, connect.
col-lĭgo, ĕre, ēgī, ectum, *tr.* (con + lĕgo), to collect, assemble; to obtain, acquire.
collis, is, *m.*, a hill, ascent.
col-lŏco, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (con + loco), to put, place, set up, erect; to station, arrange.
col-lŏquĭum, ī, *n.*, conference, interview, conversation.
col-lŏquor, ī, cūtus, *intr. dep.* (con + loquor), to converse, confer, speak with.
cŏlo, ĕre, uī, cultum, *tr.*, to cultivate, till; to attend to; to worship, revere, honor.
cŏlōnĭa, ae, *f.* (cŏlōnus), a colony, settlement.
cŏlor, ōris, *m.*, color, complexion, tint.
combūro, ĕre, bussī, bustum, *tr.* (con + ūro), to burn up.
cŏm-es, ĭtis, *m. and f.* (con + eo), a companion, comrade, associate.
cōminus. *See* **comminus.**
cŏm-ĭtĭum, ī, *n.* (con + eo), a part of the Roman forum. **Cŏmĭtĭa, ōrum,** *n. pl.*, the comitia, assembly of the Roman people in the **Comitium** for electing magistrates; election.
cŏmĭtor, ārī, ātus, *tr. dep.* (comes), to accompany, attend, follow.
com-mĕātus, ūs, *m.* (commeo), a passage, trip; provisions, supplies; a furlough.
com-mĕmŏro, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (con + mĕmŏro), to call

to mind, remind; to recount, relate.

com-mendo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (con + mando), to commit, commend, intrust.

com-mĕo, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.* (con + mĕo), to go, resort; to come and go, frequent.

com-mĭnus, *adv.* (con + manus), hand to hand, in close combat.

com-missūra, ae, *f.* (committo), a joining, juncture, joint.

com-mitto, ĕre, mīsī, missum, *tr.* (con + mitto), to join together, unite; to commit; intrust; to allow, permit, risk. **Committere proelium,** to join *or* commence battle.

com-mŏdē, *adv.* (commŏdus), fitly, conveniently, suitably, well, easily.

com-mŏdum, ī, *n.* (commŏdus), advantage, profit, utility, convenience.

com-mŏdus, a, um, *adj.*, convenient, suitable, advantageous, commodious, easy, favorable, agreeable.

com-mŏnĕ-făcio, ĕre, fēcī, factum, *tr.* (con + mŏneo + făcio), to remind, admonish.

com-mŏror, ārī, ātus, *tr. dep.* (con + moror), to stop, linger, stay, delay.

com-mŏvĕo, ēre, mōvī, mōtum, *tr.* (con + moveo), to move, affect, influence; to excite, alarm.

com-mūnĭco, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (commūnis), to communicate, impart, share with; to concert.

com-mūnĭo, īre, īvī *or* **iī, ītum,** *tr.* (con + munio), to fortify, secure.

com-mūnis, e, *adj.* (con + munus), common, general, ordinary.

com-mūtātĭo, ōnis, *f.*, a change.

com-mūto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (con + mūto), to change, alter, exchange.

com-păro, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (compar), to compare.

com-păro, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (con + păro), to prepare, provide, procure, acquire.

com-pello, ĕre, pŭlī, pulsum, *tr.* (con + pello), to drive, together, collect; to compel, force, constrain.

com-pendĭum, ī, *n.* (con + pendo), gain, profit, advantage.

com-pĕrĭo, īre, pĕrī, pertum, *tr.* (com + părio), to learn, ascertain, discover.

com-plector, ī, exus, *tr. dep.* (con + plecto), to embrace, encircle, surround, enclose.

com-plĕo, ēre, ēvī, ētum, *tr.* (con + pleo), to fill, complete, finish.

com-plexus, ūs, *m.*, an embrace, encircling, compass.

com-plūres, a *or* **ĭa,** *gen.* **ĭum,** *adj.* (con + plus), several, many.

com-pōno, ĕre, pŏsuī, pŏsĭtum, *tr.* (con + pono), to put *or* place together; to compose,

arrange, order; to build, construct.

com-porto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (con + porto), to bring together, convey, collect.

com-prĕhendo, ĕre, di, sum, *tr.* (con + prĕhendo), to seize, arrest; to take, lay hold of; to embrace, comprehend.

com-prŏbo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (con + prŏbo), to approve, sanction, make good.

com-pulsus, a, um. *See* **compello.**

cōnātum, ī, *n.* (cōnor), an attempt, undertaking, effort.

cōnātus, ūs, *m.* (cōnor), an attempt, undertaking, endeavor.

con-cēdo, ĕre, cessī, cessum, *tr. and intr.*, to retire, withdraw; to yield, grant; to permit, allow.

con-certo, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.*, to contend, strive.

con-cessus, ūs, *m.* (concēdo), permission, leave.

con-cīdo, ĕre, cīdī, cīsum, *tr.* (con + caedo), to cut to pieces, cut down, destroy; to cut up, divide.

con-cĭdo, ĕre, cĭdī, —, *intr.* (con + cădo), to fall, perish.

concĭlĭo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to gain *or* win over; to gain, procure, obtain.

concĭlĭum, ī, *n.*, an assembly, council, meeting.

con-cĭpĭo, ĕre, cēpī, ceptum, *tr.* (con + căpio), to take, receive, contract; to conceive, comprehend.

con-cīsus, a, um. *See* **concīdo.**

con-cĭto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to excite, arouse, incite, instigate, urge.

con-clāmo, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.*, to cry out, call out, shout, exclaim.

con-clūdo, ĕre, sī, sum, *tr.*, to shut up, confine, inclose.

con-crĕpo, āre, uī, ĭtum, *intr.*, to make a noise, rattle, clash.

con-curro, ĕre, currī *or* **cŭcurrī, cursum,** *intr.*, to run *or* rush together, meet; engage in fight, charge; to run *or* hasten to; to concur.

con-curso, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr. freq.*, to run to and fro, run up and down.

con-cursus, ūs, *m.*, a running together, onset, charge; collision.

con-demno, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (con + damno), to condemn, charge with, accuse.

condĭcĭo, ōnis, *f.*, condition, state, quality; stipulation, terms.

con-dōno, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to pardon, forgive, bestow.

con-dūco, ĕre, xī, ctum, *tr.*, to bring together; to conduct; to collect; to hire.

con-fectus, a, um. *See* **confĭcĭo.**

con-fercĭo, īre, fersī, fertum, *tr.* (con + farcio), to press together, cram, crowd.

con-fĕro, ferre, contŭlī, conlātum, *tr.*, to bring together, collect; to compare; to ascribe, impute; to defer; **se conferre,** to betake one's self.

con-fertus, a, um, *partic. adj.* (confercio), crowded, dense, thick, close.

confestim, *adv.*, immediately.

con-fĭcĭo, ĕre, fēcī, fectum, *tr.* (con + făcio), to make, accomplish, perform, compose, finish; to exhaust, weaken, enfeeble; to collect, furnish.

con-fīdo, ĕre, fīsus, *intr. half dep.*, to trust, rely on, confide in.

con-fīgo, ĕre, fixī, fixum, *tr.*, to fasten *or* join together; to pierce.

con-fīnis, e, *adj.*, adjoining, bordering upon.

con-fīnĭum, ī, *n.*, common boundary, border, frontier.

con-fīo, fīĕrī, *irreg. pass. of* **confĭcĭo,** to be done, accomplished.

con-firmātĭo, ōnis, *f.*, confirmation, assurance, proof.

con-firmo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to confirm, establish, strengthen; to encourage; to assure.

con-fīsus, a, um. *See* **con-fīdo.**

con-fĭtĕor, ērī, fessus, *tr. dep.* (con + făteor), to confess, acknowledge, admit, concede.

con-fixus, a, um. *See* **con-fīgo.**

con-flăgro, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.*, to burn, be burned.

con-flicto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr. freq.* (conflīgo), to strike *or* dash together; to struggle with; to distress, trouble, afflict.

con-flīgo, ĕre, flixī, flictum, *tr. and intr.*, to strike *or* dash together; to fight, contend, engage.

con-flŭens, entis, *m.*, the confluence.

con-flŭo, ĕre, xī, —, *intr.*, to flow together, to flock together.

con-fŭgĭo, ĕre, fūgī, *intr.*, to flee to for refuge, have recourse to.

con-fundo, ĕre, fūdī, fūsum, *tr.*, to pour together; to join, blend, unite; to confuse.

con-gĕro, ĕre, gessī, gestum, *tr.*, to carry together; to heap up, pile up, accumulate.

con-grĕdĭor, ī, gressus, *intr. dep.* (con + grădior), to meet, go *or* unite with; to fight, contend, engage.

con-gressus, ūs, *m.*, a meeting, encounter.

con-ĭcĭo, ĕre, iēcī, iectum, *tr.* (con + iăcio), to throw *or* hurl together; to cast, discharge; to impute, ascribe; to conjecture, infer.

con-iectūra, ae, *f.* (conĭcio), conjecture, conclusion.

con-iunctim, *adv.* (coniungo),

conjointly, together, in common.

con-iunctus, a, um, *partic. adj.*, connected, allied.

con-iungo, ĕre, nxī, nctum, *tr.*, to join together, connect, unite, associate.

con-iunx, ŭgis, *m. and f.* (con-iungo), husband; wife.

con-iūrātĭo, ōnis, *f.*, a conspiracy, combination, confederacy.

con-iūro, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.*, to swear together; to conspire, combine, plot.

conl-. *See* **coll-.**

cōnor, ārī, ātus, *tr. dep.*, to endeavor, attempt, undertake, try.

con-quĭesco, ĕre, ēvī, ētum, *intr.*, to rest, repose, be at rest.

con-quīro, ĕre, sīvī, sītum, *tr.* (con + quaero), to seek after, search for; to procure, collect.

con-sanguĭnĕus, a, um, *adj.* (con + sanguis), related by blood, kindred. **Consanguĭnĕus, ī,** *m.*, a relative, relation.

con-scendo, ĕre, dī, sum, *tr. and intr.* (con + scando), to mount, ascend, embark.

con-scĭentĭa, ae, *f.* (con + scio), joint knowledge, consciousness, feeling, sense; conscience.

con-scisco, ĕre, scīvī, scītum, *tr.*, to resolve on, decree, adjudge, inflict.

con-scĭus, a, um, *adj.* (con + scio), conscious, privy to; conscious of guilt; accessory, accomplice.

con-scrībo, ĕre, scripsī, scriptum, *tr.*, to write together; to enroll, enlist, levy.

con-sĕcro, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (con + săcro), to consecrate, hallow.

con-sector, ārī, ātus, *tr. dep.*, to follow after eagerly, pursue.

con-sĕcūtus, a, um. *See* **consequor.**

con-sensĭo, ōnis, *f.*, agreement, unanimity; combination.

con-sensus, ūs, *m.*, unanimity, agreement, consent.

con-sentĭo, īre, sensī, sensum, *intr.*, to agree, accord; to combine, conspire.

con-sĕquor, ī, cūtus, *tr. dep.*, to follow, pursue, overtake; to attain, obtain, acquire.

con-servo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to preserve, maintain, protect; to observe.

con-sīdo, ĕre, sēdī, sessum, *intr.*, to sit down; to settle, stop, encamp.

con-sĭlĭum, ī, *n.*, deliberation, counsel; design, plan, purpose, intention; judgment, prudence.

con-sĭmĭlis, e, *adj.*, very similar, quite like.

con-sisto, ĕre, stĭtī, stĭtum, *intr.*, to stand, take a stand, take a position, halt, stop; to remain, stay; to consist, depend on.

con-sōbrīnus, ī, *m.*, a cousin.

con-sōlor, ārī, ātus, *tr. dep.*, to console, comfort, encourage, cheer.

con-spectus, ūs, *m.*, look, sight, view, presence.

con-spĭcĭo, ĕre, spexī, spectum, *tr.* (con + spĕcio), to see, view, observe, perceive, look at.

con-spĭcor, ārī, ātus, *tr. dep.*, to see, observe, descry.

con-spīro, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.*, to agree, unite, conspire, combine.

con-stanter, *adv.*, firmly, constantly; uniformly, consistently.

con-stantĭa, ae, *f.*, firmness, resolution, constancy.

con-sterno, ĕre, strāvī, strātum, *tr.*, to strew, cover over, spread over.

con-sterno, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to alarm, terrify, dismay.

con-stīpo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to press *or* crowd together, pack, cram.

con-stĭtŭo, ĕre, uī, ūtum, *tr.* (con + stătuo), to put, place, station; to establish, appoint, arrange, settle, constitute; to determine, resolve; to erect, build, construct.

con-sto, āre, stĭtī, stātum, *intr.*, to stand, continue, remain, exist; to consist in, depend upon; to agree. **Constat,** *impers.*, it is evident, it appears.

con-strātus, a, um. *See* **consterno.**

con-suesco, ĕre, suēvī, suētum, *intr.*, to be accustomed, be wont.

con-suētūdo, ĭnis, *f.* (consuesco), custom, habit, usage; intimacy.

con-suētus, a, um. *See* **consuesco.**

consul, ŭlis, *m.*, a consul.

consŭlātus, ūs, *m.*, consulship.

consŭlo, ĕre, uī, ultum, *tr. and intr.*, to consult, deliberate, take counsel; to consult for, take measures for, provide for.

consulto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to consult, deliberate, take counsel.

consultō, *adv.* (consultum), designedly, on purpose.

consultum, ī, *n.* (consŭlo), decree, decision, deliberation.

con-sūmo, ĕre, sumpsī, sumptum, *tr.*, to consume, waste, destroy; to pass, spend.

con-surgo, ĕre, surrexī, surrectum, *intr.*, to rise together, rise.

con-tăbŭlo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (con + tăbŭla), to cover with boards *or* planks; to board, plank, floor.

con-tāgĭo, ōnis, *f.* (contingo), contact, touch; contagion, infection.

con-tāmĭno, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (con + tango), to pollute, defile, contaminate.

contĕgo, ĕre, texī, tectum, *tr.*, to cover, conceal.

con-temno, ĕre, mpsī, mptum,

tr., to despise, slight, contemn.

con-temptĭo, ōnis, *f.*, contempt, scorn, disdain.

con-temptus, ūs, *m.*, contempt, scorn, disdain.

con-tendo, ĕre, dī, tum, *tr. and intr.*, to stretch, strain; strive for, endeavor, exert one's self; to maintain; to contend; to hasten.

con-tentĭo, ōnis, *f.*, straining, exertion, effort; contest, struggle, dispute.

contentus, a, um, *adj.* (contĭneo), content, satisfied.

con-testor, ārī, ātus, *tr. dep.*, to call to witness, invoke.

con-texo, ĕre, xuī, xtum, *tr.*, to weave, entwine, join together, connect, construct.

con-tĭgī. *See* **con-tingo.**

con-tĭnens, entis, *partic. adj.* (contĭneo), bordering upon, adjacent; uninterrupted, continual. **Contĭnens, -entis,** *f.* (*sc.* terra), the mainland, continent.

con-tĭnenter, *adv.* (contĭneo), continually, uninterruptedly.

con-tĭnentĭa, ae, *f.*, self-control, moderation, continence.

con-tĭnĕo, ēre, tĭnuī, tentum, *tr.* (con + teneo), to hold together, contain, bound, confine, restrain; to occupy, embrace; to keep, hold.

con-tingo, ĕre, tĭgī, tactum, *tr. and intr.* (con + tango), to touch, border on; to happen, occur.

con-tĭnŭātĭo, ōnis, *f.* (contĭnuo), continuance, succession.

con-tĭnuō, *adv.* (contĭnuus), immediately, at once.

con-tĭnŭus, a, um, *adj.* (contĭneo), successive, continuous.

contio, ōnis, *f.*, an assembly, meeting, harangue.

contiōnor, arī, ātus, *dep.*, to harangue, address.

contrā, *prep. with the accus.*, against, contrary to, opposite to.

contrā, *adv.*, on the contrary, on the other hand, in turn; otherwise.

con-trăho, ĕre, traxī, tractum, *tr.*, to draw together, unite, collect; to contract.

contrārĭus, a, um, *adj.* (contra), opposite, contrary, facing; inimical, repugnant. **Ex contrārĭo,** on the contrary, on the other hand.

contrōversĭa, ae, *f.*, contention, dispute, controversy.

con-tŭlī. *See* **con-fĕro.**

con-tŭmēlĭa, ae, *f.*, insult, disgrace, ignominy; rudeness, violence.

con-vălesco, ĕre, lui, —, *intr.*, to gain strength, become strong, recover.

con-vallis, is, *f.*, a valley enclosed on all sides.

con-vĕho, ĕre, vexī, vectum, *tr.*, to carry *or* bring together, collect.

con-vĕnĭo, īre, vēnī, ventum, *tr. and intr.*, to come to-

gether, assemble; to meet; to be agreed upon. **Convĕnit**, *impers.*, it is agreed upon; *also*, it is fit, proper, right.

con-ventus, ūs, *m.*, a meeting, assembly, court, assizes. **Conventūs agĕre (peragĕre)**, to hold a court.

con-verto, ĕre, tī, sum, *tr.*, to turn, direct, turn about; to change, alter.

con-vinco, ĕre, vīcī, victum, *tr.*, to overcome; to prove, convince.

con-vŏco, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to call together, summon.

cŏ-ŏrĭor, īrī, ortus, *intr. dep.* (con + ŏrĭor), to arise, break out.

cōpĭa, ae, *f.* (con + ops), plenty, abundance; means, resources, provisions; number, quantity. **Cōpĭae, ārum**, *f. pl.*, forces, troops.

cōpĭōsus, a, um, *adj.*, well supplied, rich, copious.

cōpŭla, ae, *f.*, a grapnel-hook.

cor, cordis, *n.*, the heart. **Cordi esse** = to be dear.

cōram, *adv.*, in person, before one's eyes.

cŏrĭum, ī, *n.*, skin, hide, leather.

cornū, ūs, *n.*, a horn; trumpet; wing *of an army.*

cŏrōna, ae, *f.*, a crown, chaplet, wreath; the (circular) line of besiegers.

corpus, ŏris, *n.*, a body, person.

cor-rĭpĭo, ĕre, rĭpuī, reptum, *tr.* (con + răpĭo), to take, seize, plunder, carry away; to attack.

cor-rumpo, ĕre, rūpī, ruptum, *tr.* (con + rumpo), to waste, injure, damage, destroy, corrupt.

cortex, tĭcis, *m. and f.*, bark.

cōrus, ī, *m.*, the northwest wind.

cōtēs, is, *f.*, a rock, reef.

cŏtīdĭānus, a, um, *adj.*, daily, usual, customary.

cŏtīdĭē, *adv.*, daily, every day.

crassĭtūdo, ĭnis, *f.*, thickness.

crātēs, is, *f.*, a hurdle, wickerwork, fascine.

crēber, bra, brum, *adj.*, frequent, repeated, numerous, crowded.

crēbrō, *adv.*, frequently, often.

crēdo, ĕre, dĭdī, dĭtum, *tr. and intr.*, to believe, trust, suppose; to intrust, commit.

crĕmo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to burn.

crĕo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to create, make, produce; to appoint, elect.

Crēs, ētis, *adj.*, Cretan. *Greek accus. pl.*, **Cretas.**

cresco, ĕre, crēvī, crētum, *intr.*, to grow, increase; to rise in influence.

crīmen, ĭnis, *n.*, a charge, accusation; a crime, offence.

crīnis, is, *m.*, the hair.

crūcĭātus, ūs, *m.*, torment, torture.

crūdēlis, e, *adj.*, cruel.

crūdēlĭtās, ātis, *f.*, cruelty.

crūdēlĭter, *adv.*, cruelly.
crūs, crūris, *n.*, the leg.
cŭbīle, is, *n.*, a bed, couch.
culmen, ĭnis, *n.*, the top, summit.
culpa, ae, *f.*, a fault, offence.
cultūra, ae, *f.*, tillage, cultivation.
cultus, ūs, *m.* (cŏlo), cultivation, culture, refinement; mode of living; dress.
cum, *prep. with the abl.*, with, along with, among.
cum, *adv.*, when, while, as, as soon as. **Cum primum** = as soon as.
cum, *conj.*, as, since, because; although. **Cum . . . tum**, both . . . and in particular.
cunctātĭo, ōnis, *f.*, delay, lingering, hesitation.
cunctor, ārī, ātus, *intr. dep.*, to delay, linger, hesitate.
cunctus, a, um, *adj.*, all, all together, the whole, entire.
cŭnĕātim, *adv.*, in the form of a wedge.
cŭnĕus, ī, *m.*, a wedge.
cŭnīcŭlus, ī, *m.*, a rabbit; burrow, mine.
cŭpĭdē, *adv.*, eagerly.
cŭpĭdĭtās, ātis, *f.*, desire, eagerness; cupidity, avarice.
cŭpĭdus, a, um, *adj.*, desirous, eager, fond.
cŭpĭo, ĕre, īvī, *or* **iī, ītum**, *tr.*, to desire, wish, long for; to favor, wish well to.
cūr, *adv.*, why, wherefore.
cūra, ae, *f.*, care, attention.
cūro, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to care for, attend to, take care; to regard.
curro, ĕre, cŭcurrī, cursum, *intr.*, to run, flow.
currus, ūs, *m.*, a chariot, car.
cursus, ūs, *m.*, a running; speed, course, voyage.
cuspis, ĭdis, *f.*, a point.
custōdĭa, ae, *f.*, custody, guard, watch, charge.
custōdĭo, īre, īvī *or* **iī, ītum**, *tr.*, to guard, watch.
custōs, ōdis, *m. and f.*, a guard, watch, keeper.

D.

D = five hundred.
D., for **Decimus**.
damno, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to condemn, sentence.
damnum, ī, *n.*, loss, damage.
dē, *prep. with the abl.*, from, after; of, concerning, in regard to; for, on account of; in, during, by.
dē-bĕo, ēre, uī, ĭtum, *tr.* (de + hăbeo), to owe; I, you, he, *etc.*, ought. *Pass.*, to be due.
dē-cēdo, ĕre, cessī, cessum, *intr.*, to depart, retire, withdraw.
dĕcem, *indecl. num. adj.*, ten.
dē-cerno, ĕre, crēvī, crētum, *tr.*, to determine, resolve, decide, decree; to contend, fight.
dē-certo, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.*, to contend, strive, fight.
dē-cessus, ūs, *m.* (decēdo), departure, withdrawal.
dē-cĭdo, ĕre, ĭdī, —, *intr.* (de + cădo), to fall down, fall from.

dĕcĭmus, a, um, *num. adj.*, the tenth.

dē-cĭpĭo, ĕre, cēpī, ceptum, *tr.* (de + căpio), to catch, ensnare, entrap, deceive.

dē-clāro, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (de + clāro), to declare, proclaim.

dē-clīvis, e, *adj.* (de + clivus), sloping, descending.

dē-clīvĭtās, ātis, *f.*, a descent, declivity.

dē-crētum, ī, *n.* (decerno), a decree, resolution, decision.

dē-crētus, a, um. *See* **dē-cerno.**

dĕcŭmānus, a, um, *adj.* (dĕcem), of *or* belonging to the tenth (decŭman). **Decumana porta**, the decuman gate, the main entrance of a Roman camp, so called because the tenth cohorts of the legions were encamped near it.

dĕcŭrĭo, ōnis, *m.*, a decurion, the commander of a *dĕcŭrĭa*, or ten horsemen.

dē-curro, ĕre, cŭcurrī *or* **currī, cursum**, *intr.*, to run down, hasten.

dē-dĕcus, ŏris, *n.*, disgrace, dishonor, infamy.

dĕdī. *See* **do.**

dē-dĭdī. *See* **dē-do.**

dē-dĭtīcĭus, a, um, *adj.* (dēdo), surrendered. **Dēdĭtīcĭus, ī**, *m.*, one who has surrendered, a prisoner.

dē-dĭtĭo, ōnis, *f.* (dēdo), surrender, capitulation.

dē-dĭtus. *See* **dē-do.**

dē-do, ĕre, dĭdī, dĭtum, *tr.*, to give up, surrender, deliver; to devote.

dē-dūco, ĕre, xī, ctum, *tr.*, to lead *or* bring down; to conduct, convey, withdraw, reduce, remove; to launch; to induce, influence; to accompany, conduct, e.g. *a bride to her husband.*

dē-est. *See* **dē-sum.**

dē-fătīgātĭo, ōnis, *f.*, weariness, exhaustion.

dē-fătīgo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to weary, fatigue, exhaust.

dē-fectĭo, ōnis, *f.* (dēfĭcio), defection, revolt.

dē-fendo, ĕre, dī, sum, *tr.*, to ward off, repel; to defend, protect.

dē-fensĭo, ōnis, *f.*, defence.

dē-fensor, ōris, *m.*, a defender, protector; defence.

dē-fĕro, ferre, tŭlī, lātum, *tr.*, to carry *or* bring away, convey; to inform, report; to offer, present, confer.

dē-fessus, a, um, *adj.* (dēfĕtiscor), wearied, fatigued.

dē-fĭcĭo, ĕre, fēcī, fectum, *tr. and intr.* (de + făcio), to fail, be wanting; to revolt, withdraw; to leave, forsake. **Animo deficere** = to lose courage.

dē-fīgo, ĕre, fixī, fixum, *tr.*, to fix, drive down, fasten, plant.

dē-fīnĭo, īre, īvī *or* **iī, ītum**, *tr.*, to define, limit, determine, prescribe.

dē-fixus, a, um. *See* **dē-fīgo.**

dē-fŏre = *dēfŭtūrum esse*, to be about to be wanting.
dē-formis, e, *adj.* (de + forma), ugly, deformed, unsightly.
dē-fŭgĭo, ĕre, fūgī, *tr.*, to flee, shun, avoid.
dē-fŭī. *See* **dē-sum.**
dē-ĭcĭo, ĕre, iēcī, iectum, *tr.* (de + iăcio), to throw down, dislodge; to prostrate, overthrow; to disappoint.
dē-iectus, ūs, *m.* (dēĭcio), a depression, declivity, slope.
dĕin-ceps, *adv.* (dein + căpio), successively, in succession, next, then.
dē-inde, *adv.*, then, afterwards, next.
dē-lātus, a, um. *See* **dē-fĕro.**
dē-lecto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (de + lăcio), to delight, please, allure.
dē-lectus, a, um. *See* **dē-lĭgo.**
dē-lectus, ūs, *m.* (dē-lĭgo), choice, selection, levy.
dēlĕo, ēre, ēvī, ētum, *tr.*, to destroy, efface, overthrow.
dē-lībĕro, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (de + lībra), to consider, deliberate; to determine; to consult.
dē-lĭbro, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (de + lĭber), to take off the bark, to peel.
dē-lictum, ī, *n.* (dē-linquo), a fault, offence, crime.
dē-lĭgo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (de + lĭgo), to bind, tie, fasten.
dē-lĭgo, ĕre, lēgī, lectum, *tr.* (de + lĕgo), to choose, pick, select, levy.
dē-lĭtesco, ĕre, lĭtŭī, —, *intr.* (de + lătesco), to lie hid, be concealed, to lurk.
dē-mentĭa, ae, *f.* (demens), madness, folly.
dē-mĕto, ĕre, messuī, messum, *tr.*, to reap, cut down.
dē-mĭgro, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.*, to remove, depart, migrate.
dē-mĭnŭo, ĕre, uī, ūtum, *tr.*, to diminish, lessen, to impair.
dē-missus, a, um, *partic. adj.* (de-mitto), dejected, drooping, low.
dē-mitto, ĕre, mīsī, missum, *tr.*, to send *or* let down; to lower, sink.
dēmo, ĕre, dempsī, demptum, *tr.* (dē + ĕmo), to take away, remove.
dē-monstro, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to point out, show, to declare, name.
dē-mŏror, ārī, ātus, *tr. dep.*, to delay, detain, retard, hinder; to linger.
dē-mŏvĕo, ēre, ōvī, ōtum, *tr.*, to remove, dislodge, displace.
dēmum, *adv.*, at length, finally.
dē-nĕgo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to refuse, deny.
dēnī, ae, a, *distr. num. adj.*, ten by ten, ten, ten each.
dēnĭque, *adv.*, at last, finally, at length; at least.
densus, a, um, *adj.*, thick, dense, close, crowded.
dē-nuntĭo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to announce, declare; to threaten, denounce.
dē-pello, ĕre, pŭlī, pulsum,

tr., to drive out *or* away; to expel, remove, dislodge; to avert.

dē-pendo, ĕre, dī, sum, *tr.*, to weigh; to pay, spend.

dē-perdo, ĕre, dĭdī, dĭtum, *tr.*, to lose.

dē-pĕrĕo, īre, iī, —, *intr.*, to perish, be lost, be undone.

dē-pōno, ĕre, pŏsŭī, pŏsĭtum, *tr.*, to lay down *or* aside; to deposit, place, station.

dē-pŏpŭlor, ārī, ātus, *tr. dep.*, to lay waste, ravage, plunder.

dē-porto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to carry *or* convey away.

dē-posco, ĕre, pŏposcī, —, *tr.*, to demand, require.

dē-pŏsĭtus, a, um. *See* **dē-pōno.**

dē-prāvo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to pervert, corrupt, deprave.

dē-prĕcātor, ōris, *m.*, an intercessor.

dē-prĕcor, ārī, ātus, *tr. dep.*, to avert by prayer; to deprecate, beg off; to implore, pray for.

dē-prĕhendo, ĕre, dī, sum, *tr.*, to catch, seize; to discover, detect; to surprise.

dē-prĭmo, ĕre, pressī, pressum, *tr.* (de + prĕmo), to depress, sink.

dē-pugno, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.*, to fight it out, to contend.

dē-pulsus, a, um. *See* **dē-pello.**

dērēctē, *adv.*, straight, perpendicularly.

dērēctus, a, um, *partic. as adj.*, straight, perpendicular.

dērigō, ĕre, rexī, rectum, *tr.* (de + rego), to direct, arrange.

dē-rīvo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (de + rīvus), to draw off, derive.

dē-rŏgo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to take away, diminish, detract from.

dē-scendo, ĕre, dī, sum, *intr.* (de + scando), to descend, come down.

dē-sĕco, āre, uī, tum, *tr.*, to cut off.

dē-sĕro, ĕre, uī, tum, *tr.*, to leave, desert, abandon, forsake.

dē-sertor, ōris, *m.*, a deserter.

dē-sertus, a, um, *partic. adj.* (dē-sĕro), desert, solitary, waste.

dē-sīdĕro, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to long for, desire; to miss; to lose.

dē-sĭdĭa, ae, *f.* (dē-sĭdĕo), idleness, inactivity.

dē-signo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to mark out, designate, signify, denote.

dē-sĭlĭo, īre, uī *or* **iī, ultum,** *intr.* (de + sălio), to leap down.

dē-sĭno, ĕre, īvī *or* **iī, ĭtum,** *intr.*, to cease, desist.

dē-sisto, ĕre, stĭtī, stĭtum, *intr.*, to cease, desist.

dē-spectus, ūs, *m.* (de-spĭcio), a view down, prospect.

dē-spectus, a, um. *See* **dē-spĭcio.**

dē-spērātĭo, ōnis, *f.* (dē-spēro), despair, desperation.
dē-spērātus, a, um, *partic. adj.* (de-spēro), desperate.
dē-spēro, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr. and intr.*, to despair.
dē-spĭcĭo, ĕre, spexī, spectum, *tr.* (de + spĕcio), to look down upon, despise, disregard.
dē-spŏlĭo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to despoil, plunder, deprive of.
dē-stĭno, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to fasten, make fast; to design, destine.
dē-stĭtī. *See* **dē-sisto.**
dē-stĭtuo, ĕre, uī, ūtum, *tr.* (de + stătuo), to forsake, leave, abandon.
dē-stringo, ĕre, inxī, ictum, *tr.*, to strip off; to draw, unsheathe.
dē-sum, esse, fuī, —, *intr.*, to fail, be wanting.
dē-sŭper, *adv.*, from above, above.
dētĕrĭor, us, *adj. comp.*, worse, inferior.
dē-terrĕo, ēre, uī, ĭtum, *tr.*, to deter, prevent.
dē-testor, ārī, ātus, *tr. dep.*, to execrate, curse, imprecate.
dē-tĭneo, ēre, tĭnuī, tentum, *tr.* (de + tĕneo), to keep back, detain, hinder.
dē-tracto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to refuse, decline, avoid.
dē-trăho, ĕre, xī, ctum, *tr.*, to draw *or* take off, remove, withdraw.
dētrīmentōsus, a, um, *adj.*, detrimental, injurious.
dētrīmentum, ī, *n.* (dētĕro), loss, damage, detriment, injury.
dē-trūdo, ĕre, trūsī, trūsum, *tr.*, to thrust off, remove.
dē-tŭlī. *See* **dē-fĕro.**
dē-turbo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to beat, drive *or* cast down; to dislodge.
dĕ-ūro, ĕre, ussī, ustum, *tr.*, to burn up, consume.
dĕus, ī, *m.*, a god, deity.
dĕ-ustus, a, um. *See* **dĕ-ūro.**
dē-vĕho, ĕre, xī, ctum, *tr.*, to carry *or* bring down; to convey, remove.
dē-vĕnĭo, īre, vēnī, ventum, *intr.*, to go *or* come down; to arrive at, reach.
dē-vexus, a, um, *adj.* (dēvĕho), inclining downward, sloping.
dē-vincĭo, īre, nxī, nctum, *tr.*, to bind, attach, gain over.
dē-vinco, ĕre, vīcī, victum, *tr.*, to conquer completely, subdue.
dē-vŏco, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to call away, call.
dē-vōtus, a, um, *partic. adj.* (dē-vōveo), devoted, attached.
dē-vŏvĕo, ēre, vōvī, vōtum, *tr.*, to vow, devote.
dexter, ĕra, ĕrum, *and* **tra, trum,** *adj.*, right, on the right. **Dextra, ae,** *f.* (*sc.* mănus), the right hand.
dĭcĭo, ōnis, *f.*, rule, dominion, authority, power, sway.
dĭco, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to

dedicate, consecrate, devote, offer.

dīco, ĕre, dixī, dictum, *tr.*, to say, speak; to appoint, name; to plead. **Jus dīcĕre,** to pronounce judgment, administer justice.

dictĭo, ōnis, *f.*, a pleading.

dictum, ī, *n.*, a word, saying, command.

dī-dūco, ĕre, xī, ctum, *tr.*, to draw apart, separate, divide, disperse.

diēs, ēī, *m. and f.*, a day; time. **In dies,** from day to day, daily. **Diem ex die,** day after day.

dif-fĕro, ferre, distŭlī, dīlātum, *tr. and intr.*, to carry hither and thither; to scatter, disperse; to defer, delay, protract; to differ.

dif-fĭcĭlis, e, *adj.* (dis + făcĭlis), difficult.

dif-fĭcultās, ātis, *f.*, difficulty.

dif-fĭculter, *adv.*, with difficulty. *Comp.* **dif-fĭcĭlĭus,** *super.* **dif-fĭcillĭmē.**

dif-fīdo, ĕre, fīsus sum, *half dep.* (dis + fīdo), to distrust, mistrust, despair of.

dif-flŭo, ĕre, xī, xum, *intr.* (dis + fluo), to flow away.

dif-fundo, ĕre, fūdī, fūsum, *tr.* (dis + fundo), to pour out; to spread out, scatter, extend.

dĭgĭtus, ī, *m.*, a finger. **Dĭgĭtus pollex,** the thumb.

dignĭtās, ātis, *f.*, dignity, merit, worth, standing.

dignus, a, um, *adj.*, worthy.

diī. *See* **dĕus.**

dī-iūdĭco, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to judge, decide, determine.

dīlĭgenter, *adv.*, diligently, attentively, accurately, carefully.

dīlĭgentĭa, ae, *f.*, diligence, attention, carefulness.

dī-lĭgo, ĕre, lexī, lectum, *tr.* (dis + lĕgo), to love.

dī-mētĭor, īrī, mensus, *tr. dep.*, to measure off.

dī-mĭcātĭo, ōnis, *f.*, a contest, combat, struggle.

dī-mĭco, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.* (dis + mĭco), to fight, contend.

dī-mĭdĭum, ī, *n.*, the half.

dī-mĭdĭus, a, um, *adj.* (dis + mĕdius), half.

dī-mitto, ĕre, mīsī, missum, *tr.*, to send away, dismiss, discharge, let go, release; to abandon, leave, renounce.

dĭr-ĭmo, ĕre, ēmī, emptum, *tr.* (dis + ĕmo), to take apart, separate; to interrupt, break off.

dī-rĭpĭo, ĕre, rĭpuī, reptum, *tr.* (dis + răpio), to tear asunder; to plunder, ravage, lay waste.

Dīs, Dītis, *m.*, Pluto, the god of the infernal regions.

dis-cēdo, ĕre, cessī, cessum, *intr.*, to depart, withdraw, go away.

dis-ceptātor, ōris, *m.*, an arbitrator, umpire.

dis-cepto, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.* (dis + capto), to decide; to discuss, debate.

dis-cerno, ĕre, crēvī, crētum, *tr.*, to distinguish, discern.

dis-cessus, ūs, *m.* (dis-cēdo), departure; separation.

discĭplīna, ae, *f.* (disco), instruction, learning, discipline, system.

dis-clūdo, ĕre, sī, sum, *tr.*, to separate, divide, keep apart.

disco, ĕre, dĭdĭcī, —, *tr.*, to learn.

dis-crīmen, ĭnis, *n.* (discerno), separation, distinction; danger, hazard, crisis, peril.

dis-curro, ĕre, cŭcurrī *and* currī, cursum, *intr.*, to run to and fro, run about.

dis-cŭtĭo, ĕre, cussī, cussum, *tr.* (dis + quătio), to scatter, disperse, remove.

dis-ĭcĭo, ĕre, iēcī, iectum, *tr.* (dis + iăcio), to disperse, scatter, rout.

dis-pār, ăris, *adj.*, unequal, unlike, different.

dis-păro, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to separate, divide.

di-spergo, ĕre, sī, sum, *tr.* (dis + spargo), to scatter, disperse, distribute.

dis-pōno, ĕre, pŏsuī, pŏsĭtum, *tr.*, to distribute, arrange, station, dispose.

dis-pŭtātĭo, ōnis, *f.*, discussion, dispute, debate.

dis-pŭto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to discuss, debate, argue.

dis-sensĭo, ōnis, *f.*, dissension, disagreement, discord.

dis-sentĭo, īre, sensī, sensum, *intr.*, to differ in opinion, dissent, disagree.

dis-sĕro, ĕre, sēvī, sĭtum, *tr.*, to sow, plant.

dis-sĭmŭlo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to dissemble, conceal, disguise.

dis-sĭpo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to scatter, disperse, dissipate.

dis-solvo, ĕre, olvī, ŏlūtum, *intr.*, to dissolve, disjoin; to destroy.

dis-suādĕo, ēre, suāsī, suāsum, *tr.*, to dissuade.

dis-tendo, ĕre, dī, tum, *tr.*, to stretch out, extend.

dis-tĭnĕo, ēre, tĭnuī, tentum, *tr.* (dis + tĕneo), to keep apart; to separate; to hinder, detain, prevent.

disto, āre, —, *intr.*, to be distant *or* apart; to stand apart.

dis-trăho, ĕre, xī, ctum, *tr.*, to draw apart; to separate, divide.

dis-trĭbŭo, ĕre, uī, ūtum, *tr.*, to distribute, divide.

dis-tŭlī. *See* **dif-fĕro**.

dītissĭmus. *See* **dīves**.

dĭū, *adv.*, long, for a long time. *Comp.* **dĭūtius**, *super.* **dĭūtissĭmē**.

dĭurnus, a, um, *adj.* (dies), by day, daily.

dĭūtĭnus, a, um, *adj.* (diu), long, lasting.

dĭūturnĭtās, ātis, *f.*, long continuance, long duration.

dĭūturnus, a, um, *adj.* (diu), long, lasting, of long duration.

dī-versus, a, um, *adj.* (diverto), in different directions; separate, opposite; different, remote.

dīves, ĭtis, *adj.*, rich. *Comp.* **dīvĭtĭor** *or* **dītĭor,** *super.* **dīvĭtissĭmus** *or* **dītissĭmus.**

dīvĭdo, ĕre, vīsī, vīsum, *tr.*, to separate, divide.

dīvīnus, a, um, *adj.* (dīvus), divine.

dī-vulgo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to publish, divulge, make known.

do, dăre, dĕdī, dătum, *tr.*, to give, afford; to occasion. **Dăre mănūs** = to yield.

dŏcĕo, ēre, uī, tum, *tr.*, to teach, instruct, inform.

dŏcŭmentum, ī, *n.* (dŏceo), an example, lesson, warning, proof.

dŏlĕo, ēre, uī, ĭtum, *intr.*, to grieve, regret, be pained, lament.

dŏlor, ōris, *m.*, grief, pain; vexation, resentment, mortification.

dŏlus, ī, *m.*, deceit, fraud, deception, stratagem.

dŏmestĭcus, a, um, *adj.* (dŏmus), domestic, private, of one's house *or* home.

dŏmĭcĭlĭum, ī, *n.* (dŏmus), a dwelling, abode, home.

dŏmĭnor, ārī, ātus, *intr. dep.* (dŏmĭnus), to have dominion, rule, govern.

dŏmĭnus, ī, *m.* (dŏmus), a master, owner; lord, ruler.

dŏmus, ūs *and* **ī,** *f.*, a house, home. **Dŏmī,** at home. **Dŏmum,** home, homeward. **Dŏmō,** from home.

dōno, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to give, present, confer.

dōnum, ī, *n.*, a gift, present.

dorsum, ī, *n.*, the back. **Jugi dorsum,** the slope *or* ridge of a hill.

dōs, dōtis, *f.* (do), a dowry.

Drŭĭdes, um, *m. pl.*, the Druids, the priests of the Gauls.

dŭbĭtātĭo, ōnis, *f.*, doubt, uncertainty, hesitation.

dŭbĭto, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.*, to doubt, hesitate.

dŭbĭus, a, um, *adj.* (dŭo), doubtful, uncertain, dubious. **Dŭbĭum, ī,** *n.*, doubt.

dŭcentī, ae, a, *num. adj.* (duo + centum), two hundred.

dūco, ĕre, duxī, ductum, *tr.*, to lead, draw, conduct, convey; to prolong, protract; to consider, account; to build, construct; to marry.

ductus, ūs, *m.*, command, lead, conduct.

dum, *adv.*, while; until.

duo, ae, o, *num. adj.*, two.

duŏ-dĕcim, *num. adj.*, twelve.

duŏ-dĕcĭmus, a, um, *num. adj.*, the twelfth.

duŏ-dēnī, ae, a, *distr. num. adj.*, twelve by twelve, in twelves, twelve each, twelve.

duŏ-dē-vīgintī, *num. adj.*, eighteen.

dŭplex, ĭcis, *adj.* (duo + plĭco), twofold, double.

dŭplĭco, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (duplex), to double.
dūrĭtĭa, ae, *f.*, hardness, hardiness, endurance.
dūro, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to harden; to render hardy; to endure.
dūrus, a, um, *adj.*, hard; harsh, severe; hardy.
dux, dŭcis, *m. and f.*, a leader, general, guide.

E.

ē *or* **ex,** *prep. with the abl.*, from, of; out of, after, on account of, among, according to, in, on, at, from being. **E** *is used only before consonants;* **ex** *before vowels and consonants.*
ē-dīco, ĕre, dixī, dictum, *tr.*, to declare, make known; to order, command.
ē-dictum, ī, *n.*, an edict, proclamation.
ē-disco, ĕre, dĭdĭcī, —, *tr.*, to learn by heart, commit to memory.
ē-dĭtus, a, um, *part. adj.* (ēdo), high, raised, elevated, lofty.
ē-do, ĕre, dĭdī, dĭtum, *tr.*, to put forth, utter, make known, publish; to show, exhibit.
ē-dŏcĕo, ēre, uī, ctum, *tr.*, to teach, instruct, inform, relate.
ē-dūco, ĕre, xī, ctum, *tr.*, to lead forth, draw out, bring out.
ef-farcĭo, īre, sī, fertum, *tr.* (ex + farcio), to stuff, cram, fill.
ef-fēmĭno, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (ex + fēmĭna), to enervate, effeminate.
ef-fĕro, ferre, extŭlī, ēlātum, *tr.*, to bring forth, produce; to raise, lift up, elate; to publish, proclaim, divulge.
ef-fĭcĭo, ĕre, fēcī, fectum, *tr.* (ex + făcio), to effect, accomplish, bring to pass, occasion; to make, construct, produce, render.
ef-fŏdĭo, ĕre, fōdī, fossum, *tr.* (ex + fŏdio), to dig out *or* up; to tear out.
ef-fŭgĭo, ĕre, fūgī, fŭgĭtum, *tr. and intr.* (ex + fŭgio), to escape, flee away; to shun, avoid.
ĕgens, entis, *partic. adj.* (ĕgeo), needy, in want, destitute.
ĕgĕo, ēre, uī, —, *intr.*, to need, be without, be destitute, lack.
ĕgestās, ātis, *f.*, want, poverty, need.
ēgī. *See* **ago.**
ĕgo, meī, *pers. pro.*, I.
ē-grĕdĭor, ī, gressus, *tr. and intr. dep.* (e + grădior), to go out, depart from; to leave, go beyond; to disembark.
ē-grĕgiē, *adv.* (ē-grĕgĭus), admirably, eminently, excellently.
ē-grĕgĭus, a, um, *adj.* (e + grex), excellent, remarkable, eminent, admirable.
ē-gressus, ūs, *m.* (ē-grĕdior), egress, departure, landing.

ē-ĭcĭo, ĕre, iēcī, iectum, *tr.* (e + iăcio), to cast *or* drive out; to banish; expel. **Se eicĕre** = to rush out.

ēius-mŏdī, *adv.* (is + mŏdus), of that nature, such, of such a kind.

ē-lābor, ī, lapsus, *intr. dep.*, to slip away, escape.

ē-lātus, a, um. *See* **ef-fĕro.**

ē-lectus, a, um, *partic. adj.* (ē-lĭgo), picked, selected, chosen.

ĕlĕphantus, ī, *m.*; an elephant.

ē-lĭcĭo, ĕre, lĭcuī, lĭcĭtum, *tr.* (e + lăcio), to elicit, lure forth, entice, draw out.

ē-lĭgo, ĕre, lēgī, lectum, *tr.* (e + lĕgo), to pick out, select, choose.

ē-lŏquor, ī, cūtus, *tr. dep*, to declare, express.

ēmĭgro, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.*, to remove, depart, emigrate.

ē-mĭnĕo, ēre, uī, —, *intr.*, to stand out, project; to be eminent.

ē-mĭnus, *adv.* (e + mănus), from a distance, at a distance.

ē-mitto, ĕre, mīsī, missum, *tr.*, to send out, let go; to throw, hurl, discharge.

ĕmo, ĕre, ēmī, emptum, *tr.*, to buy, purchase.

ē-nascor, ī, nātus, *intr. dep.*, to grow out, sprout out, spring from.

ĕnim, *conj.*, for; indeed, now.

ē-nītor, ī, nīsus *or* **nixus,** *intr. dep.*, to struggle, strive, exert one's self.

ē-nŭmĕro, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to count over, enumerate, recount.

ē-nuntĭo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to disclose, divulge, reveal, declare.

eo, īre, īvī *or* **iī, ĭtum,** *intr.*, to go, proceed, pass.

eō, *adv.* (is), thither, to that place, there; to such an extent, degree, *or* pitch; on that account, therefore.

eōdem, *adv.* (idem), to the same place, purpose, end, *or* thing.

ĕphippiātus, a, um, *adj.*, using saddles, saddled.

ĕphippĭum, ī, *n.*, a saddle, housing, horsecloth.

ĕpistŭla, ae, *f.*, a letter, epistle.

ĕpŭlae, ārum, *f. pl.*, banquets, feasts.

ĕques, ĭtis, *m.* (equus), a horseman; cavalry; a knight, member of the equestrian order, in rank between the patricians and plebeians.

ĕquester, tris, tre, *adj.* (eques), of the cavalry, cavalry; equestrian.

ĕquĭtātus, ūs, *m.*, cavalry.

ĕquus, ī, *m.*, a horse.

ē-rectus, a, um, *partic. adj.* (ē-rĭgo), erect, high, elevated.

ergā, *prep. with acc.*, towards.

ergō, *conj.*, therefore, then.

ē-rĭgo, ĕre, rexī, rectum, *tr.*

(e + rego), to raise, erect, elevate.

ē-rĭpĭo, ĕre, rĭpuī, reptum, *tr.* (e + răpio), to snatch away, tear *or* take away; to rescue, wrest, liberate.

erro, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.*, to wander; to err, be mistaken.

ē-rumpo, ĕre, rūpī, ruptum, *intr.*, to burst *or* break forth, rush forth.

ē-ruptĭo, ōnis, *f.* (erumpo), a breaking *or* bursting forth; a sally, sortie.

essĕdārĭus, ī, *m.*, one who fought from a war-chariot.

essĕdum, ī, *n.*, *or* **essĕda, ae,** *f.*, a war-chariot of the Gauls and Britons.

et, *conj.*, and; also; even. **Et . . . et,** both . . . and.

ĕtĭam, *conj.*, also, likewise; even, yet, still.

et-si, *conj.*, even if, although.

ē-vādo, ĕre, sī, sum, *intr.*, to escape, go out, come out.

ē-vello, ĕre, vellī, vulsum, *tr.*, to pull *or* pluck out.

ē-vĕnĭo, īre, vēnī, ventum, *intr.*, to come out; to result, happen.

ē-ventus, ūs, *m.* (ēvĕnio), an event, occurrence, result, issue.

ē-vŏcātus, a, um, *part.* (ēvŏco), called out. **Ēvŏcāti, ōrum,** *m. pl.*, veteran volunteers, soldiers who, after having served out their time, were called upon to serve as volunteers.

ē-vŏco, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to call out, challenge; to summon, invite, entice.

ē-vŏlo, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.*, to fly out, rush forth, sally out.

ex. *See* **E.**

ex-actus, a, um. *See* **ex-ĭgo.**

ex-aequo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to make equal, smooth, level.

ex-ăgĭto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to drive out; to harass, disturb, agitate.

exāmĭno, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (examen), to weigh; to examine.

ex-ănĭmo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to exhaust, weaken; to kill, destroy.

ex-ardesco, ĕre, arsī, arsum, *intr.*, to kindle, blaze out; to be inflamed, excited; to break out.

ex-audĭo, īre, īvī, *or* **iī, ītum,** *tr.*, to hear, listen to, regard.

ex-cēdō, ĕre, cessī, cessum, *intr.*, to go out, depart, withdraw, retire.

ex-cello, ĕre, uī, —, *intr.*, to be eminent, excel, surpass.

ex-celsus, a, um, *adj.* (excello), high, lofty, elevated.

ex-cepto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr. freq.* (excĭpio), to take *or* pick up.

ex-cīdo, ĕre, cīdī, cīsum, *tr.* (ex + caedo), to cut out, hew down; to destroy, demolish.

ex-cĭpĭo, ĕre, cēpī, ceptum, *tr.* (ex + căpio), to take out; to receive, incur; to meet, sus-

tain, undergo; to surprise, catch; to succeed, follow.

ex-cĭto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to call forth, arouse, excite; to stimulate, incite, impel; to raise, erect, construct, build.

ex-clūdo, ĕre, sī, sum, *tr.*, to shut out, exclude; to prevent, cut off, hinder.

ex-cōgĭto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to contrive, devise; to consider.

ex-crŭcĭo, āre, āvī, atum, *tr.*, to torture, torment.

ex-cŭbĭtor, ōris, *m.*, a guard, sentinel, watch.

ex-cŭbo, āre, cŭbuī, cŭbĭtum, *intr.*, to lie out of doors; to guard, watch, be on guard.

ex-culco, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (ex + calco), to tread down.

ex-cursĭo, ōnis, *f.*, an excursion, sally, attack, incursion.

ex-cūsātĭo, ōnis, *f.*, an excuse, defence, apology.

ex-cūso, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (ex + causa), to excuse, defend, plead in excuse.

exemplum, ī, *n.* (exĭmo), an example, instance; manner, way, kind.

ex-ĕo, īre, īvī *or* **iī, ĭtum,** *intr.*, to go out *or* away; to depart, withdraw, escape.

ex-ercĕo, ēre, uī, ĭtum, *tr.* (ex + arceo), to exercise, occupy, employ; to practise, train.

ex-ercĭtātĭo, ōnis, *f.*, exercise, practice.

ex-ercĭtātus, a, um, *partic. adj.* (exercĭto), exercised, practised, trained, versed.

ex-ercĭto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr. freq.* (exerceo), to exercise, practise.

ex-ercĭtus, ūs, *m.*, an army.

ex-haurĭo, īre, hausī, haustum, *tr.*, to draw out, drain; to remove.

ex-ĭgo, ĕre, ēgī, actum, *tr.* (ex + ago), to drive out; to finish, complete; to demand, exact; to pass, spend.

ex-ĭguē, *adv.*, hardly, scarcely.

exĭgŭĭtās, ātis, *f.*, scantiness, smallness, scarcity, paucity.

ex-ĭgŭus, a, um, *adj.* (exĭgo), scanty, small, slight, meagre.

ex-ĭmĭus, a, um, *adj.* (exĭmo), excellent, select, remarkable.

ex-istĭmātĭo, ōnis, *f.*, opinion, estimation; reputation.

ex-istĭmo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (ex + aestĭmo), to think, suppose, judge, esteem.

ex-ĭtus, ūs, *m.* (exeo), departure; issue, result, end, conclusion.

ex-ŏrĭor, īrī, ortus, *intr. dep.*, to arise, spring up, appear.

ex-pĕdĭo, īre, īvī *or* **iī, ītum,** *tr.* (ex + pes), to free, extricate, liberate; to expedite, facilitate; to prepare, arrange, make ready; to have ready, procure.

ex-pĕdītio, ōnis, *f.*, an expedition.

ex-pĕdītus, a, um, *partic. adj.* (expĕdio), free, unencumbered, expeditious, ready; light-armed, without baggage.

ex-pello, ĕre, pŭlī, pulsum, *tr.*, to drive out, expel, banish.

ex-pĕrĭor, īrī, pertus, *tr. dep.*, to try, make trial of; to prove, experience.

ex-pĭo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to expiate, atone for; to make amends for, make good.

ex-plĕo, ēre, ēvī, ētum, *tr.*, to fill up; to complete, supply, satisfy.

ex-plōrātor, ōris, *m.*, a scout, spy.

ex-plōrātus, a, um, *partic. adj.* (exploro), ascertained, certain, sure. **Pro explorato**, as certain.

ex-plōro, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to search out, examine; to reconnoitre, spy out.

ex-pōno, ĕre, pŏsuī, pŏsĭtum, *tr.*, to put *or* place out; to disembark; to display, expose; to explain, propose.

ex-porto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to carry out, export, convey away.

ex-posco, ĕre, pŏposcī, —, *tr.*, to ask earnestly, entreat, request, implore.

ex-prĭmo, ĕre, pressī, pressum, *tr.* (ex + prĕmo), to press out; to extort, wrest; to express, declare, represent; to raise up, elevate.

ex-pugnātĭo, ōnis, *f.*, an assault, storming.

ex-pugno, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to take by assault; to storm, reduce, subdue.

ex-quīro, ĕre, sīvī, sītum, *tr.* (ex + quaero), to search out, inquire into, ask, investigate, examine.

ex-sĕquor, ī, cūtus, *tr. dep.*, to follow, pursue; to execute, accomplish, perform.

ex-sĕro, ĕre, sĕruī, sertum, *tr.*, to thrust out; to uncover, bare.

ex-sisto, ĕre, stĭtī, stĭtum, *intr.*, to stand out, step forth, arise, appear, proceed; to exist.

ex-specto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to look for, await, expect.

ex-spŏlĭo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to spoil, strip, deprive, plunder.

ex-stinguo, ĕre, nxī, nctum, *tr.*, to put out, extinguish; to destroy, extirpate.

ex-sto, āre, stĭtī, —, *intr.*, to stand out *or* above; to project, appear, exist.

ex-strŭo, ĕre, xī, ctum, *tr.*, to pile *or* heap up; to raise, build, construct, erect.

ex-sul, ŭlis, *m. and f.*, an exile.

ex-tendo, ĕre, dī, tum *or* sum, *tr.*, to stretch out, extend.

exter *or* **extĕrus**, a, um, *adj.*, outward, external, outer, foreign. *Comp.* **extĕrĭor**, outer, exterior; *super.* **extrēmus** *and* **extĭmus**, extreme, outermost, last, most remote, end of, farthest. **Agmen extrēmum**, the end of the line of march, the rear.

ex-terrĕo, ēre, uī, ĭtum, *tr.*, to terrify, dismay.

ex-tĭmesco, ĕre, tĭmuī, —, *intr.*, to dread, fear greatly.
ex-torquĕo, ēre, torsī, tortum, *tr.*, to wrest, extort.
extrā, *prep. with the accus.*, out of, without, outside of; contrary to; besides, except, beyond.
extrā, *adv.*, without, beyond.
ex-trăho, ĕre, traxī, tractum, *tr.*, to draw out; to protract, prolong; to consume, waste.
extrēmum, ī, *n.*, the end.
extrēmus, a, um. *See* **exter.**
ex-trūdo, ĕre, trūsī, trūsum, *tr.*, to thrust out, exclude, keep back.
ex-tŭlī. *See* **ef-fĕro.**
exŭo, ĕre, uī, ūtum, *tr.*, to strip off, divest, deprive, despoil.
ex-ūro, ĕre, ussī, ustum, *tr.*, to burn up.
exūtus, a, um. *See* **exŭo.**

F.

făber, brī, *m.*, a workman, artisan, artificer, smith.
făcĭlĕ, *adv.*, easily, readily. *Comp.* **făcĭlĭus,** *super.* **făcillĭmē.**
făcĭlis, e, *adj.* (făcio), easy, ready; affable, courteous.
făcĭnus, ŏris, *n.* (făcio), an action, deed, exploit; a daring deed, crime.
făcĭo, ĕre, fēcī, factum, *tr.*, to do, make, perform, act; to cause, render; to constitute, appoint; to commit; to furnish, give. **Potestatem facĕre,** to give an opportunity, chance. **Castra facĕre,** to pitch a camp.
factĭo, ōnis, *f.* (făcio), a party, side, faction.
factum, ī, *n.*, a deed, act, exploit.
factus, a, um. *See* **fīo.**
făcultās, ātis, *f.* (făcĭlis), ability, power; means, opportunity; abundance, number, stock, resources.
fāgus, ī, *f.*, a beech-tree.
fallo, ĕre, fĕfellī, falsum, *tr.*, to deceive, mislead; to escape notice, elude observation.
falsus, a, um, *adj.* (fallo), false, unfounded, deceitful.
falx, falcis, *f.*, a sickle; a hook, *used in pulling down an enemy's walls.*
fāma, ae, *f.*, fame, report, rumor; reputation, renown, character.
fămēs, is, *f.*, hunger, famine.
fămĭlĭa, ae, *f.*, a household, family; the slaves of a family.
fămĭlĭāris, e, *adj.*, of a family, private; intimate. **Res fămĭlĭāris,** family, estate, private property. **Fămĭlĭāris, is,** *m.*, a friend, acquaintance.
fămĭlĭārĭtās, ātis, *f.*, intimacy, acquaintance, familiarity.
fās, *indecl. n.*, divine law, the will of heaven, justice, right, duty.
fastīgātē, *adv.*, sloping.

fastīgātus, a, um, *partic. adj.* (fastīgo), sloping to a point; sloping, descending.

fastīgĭum, ī, *n.*, the top, summit, height, eminence; slope, descent, declivity.

fastīgo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to make pointed, raise to a point.

fātum, ī, *n.* (fari), fate, destiny; an oracle.

faux, faucis, *f.*, the throat, jaws; **fauces, ĭum,** a defile, pass.

făvĕo, ēre, fāvī, fautum, *intr.*, to favor, countenance.

fax, făcis, *f.*, a torch, firebrand.

fēlīcĭtās, ātis, *f.*, good luck; success, good fortune.

fēlīcĭter, *adv.*, fortunately, successfully, auspiciously.

fēlix, īcis, *adj.*, lucky, auspicious, favorable.

fēmĭna, ae, *f.*, a woman, female.

fĕmur, ŏris *or* **ĭnis,** *n.*, the thigh.

fĕra, ae, *f.*, a wild beast.

fĕrax, ācis, *adj.* (fĕro), fruitful, fertile, productive.

fĕrē, *adv.*, almost, nearly, about; for the most part, generally.

fĕro, ferre, tŭlī, lātum, *irr. tr.*, to bear, carry, bring; to suffer, endure, allow; to offer, present; to produce, yield; to say, declare, report; to receive, obtain; to lead, conduct; to propose. **Signa ferre,** to advance the standards = to march. **Mŏleste ferre** = to take it ill, be displeased.

ferrāmentum, ī, *n.* (ferrum), a tool, implement.

ferrārĭa, ae, *f.* (ferrum), an iron mine.

ferrĕus, a, um, *adj.*, of iron, iron.

ferrum, ī, *n.*, iron; a sword.

fertĭlis, e, *adj.* (fĕro), fertile, fruitful, productive.

fertĭlĭtās, ātis, *f.*, fertility, fruitfulness.

fĕrus, a, um, *adj.*, wild, rude, barbarous, cruel.

fervē-făcĭo, ĕre, fēcī, factum, *tr.* (ferveo + făcio), to melt, heat, fuse.

fervĕo, ēre, buī, —, *intr.*, to be boiling *or* red-hot; to glow with heat.

fībŭla, ae, *f.*, a clasp, brace.

fictus, a, um, *partic. adj.* (fingo), feigned, fictitious, false. **Ficta,** inventions, fictions.

fĭdēlis, e, *adj.* (fides), faithful, trusty, sure.

fĭdēs, ĕī, *f.*, faith, trust, confidence, belief; security, protection; pledge, word, fidelity, honor, credit.

fīdūcia, ae, *f.* (fīdo), confidence, reliance, assurance, courage.

fĭgūra, ae, *f.* (fingo), form, figure, shape; kind, quality.

fīlia, ae, *f.*, a daughter.

fīlius, ī, *m.*, a son.

fingo, ĕre, finxī, fictum, *tr.*, to form, fashion, mould, make; to devise, contrive, feign.

fīnĭo, īre, īvī *or* **iī, ītum,** *tr.* (fīnis), to limit, bound; to determine, reckon; to finish, terminate.

fīnis, is, *m. and f.*, an end, conclusion; limit, boundary, territory.

fīnĭtĭmus, a, um, *adj.* (fīnis), bordering upon, adjoining, neighboring. **Fīnĭtĭmī, ōrum,** *m. pl.*, neighbors.

fīo, fĭĕrī, factus, *irreg. pass. of* **făcĭo,** to be made, done; to become, occur, happen. **Certior fiĕrī** = to be informed. **Fit,** it happens.

firmĭter, *adv.*, firmly, resolutely.

firmĭtūdo, ĭnis, *f.*, firmness, strength, durability.

firmo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to strengthen, secure, establish; to confirm, encourage.

firmus, a, um, *adj.*, firm, strong, steadfast, resolute; durable.

fistūca, ae, *f.*, a rammer, pile-driver.

flāgĭto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to demand, ask.

flamma, ae, *f.*, flame, blaze, glow.

flecto, ĕre, xī, xum, *tr.*, to bend, turn, guide, move, persuade.

flĕo, ēre, ēvī, ētum, *intr.*, to weep, lament.

flētus, ūs, *m.* (fleo), weeping, lamentation, tears.

flo, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.*, to blow.

flōrens, entis, *partic. adj.* (flōreo), flourishing, prosperous; prominent, in repute.

flōs, flōris, *m.*, a flower.

fluctus, ūs, *m.* (flŭo), a wave.

flūmen, ĭnis, *n.* (flŭo), a river, stream. **Flumine secundo,** down stream; **flumine adverso,** up stream.

flŭo, ĕre, xī, xum, *intr.*, to flow.

fŏdĭo, ĕre, fōdī, fossum, *tr.*, to dig, dig out, dig up.

foedus, ĕris, *n.*, a league, treaty, alliance, compact.

fons, tis, *m.*, a fountain, source.

fŏrem = essem; **fŏre** = fŭtūrus esse.

fŏrīs, *adv.*, without, out of doors, abroad, outside.

forma, ae, *f.*, form, shape.

fors, fortis, *f.* (fĕro), chance, fortune. **Forte,** *abl.*, by chance, accidentally.

fortis, e, *adj.*, brave; strong.

fortĭter, *adv.*, bravely, firmly.

fortĭtūdo, ĭnis, *f.* (fortis), bravery, courage, fortitude.

fortŭītō, *adv.* (fors), by chance, accidentally.

fortūna, ae, *f.* (fors), chance, fortune, fate, lot.

fortūnātus, a, um, *adj.*, fortunate, prosperous, rich.

fŏrum, ī, *n.* (fŏris), a market place, public place, forum.

fossa, ae, *f.* (fŏdio), a trench, ditch, fosse.

fŏvĕa, ae, *f.*, a pitfall, pit.

frango, ĕre, frēgī, fractum, *tr.*, to break, shatter; to dishearten, discourage, to weaken, subdue.

frāter, tris, *m.*, a brother.
frāternus, a, um, *adj.*, brotherly, fraternal, of a brother.
fraus, fraudis, *f.*, fraud, deceit, treachery.
frĕmĭtus, ūs, *m.* (frĕmo), a roaring, murmuring, noise, clamor.
frĕquens, tis, *adj.*, frequent, repeated; numerous, crowded.
frētus, a, um, *adj.*, relying on, trusting to, depending on.
frīgĭdus, a, um, *adj.*, cold.
frīgus, ŏris, *n.*, cold; coolness.
frons, frontis, *f.*, the forehead, brow, front. **A fronte,** in front.
fructŭōsus, a, um, *adj.*, fruitful, fertile, productive.
fructus, ūs, *m.* (frŭor), fruit, produce, profit, income; use.
frūgēs, um, *f. pl.*, crops.
frūmentārĭus, a, um, *adj.*, of corn, fertile in corn. **Res frumentaria,** corn, a supply of corn, provisions.
frūmentātĭo, ōnis, *f.*, a procuring of corn, foraging.
frūmentor, ārī, ātus, *intr. dep.*, to procure corn; to forage.
frūmentum, ī, *n.* (frŭor), corn, grain.
frŭor, ī, frŭĭtus *and* **fructus,** *tr. dep.*, to enjoy.
frustrā, *adv.*, in vain, to no purpose, without reason.
fŭga, ae, *f.*, flight.
fŭgĭo, ĕre, fūgī, fŭgĭtum, *tr. and intr.*, to fly, flee; to escape, avoid, shun.
fŭgĭtīvus, a, um, *adj.*, fugitive. **Fŭgĭtīvus, ī,** *m.*, a deserter.
fŭgo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to rout, put to flight.
fūmo, āre, —, —, *intr.*, to smoke.
fūmus, ī, *m.*, smoke.
funda, ae, *f.*, a sling.
fundĭtor, ōris, *m.*, a slinger.
fundo, ĕre, fūdī, fūsum, *tr.*, to pour out; to melt, fuse; to scatter, throw; to rout, prostrate.
fungor, ī, functus, *tr. dep.*, to perform, discharge, execute.
fūnis, is, *m.*, a rope, cable.
fūnus, ĕris, *n.*, a funeral; funeral rites.
fŭror, ōris, *m.*, madness, rage.
furtum, ī, *n.* (fur), theft.
fūsĭlis, e, *adj.* (fundo), molten, melted, liquid, pliant.
fŭtūrus, a, um, *future partic. from* **sum.**

G.

gaesum, ī, *n.*, a long, heavy javelin of the Gauls.
gălĕa, ae, *f.*, a helmet.
Gallia, ae, *f.*, Gaul.
Gallĭcus, a, um, *adj.*, Gallic.
gallīna, ae, *f.*, a hen.
Gallus, a, um, *adj.*, Gallic. **Gallus, ī,** *m.*, a Gaul.
gaudĕo, ēre, gāvīsus sum, *intr. half dep.*, to rejoice, be glad.
gāvīsus, a, um. *See* **gaudeo.**
gĕner, ĕrī, *m.*, a son-in-law.
gĕnĕrātim, *adv.* (gĕnus), by nations, by tribes.

gens, gentis, *f.*, a tribe, nation, race; kind, class; a clan.
gĕnus, ĕris, *n.*, birth, lineage, family, descent; race, stock; kind, nature, manner.
Germānĭa, ae, *f.*, Germany.
Germānĭcus, a, um, *adj.*, German, Germanic.
Germānus, a, um, *adj.*, German, of Germany.
gĕro, ĕre, gessī, gestum, *tr.*, to bear, carry; to conduct, carry on, manage, wage, perform.
glădĭus, ī, *m.*, a sword.
glans, glandis, *f.*, an acorn; a ball, bullet.
glēba, ae, *f.*, a clod, lump, piece.
glōrĭa, ae, *f.*, glory, renown, fame.
glōrĭor, ārī, ātus, *intr. dep.*, to glory, boast, pride one's self.
Graecus, a, um, *adj.*, Greek.
Graecus, ī, *m.*, a Greek.
grandis, e, *adj.*, great, large.
grātĭa, ae, *f.*, favor, influence, esteem, popularity; service, kindness; gratitude; thanks; a return, requital. **Grātĭā,** *with the gen.*, for the sake, for the purpose, on account. **Gratias agĕre,** to thank. **Gratiam referre,** to return a a favor, make requital.
grātŭlātĭo, ōnis, *f.*, congratulation, rejoicing, joy.
grātŭlor, ārī, ātus, *intr. dep.* (grātus), to congratulate, wish one joy, rejoice; to thank.
grātus, a, um, *adj.*, pleasing, agreeable; grateful, thankful.
grăvis, e, *adj.*, heavy, weighty; important, grave, dignified; severe, grievous, oppressive.
grăvĭtās, ātis, *f.*, heaviness, weight; importance, influence.
grăvĭter, *adv.*, heavily, strongly; severely, grievously; ill, with displeasure.
grăvo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (grăvis), to burden, weigh down, oppress. *Pass.*, to be burdened, *i.e.* to feel vexed, reluctant.
gŭbernātor, ōris, *m.*, a pilot.
gusto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to taste, partake of.

H.

hăbĕo, ēre, uī, ĭtum, *tr.*, to have, hold, possess, keep; to consider, regard. **Gratiam habēre,** to feel grateful.
hăbĭto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr. and intr.* (hăbeo), to inhabit, dwell.
Haeduus, a, um, *adj.*, Haeduan, belonging to the Haedui. As noun, a Haeduan, the Haedui.
haesĭto, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr. freq.* (haereo), to stick fast, remain fixed, be rooted.
hāmus, ī, *m.*, a hook.
harpăgo, ōnis, *m.*, a grappling-hook, grapple, drag.
haud, *adv.*, not.
Helvētĭcus, a, um, *adj.*, Helvetian.

Helvētĭus, a, um, *adj.*, Helvetian.

Hercȳnĭus, a, um, *adj.*, Hercynian. **Hercynia silva**, the Hercynian forest, in ancient Germany.

hērēdĭtās, ātis *f.* (heres), inheritance, heirship.

hīberna. *See* **hibernus.**

hībernācŭla, ōrum, *n.*, winter tents; winter-quarters.

Hĭbernĭa, ae, *f.*, Ireland.

hībernus, a, um, *adj.* (hiems), of winter; winter. **Hīberna**, ōrum, *n. pl.* (*sc.* castra), winter-quarters.

hīc, **haec**, **hōc**, *dem. adj. pron.*, this, this one, this man; the latter; that; such. *Pers. pron.*, he, she, it. **Hōc**, *abl.*, on this account, therefore. **Hāc**, *abl.* (*sc.* parte *or* via), here, this way, on this side.

hīc, *adv.*, here, in this place.

hiĕmo, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.* (hiems), to winter, pass the winter.

hĭems, ĕmis, *f.*, winter.

hinc, *adv.*, hence, from this place.

Hispānĭa, ae, *f.*, Spain.

Hispānus, a, um, *adj.*, Spanish.

hŏdĭē, *adv.* (hic + dies), today.

hŏmo, ĭnis, *m. and f.*, a man; woman; human being.

hŏnestus, a, um, *adj.* (honor), respectable, honorable; respected, worthy.

hŏnor, ōris, *m.*, honor, respect; office, preferment. **Honōris causâ**, out of respect.

hŏnōrĭ-fĭcus, a, um, *adj.* (honor + făcio), honorable.

hōra, ae, *f.*, an hour.

horrĕo, ēre, uī, —, *tr.*, to dread, tremble at.

horrĭbĭlis, e, *adj.*, dreadful, terrible, horrible.

horrĭdus, a, um, *adj.*, rough, shaggy; horrid, frightful.

hortor, ārī, ātus, *tr. dep.*, to encourage, exhort, animate, incite.

hospes, ĭtis, *m. and f.*, a guest, stranger; a host.

hospĭtĭum, ī, *n.*, hospitality; guest-friendship.

hostis, is, *m. and f.*, an enemy.

hūc, *adv.* (hic), hither, to this place; thus far, to this.

hūius-mŏdī, *adv.* (hic + mŏdus), of this kind, of such a nature, such.

hūmānĭtās, ātis, *f.*, humanity; refinement, culture.

hūmānus, a, um, *adj.* (hŏmo), human; humane, refined.

hŭmĭlis, e, *adj.* (humus), low; humble, poor, weak, slender.

hŭmĭlĭtās, ātis, *f.*, lowness; weakness, insignificance.

I.

iăceo, ēre, uī, ĭtum, *intr.*, to lie; to lie dead; to lie outstretched, extend.

iăcio, ĕre, iēcī, iactum, *tr.*, to throw, cast, hurl, discharge; to throw up, erect; construct.

iacto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr. freq.* (iăcio), to throw, toss, cast; to discuss.

iactūra, ae, *f.* (iăcio), a throwing away; loss, damage.

iacŭlum, ī., *n.*, a javelin, dart.

iam, *adv.*, now, already, by this time, soon.

ĭbī̆, *adv.*, there, in that place.

ictus, ūs, *m.* (ĭco), a blow, stroke.

id-circo, *conj.* (id + circa), therefore, for this reason, on that account.

īdem, eădem, ĭdem, *dem. adj. pron.* (is + dem), the same; also, at once.

ĭdentĭdem, *adv.*, repeatedly; often, now and then.

ĭdĕō, *conj.* (id + eo), therefore, on that account.

ĭdōnĕus, a, um, *adj.*, fit, suitable, proper, worthy, capable.

Īdūs, ŭum, *f. pl.*, the Ides, the 13th day of the month; but the 15th of March, May, July, and October.

ĭgĭtur, *conj.*, therefore, then.

ignis, is, *m.*, fire.

ignōbĭlis, e, *adj.* (in + nōbĭlis), unknown; obscure, ignoble.

ignōmĭnĭa, ae, *f.* (in + nōmen), disgrace, dishonor, ignominy.

ignōro, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to be ignorant of, not to know.

ignosco, ĕre, nōvī, nōtum, *tr.* (in + nosco), to pardon, forgive, excuse.

ignōtus, a, um, *adj.* (in + nōtus), unknown.

ille, illa, illud, *dem. adj. pron.*, that; this; the former. *Pers. pron.*, he, she, it.

illīc, *adv.*, there, in that place.

illō, *adv.*, thither, to that place, thing *or* end.

imbēcillĭtās, ātis, *f.* (imbēcillus), weakness, feebleness.

imber, bris, *m.*, a shower, rain.

ĭmĭtor, ārī, ātus, *tr. dep.*, to imitate, copy.

immānis, e, *adj.*, immense, enormous, vast, wild.

im-mĭnĕo, ēre, —, —, *intr.* (in + mĭneo), to project, overhang; to be near.

im-mitto, ĕre, mīsī, missum, *tr.* (in + mitto), to send on *or* into; to put *or* let in; to introduce.

im-mŏlo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (in + mŏla), to sacrifice, immolate.

im-mortālis, e, *adj.*, immortal.

im-mūnis, e, *adj.* (in + mūnus), exempt from public service *or* taxation; free from.

im-mūnĭtās, ātis, *f.*, immunity, exemption from public service.

im-pār, ăris, *adj.*, uneven, unequal.

im-părātus, a, um, *adj.*, unprepared, unprovided, not ready.

im-pĕdīmentum, ī, *n.* (impĕdio), hindrance, obstacle, impediment. **Impĕdīmenta, ōrum,** *n. pl.*, baggage *of an army.*

im-pĕdĭo, īre, īvī *or* **iī, ītum,** *tr.* (in + pes), to entangle,

embarrass, impede, hinder, obstruct, engage.

im-pĕdītus, a, um, *partic. adj.* (im-pĕdio), obstructed, difficult, troublesome.

im-pello, ĕre, pŭlī, pulsum, *tr.* (in+pello), to drive, urge, impel; to incite, induce.

im-pendĕo, ēre, —, —, *intr.* (in+pendeo), to overhang; to impend, threaten.

im-pendo, ĕre, dī, sum, *tr.* (in+pendo), to expend, employ.

im-pensus, a, um, *partic. adj.* (impendo), expensive, high, great.

im-pĕrātor, ōris, *m.* (impĕro), a commander-in-chief, general.

im-pĕrātum, ī, *n.*, command, order.

im-per-fectus, a, um, *adj.*, unfinished, imperfect, incomplete.

im-pĕrītus, a, um, *adj.* (in+perītus), unskilled, unacquainted, ignorant, inexperienced.

im-pĕrĭum, ī, *n*, command, direction; power, government, empire.

im-pĕro, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (in+păro), to command, order; to assign.

im-pĕtro, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (in+pătro), to accomplish, effect; to obtain, procure.

im-pĕtus, ūs, *m.* (impĕto), attack, charge, assault, onset; force, impetuosity.

im-pĭus, a, um, *adj.* (in+pĭus), impious, irreverent, ungodly.

im-plĭco, āre, āvī, atum, *or* uī ĭtum, *tr.* (in+plĭco), to entangle, involve, entwine, interlace.

im-plōro, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (in+plōro), to entreat, implore.

im-pōno, ĕre, pŏsŭī, pŏsĭtum, *tr.* (in+pōno), to place *or* lay on; to impose upon, set over; to embark.

im-porto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (in+porto), to import.

im-prīmīs, *adv.* (in+primus), especially, particularly.

im-prŏbus, a, um, *adj.*, wicked, shameless, unprincipled.

im-prōvīso, *adv.* (imprōvīsus), unexpectedly, suddenly.

im-prōvīsus, a, um, *adj.*, unforeseen, unexpected, sudden. **dē imprōvīsō**, suddenly, unexpectedly.

im-prūdens, tis, *adj.*, not foreseeing, unaware, imprudent, ignorant, off one's guard.

im-prūdentĭa, ae, *f.*, imprudence, want of foresight, inadvertence.

im-pūbēs, ĕris, *adj.* (in+pūbes), youthful; chaste, continent.

im-pugno, āre, āvī, atum, *tr.*, to attack, assail; to impugn, oppose.

im-pulsus, a, um. *See* **impello.**

im-pulsus, ūs, *m.* (impello), impulse; instigation.

im-pūnē, *adv.* (in + poena), without punishment, with impunity.

im-pūnĭtās, ātis, *f.*, impunity.
īmus, a, um. *See* **infĕrus.**
in, *prep. with the accus. or abl.*, in, into, to, at, within, during; with, among; on, about, concerning, over, for; against, towards; in the case of.
ĭnānis, e, *adj.*, empty; vain, useless, idle.
in-cautē, *adv.*, incautiously, unwarily, inconsiderately.
in-cautus, a, um, *adj.* (in + căveo), incautious, unwary, heedless.
in-cēdo, ĕre, cessī, cessum, *intr.*, to go on, advance; to approach, attack, seize.
in-cendĭum, ī, *n.* (incendo), a fire, conflagration.
in-cendo, ĕre, dī, sum, *tr.* (in + candeo), to set on fire, kindle, burn; to inflame, excite.
in-certus, a, um, *adj.*, uncertain; unreliable, untrustworthy.
in-cĭdo, ĕre, cĭdī, cāsum, *intr.* (in + cădo), to fall into *or* upon; to come upon, meet with; to happen, occur.
in-cīdo, ĕre, cīdī, cīsum, *tr.* (in + caedo), to cut into.
in-cĭpĭo, ĕre, cēpī, ceptum, *tr.* (in + căpio), to begin, commence; to attempt, undertake.
in-cĭto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to urge on, incite, encourage, rouse.
in-clūdo, ĕre, sī, sum, *tr.*, to include, enclose, shut in.
in-cognĭtus, a, um, *adj.*, unknown.
in-cŏlo, ĕre, cŏlŭī, cultum, *tr. and intr.*, to dwell; to inhabit.
in-cŏlŭmis, e, *adj.*, safe, uninjured, unimpaired.
in-commŏdē, *adv.*, unfortunately.
in-commŏdum, ī, *n.*, disadvantage, loss, disaster, injury.
in-commŏdus, a, um, *adj.*, inconvenient, unfortunate, disadvantageous.
in-consultē, *adv.*, inconsiderately, unadvisedly, indiscreetly.
in-crēdĭbĭlis, *adj.*, incredible.
in-crĕpĭto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr. freq.* (in-crĕpo), to rebuke, reprove, blame, taunt.
in-crĕpo, āre, āvī, ātum, *and* uī, ĭtum, *intr. and tr.*, to sound, rattle; to censure, reprove, rebuke.
in-cumbo, ĕre, cŭbŭī, cŭbĭtum, *intr.*, to lean *or* recline upon; to apply *or* exert one's self, attend to.
in-cursĭo, ōnis, *f.*, an inroad, incursion, invasion; attack.
in-cursus, ūs, *m.*, an attack, onset, assault.
in-cūso, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (in + causa), to accuse, blame, complain of.
inde, *adv.*, thence, from that place; after that, then, next.
in-dĭcĭum, ī, *n.* (index), discovery, information, disclosure, evidence, proof, indication.

in-dīco, ĕre, dixī, dictum, *tr.*, to declare, proclaim; to appoint.

in-dictus, a, um, *adj.* (in + dīco) unsaid, unpleaded. **Indictā causā** = without a hearing.

indĭgeo, ēre, uī, —, *intr.* (in + ĕgeo), to need, want, lack.

in-dignē, *adv.*, unworthily, undeservedly; shamefully.

in-dignĭtās, ātis, *f.*, unworthiness; indignity, insult.

in-dignor, ārī, ātus, *tr. dep.*, to deem unworthy; to be indignant, displeased; to disdain.

in-dignus, a, um, *adj.*, unworthy; shameful, dishonorable.

in-dīlĭgens, tis, *adj.*, careless, negligent.

in-dīlĭgenter, *adv.*, carelessly, negligently.

in-dīlĭgentĭa, ae, *f.*, carelessness, negligence.

in-dūco, ĕre, xī, ctum, *tr.*, to bring *or* lead in, conduct, introduce; to induce, influence; to draw on, cover.

in-dulgentĭa, ae, *f.*, indulgence, favor.

indulgĕo, ērē, sī, tum, *intr.*, to indulge, favor, gratify.

indŭo, ĕre, uī, ūtum, *tr.*, to put on; **se induere**, to fall into *or* upon, to be entangled in.

industriē, *adv.* (industrius), industriously, diligently.

indūtiae, ārum, *f. pl.* (induo), a truce, armistice.

ĭn-ĕo, īre, īvī *or* **iī, ĭtum,** *tr. and intr.*, to go into, enter; to enter upon, begin, commence, form.

ĭn-ermis, e, *or* **ĭn-ermus, a, um,** *adj.* (in + arma), unarmed, defenceless.

ĭn-ers, tis, *adj.* (in + ars), indolent, sluggish, inactive, lazy, spiritless.

in-fāmĭa, ae, *f.* (in + fāma), disgrace, dishonor, infamy.

in-fans, tis, *adj.* (in + fāri), that cannot speak. **Infans, tis,** *m. and f.*, an infant, child.

in-fectus, a, um, *adj.* (in + făcio), unfinished, unaccomplished.

in-fĕro, ferre, intŭlī, inlātum, *tr.*, to bring *or* carry into *or* on; to introduce, place on; to inflict, produce, cause; to advance, assign. **Signa inferre**, to advance the standards, to attack.

infĕrus, a, um, *adj.*, below, beneath, low. *Comp.* **infĕrĭor,** lower, inferior; *super.* **infĭmus** *or* **īmus,** the lowest, last, deepest, lowest part of, bottom of.

in-festus, a, um, *adj.*, insecure, unsafe; hostile, embittered, dangerous.

in-fĭcĭo, ĕre, fēcī, fectum, *tr.* (in + făcio), to stain, dye, color.

in-fĭdēlis, e, *adj.*, unfaithful, faithless, treacherous.

in-fīgo, ĕre, fixī, fixum, *tr.*, to fix in, fasten in.

in-fĭmus, a, um. *See* **infĕrus.**

in-fīnītus, a, um, *adj.*, infinite, immense, unlimited, boundless.

in-firmĭtās, ātis, *f.*, weakness, infirmity, feebleness; fickleness.

in-firmus, a, um, *adj.*, weak, feeble, infirm.

in-flecto, ĕre, xī, xum, *tr.*, to bend, curve, crook.

in-flŭo, ĕre, xī, xum, *intr.*, to flow into, empty into.

in-fŏdĭo, ĕre, fōdī, fossum, *tr.*, to dig in; to bury.

infrā, *adv.*, below, beneath.

infrā, *prep. with the accus.*, below, under, less than.

ingens, tis, *adj.*, huge, enormous, vast.

in-grātus, a, um, *adj.*, unpleasant, disagreeable; ungrateful.

in-grĕdĭor, ī, gressus, *tr. and intr.* (in + grădior), to go into, enter, advance; to enter upon, begin, commence.

in-ĭcĭo, ĕre, iēcī, iectum, *tr.* (in + iăcio), to throw *or* cast into; to put *or* lay on; to infuse, inspire, occasion.

ĭn-ĭmīcĭtĭa, ae, *f.* (inimīcus), enmity, hostility.

ĭn-ĭmīcus, a, um, *adj.* (in + amīcus), unfriendly, hostile, inimical.

ĭn-ĭmīcus, ī, *m.*, an enemy.

ĭn-īquĭtās, ātis, *f.*, unevenness, inequality; unfavorableness; injustice.

ĭn-īquus, a, um, *adj.* (in + aequus), unequal, uneven; unfavorable, disadvantageous; unjust.

ĭn-ĭtĭum, ī, *n.* (in-eo), beginning, element.

in-iungo, ĕre, iunxī, iunctum, *tr.*, to join *or* attach to, fasten on; to lay *or* impose on, enjoin; to inflict, impose.

iniūria, ae, *f.* (in + ius), injury, injustice, damage, wrong; **in-iūriā,** *as adv.*, unjustly.

in-iussū, *abl.*, without command.

in-lātus, a, um. *See* **in-fĕro.**

in-lĭgo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (in + lĭgo), to bind on, fasten, connect.

in-lustris, e, *adj.*, bright, clear; illustrious; remarkable.

in-nascor, ī, nātus, *intr. dep.*, to be born in; to grow *or* spring up in.

in-nātus, a, um, *partic. adj.* (innascor), inborn, innate, natural.

in-nītor, ī, nixus, *intr. dep.*, to lean upon, rest upon.

in-nŏcens, tis, *adj.*, innocent; harmless.

in-nŏcentĭa, ae, *f.*, innocence; integrity, uprightness.

ĭn-ŏpĭa, ae, *f.* (inops), want, scarcity, poverty.

ĭn-ŏpīnans, tis, *adj.* (in + opīnor), not expecting, unawares.

inquam, *def. v.*, I say.

in-rīdeo, ēre, rīsī, rīsum, *tr. and intr.* (in + rīdeo), to laugh at, jeer, ridicule.

in-rīdĭcŭlē, *adv.*, unwittily.

in-rumpo, ĕre, rūpī, ruptum, *intr.*, to break *or* burst into, rush into.

in-ruptĭo, ōnis, *f.*, an irruption, inroad; attack.

in-scĭens, tis, *adj.* (in + scio), not knowing, unaware, ignorant.

in-scĭentia, ae, *f.* (inscĭens), ignorance, inexperience.

in-scĭus, a, um, *adj.* (in + scio), ignorant, unaware, not knowing.

in-sĕquor, ī, cūtus, *tr. dep.*, to follow, pursue, harass.

in-sĕro, ĕre, uī, tum, *tr.*, to put in, insert, ingraft.

in-sĭdĭae, ārum, *f. pl.* (insĭdeo), an ambush, ambuscade; artifice, stratagem, snares.

in-sĭdĭor, ārī, ātus, *intr. dep.*, to lie in wait, lie in ambush, lay snares for.

in-signe, is, *n.* (insignis), a distinctive mark, badge, decoration; a sign, signal.

in-signis, e, *adj.* (in + signum), remarkable, eminent, distinguished, marked.

in-sĭlĭo, īre, uī *or* **iī, sultum,** *intr.* (in + sălio), to leap upon, spring upon.

in-sĭmŭlo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to accuse, charge, blame.

in-sĭnŭo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to insinuate, work in, creep (*se*).

in-sisto, ĕre, stĭtī, —, *intr.*, to stand upon; to begin; to adopt, pursue, exert one's self.

in-sŏlenter, *adv.* (in-sŏlens), excessively, haughtily, insolently.

in-sŏlĭtus, a, um, *adj.* (in + soleo), unusual, unwonted.

in-specto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to look at, observe, view.

in-stābĭlis, e, *adj.* (in + sto), unsteady, variable, uncertain.

instar, *indecl. n.*, image, likeness; like.

in-stīgo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to instigate, incite, stimulate.

in-stĭtŭo, ĕre, uī, ūtum, *tr.* (in + stătuo), to put *or* place in; to build, erect, construct; to prepare, procure; to begin, commence, undertake; to arrange, institute, establish, determine, resolve; to train up, educate.

in-stĭtūtum, ī, *n.* (instĭtuo), a purpose, design, plan; custom, institution, habit.

in-sto, āre, stĭtī, stātum, *intr.*, to stand upon; to approach, be at hand; to press on, pursue, threaten.

in-strūmentum, ī, *n.* (instrŭo), an instrument, implement, tool, utensil, equipment.

in-strŭo, ĕre, xī, ctum, *tr.*, to arrange, draw up; to prepare, erect, furnish, equip.

in-suē-factus, a, um, *adj.* (in + suesco + făcio), accustomed, habituated, trained.

in-suētus, a, um, *adj.* (in + suesco), unaccustomed, unused; unwonted.

insŭla, ae, *f.*, an island.
in-sŭper, *adv.*, above, upon; moreover, besides.
in-tĕger, **gra**, **grum**, *adj.*, entire, whole, untouched, unimpaired, fresh.
in-tĕgo, **ĕre**, **xī**, **ctum**, *tr.*, to cover.
intel-lĕgo, **ĕre**, **lexī**, **lectum**, *tr.* (inter + lĕgo), to understand, know, observe, perceive.
in-tendo, **ĕre**, **di**, **tum** *and* **sum**, *tr.*, to stretch out, direct towards; to strive, endeavor.
in-tentus, **a**, **um**, *partic. adj.* (intendo), intent upon, attentive, fixed upon, on the alert.
inter, *prep. with the accus.*, between, among, amid, with, during.
inter-cēdo, **ĕre**, **cessī**, **cessum**, *intr.*, to come between, intervene; to be interposed, exist between.
inter-cĭpĭo, **ĕre**, **cēpī**, **ceptum**, *tr.* (inter + căpio), to intercept, seize, capture.
inter-clūdo, **ĕre**, **sī**, **sum**, *tr.*, to shut *or* cut off; to hinder, prevent, debar.
inter-dīco, **ĕre**, **xī**, **ctum**, *tr.*, to forbid, interdict, prohibit, exclude.
inter-diū, *adv.*, in the daytime, by day.
inter-dum, *adv.*, sometimes.
intĕr-ĕā, *adv.*, in the meantime, meanwhile.
intĕr-ĕo, **īre**, **iī**, **ĭtum**, *intr.*, to perish, be lost, undone.
inter-esse. *See* **inter-sum**.
inter-fĭcĭo, **ĕre**, **fēcī**, **fectum**, *tr.* (inter + făcio), to kill, slay, destroy.
inter-ĭcĭo, **ĕre**, **īēcī**, **iectum**, *tr.* (inter + iăcio), to put *or* throw between. *Pass.* to intervene.
intĕrim, *adv.*, in the meantime, meanwhile.
intĕrĭor, **us**, *comp. adj.*, inner, interior; **intĕrĭōres**, those in the interior. *Super.* **intĭmus**.
intĕr-ĭtus, **ūs**, *m.* (intĕr-ĕo), death, destruction, ruin.
inter-mitto, **ĕre**, **mīsī**, **missum**, *tr. and intr.*, to place *or* leave between; to interpose; to discontinue, interrupt, neglect, break off; to cease.
inter-nĕcĭo, **ōnis**, *f.* (inter + nĕco), a massacre, slaughter, destruction.
inter-pello, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *tr.*, to interrupt, disturb, hinder, prevent.
inter-pōno, **ĕre**, **pŏsŭī**, **pŏsĭtum**, *tr.*, to place between, interpose; to adduce, allege; to pledge (*fidem*); to apply, propose.
interpres, **ĕtis**, *m. and f.*, an interpreter, mediator, agent.
interprĕtor, **ārī**, **ātus**, *tr. dep.*, to interpret, expound, explain.
inter-rŏgo, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *tr.*, to ask, inquire; to accuse.
inter-rumpo, **ĕre**, **rūpī**, **ruptum**,

tr., to break off, interrupt; to break down.

inter-scindo, ĕre, scĭdī, scissum, *tr.*, to cut asunder, tear down, destroy.

inter-sum, esse, fuī, —, *irr. intr.*, to be between; to be present; to be occupied with. **Interest,** *impers.*, it concerns, is important.

inter-vallum, ī, *n.* (inter + vallus), interval, distance.

inter-vĕnĭo, īre, vēnī, ventum, *intr.*, to come between; to arrive, intervene, happen, occur.

inter-ventus, ūs, *m.*, intervention, interposition.

in-texo, ĕre, xŭī, xtum, *tr.*, to weave into; to interweave, interlace, cover.

in-tŏlĕranter, *adv.* (in + tŏlĕro), excessively, immoderately.

intrā, *prep. with the accus.*, within, in, during.

in-trītus, a, um, *adj.* (in + tĕro), not worn out, not exhausted.

intrō, *adv.*, within.

intro, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to enter, go into, penetrate.

intrō-dūco, ĕre, xī, ctum, *tr.*, to lead in, introduce.

intrŏ-ĕo, īre, īvī, *or* **iī, ĭtum,** *intr.*, to go into, enter.

intrŏ-ĭtus, ūs, *m.*, entrance, access.

intrō-mitto, ĕre, mīsī, missum, *tr.*, to send *or* let in; to introduce.

introrsus, *adv.* (*for* introversus), on the inside, inward, within, inland.

intrō-rumpo, ĕre, rūpī, ruptum, *intr.*, to break *or* burst into.

intŭĕor, ērī, tŭĭtus, *tr. dep.*, to look at, regard, behold.

intus, *adv.*, within, on the inside.

ĭn-ūsĭtātus, a, um, *adj.*, unusual, uncommon, strange.

ĭn-ūtĭlis, e, *adj.*, useless, unprofitable, unserviceable.

in-vādo, ĕre, āsī, āsum, *tr. and intr.*, to go into, enter; to attack, invade.

in-vĕnĭo, īre, vēnī, ventum, *tr.*, to come upon, find, find out, discover, invent.

in-ventor, ōris, *m.*, an inventor, author, originator.

in-vetĕrasco, ĕre, rāvī, —, *intr.*, to grow old; to become fixed, settled, *or* established.

in-vĭcem, *adv.* (in + vĭcis), by turns, one after another, one another, mutually, alternately.

in-victus, a, um, *adj.*, unconquered; unconquerable, invincible.

in-vĭdeo, ēre, vīdī, vīsum, *tr.*, to envy, grudge.

in-vĭdia, ae, *f.*, envy, jealousy; hatred, odium, unpopularity.

in-vĭŏlātus, a, um, *adj.* (in + vĭŏlo), inviolable, inviolate.

in-vīsus, a, um, *partic. adj.* (invĭdeo), hated, hateful, odious.

invīto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to invite; to entice, allure.

invītus, a, um, *adj.*, unwilling, reluctant, against one's will.

ipse, a, um, *intens. pers. pron.*, himself, herself, itself. *Demon. adj. pron.*, very, exactly.

īra, ae, *f*, anger, wrath.

īrācundia, ae, *f.*, anger, rage, passion.

īrācundus, a, um, *adj.*, irascible, passionate, angry.

ĭs, ĕa, ĭd, *dem. adj. pron.*, that, this, such. **Eō**, *abl.*, on that account, for this reason. **Eā**, *abl.*, in that way, there. *Also, pers. pron.*, he, she, it.

iste, a, ud, *dem. adj. pron.*, that, that of yours, this, such. *Also, pers. pron.*, he, she, it.

ĭtă, *adv.*, so, thus, in such a manner. **Ita ut**, just as.

ĭtă-que, *conj.*, and so, therefore.

ĭtem, *adv.*, likewise, also.

ĭter, ĭtĭnĕris, *n.* (eo), a journey, march, road, way.

ĭtĕrum, *adv.*, again.

ĭtūrus, a, um. *See* ĕo.

iŭba, ae, *f.*, a mane.

iŭbeo, ēre, iussī, iussum, *tr.*, to command, order.

iūdĭcium, ī, *n.*, a judgment; trial; sentence, decision; discernment.

iūdĭco, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (ius + dīco), to judge; to pronounce, declare; to decide, determine.

iŭgum, ī, *n.*, a yoke; a yoke, two spears set upright with one across their top; a ridge, height, summit.

iūmentum, ī, *n.*, a beast of burden; ox, horse, etc.

iunctūra, ae, *f.* (iungo), a joining, junction, joint, union.

iungo, ĕre, iunxī, iunctum, *tr.*, to join, unite, bind, fasten, connect.

iūnĭor. *See* iŭvĕnis.

Iuppĭter, Iŏvis, *m.*, son of Saturn and king of the gods.

iūro, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.*, to swear.

iūs, iūris, *n.*, right, law, justice; power, authority. **Ius dicere**, to administer justice, pronounce judicial decisions. **Iūre**, with justice, justly.

iūs-iūrandum, iūrisiūrandī, *n.* (ius + iūro), an oath.

iussū, *abl.*, by order, by command.

iustĭtia, ae, *f.*, justice, equity.

iustus, a, um, *adj.* (iūs), just, right, fair; complete, full, proper.

iŭvĕnis, e, *adj.*, young. **Iŭvĕnis**, is, *m.*, a youth. *Comp.* iūnĭor.

iŭventūs, ūtis, *f.*, youth; young persons, young men.

iŭvo, āre, iūvī, iūtum, *tr.*, to help, aid, assist.

iuxtā, *adv.*, near, near by, by the side of.

iuxtā, *prep. with the accus.*, near to, by, next to.

K.

Kal., for **Kălendae**, and its cases.

Kălendae, ārum, *f. pl.*, the first day of month, the Calends.

L.

L., for **Lucius**.

L = 50.

lābor, ī, lapsus, *intr. dep.*, to fall, glide, slip down; to fall away, fail, err.

lăbor, ōris, *m.*, labor, toil, hardship.

lăbōro, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.*, to labor, strive, toil; to be in distress, be hard pressed.

lăbrum, ī, *n.*, a lip; rim, edge, margin, brink.

lac, lactis, *n.*, milk.

lăcesso, ĕre, īvī *or* **iī, ītum**, *tr.* (lăcio), to provoke, irritate, challenge; to attack, assail.

lăcrĭma, ae, *f.*, a tear.

lăcrĭmo, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.*, to weep.

lăcus, ūs, *m.*, a lake.

laedo, ĕre, laesī, laesum, *tr.*, to strike; to injure, violate, harm.

laetātio, ōnis, *f.*, joy, rejoicing.

laetĭtia, ae, *f.*, joy, gladness, delight, exultation.

laetus, a, um, *adj.*, joyful, glad.

languĭdē, *adv.*, languidly, feebly, faintly. *Comp.* **languĭdĭus.**

languĭdus, a, um, *adj.*, languid, feeble, faint, sluggish.

languor, ōris, *m.*, languor, faintness, weariness, listlessness.

lăpis, ĭdis, *m.*, a stone.

lăquĕus, ī, *m.*, a noose, snare.

largĭor, īrī, ītus, *tr. dep.*, to give liberally; to bestow, impart, supply.

largĭter, *adv.*, largely, liberally. **Largiter posse**, to have great influence.

largītio, ōnis, *f.*, liberal giving; liberality; bribery.

lassĭtūdo, ĭnis, *f.* (lassus), weariness, fatigue, lassitude.

lātē, *adv.*, widely, extensively.

lătĕbra, ae, *f.*, a hiding-place, lurking-place, covert, retreat.

lăteo, ēre, uī, —, *intr.*, to lurk, skulk, lie hidden, concealed, *or* unnoticed.

lātĭtūdo, ĭnis, *f.*, breadth, width; extent.

lătro, ōnis, *m.*, a robber, bandit.

lătrōcĭnĭum, ī, *n.*, robbery.

lātus, a, um, *adj.*, broad, wide; extensive, spacious.

lātus, a, um. *See* **fĕro.**

lătus, ĕris, *n.*, the side, flank.

laudo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (laus), to praise, commend.

laus, laudis, *f.*, praise, fame, renown, merit.

lăvo, āre *and* **ĕre, lăvāvī** *and* **lāvī, lăvātum, lautum**, *and* **lōtum**, *tr.*, to wash, bathe.

laxo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to loosen, widen, open, extend.

lectus, a, um. *See* **lĕgo.**

lēgātio, ōnis, *f.*, an embassy, deputation, legation.

lēgātus, ī, *m.* (lēgo), an ambassador; deputy, lieutenant. **Legatus pro praetore** = a lieutenant with praetorian power.

lĕgio, ōnis, *f.* (lĕgo), a legion.

lĕgĭōnārĭus, a, um, *adj.*, of a legion, legionary.

lĕgo, ĕre, lēgī, lectum, *tr.*, to gather, collect; to choose, select; to read.

Lĕmannus, ī, *m.*, the lake of Geneva.

lēnis, e, *adj.*, gentle, mild; smooth, soft.

lēnĭtās, ātis, *f.*, mildness, gentleness, smoothness.

lēnĭter, *adv.*, gently, mildly.

lentē, *adv.*, slowly.

lĕpus, ŏris, *m.*, a hare.

lĕvis, e, *adj.*, light; trivial, trifling, slight, fickle.

lĕvĭtās, ātis, *f.*, lightness; fickleness, levity, inconstancy.

lĕvo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (levis), to lighten; to alleviate, relieve, aid.

lex, lēgis, *f.*, a law.

lĭbenter, *adv.* (lĭbens), willingly, cheerfully, gladly.

līber, ĕra, ĕrum, *adj.*, free, unrestrained.

lībĕrālĭtās, ātis, *f.* (lībĕrālis), generosity, liberality.

lībĕrālĭter, *adv.*, generously, liberally, kindly, graciously.

lībĕrē, *adv.* (līber), freely, frankly, boldly.

lībĕrī, ōrum, *m. pl.*, children.

lībĕro, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to free, liberate, release.

lībertās, ātis, *f.* (līber), freedom, liberty.

lībrīlis, e, *adj.* (lībra), weighing a pound.

lĭcentia, ae, *f.* (lĭcet), freedom, license, presumption, boldness.

lĭcĕor, ērī, lĭcĭtus, *intr. dep.*, to bid *at auction.*

lĭcet, ēre, lĭcŭit *or* **lĭcĭtum est,** *impers.*, it is permitted, allowed. **Licet mihi** = I may, can.

lignātio, ōnis, *f.*, procuring wood.

lignātor, ōris, *m.*, a woodman, wood-cutter.

līlĭum, ī, *n.*, a lily; a military work in the form of a lily.

līnĕa, ae, *f.*, a line; string.

lingua, ae, *f.*, the tongue; language, speech.

lingŭla, ae, *f.*, a tongue of land.

linter, tris, *f.*, a boat, skiff.

līnum, ī, *n.*, flax, linen.

līs, lītis, *f.*, strife, dispute; lawsuit; damages.

littĕra, ae, *f.*, a letter of the alphabet. **Littĕrae, ārum,** letters; a letter, epistle, documents, writings.

lītus, ŏris, *n.*, the shore, coast, strand.

lŏcus, ī, *m.* (*plur.* **lŏcī** *and* **lŏca**), a place, spot, position; occasion, opportunity; rank, condition.

longē, *adv.*, far, at a distance; widely, by far.

longinquus, a, um, *adj.*, long; remote, distant.
longĭtūdo, ĭnis, *f.*, length.
longŭrĭus, ī, *m.*, a long pole.
longus, a, um, *adj.*, long, distant.
lŏquor, ī, cūtus, *tr. and intr. dep.*, to speak, say, declare.
lōrīca, ae, *f.*, a coat of mail, cuirass; a parapet, breastwork.
lūna, ae, *f.*, the moon.
lŭtum, ī, *n.*, mud, mire.
lux, lūcis, *f.*, light, daylight.
luxŭria, ae, *f.* (luxus), luxury; excess, extravagance.

M.

M., for **Marcus.**
M = 1000.
mācĕria, ae, *f.*, a wall, inclosure.
māchĭnātio, ōnis, *f.*, a machine.
maestus, a, um, *adj.*, sad, mournful, dejected, sorrowful.
măgis, *comp. adv.*, more, rather. *Super.* **maxĭmē.**
măgistrātus, ūs, *m.*, a magistracy; a magistrate, officer.
magnĭ-fĭcus, a, um, *adj.* (magnus + făcio), splendid, magnificent.
magnĭtūdo, ĭnis, *f.*, greatness, size, magnitude, extent.
magn-ŏpĕre, *adv.* (magnus + ŏpus), very much, greatly, exceedingly, strongly.
magnus, a, um, *adj.*, great, large, much, important. *Comp.* **māior,** *super.* **maxĭmus.**
māiestās, ātis, *f.* (māius), greatness, majesty, dignity.
māior, *comp. of* **magnus.**
māiōrēs, um, *m. pl.* (māior), forefathers, ancestors.
mălăcia, ae, *f.*, a calm *at sea.*
mălĕ, *adv.*, badly, ill, unfortunately, unsuccessfully. *Comp.* **pēius,** *super.* **pessĭmē.**
mālĕ-fĭcĭum, ī, *n.* (male + făcio), harm, damage, injury, mischief.
mālo, malle, māluī, —, *irr. tr.* (măgis + vŏlo), to choose rather, prefer, be more willing.
mălum, ī, *n.*, an evil; misfortune, hardship, calamity.
mālus, ī, *m.*, a mast; pole, beam.
mălus, a, um, *adj.*, bad, evil, mischievous, injurious. *Comp.* **pēior,** *super.* **pessĭmus.**
mandātum, ī, *n.*, a charge, commission, order, command.
mando, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (mănus + do), to commit, commission; to command, order, charge.
māne, *adv.*, in the morning, early in the morning.
măneo, ēre, mansī, mansum, *intr.*, to remain, stay, continue.
mănĭpŭlāris, e, *adj.*, of a maniple *or* company, manipular. **Mănĭpŭlārīs suos,** soldiers of his company.
mănĭpŭlus, ī, *m.* (mănus + plēnus), a handful, bundle; a maniple *or* company *of soldiers.*

man-suē-fīo, fĭĕrī, factus, *irr. pass.* (mănus + suētus + fīo), to be tamed.
man-suētūdo, ĭnis, *f.*, mildness, clemency, gentleness.
mănus, ūs, *f.*, a hand; art; a body, force, band. **Dāre manūs** = to yield, give up.
măre, is, *n.*, the sea.
mărĭtĭmus, a, um, *adj.*, maritime, of *or* on the sea.
Mars, Martis, *m.*, the god of war; war, battle, strife.
mās, măris, *m.*, a male.
matăra, ae, *f.*, a javelin, pike.
māter, tris, *f.*, a mother.
māteria, ae, *f. and* **māteriēs, ēī,** *f.* (māter), material, timber.
māterior, ārī, ātus, *intr.*, to fell *or* procure timber.
mātrĭmōnĭum, ī, *n.*, marriage.
mātūrē, *adv.*, early, seasonably; quickly, speedily, soon. *Comp.* **mātūrĭus,** *super.* **mātūrrĭmē.**
mātūresco, ĕre, ūruī, —, *intr.*, to ripen, become ripe.
mātūro, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr. and intr.*, to hasten, make haste.
mātūrus, a, um, *adj.*, ripe; early; seasonable, timely.
maxĭmē, *adv.* (*super. of* **măgis**), very, most; most of all, above all, particularly, especially.
maxĭmus, a, um. *Super. of* **magnus.**
mĕdĕor, ērī, —, *intr. dep.*, to heal, cure, remedy, provide against.
mĕdĭŏcris, e, *adj.* (mĕdius), middling, ordinary, moderate.
mĕdĭŏcrĭter, *adv.*, ordinarily, moderately, in an ordinary degree.
mĕdĭterrānĕus, a, um, *adj.* (mĕdius + terra), inland.
mĕdĭus, a, um, *adj.*, in the middle, mid, in the midst of, middle, intermediate.
mĕlĭor, us. *Comp. of* **bŏnus.**
mĕlĭus. *Comp. of* **bĕnĕ.**
membrum, ī, *n.*, a member, limb.
mĕmĭnī, isse, *defect. tr.*, to remember, recollect.
mĕmor, ŏris, *adj.*, mindful.
mĕmŏria, ae, *f.*, memory, recollection.
mendācĭum, ī, *n.*, a falsehood.
mens, mentis, *f.*, the mind, soul; heart, disposition; intellect, judgment, reason.
mensis, is, *m.*, a month.
mensūra, ae, *f.* (mētior), measure, measurement.
mentio, ōnis, *f.*, mention.
mercātor, ōris, *m.* (mercor), a merchant, trader.
mercātūra, ae, *f.* (mercor), trade, traffic, commerce.
mercēs, ēdis, *f.*, hire, pay, wages, reward.
Mercŭrĭus, ī, *m.*, Mercury, son of Jupiter and Maia, and messenger of the gods.
mĕreor, ēre, uī, ĭtum, *tr. and* **mĕrĕor ērī ĭtus,** *tr. dep.*, to deserve, merit; to earn, gain, acquire.

mĕrīdiānus, a, um, *adj.*, of mid-day, midday, noon.
mĕrīdiēs, ēī, *m.* (mĕdius + dies), midday, noon; the south.
mĕrĭtō, *adv.*, deservedly, justly, with reason.
mĕrĭtum, ī, *n.*, merit, desert; service, favor, kindness.
mētĭor, īrī, mensus, *tr. dep.*, to measure, measure out.
mĕto, ĕre, messuī, messum, *tr.*, to reap; mow; to gather.
mĕtus, ūs, *m.*, fear, dread.
mĕus, a, um, *poss. adj. pron.*, my, mine, my own.
mīles, ĭtis, *m and f.*, a soldier.
mīlĭa. *See* **mille.**
mīlĭtāris, e, *adj.*, military, war-like, of war.
mīlĭtia, ae, *f.*, warfare, war; military service.
mille, *num. adj. and subs.*, a thousand. *Plur.* **mīlĭa, ĭum.**
mĭnĭmē, *adv.* (*super. of* **pă-rum**), least, least of all, by no means.
mĭnĭmus, a, um, *adj.* (*super. of* **parvus**), the least, smallest.
mĭnor, us, *adj.* (*comp. of* **par-vus**), smaller, less, inferior.
mĭnor, ārī, ātus, *tr. dep.*, to threaten, menace.
mĭnŭo, ĕre, uī, ūtum, *tr.*, to lessen, diminish, impair.
mĭnus, *adv.* (*comp. of* **parum**), less; not.
mīror, ārī, ātus, *tr. dep.*, to wonder, admire, wonder at.
mīrus, a, um, *adj.*, wonderful.
mĭser, ĕra, ĕrum, *adj.*, wretched, unfortunate, pitiable.
mĭsĕrĭ-cordia, ae, *f.*, mercy, compassion, pity.
mĭsĕror, ārī, ātus, *tr. dep.*, to commiserate, pity, de-plore.
missus, ūs, *m.*, a sending, de-spatching.
mīte, *adv.*, gently, mildly.
mitto, ĕre, mīsī, missum, *tr.*, to send; to throw, discharge, hurl; to dismiss, let go.
mōbĭlis, e, *adj.* (moveo), mov-able; changeable, fickle.
mōbĭlĭtās, ātis, *f.*, fickleness, changeableness; rapidity, speed.
mōbĭlĭter, *adv.*, rapidly, quickly, easily, readily.
mŏdĕror, ārī, ātus, *tr. dep.* (mŏdus), to manage, govern, regulate.
mŏdestia, ae, *f.*, moderation, modesty, discretion.
mŏdŏ, *adv.* (mŏdus), only, but, merely; just, just now, lately. **Non modo,** not only. **Modo . . . modo,** sometimes . . . sometimes; now . . . now.
mŏdus, ī, *m.*, measure, quantity, manner, way, mode.
moenia, ĭum, *n. pl.* (mūnio), defensive walls, city walls, ramparts.
mōlēs, is, *f.*, a huge mass; a dike, dam, mole.
mŏlestē, *adv.*, with trouble, vex-atiously. **Moleste fero,** I take it ill, am displeased.
mōlīmentum, ī, *n.*, exertion, effort.
mŏlĭtus, a, um. *See* **mŏlo.**

mollio, īre, īvī *or* **iī, ītum,** *tr.*, to soften; to lighten, ease.
mollis, e, *adj.*, soft, mild, gentle; effeminate, weak.
mollĭtiēs, ēī, *f.*, effeminacy, irresolution, weakness.
mŏlo, ĕre, uī, ĭtum, *tr.*, to grind.
mōmentum, ī, *n.*, weight, importance, influence, moment.
mŏneo, ēre, uī, ĭtum, *tr.*, to advise, warn, admonish.
mons, tis, *m.*, a mountain.
mŏra, ae, *f.*, delay, hindrance.
morbus, ī, *m.*, disease, sickness.
mŏrĭor, ī, mortŭus, *intr. dep.*, to die.
mŏror, ārī, ātus, *tr. and intr.*, to delay, remain, linger; to retard, detain.
mors, mortis, *f.*, death.
mōs, mōris, *m.*, manner, custom, usage, practice, character.
mōtus, ūs, *m.*, motion, movement; commotion, tumult, disturbance.
mŏveo, ēre, mōvī, mōtum, *tr.*, to move; to excite, affect, influence.
mŭlĭer, ĕris, *f.*, a woman, wife.
mūlio, ōnis, *m.*, a muleteer.
multĭtūdo, ĭnis, *f.*, a multitude, great number.
multo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to punish, fine, deprive of.
multō, *adv.*, much, by far.
multum, *adv.*, much, greatly, far, long.
multus, a, um, *adj.*, much, many. *Comp.* **plūs,** *super.* **plūrĭmus.**
mūlus, ī, *m.*, a mule.
mundus, ī, *m.*, the world; the universe.
mūnīmentum, ī, *n.*, a fortification, rampart, defence.
mūnio, īre, īvī *or* **iī, ītum,** *tr.*, to fortify, secure, protect.
mūnītio, ōnis, *f.*, a fortification, defence, rampart.
mūnītus, a, um, *partic. adj.* (mūnio), fortified, secured.
mūnus, ĕris, *n.*, a gift, present; a service, favor; an office, function, duty.
mūrālis, e, *adj.*, mural.
mūrus, ī, *m.*, a wall.
muscŭlus, ī, *m. dim.* (mus), a little mouse; a shed, mantelet.
mŭtĭlus, a, um, *adj.*, maimed, mutilated.
mūto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to change, alter; to improve, to avoid.

N.

nactus, nanctus. *See* **nanciscor.**
nam *or* **namque,** *conj.*, for.
nanciscor, ī, nactus *or* **nanctus,** *tr. dep.*, to find, meet with, obtain, acquire.
nascor, ī, nātus, *intr. dep.*, to be born, arise, proceed, be produced.
nātālis, e, *adj.*, of birth, natal.
nātio, ōnis, *f.* (nascor), a nation, race, people.
nātīvus, a, um, *adj.*, natural.
nātū, *m.*, *abl.*, by birth, in age. **Maiōres natu** = the older persons, the elders.

nātūra, ae, *f.* (nascor), nature; disposition, character, quality.
nātus, a, um. *See* **nascor**.
nauta, ae, *m.*, a sailor.
nautĭcus, a, um, *adj.* (nauta), nautical, naval.
nāvālis, e, *adj.*, naval.
nāvĭcŭla, ae, *f. dim.* (navis), a little boat, a skiff.
nāvĭgātio, ōnis, *f.* (navĭgo), sailing, navigation; a voyage.
nāvĭgĭum, ī, *n.*, a ship, vessel.
nāvĭgo, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.* (nāvis + ăgo), to sail, navigate.
nāvis, is, *f.*, a ship, vessel. **Nāvis longa** = a ship of war.
nāvo, āre, avī, ātum, *tr.*, to perform vigorously, do with zeal.
nē, *adv.*, not; **ne . . . quidem**, not even.
nē, *conj.*, that not, in order that not.
nĕ, *enclit. conj.*, whether. **Ne . . . ne**, whether . . . or. *In direct questions it is not translated.*
nec, *conj.*, neither, nor; and not, but not. **Nec . . . nec**, *or* **neque . . . neque**, neither . . . nor.
nĕcessāriō, *adv.*, necessarily, by necessity, of necessity.
nĕcessārĭus, a, um, *adj.*, necessary; pressing. **Nĕcessārĭus**, ī, *m.*, a relative, friend, kinsman.
nĕcesse, *indecl. adj.*, necessary.
nĕcessĭtās, ātis, *f.*, necessity.
nĕcessĭtūdo, ĭnis, *f.*, relationship, intimacy, friendship.
nec-nĕ, *conj.* (nec + ne), or not.
nĕco, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to kill, slay, destroy.
nĕc-ŭbī, *adv.*, that nowhere, lest anywhere.
nĕfārĭus, a, um, *adj.*, impious, abominable, execrable.
nĕ-fās, *indecl. n.*, wrong, impious; a crime, disgrace.
neg-lĕgo, ĕre, lexī, lectum, *tr.* (nec + lĕgo), to neglect, slight, disregard.
nĕgo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to deny, refuse, say no.
nĕgōtĭor, ārī, ātus, *intr. dep.*, to trade, traffic, carry on a business.
nĕg-ōtĭum, ī, *n.* (nec + otium), business, occupation; affair, matter; trouble, difficulty.
nēmo, *gen. and abl. wanting; dat.*, **nemini**, *m. and f.* (nē + homo), no one, nobody, no man.
nē-quāquam, *adv.*, by no means, not at all, in no wise.
nĕ-que, *conj.* (ne + que). *See* **nec**.
ne-quīquam, *adv.*, in vain, to no purpose, without reason.
nē-quis *is more properly written* **nē quis**. *See* **quis**.
Nervĭcus, a, um, *adj.*, Nervian.
nervus, ī, *m.*, a sinew, nerve; force, power, strength.
neu *or* **nēve**, *conj.*, and not, nor, neither.
neuter, tra, trum, *adj.* (nē + ŭter), neither *of two*.

nex, **nĕcis**, *f.*, death; slaughter.
nĭhil, *indecl. n.*, nothing; not at all, no, in no respect.
nĭhĭlum, **ī**, *n.*, nothing. **Nihilo secĭus** = nevertheless. **Nihilo minus** = nevertheless.
nīl, *indecl. n.*, nothing, no.
nĭmis, *adv.*, too much, very, too, exceedingly.
nĭmĭus, **a**, **um**, *adj.*, too much, too great, immoderate, excessive.
nĭ-sĭ, *conj.*, if not, unless, except.
nītor, **ī**, **nīsus** *or* **nixus**, *intr. dep.*, to strive, endeavor, exert one's self; to lean upon, rely upon.
nix, **nĭvis**, *f.*, snow.
nōbĭlis, **e**, *adj.* (nosco), known, noted, renowned; noble, of noble birth.
nōbĭlĭtās, **ātis**, *f.*, renown; noble birth, nobility.
nŏcens, **tis**, *adj.*, hurtful, injurious; guilty, criminal.
nŏceo, **ēre**, **uī**, **ĭtum**, *intr.*, to hurt, harm, injure.
noctū, *adv.*, by night, in the night.
nocturnus, **a**, **um**, *adj.*, by night, in the night, nocturnal.
nōdus, **ī**, *m.*, a knot, joint.
nōlo, **nolle**, **nōluī**, —, *irr. tr. and intr.* (non + vŏlo), to be unwilling, not to wish.
nōmen, **ĭnis**, *n.* (nosco), a name; account, reason; pretence.
nōmĭnātim, *adv.* (nōmino), by name; expressly.
nōmĭno, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *tr.*, to name, call by name.
nōn, *adv.*, not, no.
Nōnae, **ārum**, *f. pl.* (nōnus), the Nones *of a month*, the *ninth* day before the Ides.
nōnāgintā, *num. adj.*, ninety.
non-dum, *adv.*, not yet.
non-nĭhil, *adv.*, somewhat, something.
non-nullus, **a**, **um**, *adj.*, some.
non-numquam, *adv.*, sometimes.
nōnus, **a**, **um**, *num. adj.*, the ninth.
Nōrĭcus, **a**, **um**, *adj.*, Norican.
nosco, **ĕre**, **nōvī**, **nōtum**, *tr.*, to know, become acquainted with, learn.
noster, **tra**, **trum**, *poss. adj. pron.*, our, ours, of ours.
nōtĭtia, **ae**, *f.*, knowledge, acquaintance.
nōtus, **a**, **um**, *partic. adj.* (nosco), well-known, noted.
nŏvem, *indecl. num. adj.*, nine.
nŏvĭtās, **ātis**, *f.*, newness, novelty, strangeness.
nŏvus, **a**, **um**, *adj.*, new, strange; fresh, recent. *Super.* **nŏvissĭmus**, the newest, latest, last; **agmen novissimum**, the rear; **novissimī**, the rear men, the rear.
nox, **noctis**, *f.*, night.
noxia, **ae**, *f.* (nŏceo), fault, offence, crime.
nūbo, **ĕre**, **nupsī**, **nūptum**, *tr.*,

to marry, be married (*of the woman*).

nūdo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to bare, uncover, expose; to strip, deprive.

nūdus, a, um, *adj.*, naked, bare, uncovered, unprotected.

nullus, a, um, *adj.* (nē + ullus), not any, no, none.

num, *interrog. adv.*, whether, *in indirect questions. In direct questions, it is not translated.*

nūmen, ĭnis, *n.* (nŭo), the divine will; command; deity.

nŭmĕrus, ī, *m.*, number; rank, place, position; account, estimation.

Nŭmĭda, ae, *m.*, a Numidian.

Nŭmĭda, ae, *adj.*, Numidian.

nummus, ī, *m.*, a piece of money, a coin; money.

numquam, *adv.* (ne + umquam), never.

nunc, *adv.*, now, at present.

nuncŭpo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to call, name.

nuntio, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to bring news, announce, report, inform.

nuntĭus, ī, *m.*, news, tidings, message; a messenger, courier.

nūper, *adv.*, lately, recently.

nūsquam, *adv.*, nowhere.

nūtus, ūs, *m.* (nuo), a nod, beck, command, will.

O.

ŏb, *prep. with the accus.*, for, on account of, for the sake of.

ŏb-aerātus, a, um, *adj.* (ob + aes), involved in debt. **Ob-aerātus, ī,** *m.*, a debtor.

ob-dūco, ĕre, duxī, ductum, *tr.*, to draw over *or* forward, draw out, construct.

ŏb-ĕo, īre, īvī *or* **iī, ĭtum,** *tr. and intr.*, to go through, traverse; to perform, accomplish, execute.

ob-ĭcĭo, ĕre, iēcī, iectum, *tr.* (ob + iăcio), to throw before, throw up, oppose, expose; to offer, present.

ob-iectus, a, um, *partic. adj.* (ob-ĭcio), lying before *or* opposite, exposed, lying; intervening.

ŏb-ĭtus, ūs, *m.* (obeo), death.

ob-lātus, a, um. *See* **of-fĕro.**

oblīquē, *adv.*, obliquely.

oblīquus, a, um, *adj.*, oblique, slanting.

oblīviscor, ī, oblītus, *tr. dep.*, to forget.

ob-sĕcro, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (ob + săcro), to entreat, implore, beseech.

ob-sĕquentĭa, ae, *f.* (obsĕquens), compliance, obsequiousness.

ob-servo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to watch, observe, notice, regard.

obses, ĭdis, *m. and f.* (ob + sĕdeo), a hostage, pledge, security.

ob-sessio, ōnis, *f.* (obsĭdeo), a siege.

ob-sĭdeo, ēre, sēdī, sessum, *tr.* (ob + sĕdeo), to besiege, blockade.

ob-sĭdio, ōnis, *f.* (obsĭdeo), a siege, blockade; imminent danger.
ob-signo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to seal, to sign and seal.
ob-sisto, ĕre, stĭtī, —, *intr.*, to oppose, resist, withstand.
obstĭnātē, *adv.*, resolutely, firmly.
ob-stringo, ĕre, inxī, ictum, *tr.*, to bind, tie; to oblige, put under obligation.
ob-strŭo, ĕre, xī, ctum, *tr.*, to block up, barricade, stop up.
ob-tempĕro, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.*, to comply with, submit to, obey.
ob-testor, ārī, ātus, *tr. dep.*, to call solemnly to witness; to beseech, implore, conjure, entreat.
ob-tĭnĕo, ēre, tĭnuī, tentum, *tr.* (ob + tĕneo), to hold, possess; to preserve, maintain; to acquire, obtain.
ob-tŭlī. *See* **of-fĕro.**
ob-vĕnio, īre, vēnī, ventum, *intr.*, to meet; to happen, occur.
ob-vĭam, *adv.* (obvius), in the way, towards, against, to meet.
oc-cāsio, ōnis, *f.* (occĭdo), an occasion, opportunity.
oc-cāsus, ūs, *m.* (occĭdo), a going down, setting, the west; downfall, ruin, destruction.
oc-cĭdens, tis, *partic. adj.* (occĭdo), setting, going down.
oc-cĭdo, ĕre, cĭdī, cāsum, *intr.* (ob + cădo), to fall, perish; to set, go down.
oc-cīdo, ĕre, cīdī, cīsum, *tr.* (ob + caedo), to cut down, kill, slay.
occultātio, ōnis, *f.*, concealment.
occultē, *adv.*, secretly, privately.
occulto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr. freq.* (occŭlo), to hide, conceal, secrete.
occultus, a, um, *partic. adj.* (occŭlo), hidden, secret, concealed. **In occulto,** in secret; in concealment.
oc-cŭpātio, ōnis, *f.* (occŭpo), employment, occupation.
oc-cŭpo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (ob + căpio), to seize upon, occupy; to invade, attack; to engage.
oc-curro, ĕre, currī *or* **cŭcurrī, cursum,** *intr.* (ob + curro), to go *or* come up to; to meet, encounter, attack; to oppose; to occur.
oc-curso, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr. freq.* (occurro), to rush on, attack.
Ōcĕănus, ī, *m.*, the ocean.
ōcĭus, *comp. adv.*, quickly.
octāvus, a, um, *num. adj.*, the eighth.
octingentī, ae, a, *num. adj.* (octo + centum), eight hundred.
octŏ, *num. adj.*, eight.
octō-dĕcim, *num. adj.*, eighteen.
octōgintā, *num. adj.*, eighty.

octōnī, ae, a, *distr. num. adj.*, eight each, eight by eight, eight.

ŏcŭlus, ī, *m.*, the eye.

ōdī, ōdisse, *defect. v.*, I hate, detest.

ŏdĭum, ī, *n.*, hatred, enmity.

of-fendo, ĕre, dī, sum, *tr.*, to strike against, come upon; to offend, displease.

of-fensio, ōnis, *f.*, an offence, harm, wounding; displeasure, aversion, dislike.

of-fĕro, ferre, obtŭlī, oblātum, *irr. tr.*, to bring before, present, offer, confer; to expose.

of-fĭcĭum, ī, *n.* (offĭcio), a service, kindness, favor; duty, allegiance; office, charge, employment.

ŏ-mitto, ĕre, mīsī, missum, *tr.* (ob + mitto), to let go, omit; to lay aside, cease; to neglect, disregard.

omnīno, *adv.*, altogether, in all, only; at all, wholly.

omnīs, e, *adj.*, all, every, the whole.

ŏnĕrārĭus, a, um, *adj.* (onus), for burden *or* freight, transport. **Nāvis oneraria,** a transport ship.

ŏnĕro, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to load, burden, freight.

ŏnus, ĕris, *n.*, a burden, load; weight; trouble.

ŏnustus, a, um, *adj.*, laden, loaded, burdened.

ŏpĕra, ae, *f.*, work, labor, pains; care, attention; aid, assistance. **Operam dare,** to take pains, give attention.

ŏpīnio, ōnis, *f.*, opinion, belief, impression, reputation.

ŏportet, ēre, uit, *impers.*, it behooves, is proper, becoming. **Oportet me**=I ought.

oppĭdānus, a, um, *adj.*, of a town. **Oppĭdānī, ōrum,** *m. pl.*, townsmen, citizens.

oppĭdum, ī, *n.*, a town.

op-pōno, ĕre, pŏsuī, pŏsĭtum, *tr.* (ob + pōno), to set *or* place against, to oppose, place opposite.

op-portūnē, *adv.*, fitly, seasonably, opportunely.

op-portūnĭtās, ātis, *f.*, fitness, convenience; opportunity, advantage, favorableness.

op-portūnus, a, um, *adj.* (ob + portus), convenient, suitable; advantageous, favorable.

op-pŏsĭtus, a, um. *See* **op-pōno.**

op-prĭmo, ĕre, pressī, pressum, *tr.* (ob + prĕmo), to press down; to express, overpower, crush; to surprise.

op-pugnātio, ōnis, *f.*, a storming, assault, attack, siege.

op-pugno, āre, āvi, ātum, *tr.* (ob + pugno), to assail, attack, assault, storm.

ops, ŏpis, *f.*, power, strength; aid, assistance; means, resources.

optātus, a, um, *partic. adj.* (opto), wished for, longed for.

optĭmē, *adv.* (*super. of* **bĕnĕ**), best, most excellently, admirably.

optĭmus, a, um, *adj.* (*super. of* **bŏnus**), best, most excellent, very good, admirable.
ŏpus, ĕris, *n.*, work, labor; a deed, action. **Tanto opere,** so greatly. **Quanto opere,** how greatly, how much.
ŏpus, *n. indecl. and adj.*, need, necessity; necessary.
ōra, ae, *f.*, the edge, border, coast, margin; region.
ōrātio, ōnis, *f.* (ōro), speech, language, talking, words.
ōrātor, ōris, *m.* (ōro), a speaker, orator; ambassador.
orbis, is, *m.*, a circle; circular line of battle. **Orbis terrarum,** the earth, world.
ordo, ĭnis, *m.*, a row, line, order, rank; arrangement.
ŏrĭor, īrī, ortus, *intr. dep.*, to rise, arise, begin, spring, be descended.
ornāmentum, ī, *n.*, an ornament, decoration, distinction, honor.
ornātus, a, um, *partic. adj.* (orno), equipped, furnished.
orno, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to furnish, equip; to adorn, honor.
ōro, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to implore, entreat, beg, beseech.
ortus, ūs, *m.* (ŏrior), a rising.
ōs, ōris, *n.*, the mouth; face; countenance.
os-tendo, ĕre, dī, tum, *tr.* (ob + tendo), to show, display; to disclose, manifest.
os-tentātĭo, ōnis, *f.*, show, display, ostentation; pretence.
os-tento, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr. freq.* (ostendo), to show, display, exhibit.
ōtĭum, ī, *n.*, leisure, ease, quiet, rest, repose.
ōvum, ī, *n.*, an egg.

P.

P., for Publius.
pābŭlātio, ōnis, *f.*, a foraging.
pābŭlātor, ōris, *m.*, a forager.
pābŭlŏr, ārī, ātus, *intr. dep.*, to forage.
pābŭlum, ī, *n.*, fodder, forage.
pācātus, a, um, *partic. adj.* (pāco), pacified, peaceful, quiet.
pāco, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (pax), to pacify; to subdue.
pactum, ī, *n.* (paciscor), an agreement, compact; manner, way.
paene, *adv.*, almost, nearly.
paenĭtet, ēre, uit, *impers.*, it repents. **Me paenitet** = I repent, regret.
pāgus, ī, *m.*, a district, canton.
pălam, *adv.*, openly, publicly.
palma, ae, *f.*, the palm *of* the hand; a palm-tree.
pălūs, ūdis, *f.*, a marsh, swamp.
păluster, tris, tre, *adj.* (palus), marshy, swampy.
pando, ĕre, dī, passum *or* **pansum,** *tr.*, to spread out, stretch out, extend.
pār, păris, *adj.*, equal, like, similar, matched, a match for.
părātus, a, um, *partic. adj.* (păro), ready, prepared.
parcē, *adv.*, sparingly, frugally.

parco, ĕre, pĕpercī *and* **parsī, parcĭtum** *and* **parsum,** *intr.*, to spare, abstain, forbear.
părens, tis, *m. and f.* (părio), a parent, father *or* mother.
părento, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (părens), to offer sacrifice in honor of the dead; to avenge, appease.
pāreo, ēre, uī, ĭtum, *intr.*, to obey, comply with, submit to.
păriēs, ĕtis, *m.*, a wall.
părio, ĕre, pĕpĕrī, partum, *tr.*, to bear, bring forth; to acquire, gain; to produce.
părĭter, *adv.* (pār), equally.
păro, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to prepare, provide, furnish, procure, acquire, obtain.
pars, tis, *f.*, a part, portion, share; direction; party, side. **Ex parte,** in part, partly. **Multis partibus,** in many respects.
partim, *adv.*, partly, in part.
partio, īre, īvī *or* **iī, ītum,** *tr.*, *and* **partĭor, īrī, ītus,** *tr. dep.*, to share, divide, distribute.
partus, a, um. *See* **părio.**
părum, *adv.*, little, too little, not enough. *Comp.* **mĭnus,** *super.* **mĭnĭmē.**
parvŭlus, a, um, *adj. dim.* (parvus), very small; young; trifling, slight.
parvus, a, um, *adj.*, little, small, slight. *Comp.* **mĭnor,** *super.* **mĭnĭmus.**
passim, *adv.* (pando), here and there, everywhere.
passus, ūs, *m.* (pando), a pace, a measure of five Roman feet. **Mille passus** = a Roman mile.
passus, a, um. *See* **pando.**
passus, a, um. *See* **pătior.**
pătĕ-făcĭo, ĕre, fēcī, factum, *tr.* (păteo + făcio), to open, throw open; to disclose, discover.
pătĕ-fīo, fĭĕrī, factus, *irreg. pass.* of **pătĕfăcĭo.**
pătens, tis, *partic. adj.* (păteo), open, unobstructed, accessible.
păteo, ēre, uī, —, *intr.*, to be open, be exposed; to extend.
păter, tris, *m.*, a father.
pătĭenter, *adv.* (pătior), patiently, tamely.
pătĭentia, ae, *f.*, patience, endurance, tameness.
pătĭor, ī, passus, *tr. dep.*, to suffer, endure, bear; to allow, permit.
pătrĭus, a, um, *adj.* (pater), fatherly, paternal, ancestral; of one's country, national.
pătrōnus, ī, *m.* (pater), a patron, protector; champion, advocate.
pătrŭus, ī, *m.* (pater), an uncle, father's brother.
paucī, ae, a, *adj.*, few, a few.
paucĭtās, ātis, *f.*, fewness, small number, scarcity.
paulātim, *adv.*, gradually, by degrees.
paulisper, *adv.*, for a little while, a short time.

paulō. *See* **paulus.**
paulŭlum, *adv.*, a little, somewhat.
paulum, *adv.*, a little, somewhat.
paulus, a, um, *adj.*, little, small. **Paulō,** *abl.*, a little, somewhat.
pax, pācis, *f.*, peace.
pecco, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.*, to err, offend, transgress, injure.
pectus, ŏris, *n.*, the breast.
pĕcūnia, ae, *f.* (pĕcus), money; property, riches.
pĕcus, ŏris, *n.*, cattle; a herd.
pĕdālis, e, *adj.* (pes), a foot long, wide, *or* thick.
pĕdes, ĭtis, *m.* (pes), a foot-soldier; infantry.
pĕdester, tris, tre, *adj.* (pes), on foot; infantry; on land.
pĕdĭtātus, ūs, *m.*, infantry.
pēior, us, *adj.* (*comp. of* **mălus**), worse; a worse thing.
pēius, *adv.* (*comp. of* **mălĕ**), worse.
pellis, is, *f.*, a skin, hide; tent.
pello, ĕre, pĕpŭlī, pulsum, *tr.*, to drive away, expel; to rout, conquer, defeat.
pendo, ĕre, pĕpendī, pensum, *tr.*, to weigh out; to pay; to suffer (poenas); to consider.
pĕnĕs, *prep. with the accus.*, with, in the power of, in the hands of.
pĕnĭtus, *adv.*, within, inwardly.
per, *prep. with the accus.*, through, over, during, along; by, by means of, with, under; for, for the sake of, on account of.
pĕr-ăgo, ĕre, ēgī, actum, *tr.*, to carry through, accomplish, complete, finish, end.
per-angustus, a, um, *adj.*, very narrow.
per-cĭpio, ĕre, cēpī, ceptum, *tr.* (+ căpio), to receive, acquire, obtain; to perceive, learn, hear.
percontātio, ōnis, *f.*, inquiry.
percunctātĭo. *See* **percontātĭo.**
per-curro, ĕre, cŭcurrī *or* **currī, cursum,** *tr.*, *and intr.*, to run through *or* over; to traverse.
per-cŭtĭo, ĕre, cussī, cussum, *tr.* (per + quătio), to strike through, smite, kill, slay.
per-disco, ĕre, dĭdĭcī, —, *tr.*, to learn thoroughly, learn by heart.
perdĭtus, a, um, *partic. adj.* (perdo), abandoned, profligate, desperate.
per-do, ĕre, dĭdī, dĭtum, *tr.*, to ruin, destroy, lose.
per-dūco, ĕre, xī, ctum, *tr.*, to lead, bring, *or* convey through; to bring over, persuade; to draw out, construct; to prolong, protract.
pĕrendĭnus, a, um, *adj.*, after to-morrow.
pĕr-ĕo, īre, īvī *or* **iī, ĭtum,** *intr.*, to perish, die, be lost.
pĕr-ĕquĭto, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.*, to ride through, ride around.

pĕr-exĭguŭs, a, um, *adj.*, very small, very little.

per-făcĭlis, e, *adj.*, very easy.

per-fĕro, ferre, tŭlī, lātum, *irr. tr.*, to bear *or* carry through; to bring, convey; to suffer, endure, undergo; to report.

per-fĭcio, ĕre, fēcī, fectum, *tr.* (per + făcio), to finish, complete, accomplish, perform; to effect, cause.

per-fĭdia, ae, *f.*, perfidy, treachery.

per-fringo, ĕre, frēgī, fractum, *tr.* (per + frango), to break through, burst through; to shatter, rout.

per-fŭga, ae, *m.*, a deserter.

per-fŭgio, ĕre, fūgī, fŭgĭtum, *intr.*, to flee to for refuge; to desert.

per-fŭgĭum, ī, *n.*, a refuge, shelter.

per-go, ĕre, perrexī, perrectum, *intr.* (per + rĕgo), to go on, continue, proceed, advance.

pĕrīclĭtor, ārī, ātus, *tr. dep.* (perīcŭlum), to try, attempt; to hazard, jeopardize, endanger, to incur danger.

pĕrīcŭlōsus, a, um, *adj.*, dangerous, perilous, hazardous.

pĕrīcŭlum, ī, *n.*, a trial, experiment; danger, hazard, peril, risk.

pĕrītus, a, um, *adj.*, experienced, skilled, acquainted with.

per-lātus, a, um. *See* per-fĕro.

per-lĕgo, ĕre, lēgī, lectum, *tr.*, to read through.

per-lŭo, ĕre, uī, ūtum, *tr.*, to wash, bathe.

per-magnus, a, um, *adj.*, very great.

pĕr-mănĕo, ēre, mansī, mansum, *intr.*, to remain, continue, persevere, endure.

per-miscĕo, ēre, cŭī, istum *or* ixtum, *tr.*, to mix together, mingle, blend; to confuse.

per-mitto, ĕre, mīsī, missum, *tr.*, to send through; to commit, intrust, surrender; to allow, permit.

per-mixtus, a, um. *See* per-mīscĕo.

per-mŏveo, ēre, mōvī, mōtum, *tr.*, to move deeply, affect; to induce, influence; to excite, arouse.

per-mulcĕo, ēre, sī, sum *or* ctum, *tr.*, to soothe, appease, allay.

per-nĭciēs, ēī, *f.* (per-nĕco), destruction, ruin, disaster.

per-paucī, ae, a, *adj.*, very few.

per-pendĭcŭlum, ī, *n.* (per + pendo), a plummet, plumb-line.

per-pĕtĭor, ī, pessus, *tr. dep.* (per + pătior), to suffer patiently; to endure, bear.

per-pĕtuō, *adv.*, continuously, perpetually, always.

per-pĕtŭus, a, um, *adj.* (per + pĕto), continuous, uninterrupted, perpetual. **In perpetuum** (*sc.* tempus), forever.

per-quīro, ĕre, sīvī, sītum, *tr.* (per + quaero), to search for; to inquire after.

per-rumpo, ĕre, rūpī, ruptum, *tr.*, to break through, burst through.

per-scrībo, ĕre, psī, ptum, *tr.*, to write out, describe, record.

per-sĕquor, ī, cūtus, *tr. dep.*, to pursue, press upon; to punish, avenge; to perform, accomplish, execute.

per-sĕvēro, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to persist, continue, persevere.

per-solvo, ĕre, solvī, sŏlūtum, *tr.*, to release, discharge; to pay, pay off; to suffer (*poenas*).

per-spĭcĭo, ĕre, spexī, spectum, *tr.* (per + spĕcio), to see through, see clearly; to perceive, observe; to view, examine.

per-sto, āre, stĭtī, stātum, *intr.*, to stand fast, persist, remain firm.

per-suādĕo, ēre, sī, sum, *tr.*, to persuade, convince.

per-terrĕo, ēre, uī, ĭtum, *tr.*, to frighten greatly; to terrify.

per-tĭmesco, ĕre, muī, *tr. and intr.*, to fear greatly; to dread.

per-tĭnācia, ae, *f.*, obstinacy, stubbornness, pertinacity.

per-tĭneo, ēre, uī, —, *intr.* (per + tĕneo), to stretch out, extend; to tend; to pertain, belong.

per-tŭlī. *See* per-fĕro.

per-turbātio, ōnis, *f.*, disturbance, confusion, disorder.

per-turbo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to throw into confusion; to confuse, disturb, confound, embarrass.

per-văgor, ārī, ātus, *intr. dep.*, to wander through, roam *or* rove about.

per-vĕnio, īre, vēnī, ventum, *intr.*, to come to, arrive at, reach.

pēs, pĕdis, *m.*, a foot; step. **Pedem referre** = to retreat.

pĕto, ĕre, īvī *or* iī, ītum, *tr.*, to seek, request; to attack, assail; to make for, repair to, aim at.

phălanx, gis, *f.*, a phalanx.

piĕtās, ātis, *f.*, dutiful conduct; piety, duty, affection; loyalty, patriotism.

pignus, ŏris, *n.*, a pledge, security.

pīlum, ī, *n.*, a javelin, dart.

pīlus, ī, *m.*, a division of the **triariī**, a company, maniple.

pinna, ae, *f.*, a feather; a battlement, parapet, pinnacle.

piscis, is, *m.*, a fish.

pix, pĭcis, *f.*, pitch.

plăceo, ēre, uī, ĭtum, *intr.*, to please, be agreeable, satisfy.

plăcĭdē, *adv.*, calmly, quietly, gently, mildly.

plāco, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to appease, calm, reconcile.

plānē, *adv.*, plainly, clearly, distinctly; entirely, quite.

plānĭtiēs, ēī, *f.*, a plain.

plānus, a, um, *adj.*, plain, level, flat, even, smooth.

plēbes, ēī, *f.*, *and* **plebs, plēbis,** *f.*, the plebs, plebeians, commons; the populace.

plēnē, *adv.*, fully, entirely.

plēnus, a, um, *adj.*, full, complete, entire.

plērumque, *adv.*, for the most part, commonly, generally.

plērusque, ăque, umque, *adj.*, most, the most. *Plural*, most, very many.

plumbum, ī, *n.*, lead. **Plumbum album,** tin.

plūrĭmum, *adv.* (*super. of* **multum**), most, most of all, very much; especially, exceedingly.

plūrĭmus, a, um, *adj.* (*super. of* **multus**), very much, most. *Plural*, most, very many.

plūs, *adv.* (*comp. of* **multum**), more.

plūs, plūris, *adj.* (*comp. of* **multus**), more. **Plūrēs,** several, more, a good many.

plŭtĕus, ī, *m.*, a breastwork, parapet.

pōcŭlum, ī, *n.*, a cup, goblet.

poena, ae, *f.*, punishment, penalty, fine.

pollex, ĭcis, *m.*, the thumb.

pollĭcĕor, ērī, ĭtus, *tr. dep.*, to promise.

pollĭcĭtātio, ōnis, *f.*, a promise.

pondus, ĕris, *n.*, a weight, burden.

pōno, ĕre, pŏsŭī, pŏsĭtum, *tr.*, to put, place, set, pitch; to erect, build; to lay down, lay aside; to set down, regard; to post, station.

pons, tis, *m.*, a bridge.

pŏposcī. *See* **posco.**

pŏpŭlātio, ōnis, *f.* (pŏpŭlor), a laying waste, ravaging, pillaging.

pŏpŭlor, ārī, ātus, *tr. dep.* (pŏpŭlus), to lay waste, ravage, pillage, plunder.

pŏpŭlus, ī, *m.*, a people, nation.

porrectus, a, um. *See* **porrĭgo.**

por-rĭgo, ĕre, rexī, rectum, *tr.* (pro + rego), to stretch out, extend; to offer.

porrō, *adv.*, forward, farther on; moreover, besides.

porta, ae, *f.*, a gate.

porto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to carry, convey, bear.

portōrĭum, ī, *n.* (porto), a tax, duty, impost, customs.

portus, ūs, *m.*, a port, harbor.

posco, ĕre, pŏposcī, —, *tr.*, to demand, importune, ask for.

pŏsĭtus, a, um. *See* **pōno.**

possessĭo, ōnis, *f.*, a possession, property, estate.

possĭdeo, ēre, sēdī, sessum, *tr.*, to possess, hold, occupy.

possum, posse, pŏtuī, *irr. intr.* (pŏtis + sum), to be able. **Largiter posse,** to have great influence. **Plurimum posse,** to be very powerful.

post, *adv.*, after, afterwards.

post, *prep. with the accus.*, after, behind, since, in, within.

post-ĕā, *adv.*, afterwards.

post-ĕā-quam, *adv.*, after.

postĕrus, a, um, *adj.*, follow-

ing, next. **Postĕrī, ōrum,** *m. pl.*, posterity, descendants. *Comp.* **postĕrĭor,** *super.* **postrēmus** *and* **postŭmus.**

post-pōno, ĕre, pŏsŭī, pŏsĭtum, *tr.*, to place after; to esteem less, disregard, neglect.

post-quam, *adv.*, after, as soon as, when.

postrēmō, *adv.*, at last, finally.

postrēmus, a, um, *adj.* (*super. of* **postĕrus**), the last, latest; rear, hindermost.

postrī-diē, *adv.*, on the following day, the day after.

postŭlātum, ī, *n.* (postŭlo), a demand, request.

postŭlo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to demand, require, ask, request.

pŏtens, tis, *adj.* (possum), able, powerful, influential.

pŏtentātus, ūs, *m.*, power, dominion, rule.

pŏtentĭa, ae, *f.*, power.

pŏtestās, ātis, *f.*, power; authority; opportunity; permission.

pŏtĭor, īrī, ītus, *tr. dep.* (pŏtis), to become master of; to gain, acquire, possess, obtain.

pŏtĭus, *comp. adv.*, rather, sooner. *Super.* **pŏtissĭmē** *and* **pŏtissĭmum.**

prae, *prep. with the abl.*, before; in comparison with; for, on account of, by reason of.

prae-ăcūtus, a, um, *adj.*, sharpened at the end, pointed.

prae-bĕo, ēre, uī, ĭtum, *tr.* (prae + habeo), to afford, offer, present, furnish; to show, exhibit.

prae-căvĕo, ēre, cāvī, cautum, *intr.*, to be on one's guard against, take precaution.

prae-cēdo, ĕre, cessī, cĕssum, *intr.*, to go before, precede; to excel, surpass.

prae-ceps, cĭpĭtis, *adj.* (prae + caput), headlong, rapid, hasty; precipitous, steep.

prae-ceptum, ī, *n.*, an order, direction, instruction; counsel, precept.

prae-cĭpio, ĕre, cēpī, ceptum, *tr.* (prae + căpio), to anticipate; to direct, instruct, order.

prae-cĭpĭto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (praeceps), to throw headlong, precipitate, plunge.

prae-cĭpuē, *adv.*, especially, particularly, chiefly.

prae-cĭpŭus, a, um, *adj.*, particular, especial, remarkable, peculiar.

prae-clūdo, ĕre, sī, sum, *tr.*, to shut up, close; to hinder.

praeco, ōnis, *m.*, a herald.

prae-curro, ĕre, cŭcurrī *or* **currī, cursum,** *tr. and intr.*, to run before, precede; to outstrip, surpass, excel.

praeda, ae, *f.*, booty, plunder, prey, spoil.

prae-dĭco, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to proclaim, publish, declare, report, assert.

praedor, ārī, ātus, *intr. dep.*, to plunder, pillage, ravage.

prae-dūco, ĕre, xī, ctum, *tr.*, to draw before; to construct.

prae-fectus, ī, *m.* (prae-ficio), a commander *of cavalry.*

prae-fĕro, ferre, tŭlī, lātum, *irr. tr.*, to bear before; to prefer.

prae-fĭcĭo, ĕre, fēcī, fectum, *tr.* (prae + făcio), to set over, appoint over *or* to the command of.

prae-fīgo, ĕre, xī, xum, *tr.*, to fasten before, set up in front.

prae-fŭī. *See* **prae-sum.**

prae-mĕtŭo, ĕre, uī, —, *intr.*, to fear beforehand, to fear.

prae-mitto, ĕre, mīsī, missum, *tr.*, to send before *or* in advance.

praemĭum, ī, *n.*, profit, advantage; reward, recompense.

prae-occŭpo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to seize beforehand, preoccupy.

prae-opto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to choose rather, prefer.

prae-păro, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, prepare, provide.

prae-pōno, ĕre, pŏsuī, pŏsĭtum, *tr.*, to set over, appoint over *or* to the command of.

prae-rumpo, ĕre, rūpī, ruptum, *tr.*, to break off, tear away.

prae-ruptus, a, um, *partic. adj.* (praerumpo), abrupt, steep, rugged.

prae-saēpĭo, īre, psī, ptum, *tr.*, to block up, barricade.

prae-scrībo, ĕre, psī, ptum, *tr.*, to direct, prescribe, dictate, order, appoint.

prae-scriptum, ī, *n.*, an order, direction, command, dictation.

praesens, tis, *adj.*, present, at hand, in person.

praesentĭa, ae, *f.*, the present; presence (*animi*).

prae-sentĭo, īre, sensī, sensum, *tr.*, to see *or* feel beforehand; to foresee, divine.

prae-sertim, *adv.*, especially, particularly, chiefly.

prae-sĭdĭum, ī, *n.* (prae + sĕdeo), a defence, protection, assistance, security; a guard, garrison; a post, station.

prae-sto, āre, stĭtī, stĭtum, *tr. and intr.*, to excel, surpass; to perform, discharge; to show, exhibit; to furnish, afford. **Praestat**, *impers.*, it is better.

praestō, *adv.*, present, ready, at hand.

prae-sum, esse, fuī, —, *irr. intr.*, to preside over, have command of, be set over.

praeter, *prep. with the accus.*, beyond, except, besides; near; against, contrary to.

praetĕr-ĕā, *adv.*, besides, moreover.

praetĕr-ĕo, īre, īvī *or* iī, ĭtum, *tr. and intr.*, to go *or* pass by; to pass over, omit, neglect.

praetĕr-ĭtus, a, um, *partic. adj.* (praetĕreo), past.

praeter-mitto, ĕre, mīsī, mis-

sum, *tr.*, to let pass, pass over, omit.
praeter-quam, *adv.*, beyond, besides, except.
praeter-vĕhor, ī, vectus, *intr. dep.*, to drive, ride *or* sail by.
praetor, ōris, *m.*, a praetor; a Roman judicial officer; a commander, general.
praetōrĭus, a, um, *adj.*, of *or* befitting a praetor; praetorian.
prae-ūro, ĕre, ussī, ustum, *tr.*, to burn at the end.
prae-verto, ĕre, tī, sum, *tr.*, to anticipate, prevent; to prefer.
prāvus, a, um, *adj.*, crooked, deformed; perverse, vicious, depraved, bad.
prĕcēs. *See* **prex.**
prĕcor, ārī, ātus, *tr. dep.*, to pray, entreat, beg.
prĕhendo *or* **prendo, ĕre, dī, sum**, *tr.*, to seize, lay hold of, grasp.
prĕmo, ĕre, pressī, pressum, *tr.*, to press, press upon; to weigh down, oppress, distress, harass.
prendo. *See* **prĕhendo.**
prĕtĭum, ī, *n.*, worth, value, price.
prex, prĕcis, *f.* (nom. and gen. sing. not in use; found mostly in pl.), a prayer, entreaty; an imprecation.
prīdiē, *adv.*, on the day before.
prīmi-pīlus, ī, *m.* (primus + pilus), the chief centurion.
prīmō, *adv.*, at first.
prīmum, *adv.*, first, in the first place. **Quam primum**, as soon as possible. **Cum (ut, ubi) primum**, as soon as.
prīmus, a, um, *adj.* (*super. of* **prĭor**), first, foremost; the first part of, beginning of. **In primis**, especially, in particular.
prin-ceps, ĭpis, *adj.* (primus + căpio), first, foremost. **Princeps**, a leading man, chief, leader, author.
prin-cĭpātus, ūs, *m.*, supremacy, pre-eminence, dominion.
prĭor, us, *gen.* **ōris**, *adj.*, former, previous; first.
pristĭnus, a, um, *adj.*, former, ancient, pristine, original.
prĭus, *adv.*, before, sooner.
prĭus-quam, *adv.*, before.
prīvātim, *adv.*, privately, in private; as a private citizen.
prīvātus, a, um, *adj.*, private.
prīvātus, ī, *m.*, a private citizen.
prō, *prep. with the abl.*, before, in front of; for, in behalf of; according to; befitting; in proportion to; on account of; instead of, in place of; as; in comparison with.
prŏbo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to try, examine; to approve; to show, prove.
prō-cēdo, ĕre, cessī, cessum, *intr.*, to proceed, advance.
prō-clīno, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to incline, bend forward.

Prō-clīnātus, *partic.*, bent forward = tottering.
prō-consul, ŭlis, *m.*, a proconsul.
prōcul, *adv.*, far, far off, at a distance; from afar.
prō-cumbo, ĕre, cŭbuī, cŭbĭtum, *intr.*, to lean forward; to fall, fall down.
prō-cūro, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to take care of, look after, attend to.
prō-curro, ĕre, cŭcurrī *or* currī, cursum, *intr.*, to run forth, rush forward.
prōd-ĕo, īre, īvī *or* iī, ĭtum, *intr.*, to go on, advance, proceed.
prō-dĭtĭo, ōnis, *f.*, treason, treachery, betrayal.
prōd-ĭtor, ōris, *m.*, a traitor.
prō-do, ĕre, dĭdī, dĭtum, *tr.*, to give forth, disclose, divulge; to hand down, transmit; to betray, desert.
prō-dūco, ĕre, xī, ctum, *tr.*, to lead forth, bring out; to draw out, lengthen, protract, prolong.
proelĭor, ārī, ātus, *intr. dep.*, to fight, combat, contend.
proelĭum, ī, *n.*, a battle.
prŏ-fectĭo, ōnis, *f.*, a departure.
prŏ-fectō, *adv.*, assuredly, certainly, actually.
prō-fectus, a, um. *See* prōfĭcĭo.
prŏ-fectus, a, um. *See* prŏ-fĭciscor.
prō-fĕro, ferre, tŭlī, lātum, *irr. tr.*, to bring forth, bring forward, produce; to prolong, enlarge.
prō-fĭcĭo, ĕre, fēcī, fectum, *tr.* (pro + făcio), to make progress, advance; to accomplish, effect, obtain.
prŏ-fĭciscor, ī, fectus, *intr. dep.*, to set out, depart, proceed.
prŏ-fĭtĕor, ērī, fessus, *tr. dep.* (pro + făteor), to declare openly, acknowledge, profess.
prō-flīgo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to throw *or* dash down; to overthrow, defeat, rout, destroy.
prō-flŭo, ĕre, xī, xum, *intr.*, to flow forth, issue.
prō-fŭgio, ĕre, fūgī, fŭgĭtum, *intr.*, to flee, escape, flee for refuge.
prō-fuī. *See* prō-sum.
prŏ-fundo, ĕre, fūdī, fūsum, *tr.*, to pour out *or* forth.
prōg-nātus, a, um, *adj.*, born, descended, sprung from.
prō-grĕdĭor, ī, gressus, *intr. dep.* (pro + grădior), to advance, proceed, progress.
prŏ-hĭbeo, ĕre, uī, ĭtum, *tr.* (pro + hăbeo), to prevent, hinder, debar, prohibit; to protect.
prō-ĭcio, ĕre, iēcī, iectum, *tr.* (pro + iăcio), to throw down *or* before, throw away, lay down, cast away, renounce, reject.
prŏinde, *adv.*, hence, therefore, then.

prō-lātus, a, um. *See* **prō-fĕro.**
prō-mĭneo, ēre, uī, —, *intr.*, to hang over, project, lean forward.
prō-miscuē, *adv.*, promiscuously.
prō-missus, a, um, *partic. adj.*, hanging down, long.
prō-mitto, ĕre, mīsī, missum, *tr.*, to promise; to let down.
prō-mŏveo, ēre, mōvī, mōtum, *tr.*, to move forward, advance.
promptus, a, um, *adj.*, ready, prompt, quick, active.
prō-munturĭum, ī, *n.* (pro + mons), a promontory, headland.
prō-nuntĭo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to proclaim, announce, pronounce, report.
prōnus, a, um, *adj.*, inclining *or* bending forward, sloping.
prŏpe, *adv.*, near, close to, beside; nearly, almost. *Comp.* **prŏpĭus**, nearer, *super.* **prox-ĭmē**, very near, lately, recently.
prŏpe, *prep. with the accus.*, near.
prō-pello, ĕre, pŭlī, pulsum, *tr.*, to drive on, urge on; to repulse, rout, defeat.
prŏpĕro, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.*, to hasten, make haste.
prŏpinquĭtās, ātis, *f.*, nearness, proximity, relationship.
prŏpinquus, a, um, *adj.*, near, neighboring; kindred, related. **Prŏpinquus**, ī, *m.*, a relative kinsman.
prŏpĭor, ĭus, *gen.* ōris, *comp. adj.*, nearer. *Super.* **proxĭmus.**
prŏpĭus, *adv.* *See* **prŏpe.**
prō-pōno, ĕre, pŏsuī, pŏsĭtum, *tr.*, to set forth, expose, present, offer, propose; to represent, explain; to propose, intend.
prōpŏsĭtum, ī, *n.*, a plan, purpose, design, intention.
prŏprĭus, a, um, *adj.*, one's own, peculiar, proper, characteristic.
propter, *prep. with the accus.*, on account of, by reason of; near.
proptĕr-ĕā, *conj.*, therefore, for that reason, on that account.
prōpugnātor, ōris, *m.*, a defender.
prō-pugno, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.*, to fight for; to rush out to fight.
prō-pŭlī. *See* **prō-pello.**
prō-pulso, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to drive back, repel, repulse.
prōra, ae, *f.*, the prow.
prō-rĭpio, ĕre, pŭī, reptum, *tr.* (pro + răpio), to drag forth.
prō-rŭo, ĕre, uī, ŭtum, *tr.*, to tear *or* pull down, demolish.
prō-sĕquor, ī, cūtus, *tr. dep.*, to follow, accompany; to pursue; to honor.
prō-spectus, ūs, *m.*, a view, sight, prospect.
prō-spĭcĭo, ĕre, spexī, spectum, *tr.* (pro + spĕcio), to

look forward; to provide for, take care of.
prō-sterno, ĕre, strāvī, strātum, *tr.*, to overthrow, prostrate, destroy.
prō-sum, prōdesse, prōfuī, —, *irr. intr.*, to profit, be profitable; to benefit, avail, conduce.
prō-tĕgo, ĕre, xī, ctum, *tr.*, to cover, shelter, protect, defend.
prō-terrēo, ēre, uī, ĭtum, *tr.*, to frighten away, terrify.
prō-tĭnus, *adv.*, forward, right on, continuously, immediately.
prō-turbo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to drive off, repel, repulse.
prō-vĕho, ĕre, vexī, vectum, *tr.*, to carry forth *or* out, convey away. **Prō-vĕhor;** *as dep.*, to ride, sail, drive.
prō-vĕnio, īre, vēnī, ventum, *intr.*, to come forth, appear; to turn out.
prō-ventus, ūs, *m.*, growth, increase, produce; issue, event, result, success.
prō-vĭdeo, ēre, vīdī, vīsum, *tr.*, to provide, prepare, look to; to foresee.
prō-vincĭa, ae, *f.*, a province.
prō-vincĭālis, e, *adj.*, of a province, provincial.
prō-vŏlo, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.*, to fly forth, rush out.
proxĭmē, *adv.* *See* **prŏpe.**
proxĭmus, a, um, *adj.* (*super. of* **prŏpĭor**), nearest, next, last.
prūdentĭa, ae, *f.*, foresight, prudence, sagacity, wisdom.
pūbēs *and* **pūber, ĕris,** *adj.*, grown up, adult. **Pūbĕrēs, um,** *m. pl.*, adults, men.
pūblĭcē, *adv.*, publicly; in the name of the state, by the state, in a national point of view.
pūblĭco, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to confiscate; to make public.
pūblĭcus, a, um, *adj.*, public, common, of the state. **Pūblĭcus, ī,** *m.*, a public officer, magistrate. **Pūblĭcum, ī,** *n.*, a public place, public.
pŭdet, ēre, uit *or* **pŭdĭtum, est,** *impers.*, to be ashamed. **Mē pŭdet** = I am ashamed.
pŭdor, ōris, *m.*, a sense of shame; shame, disgrace.
pŭer, ĕrī, *m.*, a boy.
pŭerīlis, e, *adj.*, boyish, childish, youthful.
pugna, ae, *f.*, a battle, fight.
pugno, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.*, to fight, combat, contend.
pulcher, chra, chrum, *adj.*, beautiful, fair; glorious, noble.
pulsus, a, um. *See* **pello.**
pulsus, ūs, *m.*, a stroke.
pulvis, ĕris, *m.*, dust.
puppis, is, *f.*, the stern.
purgo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to excuse, exculpate, clear.
pŭto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to think, suppose; to consider, regard, judge.
Pyrēnaeus, a, um, *adj.*, Pyrenaean.

Q.

Q., for Quīntus.
quā, *adv.*, where, wherever, in what way, how.
quadrāgēnī, ae, a, *distr. num. adj.*, forty each, forty.
quadrāgintā, *num. adj.*, forty.
quadringentī, ae, a, *num. adj.*, four hundred.
quaero, ĕre, sīvī, sītum, *tr.*, to seek, ask, inquire; to examine into, investigate; to procure, obtain.
quaestĭo, ōnis, *f.*, an inquiry, investigation, examination; a question; a prosecution, trial.
quaestor, ōris, *m.*, a quaestor.
quaestus, ūs, *m.* (quaero), gain, profit, acquisition; occupation, trade.
quālis, e, *adj.*, of what sort *or* kind, what, of what nature; as, such as.
quam, *conj.*, as, than.
quam, *adv.*, how, in what manner. *With the super.*, as possible. **Quam maximus**, as great as possible.
quam-dĭū, *adv.*, how long, as long as.
quam-ob-rem, *conj.*, wherefore.
quam-vīs, *adv.*, as you will, however much, however, very.
quam-vīs, *conj.*, although.
quando, *adv.*, when. **Si quando**, if ever, whenever.
quant-ŏpĕre *or* **quantō ŏpĕre**, *adv.* (quantus + opus), how greatly, how much.
quantus, a, um, *adj.*, how great, how much, so much; as, as great as, as much as. **Quantō — tantō** = the — the.
quantus-vīs, tăvīs, tumvīs, *adj.*, as much *or* great as you please, however great, any.
quā-rē, *conj.*, wherefore, why.
quartus, a, um, *num. adj.*, fourth.
quă-sĭ, *conj.*, as if, as it were, as though; about, nearly.
quattŭor, *num. adj.*, four.
quattŭor-dĕcim, *num. adj.*, fourteen.
quĕ, *conj.*, and. **Que — que** *or* **que — et**, both — and.
quem-ad-mŏdum, *adv.*, in what manner, how, as.
quĕror, ī, questus, *tr. and intr. dep.*, to complain, lament.
quī, quae, quod, *rel. and adj. pron.*, who, which, what, that. *Also, interrog. pron.*, who? which? what?
quī-cumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, *indef. pron.*, whoever, whichever, whatever, every, all.
quī-dam, quaedam, quoddam *and* **quiddam**, *indef. pron.*, a certain, a certain one, some one, somebody, something.
quĭdem, *adv.*, indeed, truly, assuredly, at least. **Nē — quidem**, not even.
quiēs, ētis, *f.*, rest, quiet, repose.
quĭētus, a, um, *adj.*, at rest, quiet, calm, peaceful.
quīn, *conj.* (qui + ne), that

not, that; but, that. **Quin etiam**, nay even, moreover.

quī-nam, quaenam, quodnam, *interrog. adj. pron.*, who? which? what? *The* **nam** *emphasizes the question.*

quinc-unx, uncis, *m.* (quinque + uncia, *a twelfth*), five twelfths; the five spots on dice.

quin-dĕcim, *num. adj.*, fifteen.

quin-gentī, ae, a, *num. adj.* (quinque + centum), five hundred.

quīnī, ae, a, *distr. num. adj.*, five each, five, in fives.

quinquāgintā, *num. adj.*, fifty.

quinquĕ, *num. adj.*, five.

quintus, a, um, *num. adj.*, fifth.

quis, quae, quid, *interrog. pron.*, who? which? what? **Quid**, *as adv.*, why? how? *Also indef. pron.*, any one, one, some one, any, something, anything.

quis-nam, quaenam, quidnam, *interrog. pron.*, who? which? what? *The* **nam** *emphasizes the question.*

quis-pĭam, quaepĭam, quodpĭam *or* **quidpĭam** *or* **quĭp-pĭam**, *indef. pron.*, any, some; any one, some one; anything, something.

quis-quam, quaequam, quidquam *or* **quicquam**, *indef. pron.*, any, some, any one, anything.

quis-que, quaeque, quodque *or* **quidque** *or* **quicque**, *indef. pron.*, every, each, any, all; every one, everything.

quis-quis, quaequae, quodquod *or* **quidquid** *or* **quicquid**, *indef. pron.*, whoever, whatever, each, every, all.

quī-vīs, quaevīs, quodvīs *or* **quidvīs**, *indef. pron.*, any one you please; any one, every one, whoever, everything, anything.

quō, *adv.*, whither, where; to *or* in any place; for what purpose, to what end; why, wherefore, on which account. **Quō — eō** = the — the.

quō, *conj.*, that, in order that, whereby; *with the subjunctive, especially after comparatives.* **Quō minus**, that not; from.

quŏ-ad, *adv.*, as long as, till, until; how far, as far as.

quod, *conj.*, because; that, in that; in so far as, as to the fact that. **Quod sī**, and if, but if.

quō-mĭnus, *conj.* *See* **quō**.

quŏn-ĭam, *conj.*, since, because.

quŏque, *conj.*, also, too.

quōquĕ-versus, *adv.*, in every direction, every way.

quō-quō, *adv.*, whithersoever.

quŏt, *indecl. adj.*, how many, as, as many as.

quŏt-annīs, *adv.* (quot + annus), every year, yearly.

quŏtiēns, *adv.*, how often; as often as.

R.

rādix, īcis, *f.*, a root; the base of a mountain.

rādo, ĕre, rāsī, rāsum, *tr.*, to shave, scrape, smooth.

rāmus, ī, *m.*, a branch, bough.

răpĭdĭtās, ātis, *f.*, swiftness, velocity, rapidity.

răpīna, ae, *f.* (răpio), plundering, robbery, rapine.

rārus, a, um, *adj.*, thin, rare, scattered, here and there, few.

rătĭo, ōnis, *f.*, an account, computation; an affair, transaction; regard, respect, consideration, relation; course, method, system, plan; manner, way, nature, sort; science, theory; ground, motive, reason.

rătis, is, *f.*, a raft.

rĕ-bellĭo, ōnis, *f.*, a revolt, rebellion.

rĕ-cēdo, ĕre, cessī, cessum, *intr.*, to retire, retreat, withdraw, depart.

rĕcens, tis, *adj.*, fresh, recent, vigorous, new.

rĕ-censĕo, ēre, uī, sum *and* **ĭtum,** *tr.*, to review, enumerate.

rĕ-ceptācŭlum, ī, *n.*, a retreat, shelter, refuge, receptacle.

rĕ-ceptus, ūs, *m.*, a retreat, refuge, shelter.

rĕ-ceptus, a, um. *See* **rĕ-cĭpio.**

rĕ-cessus, ūs, *m.*, a retreat.

rĕ-cĭdo, ĕre, cĭdī, cāsum, *intr.* (re + cădo), to fall back, recoil; to fall upon; to happen.

rĕ-cĭpio, ĕre, cēpī, ceptum, *tr.* (re + căpio), to take back, receive, regain, recover; to admit, allow; to undertake, engage. **Se recipere,** to betake one's self, withdraw, retreat.

rĕ-cĭto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to read aloud.

re-clīno, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to bend *or* lean back, recline.

rectē, *adv.*, in a straight line; rightly, well, correctly.

rectus, a, um, *adj.*, straight, direct, exact.

rĕ-cŭpĕro, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (re + căpio), to regain, recover.

rĕ-cūso, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (re + causa), to refuse, object, decline, reject.

rēda or **rhēda, ae,** *f.*, a wagon.

rĕd-actus, a, um. *See* **rĕd-ĭgo.**

red-do, ĕre, dĭdī, dĭtum, *tr.*, to give back, restore, return; to relinquish, deliver; to render, make.

rĕd-emptus, a, um. *See* **rĕd-ĭmo.**

rĕd-ĕo, īre, īvī *or* **iī, ĭtum,** *intr.*, to come back, return; to be reduced, come down.

rĕd-ĭgo, ĕre, ēgī, actum, *tr.* (re + ăgo), to drive *or* bring back; to reduce, restore, render; to force, compel.

rĕd-ĭmo, ĕre, ēmī, emptum, *tr.* (re + emo), to buy back;

to ransom, redeem; to buy up, farm; to purchase, procure.

rĕd-intĕgro, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to renew, restore, recruit, revive.

rĕd-ĭtĭo, ōnis, *f.*, a return.

rĕd-ĭtus, ūs, *m.*, a return.

rĕ-dūco, ĕre, xī, ctum, *tr.*, to lead, bring, *or* conduct back; to draw back, remove.

rĕ-fĕro, fĕrre, ttŭlī, lātum, *irr. tr.*, to bear *or* bring back; to return, restore, repay; to report, bring back word, announce; to withdraw; to refer, propose. **Pedem referre,** to retreat.

rĕ-fĭcio, ĕre, fēcī, fectum, *tr.*, to make anew; to restore, repair, rebuild; to recruit, refresh, reinvigorate, reassure.

re-fringo, ĕre, frēgī, fractum, *tr.* (re + frango), to break, break open; to weaken.

rĕ-fŭgio, ĕre, fūgī, fŭgĭtum, *intr.*, to flee away, escape; to retreat, retire.

rĕgĭo, ōnis, *f.* (rego), direction, course; a tract, region, district; a border, boundary. **E regione** = opposite.

rēgĭus, a, um, *adj.* (rex), royal, kingly, regal.

regno, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr. and intr.*, to reign, rule, govern.

regnum, ī, *n.*, a kingdom; kingly power; sovereignty.

rĕgo, ĕre, xī, ctum, *tr.*, to rule, govern, guide, direct.

rĕ-grĕdĭor, ī, gressus, *intr. dep.* (re + grădior), to return.

rē-ĭcĭo, ĕre, iēcī, iectum, *tr.* (re + iăcio), to throw *or* hurl back; to drive back, repel; to reject, throw aside.

rĕ-languesco, ĕre, guī, —, *intr.*, to grow languid, be enfeebled.

rĕ-lātus, a, um. *See* **rĕ-fĕro.**

rĕ-lēgo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to send away, remove.

rĕ-lictus, a, um. *See* **rĕ-linquo.**

rēlĭgĭo, ōnis, *f.*, religion, piety, religious observance *or* rites.

rĕ-linquo, ĕre, līquī, lictum, *tr.*, to leave behind, abandon, leave.

rĕ-lĭquĭae, ārum, *f. pl.*, the remains, the rest, remnant.

rĕ-lĭquus, a, um, *adj.*, remaining, the rest of, the other, remainder of, future, to come. **Rĕlĭquum, ī,** *n.*, the remainder, rest.

rĕ-măneo, ēre, mansī, mansum, *intr.*, to remain, continue, last, endure.

rĕ-mĕdĭum, ī, *n.* (re + mĕdeor), a remedy, cure, relief.

rēmex, ĭgis, *m.*, a rower.

rēm-ĭgo, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.* (remus + ăgo), to row.

rĕ-mĭgro, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.*, to remove back, return.

rĕ-mĭniscor, ī, —, *tr. dep.*, to remember.

rĕ-missus, a, um, *partic. adj.*

(remitto), relaxed, remiss; mild.

rĕ-mitto, ĕre, mīsī, missum, *tr.*, to send back, hurl back; to slacken, remit, relax; to return, submit, refer.

rĕ-mollesco, ĕre, —, —, *intr.*, to become effeminate *or* enervated.

rĕ-mōtus, a, um, *partic. adj.* (rĕmŏveo), remote, distant.

rĕ-mŏvĕo, ēre, mōvī, mōtum, *tr.*, to remove, withdraw, take away.

rĕ-mūnĕror, ārī, ātus, *tr. dep.*, to remunerate, reward.

rēmus, ī, *m.*, an oar.

rēno, ōnis, *m.*, a reindeer; a skin.

rĕ-nŏvo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to renew, revive.

rĕ-nuntĭo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to bring back word; to report, announce.

rĕ-pello, ĕre, ppŭlī, pulsum, *tr.*, to drive back, repel, repulse.

rĕpentē, *adv.*, suddenly.

rĕpentīnus, a, um, *adj.*, sudden, unexpected.

rĕ-pĕrio, īre, ppĕrī, pertum, *tr.*, to find, discover, ascertain; to invent, devise.

rĕ-pĕto, ĕre, īvī *or* **iī, ītum,** *tr.*, to demand back, claim.

re-plĕo, ēre, ēvī, ētum, *tr.*, to refill, furnish, supply.

rĕ-porto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to carry *or* bring back, convey.

rĕ-posco, ĕre, —, —, *tr.*, to demand back, exact.

rĕ-ppŭlī. *See* **rĕ-pello.**

rĕ-praesento, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to do at once, perform immediately.

rĕ-prĕhendo, ĕre, dī, sum, *tr.*, to reprove, censure, rebuke.

rĕ-prĭmo, ĕre, pressī, pressum, *tr.* (re + prĕmo), to check, restrain, repress, hinder, prevent.

rĕ-pŭdio, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to reject, refuse, decline.

rĕ-pugno, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.*, to fight against, oppose, resist.

rĕ-pulsus, a, um. *See* **rĕ-pello.**

rĕ-quīro, ĕre, sīvī, sītum, *tr.* (re + quaero), to seek after, search for; to require, demand; to miss, look for in vain.

rēs, rĕī, *f.*, a thing; an object, matter, affair, purpose, business, subject, circumstance, event, fact.

rĕ-sarcĭo, īre, sī, sartum, *tr.*, to repair, restore.

re-scindo, ĕre, scĭdī, scissum, *tr.*, to tear down, destroy.

re-scisco, ĕre, īvī *or* **iī, ītum,** *tr.*, to learn, ascertain.

re-scrībo, ĕre, psī, ptum, *tr.*, to write again; to transfer.

rĕ-servo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to reserve, retain, preserve.

re-sĭdĕo, ēre, sēdī, sessum, *intr.* (re + sĕdeo), to remain, be left.

rĕ-sīdo, ĕre, sēdī, sessum, *intr.* (re + sīdo), to sit down, settle, subside; to calm down.

rĕ-sistens, tis, *partic. adj.* (rĕ-sisto), resolute, firm.

rĕ-sisto, ĕre, stĭtī, stĭtum, *intr.*, to stand still, halt, stop; to withstand, resist, oppose; to remain, continue.

re-spĭcĭo, ĕre, spexī, spectum, *tr.* (re + spĕcio), to look back; to regard, consider, respect.

re-spondĕo, ēre, dī, sum, *tr.*, to answer, reply.

re-sponsum, ī, *n.*, a reply, answer.

res-pūblĭca, rĕīpūblĭcae, *f.*, the state, commonwealth, republic; public affairs, the general welfare.

re-spŭo, ĕre, uī, ūtum, *tr.*, to spit out; to reject, spurn, refuse.

re-stinguo, ĕre, nxī, nctum, *tr.*, to extinguish, quench, put out.

re-stĭtī. *See* **rĕ-sisto.**

re-stĭtŭo, ĕre, uī, ūtum, *tr.* (re + stătuo), to replace; to rebuild, repair, renew; to reinstate, restore.

rĕ-tĭneo, ēre, tĭnuī, tentum, *tr.* (re + tĕneo), to hold back, detain, hinder; to retain; to check, restrain, repress.

rē-trăho, ĕre, traxī, tractum, *tr.*, to draw *or* bring back; to recover.

rĕttŭlī. *See* **rĕ-fĕro.**

rĕ-vello, ĕre, vellī, vulsum, *tr.*, to tear away, pluck *or* pull up *or* away.

rĕ-verto, ĕre, tī, sum, *intr. and* **rĕ-vertor, ī, sus,** *intr. dep.*, to turn back, return.

rĕ-vincĭo, īre, vinxī, vinctum, *tr.*, to bind, tie, fasten.

rĕ-vŏco, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to call back, recall.

rex, rēgis, *m.*, a king.

rīpa, ae, *f.*, the bank *of a river.*

rīvus, ī, *m.*, a stream, brook.

rōbur, ŏris, *n.*, hard oak; power, strength, vigor.

rŏgo,. āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to ask; to enlist; *lit., to question soldiers under oath as to their loyalty.*

Rōmānus, a, um, *adj.*, Roman. **Rōmānus, ī,** *m.*, a Roman.

rostrum, ī, *n.*, the beak *or* bill of a bird; the beak of a ship.

rŏta, ae, *f.*, a wheel.

rŭbus, ī, *m.*, a bramble-bush, blackberry-bush.

rūmor, ōris, *m.*, rumor, report, hearsay, talk.

rūpēs, is, *f.*, a rock, cliff.

rursus, *adv.*, again, anew; backwards, back.

S.

săcerdōs, ōtis, *m. and f.*, a priest *or* priestess.

sacrāmentum, ī, *n.*, an oath.

sacrĭ-fĭcĭum, ī, *n.*, a sacrifice.

saepe, *adv.*, often, frequently. *Comp.* **saepĭus,** *super.* **saepissĭmē.**

saepĕ-nŭmĕrō, *adv.*, often, frequently, time and again.

saepēs, is, *f.*, a hedge.

saevĭo, īre, īvī *or* **iī, ītum,**

intr., to be fierce *or* cruel; to rage, storm.

săgitta, ae, *f.*, an arrow.

săgittārĭus, ī, *m.*, an archer, bowman.

săgŭlum, ī, *n.*, a small military cloak.

saltus, ūs, *m.*, woodland pasture, forest; a defile, pass.

sălūs, ūtis, *f.*, safety, security; health, welfare.

sancĭo, īre, nxī, nctum, *tr.*, to sanction, ordain, ratify, confirm.

sanctus, a, um, *adj.* (sancio), sacred, holy, inviolable.

sanguis, ĭnis, *m.*, blood.

sānĭtās, ātis, *f.*, soundness, health; reason, good sense, sanity, discretion.

sāno, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to heal, cure, restore; to repair, remedy.

sānus, a, um, *adj.*, sound, sensible, sane, discreet.

sanxī. *See* **sancĭo.**

săpĭo, ĕre, īvī *or* **iī, —,** *intr.*, to know, understand.

sarcĭna, ae, *f.*, a bundle, pack; a soldier's baggage.

sarcĭo, īre, sarsī, sartum, *tr.*, to mend, repair; to make good, compensate, remedy.

sarmentum, ī, *n.*, twigs, brushwood, a fascine.

sătis, *adv.*, enough, sufficiently, quite.

sătis-făcĭo, ĕre, fēcī, factum, *intr.*, to give satisfaction, satisfy; to make reparation, apologize.

sătis-factĭo, ōnis, *f.*, satisfaction, reparation, excuse, apology.

sătus, a, um. *See* **sĕro.**

saucĭus, a, um, *adj.*, wounded.

saxum, ī, *n.*, a rock, stone.

scāla, ae, *f.*, a scaling-ladder.

scăpha, ae, *f.*, a skiff, boat.

scĕlĕrātus, a, um, *adj.*, impious, accursed, infamous, miscreant.

scĕlus, ĕris, *n.*, crime, wickedness, guilt, enormity.

scĭenter, *adv.*, skilfully, expertly. *Comp.* **scĭentĭus,** *super.* **scĭentissĭmē.**

scĭentĭa, ae, *f.*, knowledge, skill, expertness, science.

scindo, ĕre, scĭdī, scissum, *tr.*, to cut, split, rend, tear; to destroy, demolish.

scĭo, īre, īvī *or* **iī, ītum,** *tr.*, to know, know how, understand.

scŏpŭlus, ī, *m.*, a rock, crag, cliff.

scorpĭo, ōnis, *m.*, a scorpion *or* military engine for throwing stones, darts, etc.

scrībo, ĕre, ipsī, iptum, *tr.*, to write.

scrŏbis, is, *m. and f.*, a ditch, trench, pit.

scūtum, ī, *n.*, a shield, buckler.

sēbum, ī, *n.*, tallow, fat.

sēcĭus, *adv.* (*comp. of* **sĕcus**), otherwise, differently, less.

sē-cludo, ĕre, sī, sum, *tr.*, to shut out, separate.

sĕco, āre, cuī, ctum, *tr.*, to cut, cut off, cut down.

sēcrētō, *adv.*, separately, apart, secretly, in secret.

sectĭo, ōnis, *f.*, a section, division, lot; booty, spoils.
sector, ārī, ātus, *tr. dep.*, to follow, pursue; to hunt after.
sectūra, ae, *f.*, a mine, a shaft.
sĕcundum, *prep. with the accus.* (sequor), after, along, by, near, according to, in accordance with.
sĕcundus, a, um, *adj.* (sĕquor), following, next; the second; favorable, successful; **rēs sĕcundiōrēs**, greater prosperity.
sĕcūris, is, *f.* (sĕco), an axe.
sĕcus, *adv.*, otherwise, differently.
sĕcūtus, a, um. *See* **sĕquor.**
sĕd, *conj.*, but, now.
sē-dĕcim, *num. adj.*, sixteen.
sēdēs, is, *f.*, a seat; an abode, dwelling-place, home, habitation.
sēd-ĭtio, ōnis, *f.*, sedition, insurrection, civil discord.
sēd-ĭtĭōsus, a, um, *adj.*, seditious, turbulent, factious.
sĕges, ĭtis, *f.*, a corn-field; standing grain; a crop.
sĕmel, *num. adv.*, once.
sēmentis, is, *f.*, a sowing.
sēmĭta, ae, *f.*, a path, footpath.
semper, *adv.*, always, ever.
sĕnātor, ōris, *m.*, a senator.
sĕnātus, ūs, *m.* (senex), a senate.
sĕnex, *gen.* **sĕnis,** *adj.*, old, aged.
sĕnex, sĕnis, *m.*, an old man.
sēnī, ae, a, *distr. num. adj.*, six each, six by six, in sixes, six.
sententĭa, ae, *f.* (sentio), an opinion; purpose, intention, design; judgment, sentence, resolution, decision.
sentĭo, īre, sensī, sensum, *tr.*, to discern by the senses; to feel, perceive, observe, learn; to think, suppose.
sentis, is, *m.*, a brier, bramble.
sē-părātim, *adv.*, separately, apart.
sē-părātus, a, um, *partic. adj.* (sēpăro), separate, distinct.
sē-păro, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to sever, separate, divide.
septem, *num. adj.*, seven.
septen-trĭōnes, um, *m. pl.*, the Great Bear, the Little Bear; the north.
septĭmus, a, um, *num. adj.*, the seventh.
septin-gentī, ae, a, *num. adj.*, seven hundred.
septŭāgintā, *num. adj.*, seventy.
sĕpultūra, ae, *f.*, burial, sepulture, interment.
Sēquănus, a, um, *adj.*, Sequanian.
sĕquor, ī, cūtus, *tr. dep.*, to follow, accompany, attend; to pursue, aim at.
Ser., for **Servius.**
sermo, ōnis, *m.*, speech, talk, conversation, discourse.
sērō, *adv.*, late, too late. *Comp.* **sērĭus,** *super.* **sērissĭmē.**
sĕro, ĕre, sēvī, sătum, *tr.*, to sow, plant.
servīlis, e, *adj.*, servile, of slaves.

servĭo, **īre**, **īvī** *or* **iī**, **ītum**, *intr.*, to serve, be subservient to; to give heed to.
servĭtūs, **ūtis**, *f.*, slavery, servitude.
servo, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *tr.*, to save, keep, preserve; to observe, watch, guard; **fĭdem servāre**, to keep one's word.
servus, **ī**, *m.*, a slave, servant.
sesquĭ-pĕdālis, **e**, *adj.* (sesqui, *half as much*, + pes), a foot and a half long, thick, *or* wide.
seu, *conj.*, whether.
sĕvērĭtās, **ātis**, *f.*, severity, harshness, rigor.
sē-vŏco, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *tr.*, to call off *or* aside; to draw aside.
sēvum, **ī**, *n.*, fat, tallow.
sex, *num. adj.*, six.
sexāgintā, *num. adj.*, sixty.
sex-centī, **ae**, **a**, *num. adj.*, six hundred.
sex-dĕcim, *num. adj.*, sixteen.
sī, *conj.*, if; whether.
sīc, *adv.*, so, thus, in this manner, in such a manner.
siccĭtās, **ātis**, *f.*, drought, dryness.
sīc-ut *or* **sīc-ŭtī**, *adv.*, just as, as if, like, as it were.
sīdus, **ĕris**, *n.*, a constellation, star.
signĭ-fer, **ĕrī**, *m.* (signum + fĕro), a standard-bearer.
signĭ-fĭcātio, **ōnis**, *f.*, intimation, signal, indication, signification.
signĭ-fĭco, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *tr.* (signum + făcio), to signify, indicate, imitate, show.
signum, **ī**, *n.*, a mark, sign; a signal; a watchword; a standard, ensign.
sĭlentĭum, **ī**, *n.*, silence, stillness.
silva, **ae**, *f.*, a wood, forest.
silvestris, **e**, *adj.*, woody, wooded.
sĭmĭlis, **e**, *adj.*, like, resembling, similar.
sĭmĭlĭtūdo, **ĭnis**, *f.*, likeness, resemblance, similarity.
sĭmul, *adv.*, together, at once, at the same time. **Simul — simul**, at the same — and; as well — as. **Simul ac** *or* **atque**, as soon as.
sĭmŭlācrum, **ī**, *n.*, an image, likeness, figure, statue.
sĭmŭlātio, **ōnis**, *f.*, pretence, deceit, disguise, simulation.
sĭmŭlo, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *tr.*, to pretend, feign, counterfeit.
sĭmultās, **ātis**, *f.*, animosity, enmity, hatred; jealousy.
sīn, *conj.*, but if; if however.
sincērē, *adv.*, sincerely, frankly, candidly.
sĭne, *prep. with the abl.*, without.
singillātim, *adv.*, singly, one by one.
singŭlāris, **e**, *adj.*, single; excellent, remarkable, singular.
singŭlī, **ae**, **a**, *distr. num. adj.*, one to each, separate, single, individual, each, every.
sĭnister, **tra**, **trum**, *adj.*, left,

on the left hand *or* side; unlucky, inauspicious; adverse.
sĭnistrorsus, *adv.*, towards the left hand *or* side, to the left.
sĭno, ĕre, sīvī, sĭtum, *tr.*, to permit, suffer, allow.
sisto, ĕre, stĭtī, stătum, *tr. and intr.*, to place, set; to stop, stand still.
sĭtus, ūs, *m.*, situation, site, position.
sī-ve, *conj.*, or if, or; whether. **Sive** — **sive**, whether — or.
sŏcer, ĕrī, *m.*, a father-in-law.
sŏciētās, ātis, *f.*, partnership, union; a league, alliance, confederacy.
sŏcĭus, ī, *m.*, a partner, comrade; an ally, associate.
sōl, sōlis, *m.*, the sun.
sōlācĭum, ī, *n.*, consolation, comfort.
soldūrĭī, ōrum, *m. pl.*, retainers.
sŏlĕo, ēre, ĭtus, *intr. half dep.*, to be accustomed, be wont.
sōlĭtūdo, ĭnis, *f.*, a desert, wilderness, solitude.
sollertĭa, ae, *f.*, shrewdness, adroitness, expertness.
sollĭcĭtātio, ōnis, *f.*, instigation.
sollĭcĭto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to move, rouse, urge, instigate, incite, induce.
sollĭcĭtūdo, ĭnis, *f.*, anxiety, care, solicitude, concern.
sŏlum, ī, *n.*, the ground, soil, land; bottom, foundation.
sōlum, *adv.*, only, alone.
sōlus, a, um, *gen.* **sōlĭus**, *adj.*, only, alone, sole, single.
solvo, ĕre, solvī, sŏlūtum, *tr.*, to loose, untie, unbind; to set sail.
somnus, ī, *m.*, sleep.
sŏnĭtus, ūs, *m.*, a sound, noise.
sŏno, āre, uī, ĭtum, *tr. and intr.*, to sound, resound.
sŏnus, ī, *m.*, sound, noise.
sŏror, ōris, *f.*, a sister.
sors, sortis, *f.*, lot, chance, fate, fortune, destiny.
spătĭum, ī, *n.*, space, distance, extent; an interval.
spĕciēs, ēī, *f.*, the appearance, form, look, show, semblance; pretence, color.
specto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr. and intr.*, to look at, see, observe, watch; to regard; to face, lie towards.
spĕcŭlātor, ōris, *m.*, a scout, spy.
spĕcŭlātōrĭus, a, um, *adj.*, of observation, for scouting.
spĕcŭlor, ārī, ātus, *tr. dep.*, to observe, watch, reconnoitre.
spēro, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to hope, trust, expect, look for.
spēs, ĕī, *f.*, hope, expectation.
spīrĭtus, ūs, *m.*, breath; spirit; airs, haughtiness, arrogance.
spŏlio, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to strip, spoil, plunder, deprive.
spŏlĭum, ī, *n.*, booty, spoil.
sponte, *abl.*, of one's own will *or* accord, of one's self, voluntarily.
stăbĭlio, īre, īvī, ītum, *tr.*, to make firm; to fix, settle.

stăbĭlĭtās, ātis, *f.*, firmness, stability, steadiness.

stătim, *adv.*, immediately, forthwith, at once.

stătio, ōnis, *f.*, a station, post; *fig.*, a guard, sentinel, sentry.

stătŭo, ĕre, uī, ūtum, *tr.*, to set up, raise, erect; to put, place, station, establish; to conclude, determine, decide.

stătūra, ae, *f.*, stature.

stătus, ūs, *m.*, state, condition, situation, posture.

stĭmŭlus, ī, *m.*, a goad, spur; a pointed stake.

stīpendĭārĭus, a, um, *adj.*, tributary.

stīpendĭum, ī, *n.*, a tax, tribute, impost; pay.

stīpes, ĭtis, *m.*, a log, post, stake.

stirps, stirpis, *f.*, a stem, stock, stalk; race, family, lineage.

sto, āre, stĕtī, stătum, *intr.*, to stand, continue, persist, remain.

strāmentum, ī, *n.* (sterno), thatch, straw, litter; a covering, rug, spread, housing.

strĕpĭtus, ūs, *m.*, a noise, din, uproar, tumult.

structūra, ae, *f.* (struo), a building, structure, work.

stŭdeo, ēre, uī, —, *intr.*, to attend to, pay attention to, cultivate, pursue; to aim at, be eager for, strive after.

stŭdiōsē, *adv.*, eagerly, zealously, carefully, attentively.

stŭdĭum, ī, *n.*, eagerness, zeal, desire; attachment, devotion; pursuit, vocation, exertion.

stultĭtĭa, ae, *f.*, folly, foolishness, silliness.

sub, *prep. with the accus. or abl.*, under, below, beneath; near to, at the base of, by; towards, about; in, during, on; within.

sŭb-actus, a, um. *See* **sŭb-ĭgo.**

sub-dŏlus, a, um, *adj.*, crafty, cunning, deceitful.

sub-dūco, ĕre, xī, ctum, *tr.*, to draw off, withdraw, remove, take away; to draw up *on shore.*

sub-ductĭo, ōnis, *f.*, a drawing up, hauling ashore.

sŭb-ĕo, īre, īvī *or* **iī, ĭtum,** *intr.*, to come *or* go under; to come up, advance, proceed; to undergo, endure, encounter.

sŭb-esse. *See* **sub-sum.**

sub-fŏdĭo, ĕre, fōdī, fossum, *tr.*, to dig under; to stab beneath.

sub-ĭcĭo, ĕre, iēcī, iectum, *tr.* (sub + iăcio), to throw from under; to put *or* place under *or* near; to subject, expose; to add, subjoin.

sŭb-ĭgo, ĕre, ēgī, actum, *tr.* (sub + ăgo), to drive under; to force, compel; to reduce, subdue, subjugate.

sŭbĭtō, *adv.*, suddenly, quickly.

sŭbĭtus, a, um, *adj.* (sŭbeo), sudden, unexpected.

sub-lātus, a, um, *partic. adj.* (tollo), elated, proud.

sub-lĕvo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to raise up, support; to assist, aid, relieve; to lighten, lessen.

sublĭca, ae, *f.*, a stake, pile.

sub-lŭo, ĕre, uī, ūtum, *tr.*, to wash beneath; to flow near, wash.

sub-mĭnistro, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to furnish, afford, supply.

sub-mitto, ĕre, mīsī, missum, *tr.*, to send *or* place under; to send secretly; to let down, lower.

sub-mŏvĕo, ēre, mōvī, mōtum, *tr.*, to remove, drive back, displace, dislodge.

sub-rŭo, ĕre, uī, ŭtum, *tr.*, to dig under; to undermine, overthrow, demolish.

sub-sĕquor, ī, cūtus, *tr. dep.*, to follow closely after, follow immediately.

sub-sĭdĭum, ī, *n.*, a reserve, reënforcement; support, aid, assistance, protection; help, remedy.

sub-sīdo, ĕre, sēdī, sessum, *intr.*, to settle *or* sink down; to remain.

sub-sisto, ĕre, stĭtī, —, *intr.*, to stand still, halt, stop; to hold out.

sub-sum, esse, fuī, —, *intr.*, to be under; to be near *or* at hand; to approach.

sub-trăho, ĕre, xī, ctum, *tr.*, to take away, remove, withdraw.

sub-vectĭo, ōnis, *f.*, transportation, conveyance.

sub-vĕho, ĕre, vexī, vectum, *tr.*, to carry *or* bring up, convey.

sub-vĕnio, īre, vēnī, ventum, *intr.*, to come up; to assist, help, aid, succor.

suc-cēdo, ĕre, cessī, cessum, *tr. and intr.* (sub + cēdo), to approach, advance, march up; to follow, succeed; to prosper.

suc-cendo, ĕre, dī, sum, *tr.*, to set fire to, burn, kindle.

suc-cessus, ūs, *m.*, an advance, approach; success.

suc-cīdo, ĕre, cīdī, cīsum, *tr.* (sub + caedo), to cut off, cut down, mow.

suc-cumbo, ĕre, cŭbuī, cŭbĭtum, *intr.* (sub + cumbo), to sink under; to yield, succumb, be overcome.

suc-curro, ĕre, cŭcurrī *or* **currī, cursum,** *intr.* (sub + curro), to run *or* hasten to; to help, aid, assist, succor.

sŭdis, is, *f.*, a stake, a pile.

sūdor, ōris, *m.*, sweat, toil.

Suēvus, a, um, *adj.*, Suevian.

suf-fĭcĭo, ĕre, fēcī, fectum, *tr. and intr.* (sub + făcio), to supply; furnish; to be sufficient; to hold out.

suf-frāgĭum, ī, *n.* (sub + frango), a vote; suffrage.

sug-gestus, ūs, *m.* (suggĕro), a raised place; a platform, stage.

suī, *refl. pron.*, of himself, herself, itself, *or* themselves.

sum, esse, fuī, —, *intr.*, to be, exist, remain, continue, live.
summa, ae, *f.*, the sum, whole; conduct, management. **Summa imperī,** the chief command.
summus, a, um, *adj.* (*super. of* **sŭpĕrus**), the highest, greatest, utmost, most important, supreme; the last, the highest part of, top of, summit of, surface of.
sūmo, ĕre, sumpsī, sumptum, *tr.*, to take, take up *or* away; to assume, arrogate; to undertake.
sumptŭōsus, a, um, *adj.*, expensive, costly.
sumptus, ūs, *m.* (sūmo), expense, cost, charge.
sŭper, *prep. with the accus. or abl.*, upon, above, over.
sŭperbē, *adv.*, proudly, haughtily, arrogantly, insolently.
sŭper-fuī. *See* **sŭper-sum.**
sŭpĕrĭor, us, *adj.* (*comp. of* **sŭpĕrus**), higher, upper; superior; former, previous, preceding.
sŭpĕro, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr. and intr.* (super), to surpass, excel; to overcome, subdue; to prevail; to remain, be left, survive.
sŭper-sĕdĕo, ēre, sēdī, sessum, *tr. and intr.*, to forbear, abstain, desist from.
sŭper-sum, esse, fuī, —, *intr.*, to be over and above, be left, remain; to survive.
sŭpĕrus, a, um, *adj.*, above, upper, over. *Comp.* **sŭpĕrĭor,** *super.* **sŭprēmus** *or* **summus.**
sup-pĕto, ĕre, īvī *or* **iī, ītum,** *intr.* (sub + pĕto), to be at hand, be present, be in store; to suffice.
sup-plēmentum, ī, *n.*, a filling up, recruiting; reënforcements, recruits.
sup-plex, ĭcis, *adj.* (sub + plĭco), suppliant, humble, humbly entreating.
sup-plĭcātĭo, ōnis, *f.*, a thanksgiving, public prayer *or* supplication.
sup-plĭcĭter, *adv.*, suppliantly, humbly, as suppliants.
sup-plĭcĭum, ī, *n.* (supplex), punishment, penalty.
sup-porto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (sub + porto), to carry, convey, *or* bring up *or* to.
sŭprā, *adv.*, above, before.
sŭprā, *prep. with the accus.*, above, over; upon; before.
sus-cĭpĭo, ĕre, cēpī, ceptum, *tr.* (sub + căpio), to take *or* lift up; to sustain, receive, incur; to undertake, assume.
su-spectus, a, um, *partic. adj.* (suspĭcio), suspected; exciting suspicion, suspicious.
su-spĭcĭo, ōnis, *f.*, suspicion, distrust, mistrust.
su-spĭcĭo, ĕre, pexī, pectum, *tr.* (sub + spĕcio), to mistrust, suspect.
su-spĭcor, ārī, ātus, *tr. dep.*, to suspect, mistrust, surmise, distrust.

sus-tento, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr. freq.* (sustĭneo), to hold up, support, sustain, uphold; to hold out, withstand, endure.

sus-tĭnĕo, ēre, tĭnuī, tentum, *tr.* (sub+tĕneo), to hold up, sustain, support; to check, restrain; to withstand, undergo, endure, hold out.

sŭus, a, um, *poss. adj. pron.*, his, her, its, their; one's own; his own, her own, their own.

T.

T., for Titus.

tăbernācŭlum, ī, *n.*, a tent.

tăbŭla, ae, *f.*, a board, plank; a tablet, register.

tăbŭlātum, ī, *n.*, boardwork; flooring, a floor, story.

tăceo, ēre, uī, itum, *tr. and intr.*, to be silent; to pass over in silence, disregard.

tăcĭtus, a, um, *adj.*, silent.

tālĕa, ae, *f.*, a rod, staff, stick, bar.

tālis, e, *adj.*, such, of such a kind *or* nature, like.

tam, *adv.*, so, so much, so very.

tămen, *conj.*, notwithstanding, nevertheless, yet, however; at least.

tăm-etsī, *conj.* (tamen+etsi), although, though, notwithstanding.

tandem, *adv.*, at length, at last, finally; then, pray. **Quid tandem**, what, pray? what in the world?

tango, ĕre, tĕtĭgī, tactum, *tr.*, to touch, border on.

tant-ŏpĕre, *or* **tantō ŏpĕre,** *adv.*, so much, so greatly.

tantŭlus, a, um, *adj. dim.* (tantus), so little, so trifling *or* trivial.

tantum, *adv.*, so much, so far; so very; only merely. **Non tantum — sed etiam**, not only — but also.

tantum-dem, *adv.*, just so much, so far, just as far.

tantum-mŏdo, *adv.*, only, merely.

tantus, a, um, *adj.*, so great, so large, so much, so many; so small, so trivial, so slight. **Quantō — tantō**=the — the.

tardē, *adv.*, slowly, tardily.

tardo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to delay, hinder, retard, impede.

tardus, a, um, *adj.*, slow, tardy.

taurus, ī, *m.*, a bull.

taxus, ī, *f.*, the yew-tree.

tectum, ī, *n.* (tĕgo), a roof; a house, dwelling, shelter.

tectus, a, um. *See* **tĕgo.**

tĕgĭmentum, ī, *n.*, a covering.

tĕgo, ĕre, texī, tectum, *tr.*, to cover, hide, conceal; to shelter, protect, defend.

tēlum, ī, *n.*, a weapon; dart, javelin, spear.

tĕmĕrārĭus, a, um, *adj.*, rash, inconsiderate, heedless.

tĕmĕrĕ, *adv.*, rashly, inconsiderately; at random, without reason; readily.

tĕmĕrĭtās, ātis, *f.*, rashness, temerity, indiscretion.

tēmo, ōnis, *m.*, the pole, beam, *or* tongue *of a carriage, etc.*
tempĕrantĭa, ae, *f.*, moderation, self-control, calmness.
tempĕrātus, a, um, *partic. adj.* (tempĕro), temperate, moderate, calm.
tempĕro, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr. and intr.* (tempus), to temper, moderate, restrain; to abstain, refrain.
tempestās, ātis, *f.* (tempus), a period, season; the weather; a storm, tempest.
tempto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to try, prove; to attempt, endeavor; to attack, assail; to sound, tamper with.
tempus, ŏris, *n.*, time; season.
tendo, ĕre, tĕtendī, tensum *and* **tentum,** *tr.*, to stretch, stretch out, extend; to tent, encamp; to go, march.
tĕnebrae, ārum, *f. pl.*, darkness.
tĕnĕo, ēre, uī, tum, *tr.*, to hold, have, possess, occupy, keep; to hold on, continue; to defend, maintain; to detain, hinder; to bind.
tĕner, ĕra, ĕrum, *adj.*, tender, soft; young.
tĕnuis, e, *adj.*, thin, slender; poor, mean, low; trifling, insignificant; delicate, feeble.
tĕnuĭtās, ātis, *f.*, thinness, fineness; poverty.
tĕnuĭter, *adv.*, thinly, slightly.
ter, *num. adv.*, three times.
tĕres, ĕtis, *adj.* (tĕro), tapering, rounded, smooth.
tergum, ī, *n.*, the back; rear. **Ab tergo,** in the rear. **Post tergum,** in the rear.
ternī, ae, a, *distr. num. adj.*, three each, every three, in threes, three.
terra, ae, *f.*, the earth; land, ground, district. **Orbis terrarum,** the earth, the world.
terrēnus, a, um, *adj.* (terra), of earth, earthy.
terrĕo, ēre, uī, ĭtum, *tr.*, to terrify, frighten; to deter.
terrĭto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr. freq.*, to terrify, frighten, affright.
terror, ōris, *m.*, terror, fear, affright.
tertiō, *adv.*, for the third time.
tertĭus, a, um, *num. adj.* (ter), the third.
testāmentum, ī, *n.*, a will.
testĭmōnĭum, ī, *n.* (testis), testimony, proof, evidence.
testis, is, *m. and f.*, a witness.
testūdo, ĭnis, *f.*, a tortoise; a testudo, a shed for sheltering besiegers; the shelter of overlapping shields held over soldiers' heads.
texī. *See* **tĕgo.**
tignum, ī, *n.*, a beam, log, stick, building-timber.
tĭmeo, ēre, uī, —, *tr. and intr.*, to fear, dread; to fear for.
tĭmĭdē, *adv.*, fearfully, timidly.
tĭmĭdus, a, um, *adj.*, fearful, timid, afraid.
tĭmor, ōris, *m.*, fear, dread.
tŏlĕro, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to bear, support, endure, sustain, maintain.

tollo, ĕre, sustŭlī, sublātum, *irr. tr.*, to raise, lift, *or* take up; to elate; to take away, remove, carry off; to kill, destroy, break off.

tormentum, ī, *n.* (torqueo), a hurling-engine, *for throwing stones, darts, etc.;* a rope, cord; torture.

torrĕo, ēre, uī, tostum, *tr.*, to roast, bake, scorch, burn, parch.

tŏt, *indecl. adj.*, so many.

tŏt-ĭdem, *indecl. adj.*, just as many, as many.

tōtus, a, um, *gen.* **tōtĭus,** *adj.*, all, the whole, entire, total.

trabs, trăbis, *f.*, a beam, timber.

tractus, a, um. *See* **trăho.**

tractus, ūs, *m.* (trăho), a district, region, tract, extent.

trā-do, ĕre, dĭdī, dĭtum, *tr.* (trans + do), to give up, deliver, surrender, transmit, hand down, impart; to commend.

trā-dūco, ĕre, xī, ctum, *tr.*, to lead across, over, or through; to lead, transfer, convey, transport.

trāgŭla, ae, *f.*, a javelin, dart.

trăho, ĕre, xī, ctum, *tr.*, to draw, drag along, drag away; to protract.

traĭcĭo, ĕre, iēcī, iectum, *tr.* (trans + iăcio), to throw *or* cast over; to convey across, transport; to thrust *or* pierce through, transfix.

trā-iectus, ūs, *m.* (traĭcio), a passage, crossing over.

trā-no, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.* (trans + no), to swim across *or* over.

tranquillĭtās, ātis, *f.*, a calm; calmness, stillness, tranquillity.

trans, *prep. with the accus.*, over, across, beyond.

Trans-alpīnus, a, um, *adj.*, Transalpine, beyond the Alps.

tran-scendo, ĕre, dī, sum, *tr. and intr.* (trans + scando), to pass over, cross; to surmount, exceed, surpass.

trans-ĕo, īre, īvī *or* **iī, ĭtum,** *intr.*, to go, cross, *or* pass over; to pass away, elapse.

trans-fĕro, ferre, tŭlī, lātum, *irr. tr.*, to carry, bear, *or* convey over; to transfer, transport.

trans-fīgo, ĕre, xī, xum, *tr.*, to pierce *or* thrust through; to transfix.

trans-fŏdĭo, ĕre, fōdī, fossum, *tr.*, to thrust through, pierce through, transfix.

trans-fŭga, ae, *m.*, a deserter.

trans-grĕdĭor, ī, gressus, *intr. dep.* (trans + grădior), to go *or* pass over; to cross.

trans-ĭtus, ūs, *m.* (transeo), a passing over; a passage, crossing.

trans-lātus, a, um. *See* **trans-fĕro.**

trans-mărīnus, a, um, *adj.*, beyond the sea, transmarine, foreign.

trans-missus, ūs, *m.*, a passage.

trans-mitto, ĕre, mīsī, missum, *tr.*, to send over *or* across.
trans-porto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to carry over, transport.
Trans-rhēnānus, a, um, *adj.*, across the Rhine. **Transrhēnānī, ōrum,** *m. pl.*, those living across the Rhine.
transtrum, ī, *n.*, a cross-beam.
trans-vĕho, ĕre, xī, ctum, *tr.*, to carry *or* convey across; to transport.
trans-versus, a, um, *adj.* (trans + verto), lying across, crosswise, transverse, athwart, oblique.
trĕ-centī, ae, a, *num. adj.* (tres + centum), three hundred.
trĕ-dĕcim, *num. adj.*, thirteen.
trĕpĭdo, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.*, to hurry about in confusion and alarm; to be in confusion, in a state of trepidation; to be greatly agitated *or* alarmed. **Trĕpĭdātur,** *impers.*, consternation prevails.
trēs, trĭa, *num adj.*, three.
trĭbūnus, ī, *m.* (tribus), a tribune. **Trĭbūnus mīlĭtum,** a tribune of the soldiers *or* military tribune, an officer of the army. Each legion had six.
trĭbŭo, ĕre, uī, ūtum, *tr.*, to give, assign; to grant, allow, ascribe, attribute.
trĭbus, ūs, *f.*, a tribe.
trĭbūtum, ī, *n.*, (trĭbuo), tax, tribute, impost.
trī-dŭum, ī, *n.*, three days.
trĭ-ennĭum, ī, *n.*, three years.
trīgintā, *num. adj.*, thirty.
trīnī, ae, a, *distr. num. adj.*, three each, every three, three.
trĭ-partītō, *adv.*, in three parts, in three divisions.
tri-plex, ĭcis, *adj.* (tres + plĭco), threefold, triple, three.
trĭquĕtrus, a, um, *adj.*, three-cornered, triangular.
tristis, e, *adj.*, sad, sorrowful.
tristĭtia, ae, *f.*, sorrow, sadness.
truncus, ī, *m.*, the trunk *or* stock *of a tree.*
tū, tuī, *pers. pron.*, thou, you.
tŭba, ae, *f.*, a trumpet.
tuĕor, ērī, tŭĭtus *or* **tūtus,** *tr. dep.*, to look at, behold, watch, protect, guard, defend; to maintain, preserve, support.
tŭlī. *See* **fĕro.**
tum, *adv.*, at that time, then.
tum, *conj.*, moreover, besides, next. **Cum — tum,** both — and.
tŭmultŭor, ārī, ātus, *intr. dep.*, to make a tumult *or* disturbance; to be in confusion, raise a tumult.
tŭmultuōsē, *adv.*, in a disorderly manner, tumultuously.
tŭmultus, ūs, *m.*, an uproar, tumult, disturbance; sedition, insurrection.

tŭmŭlus, ī, *m.* (tŭmeo), a mound, hillock, hill.
tunc, *adv.*, then, at that time.
turma, ae, *f.*, a troop *or* squadron of thirty horsemen.
turpis, e, *adj.*, ugly, unsightly; shameful, disgraceful.
turpĭter, *adv.*, shamefully, disgracefully, basely.
turpĭtūdo, ĭnis, *f.*, disgrace, shame, dishonor.
turris, is, *f.*, a tower.
tūtō, *adv.*, safely, securely, in safety. *Comp.* **tūtĭus.**
tūtus, a, um, *adj.* (tuĕor), safe, secure, protected.
tŭus, a, um, *poss. adj. pron.*, thy, thine, of thee; your, yours, of you.

U.

ŭbī, *adv.*, where; when. **Ubi primum**, as soon as.
ŭbĭ-cumque, *adv.*, wherever.
ŭbīquĕ, *adv.*, everywhere; anywhere, wherever.
ulciscor, ī, **ultus**, *tr. dep.*, to avenge, revenge, punish.
ullus, a, um, *gen.* **ullīus**, any, any one.
ultĕrĭor, us, *gen.* **ōris**, *comp. adj.*, farther, on the farther side; more remote, more distant. *Super.* **ultĭmus.**
ultĭmus, a, um, *adj.* (*super. of* **ultĕrĭor**), the farthest, most distant, most remote, last.
ultrā, *prep. with the accus.*, beyond, over, besides, more than.
ultrā, *adv.*, beyond, further, besides, more than.
ultrō, *adv.*, beyond, on the other side; moreover, besides; of one's own accord, voluntarily, actually. **Ultro citroque**, backwards and forwards, to and fro.
ultus, a, um. *See* **ulciscor.**
ŭlŭlātus, ūs, *m.*, a wailing, howling; yelling, shout.
ŭmĕrus, i, *m.*, the shoulder.
umquam, *adv.*, ever, at any time.
ūnā, *adv.*, together *or* along with, at the same time.
undĕ, *adv.*, whence, from which, from whom.
un-dĕcim, *num. adj.*, eleven.
un-dĕcĭmus, a, um, *num. adj.*, the eleventh.
un-dē-quadrāgintā, *num. adj.*, thirty-nine.
undĭquĕ, *adv.*, from all parts, from all quarters; on all sides, everywhere.
ūnĭ-versus, a, um, *adj.*, all, the whole, entire, universal.
ūnus, a, um, *gen.* **unīus**, *num. adj.*, one, single, alone, only, the same.
urbānus, a, um, *adj.*, of a city, of the city (Rome), in the city.
urbs, **urbis**, *f.*, a city; the city, *i.e.* Rome.
urgĕo, ēre, **ursī**, —, *tr.*, to press upon, press hard *or* close upon; to urge, drive, weigh down, oppress.
ūrus, ī, *m.*, a kind of wild ox.

ūsĭtātus, a, um, *adj.*, usual, common, customary, ordinary.
usquĕ, *adv.*, even, as far as, all the way. **Usque eo,** to such a degree.
ūsus, a, um. *See* **ūtor.**
ūsus, ūs, *m.*, use, experience, practice, skill; advantage, profit; need, necessity, occasion. **Usu venire,** to happen, come to pass, occur.
ŭt, *or* **ŭtī,** *adv.*, as; when, as soon as; how, in what manner.
ŭt, *or* **ŭtī,** *conj.*, that, in order that, so that; though, although; that not (*after verbs of fearing*).
ŭter, tra, trum, *gen.* **utrĭus,** *adj.*, which of the two, which.
ŭterque, trăque, trumque, *gen.* **utrĭusque,** *adj.*, both, each.
ŭtī. *See* **ut.**
ūtĭlis, e, *adj.* (ūtor), useful, profitable, advantageous.
ūtĭlĭtās, ātis, *f.*, usefulness, profit, advantage, service.
ūtor, ī, ūsus, *intr. dep.*, to use, enjoy, make use of, avail one's self of; to employ, exercise, practise; to treat, show.
utrimque, *adv.*, on both sides.
utrum, *conj.*, whether, *in indirect questions. In direct questions it is not translated.* **Utrum — an,** whether — or.
uxor, ōris, *f.*, a wife.

V.

văcātio, ōnis, *f.* (văco), exemption, immunity, freedom.
văco, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.*, to be empty, vacant, unoccupied; to lie waste.
văcŭus, a, um, *adj.*, empty, void, free, vacant, destitute.
vădum, ī, *n.*, a ford; shoal, shallow place.
văgīna, ae, *f.*, a sheath, scabbard.
văgor, ārī, ātus, *intr. dep.*, to wander about, roam about.
văleo, ēre, uī, —, *intr.*, to be strong, powerful, *or* able; to have weight *or* influence; to avail, have force.
vălētūdo, ĭnis, *f.* (văleo), health, *good or ill.*
vallis, *or* **valles, is,** *f.*, a valley.
vallum, ī, *n.* (vallus), an earthen wall *or* rampart set with palisades; earthworks, intrenchments, circumvallation.
vallus, ī, *m.*, a stake, palisade.
vărĭĕtās, ātis, *f.*, variety, diversity, difference.
vărĭus, a, um, *adj.*, various, different, variegated, changing, changeable.
vasto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to lay waste, devastate, ravage.
vastus, a, um, *adj.*, vast, immense, huge, enormous.
vātĭcĭnātio, ōnis, *f.*, a prophecy, prediction, foretelling.
vĕ, *enclit. conj.* = vel, or; either.

vectīgal, ālis, *n.*, a tax, toll, tribute, impost; revenue.
vectīgālis, e, *adj.*, tributary.
vectōrĭus, a, um, *adj.* (vĕho), for carrying burdens, transport.
vĕhĕmenter, *adv.*, exceedingly, greatly, strongly, forcibly.
vĕho, ĕre, vexī, vectum, *tr.*, to carry, bear, convey.
vel, *conj.*, or; even. **Vel — vel,** either — or.
vēlōcĭtās, ātis, *f.*, swiftness, rapidity, speed, velocity.
vēlōcĭter, *adv.*, swiftly, rapidly, quickly. *Comp.* **vēlōcĭus,** *super.* **vēlōcissĭmē.**
vēlox, ōcis, *adj.*, swift, quick, rapid, fleet.
vēlum, ī, *n.*, a sail.
vĕlut, *adv.*, as, just as, like.
vēnātio, ōnis, *f.*, hunting, the chase.
vēnātor, ōris, *m.*, a hunter.
vendo, ĕre, dĭdī, dĭtum, *tr.*, to sell.
Vĕnĕtĭcus, a, um, *adj.*, of the Vĕnĕti, Venetian.
vĕnia, ae, *f.*, favor, indulgence, pardon, forgiveness.
vĕnio, īre, vēnī, ventum, *intr.*, to come, arrive.
ventĭto, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr. freq.*, to come often, resort.
ventus, ī, *m.*, the wind.
vēr, vēris, *n.*, the spring.
verbum, ī, *n.*, a word; expression. **Verba facĕre** = to speak, address.
vērē, *adv.*, in truth, truly.
vĕrĕor, ērī, ĭtus, *tr. dep.*, to fear.
vergo, ĕre, —, —, *intr.*, to incline, lie, face.
Vergŏbrĕtus, ī, *m.*, the title of the chief magistrate among the Haeduans.
vērī-sĭmĭlis, e, *adj.* (vērus + sĭmĭlis), probably, likely.
vĕrĭtus, a, um. *See* **vĕrĕor.**
vērō, *adv.* (vērus), in truth, indeed, assuredly.
vērō, *conj.* (vērus), but, however.
verso, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr. freq.* (verto), to turn, toss to and fro, turn over, knock this way and that; to stir up, exercise; to exert, employ, occupy.
versor, ārī, ātus, *intr. dep.*, to dwell, live, remain, be; to occupy, busy one's self with, be engaged in.
versus, *prep. with acc.*, towards.
versus, *adv.* (verto), towards.
versus, ūs, *m.* (verto), a verse, line.
verto, ĕre, tī, sum, *tr. and intr.*, to turn, turn round *or* about; to change, alter.
vērum, ī, *n.*, the truth.
vērus, a, um, *adj.*, true; real; right, reasonable.
vĕrūtum, ī, *n.*, a dart, javelin.
vesper, ĕris *and* **ĕrī,** *m.*, the evening star; evening.
vester, tra, trum, *poss. adj. pron.*, your, yours, your own.
vestīgĭum, ī, *n.*, a footstep, trace, track; spot, place;

moment, instant, point. **E vestigio**, on the spot, immediately.

vestĭo, īre, īvī *or* **iī, ītum**, *tr.*, to clothe ; to cover.

vestis, is, *f.*, a garment, clothing.

vestītus, ūs, *m.*, clothing, dress.

vĕtĕrānus, a, um, *adj.* (vĕtus), veteran, old.

vĕto, āre, uī, ĭtum, *tr.*, to forbid, prohibit, prevent.

vĕtus, ĕris, *adj.*, old, ancient.

vexillum, ī, *n.* (vĕho), an ensign, standard, flag ; a red flag *displayed from the general's tent as a signal for marching or for battle.*

vexo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to harass, disturb, annoy, trouble, molest.

vĭa, ae, *f.*, a way, road, passage.

vĭātor, ōris, *m.*, a traveller.

vīcēnī, ae, a, *distr. num. adj*, twenty each, in twenties, twenty.

vīcēsĭmus, a, um, *num. adj.*, the twentieth.

vīcī. *See* **vinco.**

vīciēs, *num. adv.*, twenty times.

vīcīnĭtās, ātis, *f.*, nearness, neighborhood, vicinity ; the neighbors.

vīcis (*gen.*), *f.*, change, succession, turn. **In vicem**, in turn, by turns, alternately.

victĭma, ae, *f.*, a sacrifice, victim.

victor, ōris, *m.*, a conqueror. *Adj.*, victorious.

victōrĭa, ae, *f.*, victory.

victus, ūs, *m.* (vīvo), food, sustenance, provisions ; mode of living.

victus, a, um. *See* **vinco.**

vīcus, ī, *m.*, a village, hamlet.

vĭdeo, ēre, vīdī, vīsum, *tr.*, to see, observe.

vĭdĕor, ērī, vīsus, *intr. dep.*, to seem, appear ; to seem good, fit, *or* proper.

vĭgĭlia, ae, *f.*, a watching, wakefulness; watch, guard; the watch, sentinels. *The Romans divided the night into four watches.*

vīgintī, *num. adj.*, twenty.

vīmen, ĭnis, *n.*, a twig, osier.

vincĭo, īre, nxī, nctum, *tr.*, to bind, fasten, tie.

vinco, ĕre, vīcī, victum, *tr. and intr.*, to conquer, subdue ; to prevail, have one's way.

vinctus, a, um. *See* **vincĭo.**

vincŭlum, ī, *n.* (vincio), a bond, fetter, chain. **In vincula** = into prison.

vindĭco, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to lay legal claim to ; to demand, assert, maintain ; to free, deliver, liberate ; to punish, avenge, revenge.

vīnĕa, ae, *f.*, a shed *or* mantelet, *under cover of which soldiers assailed the walls of towns.*

vīnum, ī, *n.*, wine.

viŏlo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to injure, violate, harm; to lay waste.
vir, vĭrī, *m.*, a man; husband.
vīrēs. *See* **vis.**
virgo, ĭnis, *f.*, a maiden, maid, virgin.
virgultum, ī, *n.*, a bush, copse, shrubbery, brushwood.
vĭrītim, *adv.*, man by man, individually, singly.
virtūs, ūtis, *f.* (vir), manliness; power, vigor, energy; bravery, valor; merit, excellence, worth, virtue.
vīs, vīs, *f.*, strength, power, force, violence; vigor, energy; effect, influence; quantity, multitude, number. *Plural,* **vīrēs.**
vīsus, a, um. *See* **vĭdeo** *or* **vĭdĕor.**
vīta, ae, *f.*, life.
vīto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to shun, avoid, escape.
vĭtrum, ī, *n.*, woad, *a plant used for dyeing blue.*
vīvo, ĕre, vixī, victum, *intr.*, to live, live on.
vīvus, a, um, *adj.*, alive, living.
vix, *adv.*, scarcely, hardly, with difficulty, barely.
vŏco, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to call, invite, summon; to name.
Volcānus, ī, *m.*, Vulcan, the god of fire.
volgō, *adv.*, generally, commonly, everywhere, here and there.
volgo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to publish, divulge, disclose.
volgus, ī, *n.*, the mass, multitude, common people, the public; a crowd, throng.
volnĕro, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to wound.
volnus, ĕris, *n.*, a wound.
vŏlo, velle, vŏluī, —, *irr. tr.*, to wish, be willing, desire; to purpose, intend.
voltus, ūs, *m.*, the countenance, face, looks, aspect, features, mien, air, expression.
vŏluntārĭus, a, um, *adj.*, voluntary, willing. **Vŏluntārĭus, ī,** *m.*, a volunteer.
vŏluntās, ātis, *f.*, will, wish, desire, inclination; good will, favor; willing consent, approbation, willingness.
vŏluptās, ātis, *f.*, pleasure, enjoyment, joy, delight.
vŏveo, ēre, vōvī, vōtum, *tr.*, to vow, to promise solemnly.
vox, vŏcis, *f.*, a voice; word, saying, remark, expression.

GEOGRAPHICAL INDEX.

A.

Aduātŭca or **Aduátĭca, ae,** *f.* A place in the country of the Eburōnes, afterwards Tungri, now Tongres.

Aduātŭcī or **Aduātĭcī, ōrum,** *m.* A German people dwelling between the Mosa (Meuse) and the Scaldis (Schelde or Scheldt) from the time of the Cimbric war.

Ăgēdincum, ī, *n.* The capital of the Senŏnes; now Sens (according to others, Provins).

Ălĕsĭa, ae, *f.* A strongly fortified town of the Mandubii, west of Dijon; now Alise.

Ăllŏbrox, ŏgis, *m.* An Allobrogian. **Ăllobrŏges, um,** *m.* A Gallic people, bounded on the north and west by the Rhodănus (Rhone), south by the Isăra (Isère), and extending eastward to the Alps.

Alpes, ium, *f.* The Alps generally.

Ambarrī, ōrum, *m.* A Gallic people east of the Arar (Saône), between the Hædui and the Allóbrŏges.

Ambiānī, ōrum, *m.* A Gallic people in the neighborhood of Amiens.

Ambibāriī, ōrum, *m.* A Gallic people in Normandy.

Ambilarĕtī, ōrum, *m.* A Gallic people, dependents or clients of the Hædui.

Ambiliātī, ōrum, *m.* A Gallic people whose situation is unknown. [Some good Mss. read **Ambiānī** instead. Dict. Geog.]

Ambivarĕtī, ōrum, *m.* A Gallic people, dependents or clients of the Hædui.

Ambivarītī, ōrum, *m.* A Gallic people, probably on the left bank of the river Mosa (Meuse), "who could hardly be clients of the Hædui," and were therefore different from the preceding. Dict. Geog.

Ambluárĕtī, ōrum, *m.* A Gallic people, dependents or clients of the Hædui.

Anartes, ium, and **Anartī, ōrum,** *m.* A German people on the Theiss, in Hungary. The Hercynian Forest extended to their boundaries.

Ancalĭtes, um, *m.* A people in the southeast of Britain.

Andes, ium, *m.* (and **Andecavī** or **Andegāvī, ōrum,** *m.*). A Gallic people north of the Liger (Loire), in Anjou.

Ăquilēĭa, ae, *f.* A town in the north of Italy.

Ăquītānus, ī, *m.* An Aquitanian. **Aquitānī, ōrum,** *m.* The Aquitanians, inhabitants of Aquitania.

Ăquītānĭa, ae, *f.* One of the three great divisions into which Cæsar divides Gaul, bounded on the north by the Garumna (Garonne), and on the south by the Pyrenees.

Ărar, ăris, *m.* Acc. **Arărim.** A river in Gaul flowing into the Rhodănus (Rhone); now called the Saône.

Arduenna, ae, *f.* The forest-covered mountains of Ardennes, in Gaul, extending from the Treveri on the Rhine through the territory of the Remi and the Nervii to the Scaldis (Schelde or Scheldt).

Arecómĭcī, ōrum, *m.* See **Volcae.**

Aremŏrĭcae, ārum, *f.* (from Celtic **ar,** *on, near,* and **mor,** *the sea*). **Civitates.** The states on the coast of Gaul, between the Liger (Loire) and the Sequăna (Seine).

Arvernus, ī, *m.* An Arvernian. **Arvernī, ōrum,** *m.* A people of Gaul, in the present Auvergne.

Atrĕbātes, um, *m.* A Gallic people in the neighborhood of Calais.

Aulercus, ī, *m.* An Aulercan. **Aulercī, ōrum,** *m.* A people in Celtic Gaul, whom Cæsar divides into three branches.
1. **Aulercī Brannovīces,** in the neighborhood of the Hædui.
2. **Aulercī Cēnomānī** or **Diablintes** (Diablintres), in Maine.
3. **Aulercī Eburovīces,** in Normandy.

Auscī, ōrum, *m.* A Gallic people in the neighborhood of Auch.

Avārĭcum, ī, *m.* A town of the Biturīges; now Bourges.

Axŏna, ae, *f.* A river in Gallia Belgica; now the Aisne.

B.

Bācĕnis, is, *f.* A great forest in Germany; according to some, the Thüringer Wald (Forest); according to others, the Hartz Forest.

Bătăvī, ōrum, *m.* The Batavians (Hollanders, Dutch), who occupied an island formed by the northern arm of the Rhenus (Rhine), the Vacălus (Waal), and the ocean. Hence **Insula Batavorum.**

Belgae, ārum, *m.* One of the three nations into which Cæsar divides the inhabitants of Gaul.

Belgium, ī, *n.* A part of Gallia Belgica, which comprehended the Bellovăci, Atrebātes, and Ambiāni.

Bellŏvăcī, ōrum, *m.* A people in Gallia Belgica, in the region of the present Beauvais.

Bibracte, is, *n.* The chief town of the Hædui, afterwards Augustodūnum, and now Autun.

Bibrax, actis, *f.* A town of the Remi; perhaps the modern Bièvre.

Bibrŏcī, ōrum, *m.* A people in the southeast of Britain.

Bĭgerriōnes, um, *m.* A people in the south of Gaul, in the district called Le Bigorre.

Bĭturīges, um, *m.* A Gallic people west of the Hædui, from whom they were divided by the Liger (Loire).

Bōiī, ōrum, *m.* A Gallic people, who passed over into Germany, and subsequently invaded Gaul with the Helvetii. After the defeat of the Helvetii, they dwelt in the territory of the Hædui.

Brannovīces, um, *m.* See **Aulercī,** and the next word.

Brannoviī, ōrum, *m.* A Gallic people of whom nothing certain is known. The name is regarded by some as merely a variation of the preceding. The Mss. are uncertain. See Dict. Geog.

Bratuspantium, ī, *n.* A town of the Bellovăci, in Gallia Belgica, in the neighborhood of Breteuil, in Picardy.

Brĭtannī, ōrum, *m.* Britons, inhabitants of Britain.

Brĭtannia, ae, *f.* Britain; England and Scotland.

C.

Căbillōnum, ī, *n.* A town of the Hædui on the river Arar; now Chalons-sur-Saône.

Cădurcus, ī, *m.* A Cadurcan. **Cadurcī, ōrum,** *m.* A people in the south of Gaul, now Cahors.

Caerōsī (Caeresi, Caeraesi), **ōrum,** *m.* Originally a people of Germany, who dwelt in Gallia Belgica, in the neighborhood of Liège.

D.

E.

Eburōnes, um, *m.* A people in Gallia Belgica, extending from Liège to Aix-la-Chapelle.

Ebūrŏvīces, um, *m.* See **Aulercī.**

Ĕlăver, ĕris, *n.* The Allier, a river flowing into the Liger.

Eleutĕtī, ōrum, *m.* Dependents of the Arverni.

Elusātes, ium, *m.* A Gallic tribe in Aquitania.

Esuviī, ōrum, *m.* "It seems very likely that the Essui, Sesuvii and the Esubii (Esuvii) are the same, and that they occupied the diocese of Seés, which borders on that of *Mans* and *Evereux*. Dict. Geog.

G.

Găbălī, ōrum, *m.* A Gallic people in modern Languedoc.

Gallia, ae, *f.* Gaul. Gallia Cisalpina, Gaul south of the Alps, Gallia Transalpina, Gaul north of the Alps. Gallia Citerior, nearer Gaul, as opposed to Gallia Ulterior, or the further, which in Cæsar means the Provincia.

Gallus, ī, *m.* A Gaul. **Gallī, ōrum**, *m.* The Gauls generally, but in a more restrictive sense the inhabitants of the central parts of Gaul, between the Garumna (Garonne), the Sequăna (Seine), and the Matrŏna (Marne).

Gărumna, ae, *m.* The Garonne, a river in the southwest of Gaul.

Gărumnī, ōrum, *m.* A Gallic people near the source of the Garumna.

Gates (*or* Garītes), **um**, *m.* A people in the southwest of Gaul.

Geidumnī (*also*, Geidunni and Geidūni), **ōrum**, *m.* A people in Belgic Gaul, subject to the Nervii.

Gĕnāva, ae, *f.* A town of the Allobrŏges, on Lake Lemannus (Lake of Geneva); it is now called Geneva.

Gergŏvia, ae, *f.* 1. A town of the Arverni. 2. A town of the Boii.

Germānī, ōrum, *m.* Germans, inhabitants of Germania.

Germānia, ae, *f.* Germany, between the Rhine, the Danube, the Vistula, and the sea.

Grāiocĕlī, ōrum, *m.* A Gallic people in the Graian Alps.

Grudiī, ōrum, *m.* A people of Gallia Belgica.

H.

Haedŭus, ī, *m.* A Hæduan. **Haedui, ōrum**, *m.* A Gallic people between the Liger (Loire) and the Arar (Saône).

I.

L.

M.

V.

INDEX OF PROPER NAMES.

NOTE. — Names ending in *us*, whose genitive singular is not given, are of the second declension.

A.

Acco, ōnis, *m.* A general of the Gauls.
Adiatunnus, ī, *m.* A chief of the Sotiātes.
Lucius Aemilius, ī, *m.* A decurio in the Gallic cavalry.
Ambiŏrix, īgis, *m.* A king of one-half of the Eburōnes.
Andocombogius, ī, *m.* An ambassador sent from the Remi to Cæsar.
C. Antistius Regīnus, ī, *m.* One of Cæsar's lieutenants.
Marcus Antōnius, ī, *m.* Mark Antony, one of Cæsar's lieutenants; afterwards the triumvir.
Ăpollo, ĭnis, *m.* Apollo, son of Jupiter and Latōna, god of divination, archery, the healing art, and of poetry and music.
Ariovistus, ī, *m.* A king of the Germans.
Marcus Ăristius, ī, *m.* A tribune of the soldiers.
C. Arpinēius, ī, *m.* A Roman knight.
Quintus Atrius, ī, *m.* An officer in Cæsar's army.
Lūcius Auruncŭlēius Cotta, ae, *m.* One of Cæsar's lieutenants.

B.

Tĭtus Balventius, ī, *m.* A Roman centurion.
Boduognātus, ī, *m.* A general of the Nervians.
Dĕcĭmus Brūtus, ī, *m.* One of Cæsar's officers.

C.

Caesar, ăris, *m.* (C. Iulius.) C. Julius Cæsar.
Caesar, ăris, *m.* (Lucius Iulius.) One of Cæsar's lieutenants.
Camulogĕnus, ī, *m.* A general of the Aulerci.
C. Cănīnius Rebĭlus, ī, *m.* One of Cæsar's lieutenants.
Carvilius, ī, *m.* A king of Britain.

D.

E.

F.

G.

I.

L.

C. Vălĕrius Flaccus, ī, *m.* Propraetor of Gaul, B.C. 83.
C. Vălĕrius Procillus, ī, *m.* A leading man in the Roman Province.
Lūcius Vălĕrius Praecōnīnus, ī, *m.* A Roman lieutenant defeated and slain in Gaul.
Valetiăcus, ī, *m.* A Hæduan chief, brother of Cotus.
Quintus Velānius, ī, *m.* A tribune of the soldiers.
Vercassivellaunus, ī, *m.* A general of the Arverni.
Vercingetŏrix, īgis, *m.* A distinguished Arvernian; the ablest enemy encountered by Cæsar in Gaul.
Vergobrĕtus, ī, *m.* The title of the chief magistrate of the Hædui.
Vertĭcō, ōnis, *m.* A Nervian who sent information to Cæsar that Cicero was besieged.
Verudoctius, ī, *m.* A Helvetian ambassador.
Viridomārus, ī, *m.* A chief of the Hædui.
Viridŏvix, īcis, *m.* A chief of the Venelli.
Voccio, ōnis, *m.* A king of the Norici.
Volcānus, ī, *m.* Vulcan, the god of fire, son of Jupiter and Juno, called Hephæstus by the Greeks.
C. Volcatius Tullus, ī, *m.* An officer in Cæsar's army.
C. Volusēnus Quadrātus, ī, *m.* A tribune of the soldiers.
Lūcius Vorēnus, ī, *m.* A brave centurion in Cæsar's army.